

THIEME FLEXIBOOK

Werner Kahle  
Helmut Leonhardt  
Werner Platzer

Color Atlas/Text of Human Anatomy, Vol.2

# Internal Organs

4th revised edition



Thieme

3 Volumes





# Color Atlas and Textbook of Human Anatomy

in 3 Volumes

---

Volume 1: Locomotor System  
by Werner Platzer

Volume 3: Nervous System and Sensory Organs  
by Werner Kahle

Volume 2

## Internal Organs

by Helmut Leonhardt, M. D.

Professor emeritus, Department of Anatomy  
University of Kiel  
Germany

4th edition, revised and enlarged  
179 color plates with 659 drawings  
by Gerhard Spitzer



1993

Georg Thieme Verlag  
Stuttgart · New York

Thieme Medical Publishers, Inc.  
New York

*Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data*

Kahle, W. (Werner)  
Color atlas and textbook of human anatomy.

(Thieme flexibooks)  
Translation of Taschenatlas der Anatomie. 6th ed.  
Includes bibliographical references and index.

Contents: v. 1. Locomotor system / by Werner Platzer. -- v. 2. Internal organs / by H. Leonhardt.

1. Human anatomy--Atlases.  
I. Leonhardt, Helmut.  
II. Platzer, Werner.  
III. Title. IV. Series.  
[DNLM: 1. Anatomy--atlases. QS 17 K12t]  
QM25.K3413 1992  
611'.022'2 91-36912  
ISBN 3-13-533304-3  
(GTV : v. 1)  
ISBN 0-86577-423-4  
(TMP : v. 1)

1st German edition 1976  
2nd German edition 1978  
3rd German edition 1979  
4th German edition 1984  
5th German edition 1986  
6th German edition 1991

1st English edition 1978  
2nd English edition 1984  
3th English edition 1986

1st Dutch edition 1978  
2nd Dutch edition 1981  
3rd Dutch edition 1990  
1st French edition 1979  
2nd French edition 1993  
1st Greek edition 1985  
1st Indonesian edition 1983  
1st Italian edition 1979  
2nd Italian edition 1987  
1st Japanese edition 1979  
2nd Japanese edition 1981  
3rd Japanese edition 1984  
4th Japanese edition 1990  
1st Portuguese edition 1988  
1st Serbo-Croatian edition 1991  
1st Spanish edition 1977  
2nd Spanish edition 1988  
1st Turkish edition 1987

This book is an authorized translation of the 6th German edition published and copyrighted © 1976, 1991 by Georg Thieme Verlag Stuttgart, Germany. Title of the German edition: Taschenatlas der Anatomie, Band 2: Innere Organe

Some of the product names, patents and registered designs referred to in this book are in fact registered trademarks or proprietary names even though specific reference to this fact is not always made in the text. Therefore, the appearance of a name without designation as proprietary is not to be construed as a representation by the publisher that it is in the public domain.

This book, including all parts thereof, is legally protected by copyright. Any use, exploitation or commercialization outside the narrow limits set by copyright legislation, without the publisher's consent, is illegal and liable to prosecution. This applies in particular to photostat reproduction, copying, mimeographing or duplication of any kind, translating, preparation of microfilms, and electronic data processing and storage.

© 1978, 1993 Georg Thieme Verlag, Rüdigerstrasse 14, D-7000 Stuttgart 30, Germany.  
Thieme Medical Publishers, Inc., 381 Park Av. South, New York, NY 10016, USA  
Typesetting by Druckhaus Götz GmbH, (Linotype System 5 [202])  
Printed in Germany by Druckhaus Götz GmbH, D-7140 Ludwigsburg

ISBN 3-13-533404-3 (Georg Thieme Verlag, Stuttgart)  
ISBN 0-86577-423-4 (Thieme Inc., New York)

## Preface

This pocket atlas is designed to provide a plain and clear compendium of the essential facts of human anatomy for the student of medicine. It also demonstrates the basic knowledge of the subject for students of related disciplines and for the interested layman. For all students, preparation for their examinations and practice requires repetition of visual experiences. Text and illustrations in this book have been deliberately juxtaposed to provide visual demonstration of the topics of anatomy.

The pocket atlas is divided according to organ systems into three volumes: Volume 1 deals with the locomotor system, Volume 2 with the internal organs and skin, and Volume 3 with the nervous system and the organs of the special senses. The topographic relationships of the peripheral pathways of nerves and vessels are considered in Volume 1, insofar as they are closely related to the locomotor system; Volume 2 systematically describes the distribution of the vessels. The floor of the pelvis (pelvic cavity), which has a close functional relationship with the organs of the lesser pelvis, and the relevant topography are incorporated in Volume 2. The developmental anatomy (embryology) of the teeth is briefly mentioned in Volume 2 because it aids understanding of the eruption of the teeth. The common embryological origins of the male and female genital organs are also discussed because it helps to explain their structure in the adult, as well as their not infrequent variants and malformations. Certain problems connected with pregnancy and childbirth are mentioned in the chapter on the female reproductive organs. But these do not cover all the knowledge of embryology required by students. The notes on physiology and biochemistry are deliberately brief and only serve to provide better understanding of structural details. Reference should be made to textbooks of physiology and biochemistry. Finally, it must be emphasized that no pocket atlas can replace a major textbook or the opportunity to examine macroscopic dissections and microscopic preparations.

The reference list mentions textbooks and original papers as a guide to the more advanced literature, and it also cites clinical textbooks of relevance to the study of anatomy.

Those who require less detailed knowledge of the structure of the human body will find clear illustrations, too, of the anatomic bases of the more important methods of medical examination. To help the nonmedical reader, everyday English terms for the major organs and their parts have been supplied as far as feasible; these terms are also listed in the index.

Frankfurt/Main, Kiel, Innsbruck

*The Editors*



## From the Preface to the First Edition of Volume 2

Changes in medical education have led to a shortening of preclinical studies and to major changes in their emphasis. Knowledge of anatomy in particular now tends to be gained mostly from formal lecture courses, and examinations place little reliance on practical work, such as dissection. Under these circumstances, there is a danger that the learning of anatomy will become just repetition of lessons without any visualization of the facts. However, anatomical knowledge can only live through visual understanding.

This pocket book is brought to life mainly by its illustrations. I am grateful to Mr. G. Spitzer who has produced them. The book originated from knowledge gained by teaching students. It is intended principally for medical students and the interested lay reader, who has been represented by Renate and Matthias.

Homburg (Saar), October 1972

*Helmut Leonhardt*

## Preface to the Fourth Edition of Volume 2

This edition includes some additional material and improvements, particularly with regard to the lymphatic organs and endocrine organs. The section on the teeth has been expanded. A further addition that seemed appropriate was the inclusion of cellular processes involved in fertilization and basic aspects of placenta formation.

I owe thanks to many colleagues who have given valuable advice about facts and technical matters. I particularly wish once again to thank Prof. Junzo Ochi, Shiga University, Seta, Otsu City, who translated the book into Japanese, for his numerous improvements, and Prof. B. Krisch, Kiel, and Prof. Platzer, Innsbruck, for discussions and suggestions. Suggestions from students have led to better presentation of the material. I must thank Dr. h. c. G. Hauff and Dr. D. Bremkamp, the initiators of the work and their colleagues, the publishers, Georg Thieme Verlag, for the willingness and patience they have shown in overcoming the technical problems.

Kiel, February 1993

*Helmut Leonhardt*



## Addresses

Prof. emer. *Werner Kahle*, M.D.  
Institute for Neurology  
(Edinger Institut)  
University of Frankfurt/Main  
Deutschordenstr. 46  
6000 Frankfurt/Main (Germany)

Prof. emer. *Helmut Leonhardt*, M.D.  
Director, Institute for Anatomy  
University of Kiel  
Olshausenstr. 40-60  
2300 Kiel (Germany)

Univ. Prof. *Werner Platzer*, M.D.  
Chairman, Institute for Anatomy  
University of Innsbruck  
Müllerstr. 59  
6020 Innsbruck (Austria)

Translated by  
Prof. *Anthony D. Dayan*, M.D.  
*Hedi L. Dayan*, M.B.  
11, Foxgrove Avenue  
Beckenham, Kent BR3 2BA  
United Kingdom

## Contents

Preface	v	Central or Great Vessels	48
From the Preface to the First Edition of Volume 2	vi	Main Artery of the Body (Aorta)	48
Preface to the Fourth Edition of Volume 2	vii	Venae Cavae	50
How to Use This Book	1	Azygos System	50
<b>Viscera</b>	2	Peripheral Pathways	52
<b>Circulatory System</b>	4	Arteries of the Head and Neck	52
Heart	6	Arteries of the Neck I	52
Shape of the Heart	6	Arteries of the Neck II, Facial Arteries I	54
Chambers of the Heart	8	Facial Arteries II	56
Valves of the Heart	10	Arteries of the Brain	58
Cardiac Muscle	12	Veins of the Brain and Venous Sinuses of the Dura Mater I, Veins of the Vertebral Column	60
Action of the Heart	16	Venous Sinuses of the Dura Mater II	62
Intrinsic Impulse-Conducting System and Cardiac Nerves	18	Veins of the Face and Neck	64
Coronary Vessels	20	Arteries of the Shoulder and Upper Arm	66
Pericardium	22	Arteries of the Forearm and Hand	68
Position of the Heart I	24	Arteries of the Pelvis	70
Position of the Heart II (Auscultation and Percussion)	26	Arteries of the Pelvis and the Thigh	72
Radiology of the Heart	28	Arteries of the Leg and Foot	74
Measurement of the Heart; Alterations in its Shape and Size	30	Subcutaneous Veins	76
Blood Vessels	32	Superficial Lymph Vessels of the Trunk and Lymph Nodes of the Arm and Leg	78
Tasks of the Blood Vessel Walls	32	Lymph Vessels (Lymph Nodes) of the Head and Neck, and the Deep Lymph Vessels (Lymph Nodes) of the Trunk	80
Structure of the Walls of Blood Vessels	34	<b>Blood and Defense Mechanisms</b>	82
Arteries	36	Blood	82
Capillaries	40	Origins of the Cells of the Blood and the Defense Systems	86
Veins	42	Defense Systems	88
Specialized Blood Vessel Formations	42	Nonspecific Defense System	88
Lymph Vessels	44		
Collateral Circulation	46		
Variability of the Blood Vessels	46		

Specific Defense System . . . . .	88	<b>Glands</b> . . . . .	146
Cells of the Specific Defense System . . . . .	90	Exocrine Glands . . . . .	146
Lymphatic Organs . . . . .	92	Endocrine Glands . . . . .	146
Thymus . . . . .	92	Formation and Release of Secretion (Incretion) . . . . .	148
Microscopic Structure of the Thymus . . . . .	94	<b>Endocrine System</b> . . . . .	150
Structural Elements of Peripheral Lymphoid Organs . . . . .	96	Organization of the Hypothalamo-Hypophyseal System . . . . .	152
Lymph Nodes . . . . .	98	I. Hypothalamo-Neurohypophyseal System . . . . .	154
Spleen . . . . .	100	Hypothalamus . . . . .	154
Fine Structure of the Spleen . . . . .	102	Neurohypophysis . . . . .	154
Tonsils . . . . .	104	Hypophysis . . . . .	154
Lymphatic Tissue of the Mucous Membranes . . . . .	104	II. Hypothalamus-Adenohypophyseal System . . . . .	156
<b>Respiratory System</b> . . . . .	106	Hypothalamus . . . . .	156
Nose . . . . .	108	Median Eminence . . . . .	156
Nasal Conchae and Meatus I . . . . .	110	Adenohypophysis . . . . .	158
Nasal Sinuses and Meatus II . . . . .	112	Epiphysis (Pineal Body) . . . . .	160
Posterior Nares (Choanae) and Soft Palate . . . . .	114	Adrenal (Suprarenal) Glands . . . . .	160
Larynx . . . . .	116	Adrenal Cortex . . . . .	162
Skeleton of the Larynx . . . . .	116	Adrenal Medulla . . . . .	164
Laryngeal Ligaments . . . . .	118	Paraganglia . . . . .	164
Muscles of the Larynx . . . . .	120	Thyroid Gland . . . . .	166
Mucous Membrane of the Larynx . . . . .	122	Parathyroid Glands . . . . .	168
Glottis, Phonation . . . . .	124	Islet Cell Organ of the Pancreas . . . . .	168
Position of the Larynx . . . . .	126	Gonads as Endocrine Glands . . . . .	170
Trachea and Bronchial Tree . . . . .	128	Ovary as an Endocrine Gland . . . . .	170
Lungs . . . . .	130	Testes as Endocrine Glands . . . . .	170
Root of the Lung and Base of the Heart . . . . .	132	System of Gastroenteropancreatic (GEP) Endocrine Cells . . . . .	172
Division of the Bronchi, the Lobes and Segments of the Lungs . . . . .	134	<b>Digestive System</b> . . . . .	174
Fine Structure of the Lung . . . . .	136	Role of the Foregut in the Digestive System . . . . .	174
Pleura . . . . .	138	Trunk Section of the Digestive System . . . . .	174
Borders of the Pleura and the Lung . . . . .	140	Oral Cavity . . . . .	176
Mechanics of Respiration . . . . .	142	Vestibule of the Oral Cavity . . . . .	176
Respiratory Dynamics . . . . .	144	Oral Cavity Proper . . . . .	178
Pathological Changes in Lung Dynamics . . . . .	144	Teeth . . . . .	180
		Structures Supporting the Teeth in Position . . . . .	182

Permanent Teeth . . . . .	184	Pancreas . . . . .	240
Milk Teeth . . . . .	184	Greater and Lesser Omentum . . . . .	242
Position of the Teeth Within the Dentition . . . . .	186	Blood Vessels and Lymphatics of the Upper Abdominal Organs . . . . .	242
Movement of the Dental Arches Against Each other (Articulation) . . . . .	188	Abdominal Cavity . . . . .	244
Movements in the Mandibular Joint . . . . .	188	Blood Vessels and Lymphatics of the Lower Abdominal Viscera . . . . .	246
Movements of the Tooth Inside the Alveolus . . . . .	188	Portal Vein . . . . .	250
Milk Teeth (Deciduous Teeth) . . . . .	190	<b>Urogenital System</b> . . . . .	252
Development of the Teeth 1 . . . . .	190	<b>Urinary Organs</b> . . . . .	252
Development of the Teeth 2 . . . . .	192	Kidneys . . . . .	254
Eruption of the Teeth 2 . . . . .	194	Section Through the Kidney . . . . .	256
Tongue . . . . .	194	Blood Vessels of the Kidney . . . . .	256
Palate . . . . .	198	Fine Structure of the Kidney . . . . .	258
Salivary Glands . . . . .	200	Organs of the Urinary Tract . . . . .	264
Large Salivary Glands . . . . .	200	Renal Pelvis . . . . .	264
Fine Structure of the Salivary Glands . . . . .	202	Ureter . . . . .	266
Pharynx (Throat) . . . . .	204	Urinary Bladder . . . . .	268
Deglutition (Swallowing) . . . . .	206	<b>Genital Organs</b> . . . . .	272
Esophagus . . . . .	208	Male Genital Organs . . . . .	274
Esophagus and the Posterior Mediastinum . . . . .	210	Testis and Epididymis . . . . .	274
Stomach . . . . .	212	Ductus Deferens . . . . .	280
Peritoneum . . . . .	212	Spermatic Cord, Scrotum and the Coverings of the Testis . . . . .	282
Muscle Layer of the Stomach . . . . .	214	Seminal Vesicles . . . . .	284
Gastric Mucosa . . . . .	216	Prostate . . . . .	284
Small Intestine . . . . .	218	Semen . . . . .	284
Duodenum . . . . .	218	Penis . . . . .	286
Jejunum and Ileum . . . . .	218	Male Urethra . . . . .	288
Mucosa of the Small Intestine . . . . .	220	Female Genital Organs . . . . .	290
Muscle Layer of the Small Intestine . . . . .	222	Ovary . . . . .	292
Large Intestine . . . . .	226	Fallopian Tube . . . . .	294
Cecum and the Ileocecal Valve (Colic Valve) . . . . .	228	Uterus . . . . .	296
Vermiform Appendix . . . . .	230	Vagina . . . . .	304
Rectum . . . . .	232	Blood Vessels of the Internal Genitalia in the Female . . . . .	304
Liver . . . . .	234	External Female Genitalia (the Vulva) and the Urethra . . . . .	306
Fine Structure of the Liver . . . . .	236	Pelvic Floor . . . . .	308
Bile Ducts and Gall Bladder . . . . .	238	Spaces of the Lesser Pelvis . . . . .	314
		Mitosis and Meiosis . . . . .	318
		Fertilization . . . . .	320

Pregnancy .....	322	Skin .....	338
Placenta .....	324	Layers of the Skin .....	340
Childbirth .....	326	Glands of the Skin .....	344
Fetal Circulation .....	332	Hair .....	346
Female Breast and Mammary Gland .....	334	Nails .....	348
Male Breast .....	334	Skin as a Sense Organ .....	348
Female Breast .....	336	References .....	350
		Index .....	357

## How to Use This Book

Each illustration is marked by a capital letter and the illustrations on each page have consecutive reference numbers. Duplicate pictures of the same structure or organ have the same number. References in the text to the illustrations show the corresponding letters and numbers. Thus, it is easy to refer from the picture to the corresponding text and from the text to look at the appropriate illustration.

Students can use the book as a synopsis and as an aid to recall facts acquired during lectures and courses in macroscopic and microscopic anatomy. In order to refresh the memory, e.g. when preparing for an examination, it is useful for two candidates to work together; one reads aloud a page of the text with its references and the other looks up the structures

indicated on the page of illustrations. Subsequently, students should exchange roles and go through the same part of the text again. In this way the information is taken in by both the eye and the ear and is repeated in a convenient fashion. An advantage of the concise text is that it refreshes the memory of facts acquired in regular courses. If particular topics are not recalled, or if any doubts arise during revision, the two candidates should discuss the subject in question and look it up in one of the larger text books (see the list of references at the end of the book). Despite its brevity this book contains a sufficient number of repetitions, as particularly important or complicated matters are often discussed again from another aspect on the same or a subsequent page.



## Viscera

The human viscera, organs on whose activities the life of the entire organism depends, lie within the neck, chest, abdomen and pelvis. From a functional point of view they can be classified into "systems": **circulatory system** (heart and blood vessels), **blood and defense systems** (blood, lymphatics, bone marrow) **endocrine system** (ductless glands and cells which produce hormones in the respiratory system, digestive system, and urogenital system), **respiratory system** (nose, airways, larynx and lungs), **digestive system** (mouth, esophagus, gastrointestinal tract, liver and pancreas), and **urogenital system** (urinary and genital or reproductive organs).

A Survey of viscera immediately adjacent to the anterior and posterior walls of the trunk. **Black**: organs of the circulatory system; **blue**: organs of the respiratory system; **red**: organs of the digestive systems; **yellow**: organs of the urogenital system.

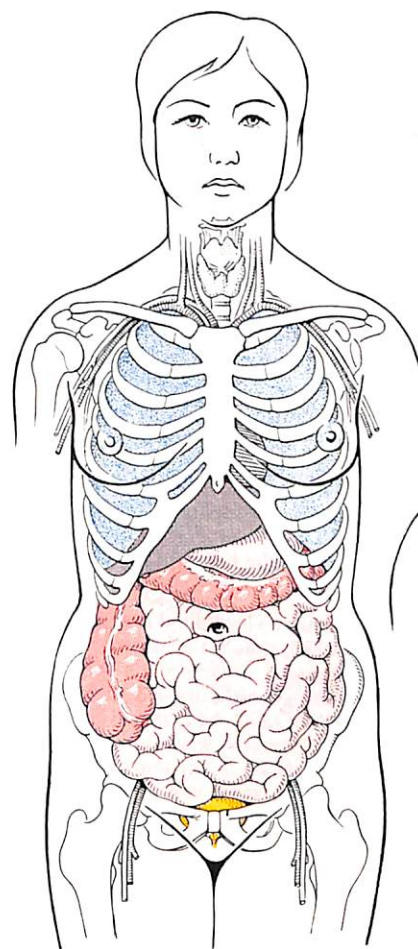
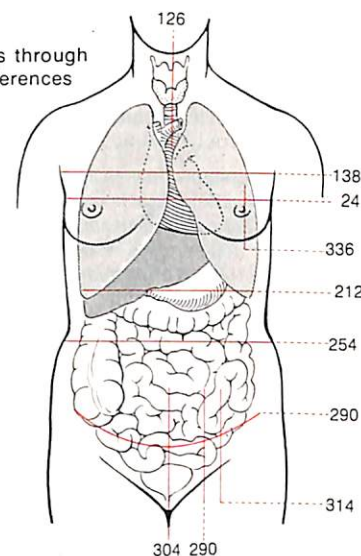
The following description of the viscera reviews their *macroscopic* structure, but their *microscopic* and *submicroscopic* (electron-microscopic) appearances are included, in so far as the details are essential for understanding the function of the organ. The local *topography* and interrelationships of the organs are demonstrated in illustrations of preparations and schematized sections through the body.

**B** Position of the schematized sections through the body (with reference to the page numbers).

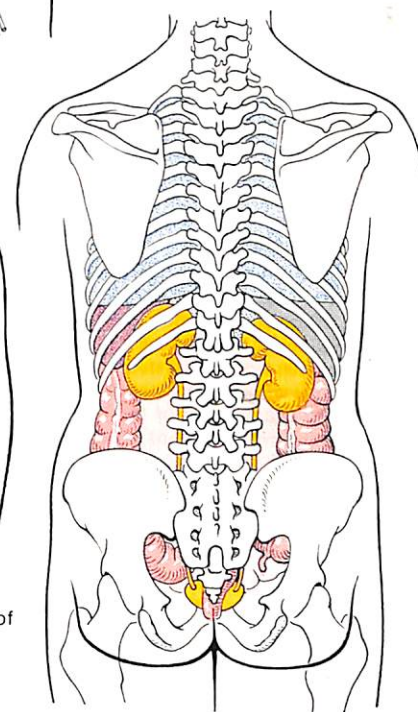
The skeleton and the muscles of the wall of the trunk, which also play a part in the functions of certain viscera (e.g., respiration) are discussed in Vol. 1. On the other hand, the floor of the pelvis, which completes the body wall at the pelvic outlet, can only be understood in relation to the viscera, because of its involvement in the arrangement of the sphincters. It is dis-

cussed in the appropriate sections of this volume. The *skin*, a multifunctional organ, is also described in this volume, even though it is not included amongst the viscera, and has vital sensory functions which are discussed in Vol. 3. The *nervous system*, i. e., brain, spinal cord, peripheral nerves and sense organs, originally regarded as belonging to the viscera, is contained in Vol. 3. The nervous system, together with the endocrine glands, has a great influence on coordinating the functions of the viscera. The systemic anatomical approach, which predominates in this atlas, makes it necessary to include with the viscera other visceral structures situated in the head, as well as the systematic arrangement of the blood and lymphatic vessels situated in the locomotor system. The topographic localization of the peripheral neurovascular pathways (vessels and nerves) is described in Vol. 1.

**B** Position of sections through body, with page references



**A** Organs in thorax and abdomen immediately adjacent to walls of trunk





## Circulatory System

The heart and the vessels are the organs of circulation. They contain blood (with the exception of lymphatic vessels).

**Circulatory systems.** In man and the higher mammals after birth it is possible to distinguish between the *greater (systemic) circulation*, that supplies blood to all the organs, and the *lesser (pulmonary) circulation*, which serves for the exchange of gases. Together they form a continuous circuit shaped like a figure 8. At its center is a suction and pressure pump, the heart.

**Arteries, capillaries, veins.** All vessels that carry blood away from the heart are called *arteries*, and all vessels which carry blood toward the heart are called *veins*. Between the arteries and the veins in the systemic and pulmonary circulations lies the *capillary network*. In the systemic circulation arteries carry blood that is rich in oxygen (oxygenated), and veins carry blood that is deficient in oxygen (deoxygenated). In the pulmonary circulation blood deficient in oxygen (deoxygenated) flows through the arteries into the lungs and blood rich in oxygen (oxygenated) passes through the veins to the heart. In the pulmonary circulation there is only one organ, the lungs, through which all the blood flows, and it is of uniform composition. In the systemic circulation there are various organs, e.g., the kidneys, intestines, endocrine glands, etc. The systemic blood flow can take different routes since the systemic circulation consists of numerous parallel sub-circuits. The composition of the venous blood in the individual organs varies.

It is important to remember that blood rich in oxygen is known as "arterial" (oxygenated) and blood deficient in oxygen is called "venous" (deoxygenated).

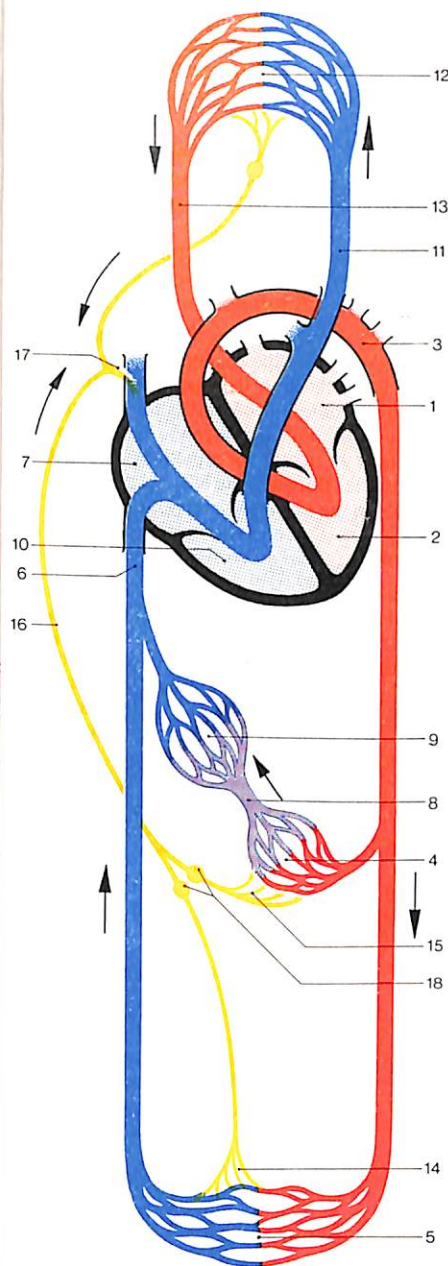
**Heart.** The heart is divided into *two parts*. Each part has an antechamber, the atrium, and a main chamber, the ventricle. The "right heart" (right atrium and ventricle) propels blood through the pul-

monary circulation, and the "left heart" (left atrium and ventricle) is responsible for flow through the systemic circulation.

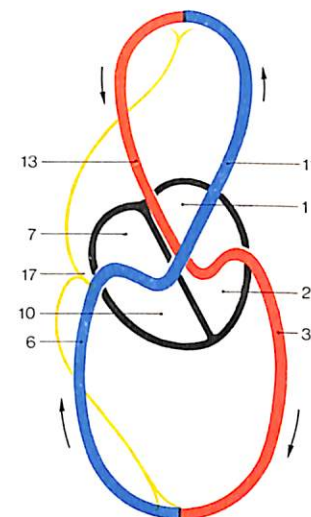
**The course of the blood.** The systemic circulation. The blood flows from the left atrium **AB1** into the left ventricle **AB2**, and thence via the main artery (*aorta* **AB3**) into the capillary networks of the intestines **A4** and **A5**. Blood flows from the legs and the lower half of the trunk via the *inferior vena cava* **AB6** into the right atrium **AB7**; it is returned from the head, arms and the upper half of the trunk via the *superior vena cava*. Deoxygenated blood passes from the intestine and the other unpaired abdominal viscera first into the *portal vein* **A8**, and finally it is returned again via the inferior vena cava into the right atrium. The capillary network of the liver **A9** is situated in the venous section of the stomach-intestine-spleen circuit (portal circulation).

**The pulmonary circulation:** Blood flows from the right atrium **AB7** into the right ventricle **AB10**, and then via the *pulmonary arteries* (the arteries of the lung) **AB11** into the capillary network of the lung **A12**, from where it flows back via the veins of the lungs (*pulmonary veins*) **AB13** into the left atrium.

**Lymphatics.** Tissue fluid in the capillary bed, which enters the tissues in connection with tissue nutrition, is partly drained via a special network of small **A14**, **A15** and large **A16** lymphatic vessels, which return it to the venous side of the systemic circulation **A17**. In the lymph vessels biological filters, lymph nodes **A18**, are interpolated.



A Organs of circulation (schematic)



B Pulmonary circulation. Systemic circulation (schematic)



## Heart

## Shape of the Heart

The heart can be compared to a rounded cone lying on its side. The apex – *apex cordis* – points forward toward the left and downward; the base – *basis cordis* – points backward toward the right and upward. The size of the heart is determined by the amount of work it has to perform, and is at least as big as the clenched fist of its possessor.

**Anterior surface, *facies sternocostalis*.** A shows the heart in its natural position. The pericardium which envelops the heart has been removed (AB1 shows the line where it has been cut). The anterior surface is mainly formed by the *right ventricle* AC2 to the right of which lies the *right atrium* ABC3 with the *superior vena cava* ABC4 and *inferior vena cava* ABC5. To the left it is flanked by the *left ventricle* ABC6. The pulmonary artery (the *pulmonary trunk*) AC7 emerges from the right ventricle. The *aortic arch* ABC8 lies across the bifurcation of the pulmonary artery. It gives off the large vessels to the head and arms (the *brachiocephalic* or *innominate artery* AB9, the *left common carotid artery* AB10, and *left subclavian artery* AB11). Between the pulmonary bifurcation and the aortic arch runs a ligament, the *ligamentum arteriosum* (*ligament of Botallo*) A12 (see p. 46). Each atrium has a pouch, the auricle. This helps to produce the rounding of the shape of the heart by filling in the niche between the great arteries and the base of the heart. The right auricle A13 is completely visible from the front, but only the apex of the left auricle A14 can be seen, because of the rotation of the heart to the left. A branch of the left coronary artery runs along the groove between the right and left ventricles – the *anterior interventricular sulcus* A15. The right coronary artery runs in a groove between the right atrium and right ventricle – the *coronary sulcus* A16. Both arteries, which are embedded in fatty tissue, supply blood to the heart muscle (myocardium).

**Base of the heart, *basis cordis*.** The posterior aspect, the base, shows the attach-

ments of the great veins. Its right half is occupied by the essentially vertical right atrium, its left half by the horizontal left atrium BC17 (see "Venous Cross," p. 22).

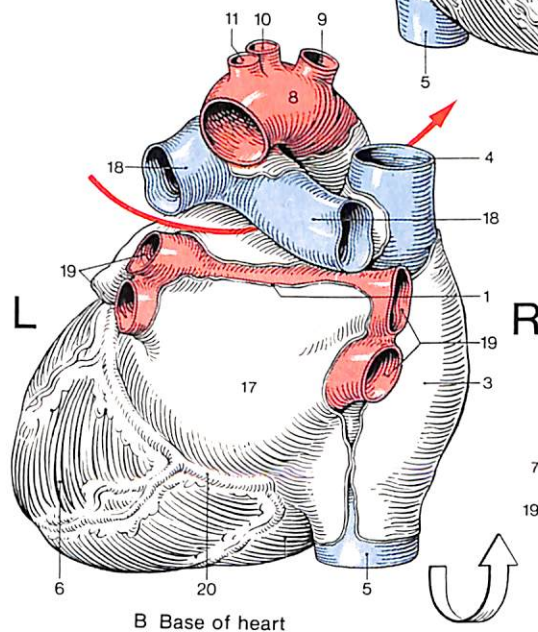
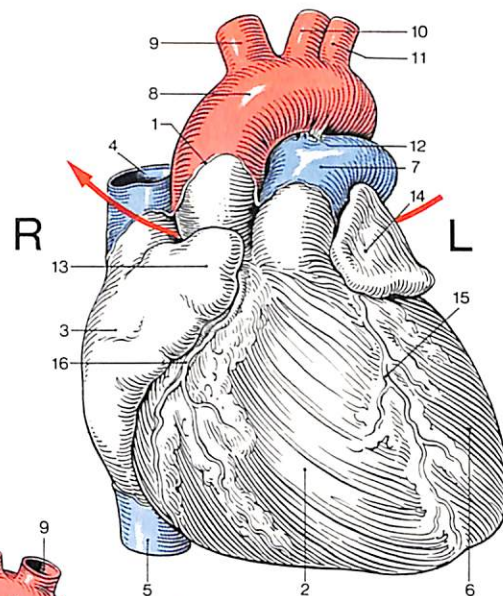
The pulmonary trunk divides into the *right and left pulmonary arteries* B18. The *pulmonary veins* BC19 open into the left atrium. The left coronary artery and a vessel for the venous return from the heart muscle, the *coronary sinus*, B20, pass in the left *coronary sulcus*.

**Lower surface, *facies diaphragmatica*.** The lower or diaphragmatic surface of the heart rests on the diaphragm. It becomes visible if the heart is turned from its normal position (arrow). The undersurface is mainly occupied by the left ventricle. Between the left and right ventricle in the *posterior interventricular sulcus*, runs the posterior interventricular branch of the right coronary artery C21.

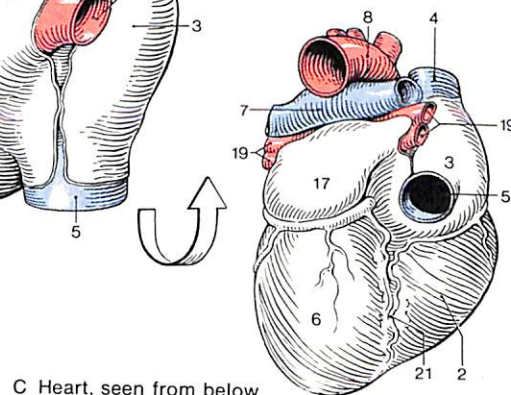
Beneath the perfectly smooth, shiny pericardial surface, the *epicardium*, which covers the heart muscle (see p. 22), are some areas of fatty tissue between the superficial muscle fascicles and coronary arteries and the myocardium ("building fat"). It helps to maintain the uniform rounded shape of the heart.

Since the heart borders the air-filled lungs on both sides, it is readily visible on X-ray (see p. 28).

A Heart, frontal aspect



B Base of heart



C Heart, seen from below



## Chambers of the Heart

The heart is cut open in two frontal planes, one behind the other; their position is marked in Fig. C. In **A** the anterior section passes through the right ventricle which lies furthest in front of the left rotation of the heart. The posterior section **B** has opened up both ventricles and atria.

**Atria.** The interior wall of the left **B1** and right **AB2** atria is mainly smooth. Only in the auricles **A2**, **A3** does the atrial muscle protrude in the shape of small, comb-like ridges, the *pectinati muscles*, as shown in **B** in a section through the atrial wall. The *right atrium*: the opening of the superior vena cava, *ostium venae cavae superioris* **AB4** widens as it passes into the atrium. The opening of the inferior vena cava, *ostium venae cavae inferioris* **AB5** is partly covered in front by a sickle-shaped ridge, the "valve" of the inferior vena cava (valve of Eustachius) **B6**. During fetal life this valve directs the blood towards the membranous interatrial septum which at that time has an opening leading into the left atrium, the *foramen ovale* (see p. 324). Below the valve the venous return from the heart muscle enters via the *coronary sinus* **B7**. It, too, is delimited by a semicircular ridge, the *valve of the coronary sinus* (*valvula of Thebesius*).

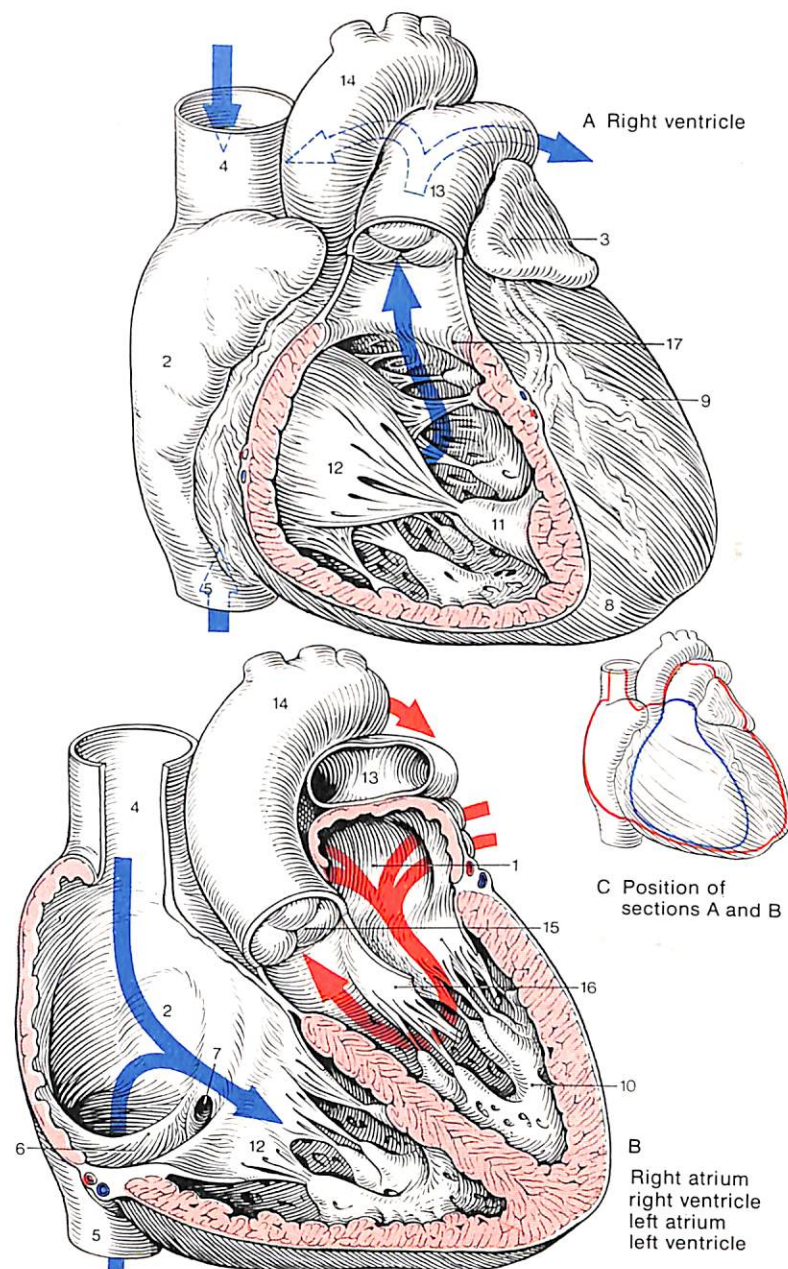
**Ventricles.** The interior wall of the right **A8** and left **A9** ventricles is very rugged, more so in the contracted (systole) than in the relaxed state of the heart (diastole). Strong muscular columns, the *trabeculae carneae cordis* **B10**, project from the muscle walls, some of which, the *papillaris muscles*, are particularly prominent. The papillaris anterior muscle of the right ventricle **A11** arises from the *septomarginal trabecula* and is called the "moderator band." It forms with the *supraventricular crest* (cut off in **A**) an opening leading into the outflow tract (arrow in **A**). The ventricular septum is predominantly muscle, but on top, at the atrioventricular border, there is a zone of connective tissue where congenital defects of the septum are most frequently located.

**Valves.** The atrioventricular orifice, *ostium atrioventriculare*, is closed by a cusped valve (atrioventricular valve) **AB12**. The outflow from each ventricle is also closed by a valve, that from the right ventricle into the *pulmonary trunk* **AB13** by the pulmonary valve, and that from the left ventricle into the *aorta* **AB14** by the semilunar aortic valve **B15**.

**Cusped valves:** The atrioventricular valve of the right heart consists of 3 cusps; it is the *tricuspid valve* **AB12**. The corresponding valve of the left heart is formed by 2 cusps: the *bicuspid "mitral"* (atrioventricular) valve **B16**. It resembles the bilobed miter of a bishop. The cusps arise from a fibrous ring, the "skeleton" of the heart, which separates the muscles of the atrium from those of the ventricle (visible in the sectioned heart **B**). They are attached to the tips of the papillary muscles by their tendons, the *chordae tendineae*.

**Semilunar valves:** At the root of the aorta and of the pulmonary trunk are semilunar valves, the *aortic valve* **B15** and the *pulmonary valve* (tip of the blue arrow pointing upwards towards **A13** in **A**). Each of the semilunar valves consists of 3 pockets with the base pointing towards the appropriate opening.

**Arrows:** Direction of flow of deoxygenated blood (blue) and oxygenated blood (red). Function of heart valves (see p. 11).





## Valves of the Heart

The *valves*, two cusped atrioventricular valves and two semilunar valves, lie in the same plane, the *valve plane AB*. They arise from the "*skeleton of the heart*," see p. 12.

**Cusped valves.** Each cusp (flap) **BC1** is a doubling up of the endocardium. The delicate tendinous cords, *chordae tendineae*, arise from the free margin of the cusp and from its lower surface. They extend for the most part to the papillaris muscles **C2** and hold the cusp in position to prevent it from flapping back into the atrium. During diastole (relaxation) of the ventricle the edges of the cusps move apart, and the valve opens **E**. When the pressure inside the ventricle increases (systole), the flaps spread out, approach each other and close the valve **D**; see Action of the Heart, p. 16.

*Clinical Tips.* After inflammation of the cusps, scars may form along the margins of the valve **F**. This may cause narrowing of the valve orifice, called *stenosis*. If the margins of the valve become contracted by scars and can no longer be closely approximated, "*incompetence*" (insufficiency) of the valve results. Valvular incompetence may also result from gross dilatation of the heart in cardiac failure (failure of the heart muscle). In this condition the papillaris muscles and the base of the valve become so far separated that closure of the valve is no longer possible.

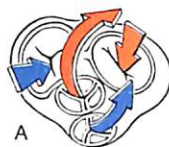
**Tricuspid valve (right atrioventricular valve) B3.** Of the three *cusps*, one is situated in front (anterior cusp), one behind (posterior cusp), and one in the middle (*septal cusp*). The anterior cusp is the largest; it is attached by the chordae tendineae to the powerful *papillaris anterior muscle* which arises from the *septomarginalis trabecula*. The posterior and the small septal cusps are anchored to smaller papillaris posterior muscles. The septal cusp partly covers the membranous part of the interventricular septum.

**Mitral (bicuspid) valve, valva atrioventricularis sinistra B1.** We distinguish an anteromedial and a posterolateral cusp, which are kept in position by chordae

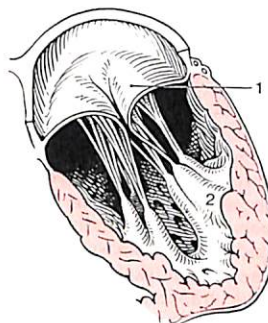
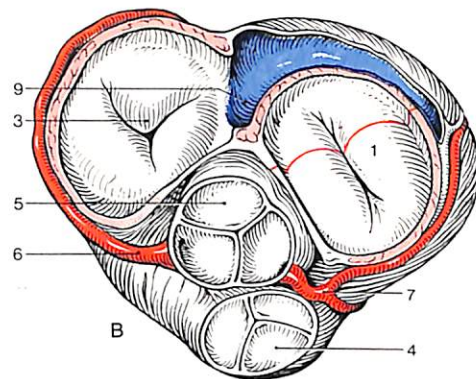
tendinae attached to anterior and posterior groups of papillaris muscles. The anterior cusp, which is attached to the wall of the aorta, separates the inflow from the outflow of the left ventricle.

**Semilunar valves.** The arterial valves consist of 3 semilunar cusps which are also duplicates of the endocardium: the *pulmonary valve B4* has anterior, right and left cusps; the *aortic valve B5, G* has posterior, right and left cusps. The right **BG6** and left **BG7** coronary arteries arise in the depth of the right and left aortic sinuses formed by the cusps of the aortic semilunar valve. At the level of the semilunar valves the vessel wall bulges outward, *sinus of the aorta*, and the transverse diameter of the vessel is enlarged forming the *bulb of the aorta*. There is a nodular thickening at the center of the free edge of each cusp **H8**, the *nodule*, and on both sides of the nodule the edges of the cusps are thinned forming the *lunula* (half moons). During systole (contraction) of the ventricle the edges of the cusps lie apart from each other **K**, but because of turbulence formation within the sinuses, they do not become flattened against the vessel wall. When the pressure inside the artery exceeds that in the ventricle (during diastole) the cusps spread out to close the valve **I**. The nodules at the valve edges help to ensure tight closure; see Action of the Heart, p. 16. **B9** Coronary sinus.

*Clinical Tips.* After inflammation of the valves, *stenosis* or *insufficiency* of the heart may occur, **L**.



Valves of heart, seen from above



D Closed

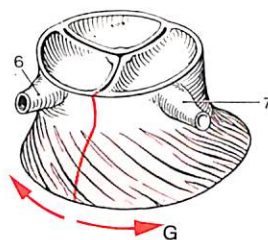


E Open

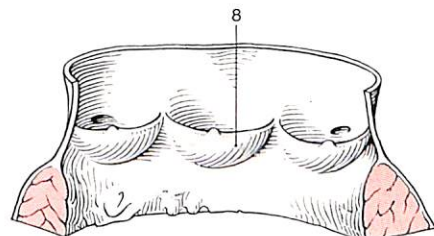


F Pathologically deformed

C Mitral valve (left atrio-ventricular valve)



I Closed



Semilunar valve (aortic or pulmonary valve)

H



K Open



L Pathologically deformed



## Cardiac Muscle

The wall of the heart consists of three layers: the *endocardium* (inner lining), *myocardium* (heart muscle) and *epicardium* (the outer fibrous connective tissue layer covering the heart). The thickness of the wall of the heart depends mainly on the myocardium. It is covered inside and outside by endocardium and epicardium as thin, smooth, skinlike layers. The degree to which the muscles of the various parts of the heart are developed depends on the amount of work they are made to perform – the walls of the atria are a thin, relatively weak muscle; the muscle of the right ventricle (pulmonary circulation) is thinner than that of the left (systemic circulation).

During fetal life, when the placenta is incorporated into the systemic circulation (see p. 324), the weight of the heart is about 0.6% of the body weight as against 0.4–0.5% during life after birth.

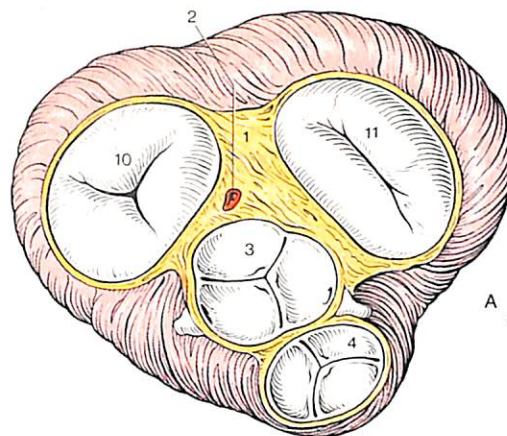
**Clinical Tips.** In stenosis or insufficiency of an arterial valve, or of the mitral (bicuspid) valve, the ventricle that pumps the blood through that valve becomes hypertrophied due to its increased workload, and this can be seen on a radiograph.

**Cardiac skeleton.** The muscles of the atria are completely separated from the muscle of the ventricles by dense connective tissue, the *skeleton of the heart* **A1**. The latter is bridged only by the *impulse-conducting atrioventricular bundle (bundle of His)* **A2** (see p. 18). The cardiac skeleton serves as the place of origin and the area of attachment for the muscle of the atria and the ventricles. It is mainly formed by two rings of fibrous tissue, *annuli fibrosi*, from which the atrioventricular valves arise. They are connected to the adventitial fibrous structures of the aorta **AB3** and the pulmonary trunk **AB4**. The cardiac skeleton lies in the valve plane; it is marked on the outer cardiac surface by the *coronary groove* (see p. 6). At the borders between the annuli fibrosi and the adventitial connective tissue of the aorta arise very coarse connective tissue wedges, *trigona fibrosa*.

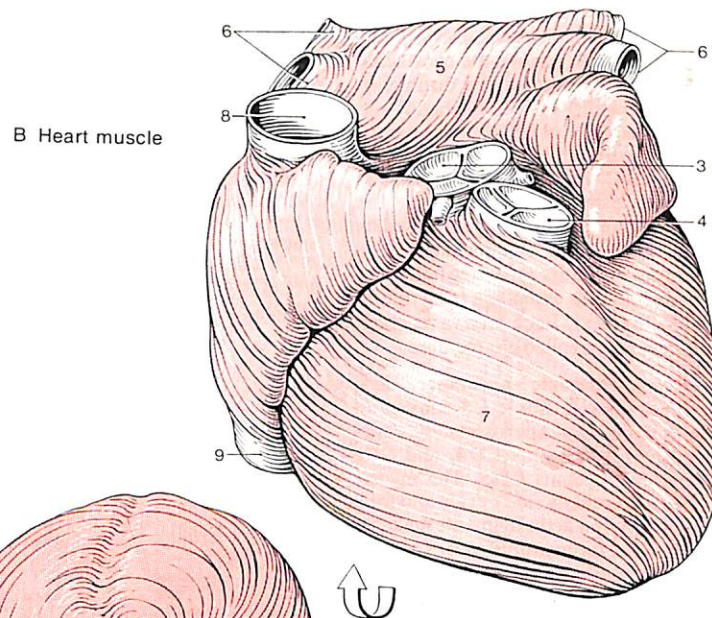
**Muscles of the atria.** The muscles of the atria extend partly as an arc from front to back **B5**, and partly diagonally across from one side of the atrium, to the other. At the exits of the great vessels **B6**, annular and looped muscle bundles, are formed, which follow the vessel orifices to the start of the pericardium. The muscle fibers are partly attached to the cardiac skeleton.

**Muscles of the ventricles.** Like other hollow organs, each ventricle is made up of an external layer of longitudinal fibers, a middle layer of circular and an internal layer of longitudinal fibers. The outermost muscle fibers (muscle tracts) of the longitudinal layer together surround the two ventricles **B7**. The longitudinal fibers arise from the cardiac skeleton, mainly from the fibrous trigones. They run anticlockwise in spirals toward the apex of the ventricle where individual fiber bundles enter the circular layer. Many muscle tracts go to the apex of the heart, where they form a whorl, the *vortex of the heart*, **C**. From this, as well as from the circular layer of fibers, some longitudinal fibers segregate and return clockwise in steep spirals to the cardiac skeleton. Among them are the *trabeculae carneae* and papillary muscles. The left ventricle and the outflow tracts of both chambers are surrounded by strong circular fibers. As seen in slow motion pictures, the inflow and outflow tracts contract one after the other.

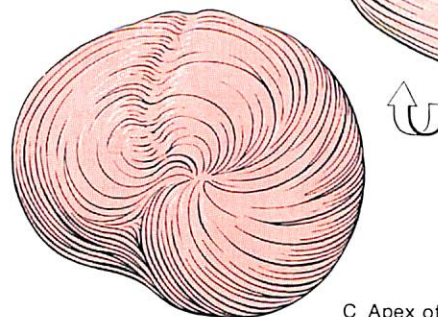
**B6** Pulmonary veins, **B8** superior vena cava, **B9** inferior vena cava, **A10** tricuspid valve, **A11** bicuspid valve.



A Cardiac skeleton.  
Origin of heart valves



B Heart muscle



C Apex of heart, from below



## Cardiac Muscle

*A. van Leeuwenhoek*, in 1692, was the first to describe the heart muscle as a lattice with slitlike interspaces. The lattice consists of single striated muscle cells joined end-on to each other. Cardiac muscle tissue is a special form of striated muscle (see *Skeletal Muscles*, Vol. 1). The striations of heart muscle correspond on the whole to those of skeletal muscle. See *A*.

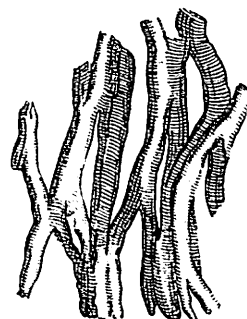
**Light-microscopic appearance.** The oval, almost quadrangular cell nucleus *B1* lies in the center of the muscle cell. The cell boundaries between neighboring cells are short lines, the *intercalated disks* *B2*. Connective tissue surrounds the muscle cell. Under higher magnification the striations can be seen, even in unstained preparations. They are mainly bound up with the 0.5–1  $\mu\text{m}$  thick *myofibrils* (muscle fibrils), which have been drawn greatly magnified in *B*, (right), the contractile elements of the muscle. We distinguish the light *I-band* (*I* = isotropic band) and dark *A-band* (*A* = anisotropic band). Within the *I-band* is the *Z-band* (intermediate disk) which traverses the muscle cell, and within the *A-band* there is the *H-zone* (bright, *Hensen zone*) crossed by a fine dark *M-line* (middle line). The bands form a regular repeating pattern of periodic intervals extending from one *Z-band* to the next. Each interval is about 2  $\mu\text{m}$  long and is called a sarcomere.

**Electron-microscopic appearance.** Each myofibril (muscle fibril) *C3* consists of *muscle filaments* – approximately 12 nm thick *myosin* filaments *CD4*, and 6 nm thick *actin* filaments *CD5*. The myosin filaments lie exactly side by side and form the *A-band*, the actin filaments make up the *I-band* of the myofibril in *B*. The actin filaments penetrate into the interspaces between the myosin filaments, but do not reach the actin filaments which intrude beyond the *A-band*. The *H-zone* in *B* is free of them. The *M-band* in *B* is formed by a protein network between the filaments *C6*. The *plasmalemma* (cell membrane) *C7* is covered by a basement membrane *C8* and with it forms periodically recurring folds *C9* transverse to the

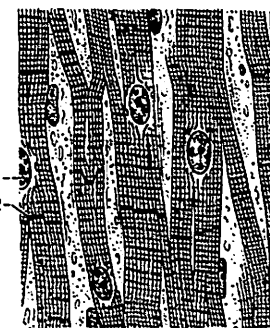
course of the filaments. At the crest of each fold the actin filaments of neighboring sarcomeres join in such a way that each actin filament of one sarcomere is connected with several filaments of the next sarcomere *CD10*. These bonds and the pleats in the plasmalemma form the *Z-line* in *B*. The plasmalemmas of adjacent muscle cells form cell contacts *C11*, amongst which there are regular gap junctions (nexus) *C12*, which serve to spread excitatory stimuli. Together with the attachment of the actin filaments, they form the *intercalated disks*, the light bands in *B*. Myofibrils do not cross the intercellular space.

*C13* glycogen, *C14* mitochondrion, *C15* smooth endoplasmic reticulum.

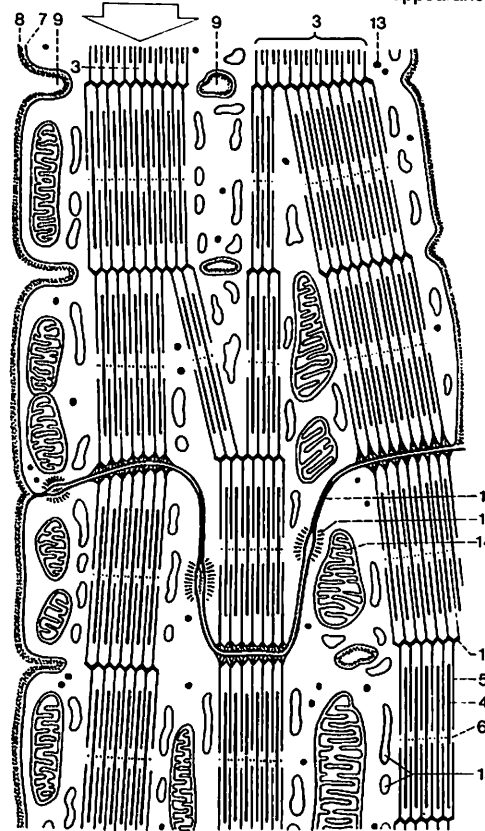
**Muscle contraction.** During *isotonic* contraction (shortening of a muscle while its tone remains unchanged), which is initiated by ATP (adenosine triphosphate), the actin filaments *CD5* slide deeper between the myosin fibrils *CD4*. This causes the *H-band* to disappear, the *I-bands* grow extremely fine and the *A-band* becomes approximated to the *Z-band* *CD10*, see *D*. In extreme contraction the actin filaments may overlap or even fold over each other to form a contraction band within the *H-band* (*Huxley's sliding model*). During this process ATP is reduced to ADP (adenosine diphosphate).



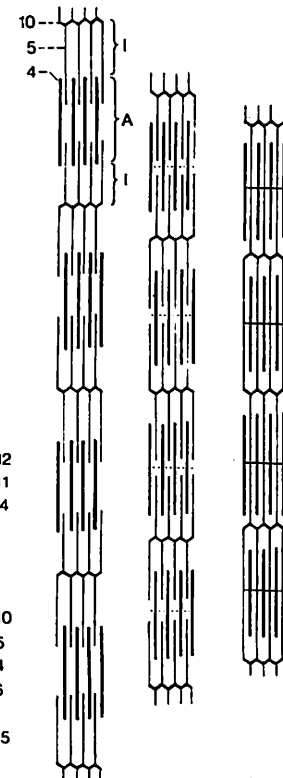
*A* Heart muscle, seen through magnifying glass (after van Leeuwenhoek 1694)



*B* Heart muscle, light-microscopic appearance



*C* Electron-microscopic appearance



*D* Shortening of actomyosin filaments

## Action of the Heart

The ventricles pump the blood rhythmically into the aorta and pulmonary trunk. As they act synchronously and in a comparable manner, examination of one half of the heart in **AB** provides us with information about the functioning of the heart. The heart functions continuously during life in a repetitive, two-phase cardiac cycle: the blood-filled ventricle is emptied by contraction (*systole*), after which it becomes filled again during relaxation (*diastole*).

**Heart cycle. Systole:** At the beginning of systole contraction of the cardiac muscle causes a steep rise in pressure inside the chamber. The atrioventricular and aortic valves close while the volume of the chamber remains unchanged (isovolumetric contraction = *contraction time*). When the intraventricular pressure equals the blood pressure in the aorta, the aortic valve opens and the blood pressure rises further (in the aorta to about 120 mmHg, in the pulmonary trunk to about 20 mmHg). The muscles of the ventricle contract, the volume of the ventricle diminishes **B1** and about 70 ml of blood, the *cardiac output*, is ejected into the aorta **B2**. As a result, the intraventricular pressure falls below that of the aorta and the *aortic valve closes*. The chamber acts as a pressure pump.

**Diastole:** Relaxation of the heart muscle follows, while initially the atrioventricular valve remains closed. The volume of the ventricular cavity remains unchanged (isovolumetric relaxation = *relaxation time*) and the residual content of the

chamber stays at about 70 ml of blood, the *residual volume*. As soon as the intraventricular pressure drops below the blood pressure in the atrium, the atrioventricular valve opens. Blood now flows from the atrium into the ventricle **A1** = *filling time*. The forces active in this process are the suction effect of the relaxation of the elastic chamber wall and systole of the atrium. The latter starts towards the end of the filling time and ceases as ventricular systole begins, see **AB3, C**.

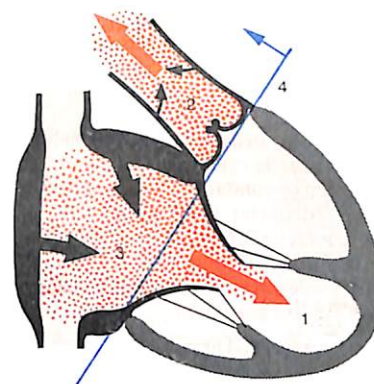
**Valve plane.** During output time the direction of the valve changes toward the apex of the heart **B4**, and during filling time it returns again towards the base of the heart **A4**. The displacement of the valve plane contributes to enlargement of the atrium **B3**. It has a suction effect on the venous blood in the caval veins and together with other factors accelerates the venous return to the heart. During this phase the heart acts as a suction pump.

**Timing.** For the time taken by systole and diastole of the atrium and ventricle during a cardiac cycle, at a pulse rate of 75/min, see diagram **C**. The 8 segments of the circle correspond to a duration of 0.8 s.

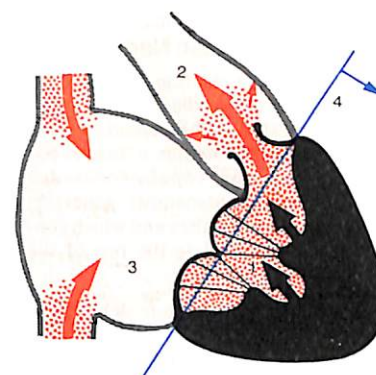
Cross-section through the right **E5** and left **E6** ventricle in systole; **D5, 6** in diastole. **DE7** is the anterior interventricular sulcus (groove).

	Contraction time
Systole	
	Output time
Cardiac Cycle	
	Relaxation time
Diastole	
	Filling time

	Atrioventricular Valve	Aortic Valve
Contraction time	closed	closed
Output time	closed	open
Relaxation time	closed	closed
Filling time	open	closed

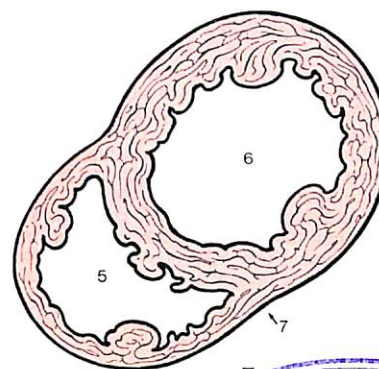
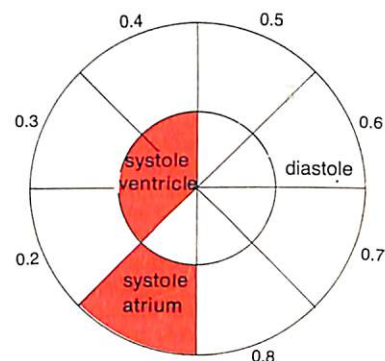


A Diastole (schematic)

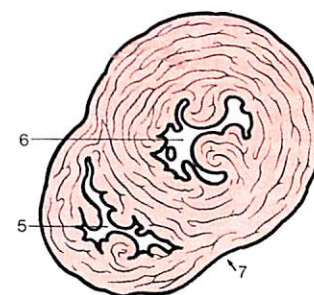


B Systole (schematic)

C Atrioventricular systole (scheme of temporal sequence [after Faller])



D Diastole



E Systole

Transverse section through ventricles





### Intrinsic Impulse-Conducting System and Cardiac Nerves

The stimuli which result in systole, i. e., contraction of the cardiac muscle, originate in the heart itself – *automatism of the heart*. The heart contains a specialized muscle tissue, the *impulse-conducting system*, which spontaneously generates rhythmical local impulses and which conducts them to stimulate the rest of the heart muscle to contract.

**Sinus node, sinuatrial node A1** (*Keith-Flack node*) (the pacemaker) is a network of muscle cells, in all about 2.5 cm long and 0.2 cm wide. It lies at the anterior margin of the orifice of the superior vena cava and radiates into the working muscle of the right atrium, from which the impulse reaches the **atrioventricular node A2** (*Aschoff-Tawara node*), situated in the right atrium near the orifice of the coronary sinus. The atrioventricular node continues into the *trunk of the bundle of His* (*truncus fasciculi atrioventricularis*) which pierces the cardiac skeleton (see p. 12). At the upper margin of the muscular part of the interventricular septum the trunk divides into two *branches*. These run along each side of the septum beneath the endocardium to the base of the papillaris muscles. The left branch **A3** fans out **A4**, the right branch **A5** runs mainly across the moderator band (see p. 8) to the papillaris anterior muscle **A6**. The terminal fibers of the **bundles of His**, called **Purkinje fibers**, merge with the cardiac muscles.

Impulses can originate from any part of the impulse-conducting system. The spontaneous *impulse frequency of the sinus node* (about 70/min, *sinus rhythm*) is, however, greater than that of the *atrioventricular node* (about 50–60/min, *AV rhythm*), or that of the *bundle of His* (about 45–25/min, *ventricular rhythm*). As a rule, therefore, the heart works in a coordinated manner determined by the sinus node (pacemaker), because the subsequent centers remain silent.

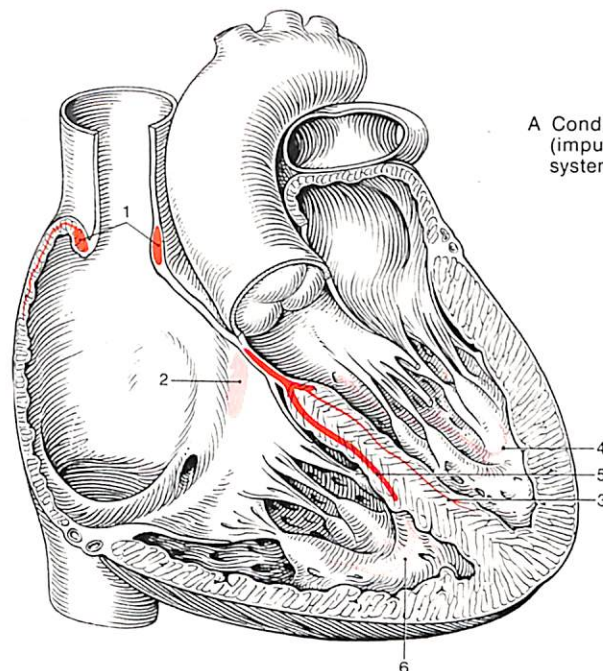
The *electrocardiogram* (ECG) is a recording of potential changes in the electrical field of the heart. Blocking the sinus node or *bundle of His* makes the subsequent ventricular rhythm slower.

**Microscopic structure.** The specialized cardiac muscle cells **B5**, which make up the impulse-conducting system, have a greater diameter than the cells of the active muscles **B7**, and they contain more fluid and fewer fibrils. They are also able to generate energy by anaerobic metabolism. **B8** Endocardium.

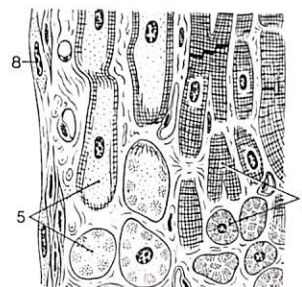
**Cardiac nerves.** The nerves to the heart serve to adapt the automatic activity of the heart to the requirements of the body (see Vol. 3). Excitation of the cardiac branches of *sympathetic nerves* increases stroke volume, the speed of conduction of stimuli, cardiac excitability and pulse frequency. The cardiac branches of the *vagus nerve* (parasympathetic) have the opposite effect.

Both these nervous pathways also contain afferent (sensory) fibers along which, among other messages, pass, e.g., pain stimuli (angina pectoris) via the sympathetic system, and stimuli from dilatation receptors via the parasympathetic system. The efferent sympathetic nerves contain mainly postganglionic neurons, the parasympathetic (vagus) nerve branches mainly preganglionic ones. The postganglionic nerve cells, red dots in **C**, lie partly in the walls of the atria beneath the epicardium, and their nerve fibers run to the impulse-conducting system.

**Endocrine cardiac function.** The atria, which are sensitive to dilatation, contain endocrine heart-muscle cells that form *cardiodilatin*, a natriuretic peptide hormone, in secretion granules. *Cardiodilatin* serves to control blood pressure and volume, as it acts on vascular muscle as a relaxant and stimulates sodium excretion. The corresponding stimulus that releases this hormone is atrial dilatation. The hormone has also been shown to be present as a *neuropeptide* in the hypothalamus and in the *gonadotropic cells* of the *adenohypophysis*, as well as in the *adrenal glands*.

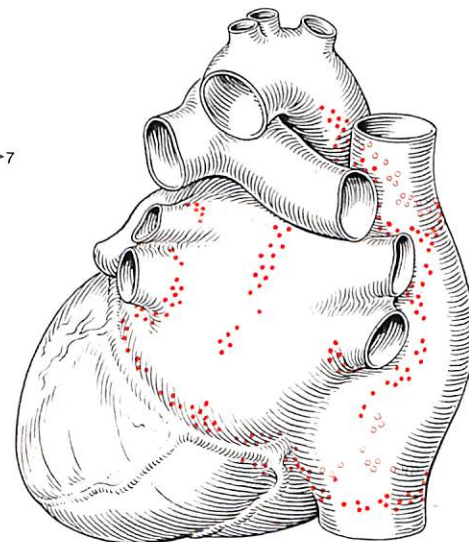


A Conduction of stimuli (impulse-conducting system)



B Impulse-conducting modified cardiac muscle fibers, light-microscopic appearance

C Distribution of parasympathetic ganglia (red circles and dots) at base of heart





### Coronary Vessels

About 5–10% of the total volume of each beat is required solely for supply to the heart muscle. The blood vessels which supply the myocardium, the coronary vessels, form a partial circuit of the systemic circulation, the “*vasa privata*” of the heart in contrast to the “*vasa publica*” of the systemic circulation.

**Coronary arteries.** The *right* and *left coronary arteries* (arteria coronaria dextra et sinistra) arise in the depths of the right and left pouches of the aortic valve **A1**, from a bulge in the aortic wall, the **aortic sinus** (sinus aortae). They surround the heart in the coronary groove on each side of its lower surface. After a short course the left coronary artery **A2** divides into an *anterior ventricular branch* **A3**, which runs in the anterior interventricular sulcus, and a *circumflex branch* **A6** which runs in the coronary sulcus. The right coronary artery **A4** ends in its *posterior interventricular branch* **A5** which runs in the posterior interventricular sulcus. The vessels enter the myocardium from the outside. Anastomoses between the arteries (interarterial connections) are inadequate to form a collateral circulation in case of occlusion of an artery and as a consequence “death” of part of the heart (cardiac infarct) results.

**Cardiac veins.** Most of the veins in the heart wall also pass to the surface of the cardiac muscle – the *great cardiac vein* **A6**, the *posterior vein of the left ventricle*, the *middle cardiac vein* and **A7** the *small cardiac vein*. They run toward the *coronary sinus* **A8** in the left atrioventricular groove at the back. The coronary sinus ends in the right atrium. Smaller veins run directly from the cardiac wall into the right atrium.

**Variants of the coronary arteries:** The formation and distribution of the coronary arteries varies.

**Formation:** In about 38% of cases additional branches arise from the aorta. In less than 1% of cases the heart is supplied by one coronary artery from the aorta.

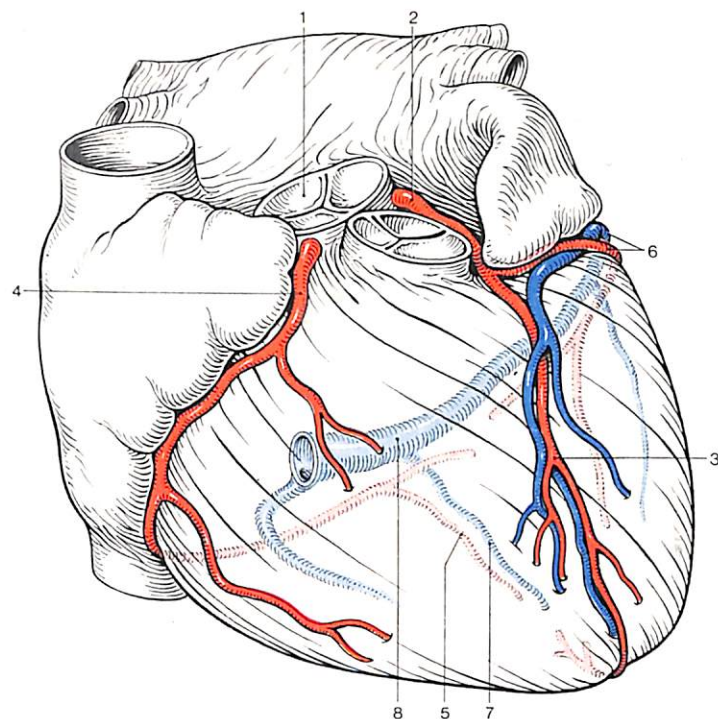
One or both coronary arteries arise from the pulmonary trunk in 1% of cases, and in the latter case life is not possible.

**Distribution of coronary artery blood.** Three transverse sections through both ventricles show the difference in the areas supplied by the *right* (red) and *left* (white) coronary arteries: **B** balanced type, **C** preponderance of the left, **D** preponderance of the right coronary artery.

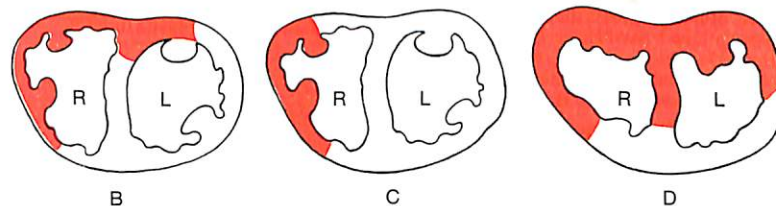
**Mechanism of blood flow in the myocardium.** Blood flow through the *coronary arteries* is influenced by myocardial compression in systole and by pulsatile variations. The blood supply to the myocardium is diminished during the ventricular systole and increased during ventricular diastole. During systole the *coronary veins* are compressed. A falling oxygen tension in heart muscle plays a decisive role as a chemical factor in adaptation of the blood flow to an increased workload on the heart.

**Clinical Tips.** If the branches of the coronary arteries are narrowed, e.g., by atherosclerosis, inadequate amounts of oxygen are supplied to the affected part of the heart muscle and it will die (cardiac infarct). In much rarer instances occlusion of the vessel may be due to a blood clot or *embolus*. For hemodynamic reasons such an embolus must originate somewhere between the pulmonary circulation and the capillary bed of the coronary vessels, usually it comes from inflamed endocardium or a damaged heart valve.

**Lymph vessels** carry lymph from the endocardium, myocardium and epicardium to lymph nodes at the bifurcation of the trachea (see p. 80).



A Coronary vessels



Variability of areas supplied by coronary arteries (after Töndury)



### Serous Cavities

Viscera which undergo marked changes in size and/or position in relation to neighboring organs, the heart, lungs, the major part of the gastrointestinal tract etc., lie in serous cavities: the **pericardial**, **pleural**, and **peritoneal cavities**.

A serous cavity is a capillary cavity closed on all sides. It is covered by a shiny, smooth serous layer, the "serosa," and contains a small amount of serous fluid. The serous membrane covers the organs with the **visceral serosa** and the wall of the serous cavity with the **parietal serosa**. The two layers merge at reflections, e.g., at the pedicle of an organ.

**Clinical Tips.** A pathological increase in the volume of serous fluid constitutes an effusion of exudate. It may eventually be followed by fusion of the two layers of serosa if they form adhesions.

### Pericardium

The **epicardium A1** is the *visceral layer* (*pericardium serosum, lamina visceralis*). It covers the myocardium, coronary vessels and the permanent fat on the surface of the heart. The line of reflexion runs behind and over the base of the heart, several centimeters up on the wall of the aorta **AB2**, pulmonary trunk **B3** and superior vena cava **AB4**, but closer to the heart on the wall of the inferior vena cava **B5** and the pulmonary veins **B6**.

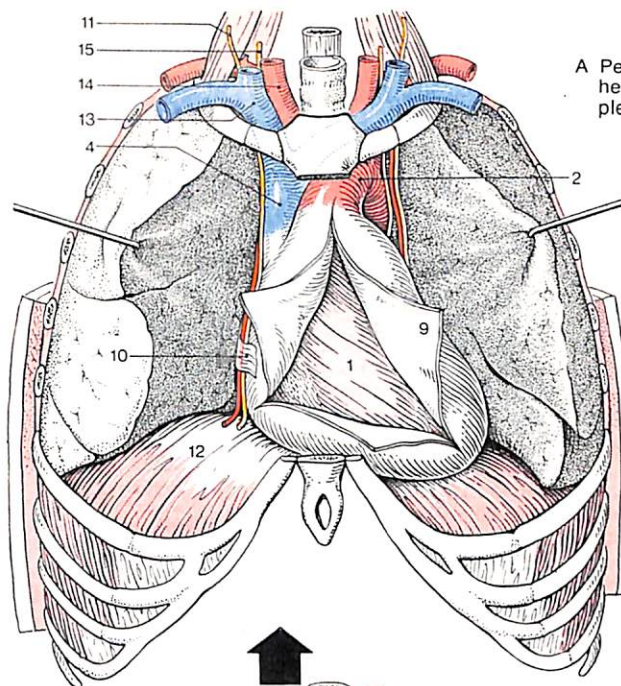
**Embryology.** The venous and arterial inflows to the heart come together only in the course of development, and accordingly the lines of serosal reflection on the two main arteries and veins are not connected with each other. Between them is a pericardial passage, the *transverse pericardial sinus*, arrow **B7**. The epicardial reflections which cover the veins form a niche, the *oblique pericardial sinus*, arrow **B8**.

The **pericardium AB9** is the *parietal layer* (*pericardium serosum, lamina parietalis*). Its internal structure resembles that of the epicardium, but externally it is reinforced by a layer of tough, criss-cross collagen fibers (*pericardium fibrosum*), which make it relatively inelastic, and therefore the pericardium helps to coun-

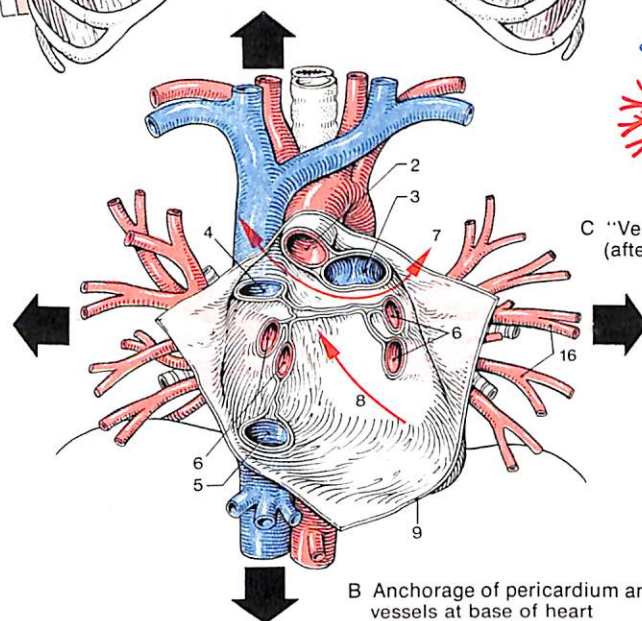
teract any overstretching of the myocardium. However, perforating injuries of the heart will result in *cardiac tamponade*, i. e., blood which flows into the pericardium will compress the heart. At the anterior edge of the diaphragmatic surface and around the inferior vena cava the pericardium fuses with the central fibrous tendon of the diaphragm. Fiber strands from the pericardium accompany the great vessels and participate in the stabilization of the base of the heart in the venous cross (broad black arrows in **B**), trachea and diaphragm.

**Pleuropericardial membrane** is a term often used for the tissue layer consisting of the pericardium and mediastinal pleura. The pericardium is covered on both sides by the parietal pleura (see p. 138) of which a remnant is preserved in **A10**. Between the two parietal serous membranes, pericardium and pleura, run the mainly motor (efferent) *phrenic nerve A11*, the *pericardiophrenic artery and vein to the diaphragm A12*; on the right along the superior vena cava **A4** and the right atrium, and on the left behind the lateral margin of the left ventricle. The nerve and vessels supply the pericardium, amongst other structures. **A13** Brachiocephalic vein; **A14** brachiocephalic trunk; **A15** vagus nerve.

**Venous cross.** The great veins stabilize the base of the heart by a cruciform anchorage in the body (**B** broad black arrows, **C**). The *superior vena cava AB4* is anchored in the fascia of the neck, base of the skull and arms, the *inferior vena cava B5* in the liver and the *pulmonary veins B6, 16* in the elastic lungs.



A Pericardium and heart between pleural cavities



B Anchorage of pericardium and great vessels at base of heart



C "Venous cross" (after Benninghoff)



## Position of the Heart I

**Cardiac borders.** The cardiac borders vary even in healthy individuals, depending on age, posture, pregnancy, etc.; the following data are average values.

The cardiac outline can be projected on the anterior surface of the trunk in the following manner (see radiograph, p. 28): the *right border* extends from the sternal junction of the 3rd rib to the junction of the 6th rib parallel to the right sternal margin and about 2 cm from it. The *left border* lies approximately along a straight line extending from a point 2 cm to the left of the sternal junction of the 3rd rib to a point in the 5th left intercostal space, 2 cm inside the mid-clavicular line **A1**. The *apex of the heart* in the adult lies at this point, but that of a child lies one interspace higher, as can be shown by the palpable lifting of the apex against the chest wall in systole. The interpleural space (*recessus costomediastinalis*) **A2** is interpolated on both sides in front of the pericardium. The lungs extend into it, more during inspiration than expiration, and cover the lateral parts of the heart. From the sternal junction of the 4th rib downward the left pleural margin leaves a lower triangular portion of the pericardium uncovered. Above the attachment of the third rib the pleura separate toward the apices of the lungs and leave a superior triangular retro-sternal zone uncovered, the "thymic triangle" in which lies the *thymus* and the thymus remnants which cover the large vessels.

*Right lung:* **AB3** lower lobe, **AB4** middle lobe, **AB5** upper lobe. *Left lung:* **AB3** lower lobe, **AB5** upper lobe, **AB6** costodiaphragmatic recess, **A7** liver.

**Mediastinum.** The visceral space in the neck, which lies between the middle and deep layers of the cervical fascia (see p. 126), is continuous through the upper thoracic opening with the *mediastinum*, the central connective tissue space of the chest **B**. The mediastinum extends from the back of the sternum to the anterior surface of the thoracic vertebral column. On both sides it is bounded by the

mediastinal pleura (parietal pleura) and below by the diaphragm. The mediastinum is divided into the upper and lower mediastinum, and the latter is divided into the posterior, middle and anterior mediastinum.

The *upper mediastinum* extends from the superior thoracic outlet to a horizontal plane above the heart. The posterior, middle and anterior mediastina lie below this plane. The upper mediastinum contains nerve trunks entering and leaving the posterior mediastinum. It also contains a discrete organ, the thymus.

The *posterior mediastinum* extends between the thoracic vertebral spine and the posterior pericardium. Axially it contains large nerve trunks and tubular organs, which generally pass straight through it.

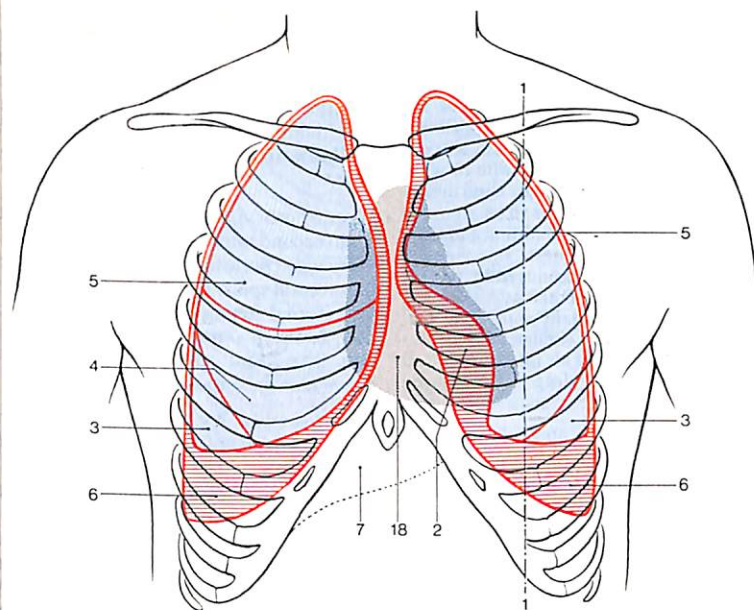
The esophagus **B8** passes through the *posterior mediastinum* with the vagal trunks, which lie in front of and behind it. Descending aorta **B9**, thoracic duct **B10**, azygos vein **B11** and hemiazygos vein **B12**. The sympathetic trunk **B13** lies lateral to the vertebral column, in front of the heads of the ribs.

The border **B14** between the posterior and middle mediastinum lies in the frontal plane anterior to the bifurcation of the trachea, approximately at the level of the hilum of the lung **B15**.

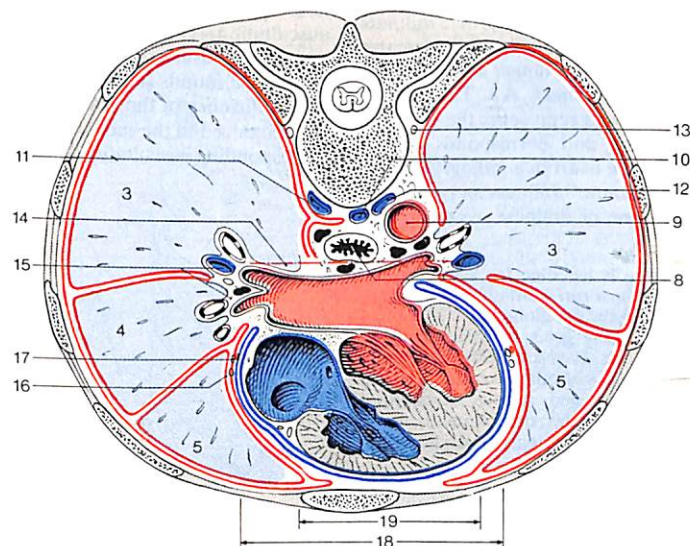
The *middle mediastinum* contains the heart in its pericardial sac. The mediastinal pleura **B16** lies over the pericardium, and between the two on both sides run the phrenic nerve and the pericardiophrenic artery and vein **B17**.

The *anterior mediastinum* is the cleft-shaped connective tissue space in front of the heart, between the pericardium and the chest wall.

**B18** Projection of the entire width of the heart, which is covered laterally by the lungs (see *Area of relative cardiac dullness*, p. 26); **B19** projection of the chest wall of the cardiac area not covered by the lungs (see *Area of absolute cardiac dullness*, p. 26).



A Projection of borders of heart, pleura and lungs on thorax



B Horizontal section through thorax at level of 8th thoracic vertebra



## Position of the Heart II

## Auscultation and Percussion

**Percussion** is tapping of the body surface so that conclusions can be drawn about the condition of underlying parts from variation in the sounds produced. Percussion is usually carried out with one finger, with or without putting a finger of the other hand underneath the percussing finger. The sound is judged by its force, pitch, duration and tonal nature (tympany). Dullness, i. e., a dull sound resembling that produced by percussing the thigh, is represented by a soft, high pitched sound. A resonant sound, like that found over the lungs, similar to that produced by percussing an air filled cushion, is represented by a loud, deep and prolonged sound.

**Percussion.** Absolute and relative areas of cardiac dullness. In part, the heart lies immediately behind the anterior chest wall, and percussion of this region reveals the area of "absolute" cardiac dullness **A1**. On both sides the interpleural space extends in front of the pericardium. It is this space, the *costomediastinal recess*, into which the lung enters more during inspiration than expiration, that conceals the lateral parts of the heart. They can only be made audible as cardiac dullness by forceful percussion which penetrates the margins of the lungs; area of "relative" cardiac dullness, **A2**. The area of relative dullness represents the true size of the heart and corresponds to the shadow of the heart in a radiograph. The area of "absolute" dullness merges below into the zone of dullness over the liver **A3**.

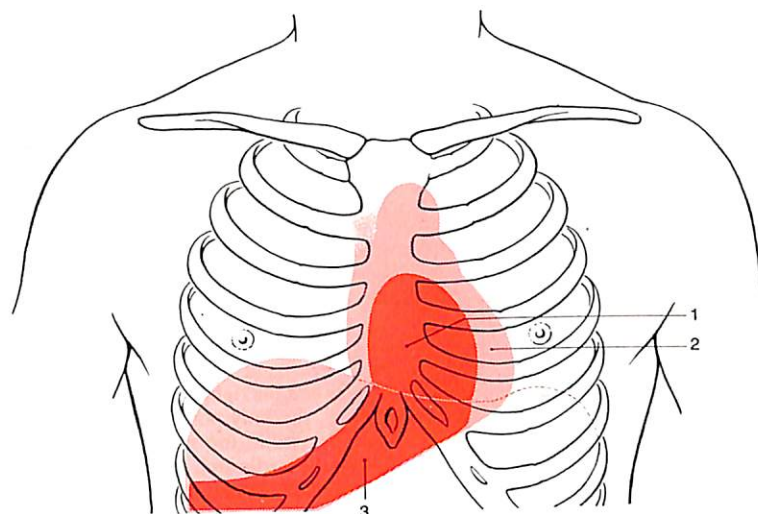
**Auscultation** is listening for sounds in the body. It is performed either with a stethoscope or with the ear alone. Auscultation of the heart mainly gives information about valvular defects. In auscultation of the lungs we distinguish vesicular breathing, bronchial breathing, and various adventitious sounds, such as rattles, friction noises, crepitations, cracking and ringing sounds, etc.

**Auscultation.** The heart valves lie roughly in a line which stretches from the sternal junction of the 3rd rib on the left to the sternal junction of the 6th rib on the right (see *Valve plane*, p. 16). The

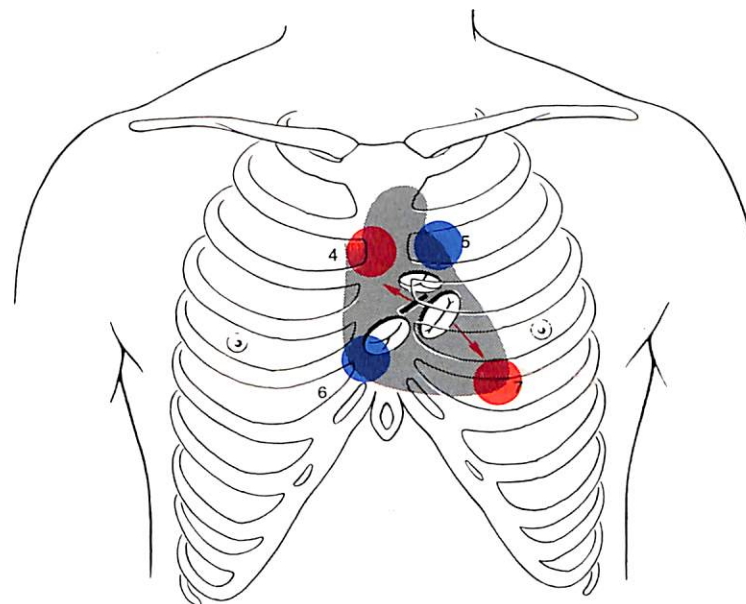
sounds which individual valves produce when they close are best heard over the point where the blood flow through the valve lies closest to the chest wall. The position of auscultation sites is therefore not identical with the points in the chest wall towards which the heart valves project.

**Sites of auscultation:** Aortic valve in the right second intercostal space **B4**; pulmonary valve parasternally over the left 2nd intercostal space **B5**; tricuspid valve over the sternal junction of the right 5th rib **B6**; bicuspid (mitral valve) over the left 5th intercostal space inside the mid-clavicular line (apex of the heart) **B7**.

**Heart sounds.** We distinguish two heart sounds, which are rather like the syllables "lubb-dubb." The *first heart sound*, which is produced by vibrations of the walls during contraction of the myocardium, also contains the sound of the atrioventricular valves. Pathologic sounds (murmurs) are caused either by stenosis (hissing noise) or by insufficiency (pouring noise) of the atrioventricular valves. They can be heard in the first heart sound at the appropriate site of auscultation. The *second heart sound* is caused by closure of the arterial valves. Pathologic sounds (murmurs) in stenosis or insufficiency of the arterial valves can be recognized in the second sound at the corresponding auscultation sites.



A Areas of relative and absolute dullness



B Projection of heart valves (after Knese) and their auscultation sites on the anterior thorax

## Radiology of the Heart

Radiological examination of the heart supplements other diagnostic methods. By putting the patient into different positions in relation to the radiation source behind a fluorescent screen or a film cassette, the individual parts of the heart can be examined in rotation as they are outlined at the border of the heart. *Fluoroscopy* shows the pulsations of the various parts of the heart and *radiographs* permit exact measurement of the cardiac silhouette. The position of neighboring organs (esophagus, p. 206) can also provide information about the shape or size of the heart.

**Posteroanterior position.** With the X-rays directed sagittally, the patient stands with his chest against the screen. In this position the major part of the heart lies within the *midline shadow* cast by the mediastinum, vertebral column, sternum, thymus, etc. On both sides are the bright (transparent) "*lung fields*," into which the right and left borders of the heart can be seen to project. The outline of the right heart border consists of two curves, and the left of four.

**The right heart border.** The upper curve is produced by the superior vena cava **A1**. In its shadow lies the ascending aorta. The lower curve is produced by the border of the right atrium **A2**. In deep inspiration the inferior vena cava may become visible at the right lower border.

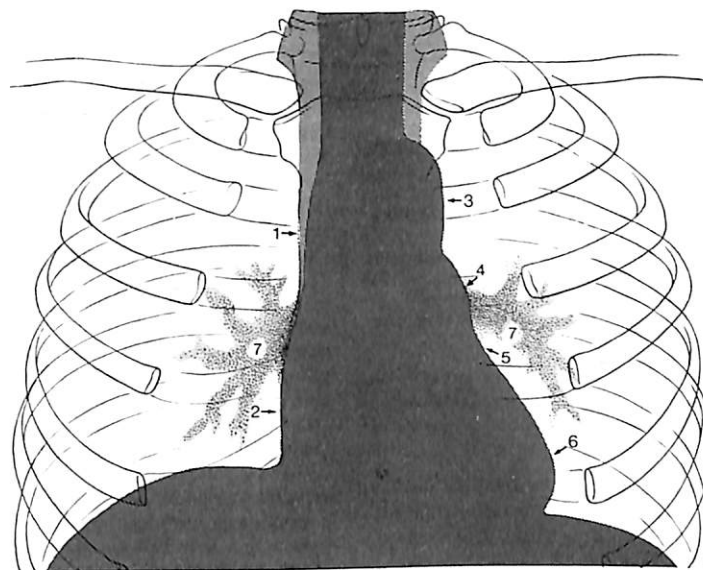
**The left heart border:** The upper curve is produced by the aortic arch **A3** (aortic outline), the second by the pulmonary trunk **A4** (pulmonary outline) and the third, which is often not visible, by the left auricle **A5** (the 2nd and 3rd curves are together also called the *middle curve*). The lower curve is the border of the left ventricle **A6**. Where the lower curve merges into the shadow of the liver is the apex of the heart; it is often not sharply delineated because of epicardial fat deposits. **A7** Lung hilum (see p. 130).

**Anteroposterior position.** The patient remains in the frontal position but with his back to the screen. The findings **B** are as in **A** but reversed.

**First oblique position (right oblique view).** The patient stands at 45° to the film with the right shoulder pointing forward ("*fencing position*"). The pulmonary trunk and ascending aorta have shifted toward the left border. The mediastinum appears as a transparent space between the superior vena cava (right of center) and the descending aorta (right border), *Holzkecht's space* **C8**.

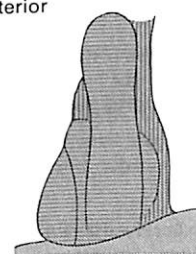
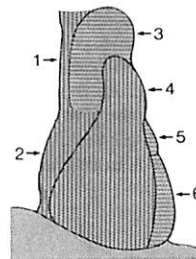
**Second oblique position (left oblique view).** The patient stands rotated by 45°, with the left shoulder forward ("*boxing position*"). The left ventricle (basal portion) has been moved toward the left border and the right ventricle to the right border, the only position in which it is directly visible for some distance. Between the aortic arch and left pulmonary artery there appears a transparent part of the mediastinum, the "*aortic window*" **D9**.

**"Laterolateral" position.** The patient stands rotated by 90° with either his left or right side toward the screen. In the left lateral position the right ventricle and pulmonary trunk appear on the border of the right heart and the other border is mainly formed by the left atrium. The descending aorta lies on the far left of the view. *Holzkecht's space* **E10** is conspicuous between the heart and descending aorta.

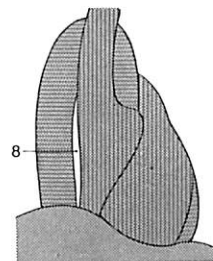


A Radiograph of heart.

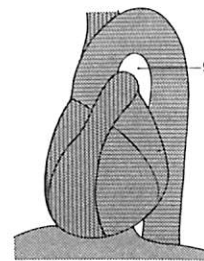
Posteroanterior position



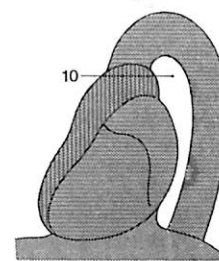
B Anteroposterior position



C 1st oblique view



D 2nd oblique view



E Laterolateral position



## Measurements of the Heart; Alterations in its Shape and Size

An alteration in the size or shape of the heart is often a definite sign of cardiac disease. It is usually measured in a frontal radiograph. If the X-ray tube is very close to the heart, the image of the heart becomes highly enlarged ("distorted"). Teleradiography of the heart at 2 m focus-film distance diminishes distortion, as by this method the heart is only magnified by about 5%. The "radiographic image of the heart" usually includes the great vessels: it is a "cardiovascular radiogram." The measurements usually made are:

**Transverse diameter** = the greatest width right **A1** + the greatest width left **A2**, as measured from the midline of the thorax (chest) **A3**.

**Longitudinal diameter** **A4** = the distance from the indentation in the cardiac outline on the right (the border between the upper and lower curves) to the apex.

**Width of the heart at its base** **A5** = the largest diameter of the heart measured perpendicular to the longitudinal diameter.

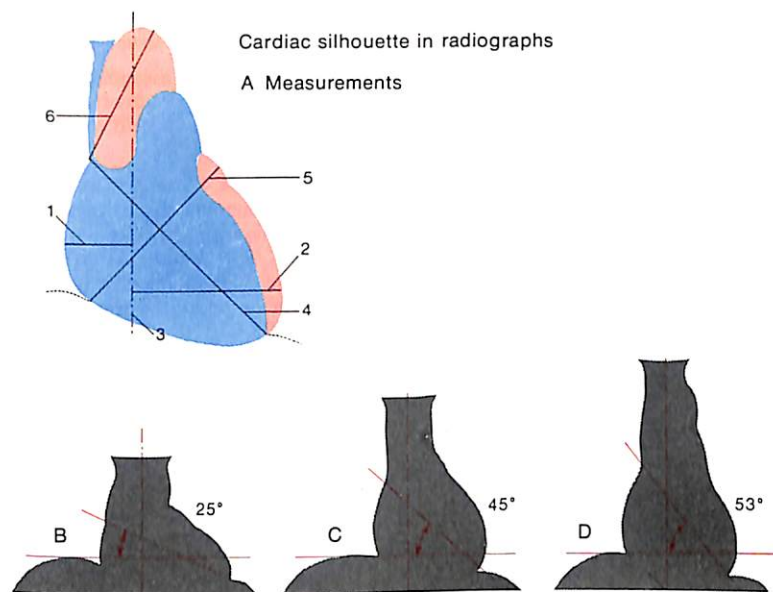
**Length of the aorta** **A6** = the distance from the indentation in the right border of the heart to the top of the aortic arch.

**Angle of inclination** = the angle between the longitudinal diameter and the horizontal line.

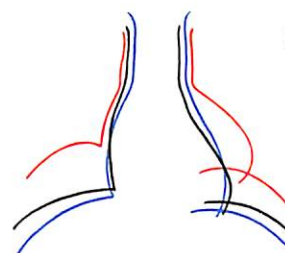
**The normal shape of the heart** varies for many reasons. **Constitutional variants** are connected with differences in physique, particularly in the shape of the chest. In asthenic types and adolescents **D** the heart can be in a more erect position and the angle of inclination may be greater than that found in subjects of more average build **C**. The heart of pyknic individuals and of elderly persons **B** is often more squat and the angle of inclination is smaller. **E Alterations in the shape of the heart due to respiration** depend on the position of the diaphragm. To a small extent the heart follows respiratory movements and this mainly affects the angle of inclination, which is about 45° in mid-respiration

in someone of average build (after Schinz *et al.*).

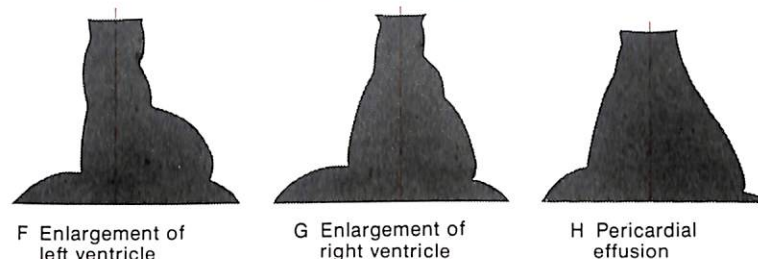
**Pathologic alterations** in the outline of the heart are essentially due to three causes: 1. Enlargement (*hypertrophy*) of the ventricular myocardium occurs if it has to do increased work because of a defect (stenosis or insufficiency) in the succeeding arterial (semilunar) valve(s). Hypertrophy of the left ventricle in cases of defects of the aortic valve results in enlargement of the left side of the heart with the characteristic "boot" shape **F**. In this condition the elasticity of the aorta is often diminished and the aortic arch becomes elongated, for example as in old age, so the aortic arch juts out as an aortic knob. Hypertrophy of the right ventricle in mitral valve defects results in right sided enlargement **G**. The valvular defect causes congestion and backflow in the pulmonary circulation, which is reinforced, by the hypertrophied right ventricle; the patient suffers from dyspnea ("cardiac asthma"). 2. *Dilatation* of the heart in myocardial insufficiency leads to broadening of its shape to approximate a round outline. 3. An *effusion* or exudate in the pericardium results in enlargement of the cardia shadow **H**. As the pericardium extends right up to the great vessels, the curves of the heart border disappear and the heart assumes a more triangular shape.



Variability depending on physique (after Schinz)



Abnormal heart shapes





## Blood Vessels

**Transport functions of the blood.** The  $\text{CO}_2$  saturation of the blood in all the pulmonary arteries is approximately the same. However, in the many individual circuits of the systemic circulation the composition and amount of blood flow differ, see B.

**Differences in the composition of the blood:** Hormones may be relatively concentrated in venous blood coming from the endocrine glands, there may be an excess or energy-rich metabolites in intestinal venous blood, and veins from the spleen carry blood rich in immunoglobulins. There are relatively fewer metabolic waste products in blood of the renal veins. Blood coming from the liver and muscles will be warmer than the rest. The task of the blood circulation is transport through the body of gases, energy-rich substances, end products of metabolism, hormones and antibodies. It also assists in maintenance of water and electrolyte balance.

## Tasks of the Blood Vessel Walls

The **wall of a blood vessel** is made up basically of 3 layers: the *tunica intima* (internal layer), *tunica media* and *tunica adventitia* (middle and outer layers), simplified as the *intima*, *media* and *adventitia*. They differ most noticeably in the arteries.

The **intima** mainly serves the exchange of materials, fluids and gases through the vessel wall. It consists of a layer of flat *endothelial cells* arranged parallel to the long axis of the vessel **C1**, surrounded by scanty connective tissue. The intima of the arteries has in addition a fenestrated elastic membrane, the *internal elastic membrane* **C2**.

The **endothelial cells** of all blood vessels are joined to each other by *occluding contacts* (zonulae occludentes, tight junctions, see p. 40). In individual vascular sections, these contacts are variable in their numbers as well as in their tightness. In the *arteries*, the intercellular contacts are usually impermeable whilst in the *capillaries* and postcapillary *venules* of many organs they are permeable. However, in the capillaries of some organs they form particularly impermeable *barriers* (blood-brain barrier, blood-liquor

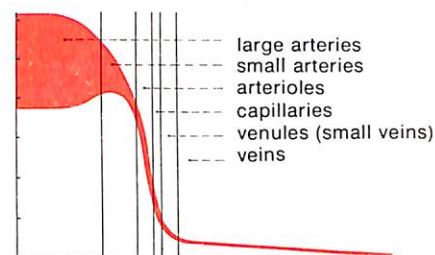
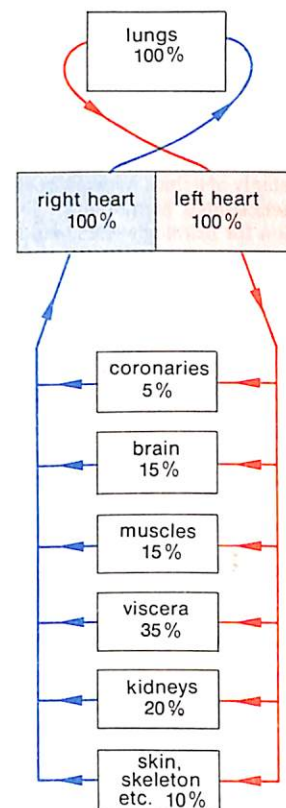
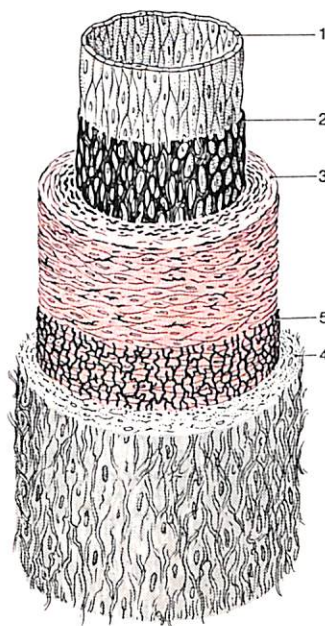
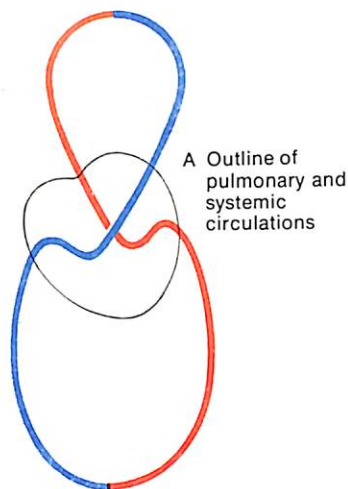
barrier, blood-retina barrier, blood-thymus barrier, blood-testis barrier).

The **media** **C3** has an essential hemodynamic function. It consists of spiral and circular *smooth muscle cells* and a network of elastic fibers.

The **adventitia** **C4** connects the vessel with its surrounding tissue. It contains longitudinally arranged cells and a scissor-shaped *fiber lattice*. Arteries also have a weaker elastic membrane at the border with the media, the *external elastic membrane* **C5**.

The inner third of the wall of a major blood vessel obtains its nutrition directly from the blood flowing through the vessel. The outer layers of the wall are supplied by the *vasa vasorum* (blood vessels to the walls of the vessel itself) which enter the wall from its surroundings. The vessel wall is innervated by the autonomic nervous system; the principal non-medullated nerve fibers lie in the adventitia.

The **hemodynamic situation** within the systemic circulation differs in the various sections, see D. In the *arteries near the heart* the blood pressure is high, but fluctuates due to the discontinuous (rhythmical) ejection of blood from the heart. In the smaller arteries, which are *further away from the heart*, the difference between systolic and diastolic blood pressure is less. The flow of blood is determined by a pressure gradient that extends all the way from the aorta to the venae cavae. These *differences in pressure* are due to degrees of resistance to flow in the vascular system, which depend in part on the lengths and widths of the various vessels (see Physiology). Depending on the part of the body and on posture, gravity may enhance or restrict the return to the heart of the blood in the large veins. Finally, the negative intrathoracic pressure influences blood flow through the *great veins near the heart*, see p. 144. The structure of the walls in the various parts of the vascular system reflect these hemodynamic factors. For the autonomic innervation of vessel walls, see Vol. 3.





## Structure of the Walls of Blood Vessels

**A** The **aorta** and **large (great) arteries near the heart** are *elastic in type* and have *three well-defined layers* with a thick internal elastic lamina. The media consists mainly of a thick network of elastic fibers (fenestrated membranes). During fixation for histologic examination the non-elastic tissues shrink more than the elastic fibers, so the latter assume a wavy appearance.

**A1** Endothelium, **A2** internal elastic membrane, **A3** media with fenestrated elastic membranes, **A4** external elastic membranes, **A5** adventitia.

**B** The **large peripheral arteries** are *muscular in type*. With increasing distance from the heart, the elastic fiber networks in the media decrease and the smooth muscle cells increase.

**C** **Small peripheral arteries** have a similar structure. The lumen of individual vessels diminishes rapidly with progressive division.

**D** The **arterioles** are *precapillary arteries* of 20–40  $\mu\text{m}$  diameter. Their media is formed by 1 or 2 regular, circular layers of smooth muscle cells ("*precapillary sphincter*").

From the small arteries to the end of the arterioles the mean blood pressure falls from about 80 mmHg to about 30 mmHg, and the blood flow velocity decreases from 10 cm/s to 0.2 cm/s.

**E** **Capillaries** serve the exchange of gases and substances between blood and the tissues. They originate from a further division of arterioles, form networks and, if filled with blood, their diameter varies between 5–15  $\mu\text{m}$ .

The total cross-sectional area of the vessels increases in the capillary bed (2000 capillary cross-sections per  $\text{mm}^2$  have been counted in the skeletal muscle of a homothermic [warm-blooded] animal). The blood pressure in the capillaries falls to 12–20 mmHg and the velocity of blood flow to 0.03 cm/s.

**F** The **venules** are *postcapillary veins*. Their walls contain irregularly distributed muscle cells which can regulate the lumen of the vessels. In some organs venules form lacunae (sinuses) for storing blood, so-called "*sinusoidal veins*."

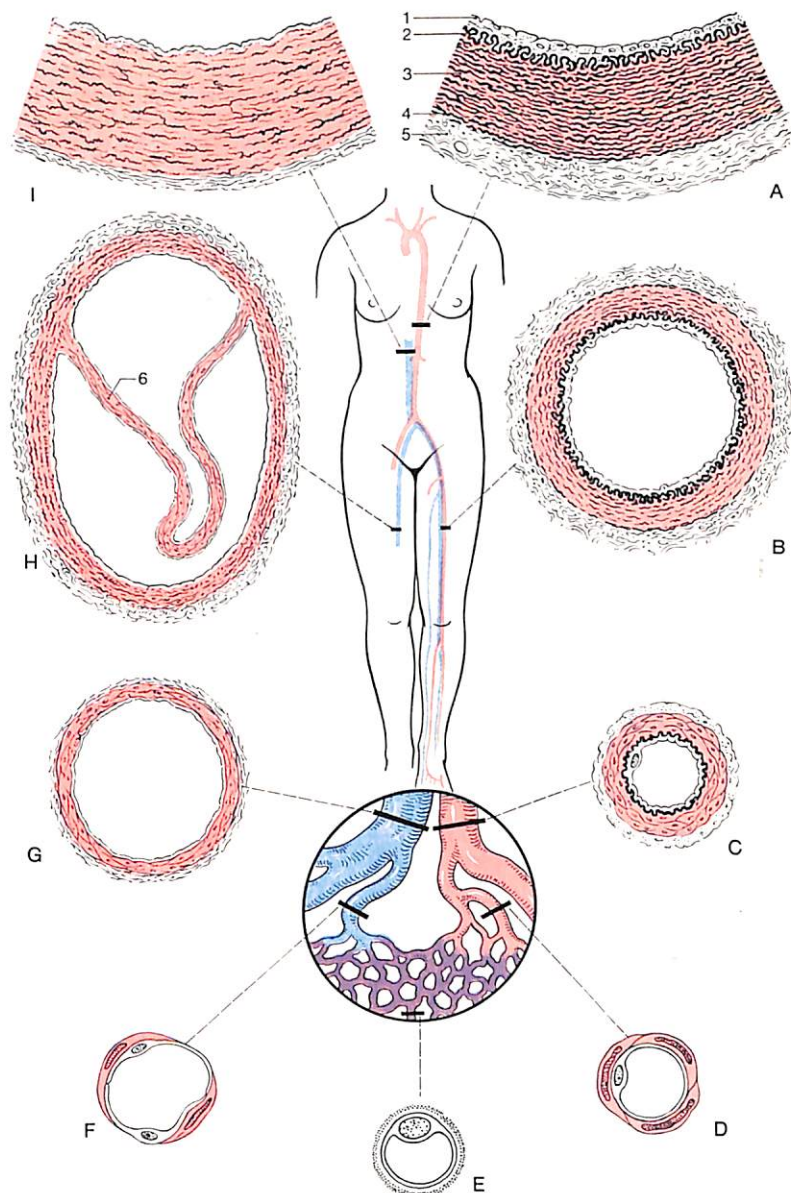
**G** The **small peripheral veins**. Their walls consist of endothelium and a thin layer of spirally arranged smooth muscle cells, but most do not have a distinct *three-layered structure*. Small and medium sized veins have numerous valves. *Venous valves* are semilunar pockets consisting of folds of the intima, either single or one opposite the other, which open in the direction of the heart. They are absent from the superior and inferior vena cava and the veins of the portal circulation, kidneys and brain. The thin-walled veins can accommodate large amounts of blood, even at the low pressure of 15–0 mmHg which is characteristic of the venous limb of the systemic circulation.

**H** **Large peripheral veins** have the same structure as smaller ones. **H6** cross-section of a venous valve.

**I** **Inferior vena cava**. The structure of its wall is essentially the same as that of the smaller veins. The longitudinal muscle strands in the media are arranged in small bundles.

The *structure of vein walls* varies more than that of arteries, and this is true especially of the inferior vena cava, portal and suprarenal veins and the pampiniform plexus.

In the large veins (e.g., the inferior vena cava), the intima is well-developed due to subendothelial connective tissue. The media, by contrast, is thin, and compared with the arteries has little muscle tissue. Collagen fibers and elastic networks are developed. The adventitia is the thickest layer in the large veins, with strong longitudinal elements of smooth muscle.



Layers in the walls of blood vessels in various parts of the systemic circulation (the vessels in the diagram are enlarged in varying proportions)



## Arteries

The **aorta** and **great arteries** (near the heart) are directly affected by the discontinuous, pulsatile ejection of blood (stroke volume) from the heart. Part of the cardiac output is at first retained in the aorta during systole **A** and the **elastic fibers** in the wall become distended. During diastole **B** they release the stored energy into the blood and the artery acting as a "**hydraulic reservoir**" forces the blood toward the periphery. The **blood pressure** fluctuates between 120 mmHg systolic and 80 mmHg diastolic blood pressure (blood pressure amplitude or pulse pressure 40 mmHg). The **pulse wave** begins here and runs along the aorta at a velocity of 4 m/s, depending mainly on the elasticity of its wall and the diameter of the vessel. With decreasing elasticity of the vessel wall the speed of the pulse wave (blood flow) increases: it reaches about 10 m/s in the leg.

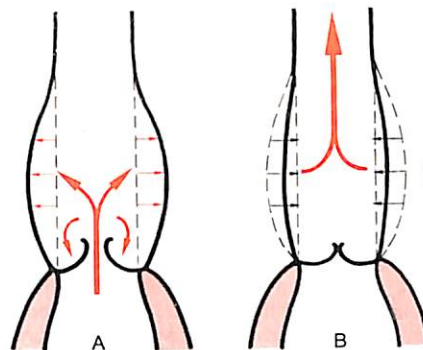
**The elastic-muscular system of the media.** The smooth muscle cells of the media are attached to the elastic fiber networks (fenestrated elastic membranes) and together with them form an elastic-muscular system **C**. The muscle cells are controlled by the autonomic nervous system and by their contraction they can influence the basic tension in the elastic fibers.

The **peripheral arteries** of **muscular type** and the **arterioles** can influence the peripheral circulation and the blood pressure if their lumen changes ("**regulation of peripheral resistance**"). **D** Dilated, **E** contracted artery. The histological appearances do not entirely correspond to that of the living tissue because fixation causes additional contraction of the wall of smooth muscle and thus results in waviness of the internal elastic membrane which does not shrink to the same extent.

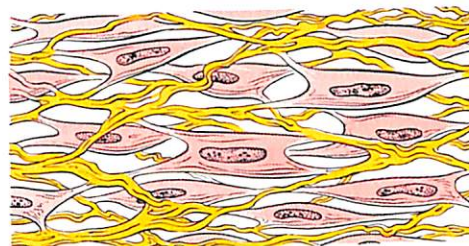
**Cutting of an artery.** Depending on the position of adjacent joints (see p. 38) the arteries are more or less exposed to longitudinal tension. The **internal elastic membrane F1** is distended. If the vessel is

cut the distended internal membrane contracts and pulls the open end of the vessel wall into the lumen, thereby closing the opening temporarily. This mechanical closure may be followed by thrombotic occlusion, i. e., by a blood clot.

With **advancing age** the elasticity of elastic fibers in all organs diminishes and in connection with the rigidity produced in the arterial walls (arteriosclerotic change of the intima enhances this effect) the systolic blood pressure rises and the **pulse pressure** is increased. As a result vessels become progressively and irreversibly dilated as the elasticity of their wall is lost. Arteries also become elongated with age and this can be seen as **undulation** of the vessels, e.g., of the temporal arteries.

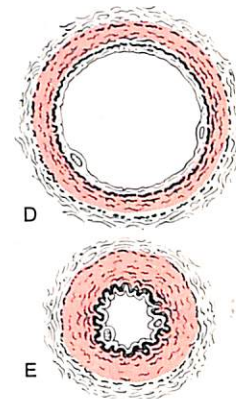


Hydraulic reservoir function

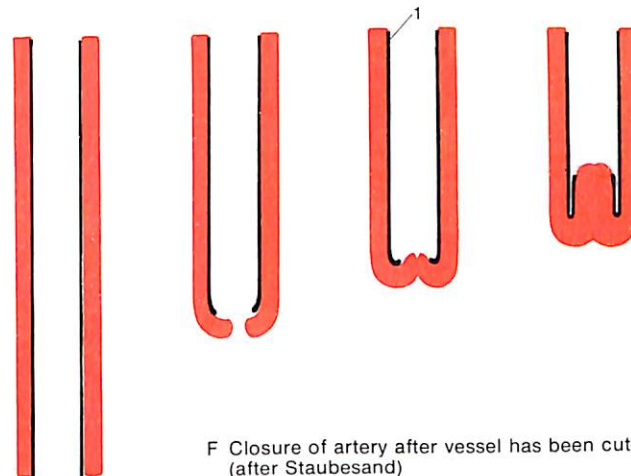


C Elastic fibers and smooth muscle cell ("tension muscles") network

Elastic fibers of arterial wall



Dilatation and contraction of arterial wall (histologic fixation)



F Closure of artery after vessel has been cut (after Staubesand)



### Position of the Arteries in the Locomotor System

As a rule arteries run along the *flexor surface* of the joints. Therefore, they are not stretched over the extensor surface and are not pinched or compressed when the joint is flexed. The danger of pinching on the flexor side is minimized by their position. Arteries and their associated veins and nerves on the flexor surface of a joint are embedded in a pliable *fat pad*. It acts as a cushion when the joint is stretched and helps to lessen longitudinal tension on the vessel when the joint is fully flexed; in this way the artery is able to shorten and to retract from the danger zone. The distance between the radial epicondyle **AB1** of the humerus and the brachial artery **AB2** is greater in the flexed state **B** than in extension **A**. **AB3** Radial artery, **AB4** ulnar artery.

### Estimation of the Blood Pressure (BP)

The *arterial BP* is important in the diagnosis of many diseases. It is measured during almost every medical examination by the indirect method of *Riva-Rocci*.

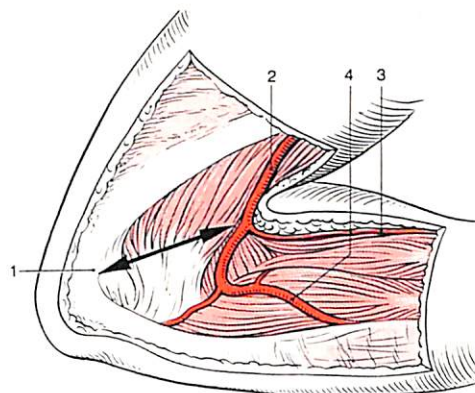
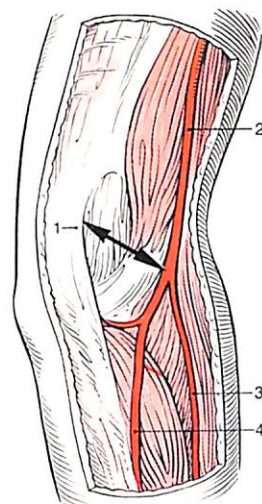
**Method of measuring.** A hollow rubber cuff **C5**, reinforced on the outside by a layer of linen, is firmly placed around the upper arm. With a rubber bulb **C6** air is pumped into the hollow of the cuff until the increased pressure compresses the brachial artery **C2**, i. e., until the pressure in the cuff exceeds the systolic BP within the artery. This is detected by disappearance of the radial pulse **C7**. A manometer **C8** indicates the pressure in the cuff. Air is now released from the cuff by a screw valve on the bulb **C6** to a point where the pressure in the cuff is just below the systolic BP. The crest of the pulse waves then briefly open the lumen of the artery with every pulse wave and a characteristic sound is heard through a stethoscope. If the pressure in the cuff is progressively reduced the lumen of the artery remains open for an increasing proportion of each pulse wave until eventually, after the diastolic BP in the artery, it is no longer compressed at all and a second sound is heard. During the procedure the following

phenomena are observed and they serve as criteria for measuring the BP.

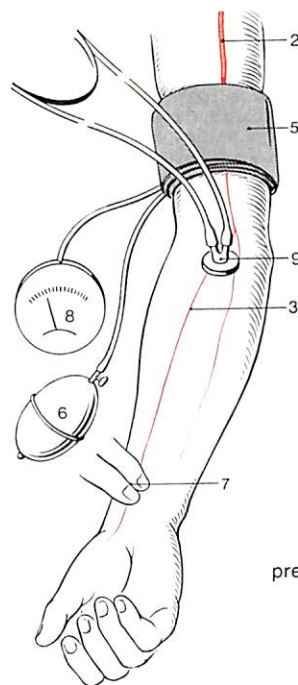
**Systolic BP:** As soon as the pressure in the cuff has fallen below the systolic BP, the radial pulse **C7** becomes just palpable (*palpatory criterion*) and with a stethoscope **C9** a murmur can be heard over the artery at the angle of the elbow (brachial artery). The murmur is caused by a vortex formed in the slitlike opening of the vessel (*auscultatory criterion*). At the same time the patient can feel the pounding of the pulse wave in the upper arm (*subjective criterion*). The amplitude of the pulse waves and thus the size of the manometric oscillations also start to increase (*oscillometric criterion*) at this stage; see **D** and **E**.

The *pressure levels* at which these criteria and those described below become apparent are read off the *manometer* as the systolic and diastolic BP, respectively.

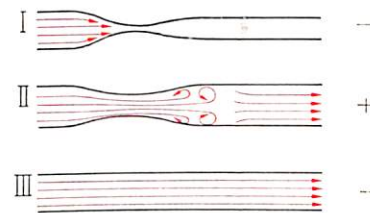
**Diastolic BP:** When the pressure in the cuff falls below the diastolic BP the murmur in the brachial artery and the pulsation in the upper arm disappear, and the amplitude of the manometric oscillations decreases.



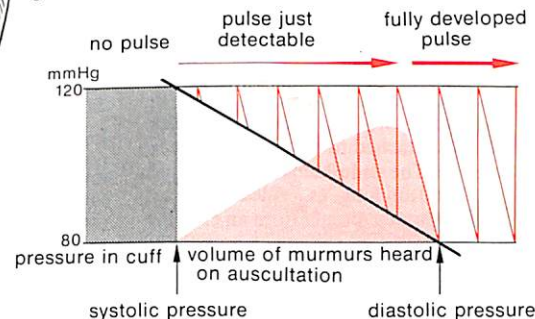
Brachial artery on flexor side of joint  
A in extension, B in flexion  
(elbow joint) (after v. Hayek)



C BP estimation  
(after Riva-Rocci)



D Blood flow in: I compressed, II semi-compressed, III relaxed artery



E Behavior of pulse during BP estimation  
(after Faller)



## Capillaries

The exchange of gases and substances between the blood and the tissues is facilitated by the large cross-sectional area of all the capillaries (which is about 800 times that of the aorta) and by slowing down of the blood flow (to about 0.3 mm/s as compared to 320 mm/s in the aorta). All organs have capillaries except for stratified squamous epithelia, the cornea and lens of the eye, and completely differentiated cartilage.

**AB Capillaries** often form three-dimensional networks (surface area about 6000 m<sup>2</sup>) which are supplied by several arteries **AB1**. **A** Occlusion of one artery **A2** may, therefore, be of no consequence to the organ in question. **B** If, however, a particular capillary area depends on a single artery, an "end artery", without adequate cross communications (*collaterals*) with other vessels, **B2** occlusion of that artery (e.g., by *thrombosis* or *embolism*) results in death (*necrosis*) of the affected tissue – an *infarct*. The branches of the arteries to the liver, kidneys, spleen, brain, retina and the coronary vessels are "end arteries". Capillaries are usually about 1 mm long, and their diameter, if filled with blood, is about 5–15  $\mu$ m. Some organs, namely liver, bone marrow, spleen and certain endocrine glands, are characterized by having particularly wide *sinusoidal capillaries*.

**C** The capillary wall consists of an *endothelial cell layer* **C3** and a *basal membrane* **C4** visible under the electron microscope. In some organs, e.g., in the brain, there are also additional *contractile cells* attached to the outer wall, *pericytes* **C5**. The *endothelial cells* **C3**, which are 25–50  $\mu$ m long, as a rule adjoin each other without gaps and form an endothelial tube. The thickness of endothelial cells varies. Transport of materials occurs from the capillaries into the surrounding tissue and vice versa, and in both cases through the endothelial cells.

The degree of intercellular transport between endothelial cells depends on organ

specific differences in the tightness of occluding intercellular contacts.

In **C** different forms of endothelium with differing degrees of transcellular transport have been drawn schematically as segments of a cross-section through a capillary.

**I** Endothelia without fenestration and with a continuous basal lamina in *unfenestrated continuous capillaries*: **C6** transcytosis (muscle tissue, central nervous system, lungs, etc.).

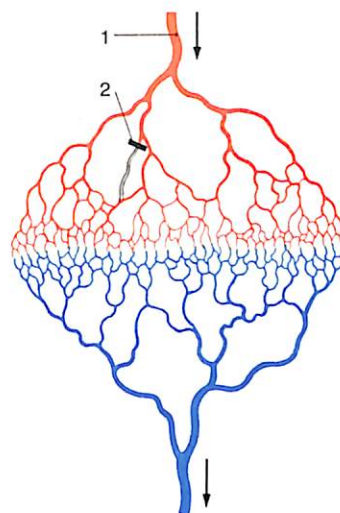
**II** Endothelia with intracellular fenestration, with *diaphragms* **C7** and a continuous basal membrane in *fenestrated continuous capillaries* (gastrointestinal tract, endocrine glands, choroid plexus, etc.).

**III** Endothelia with pores **C8** and intercellular gaps, where no basal lamina is formed, or it is only formed discontinuously, in *fenestrated discontinuous sinusoid capillaries* (liver, hematopoietic bone marrow, splenic sinus).

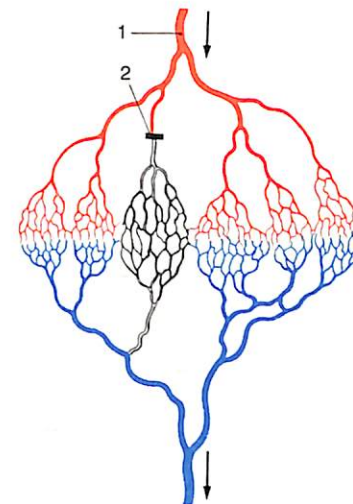
**D** *Transcytosis* (*cytopempsis*) (vesicular transport). Larger molecules and particles **D9** usually move first into the cell inferior **D11** by invagination of the *plasmalemma* **D10** (= cell membrane). Then they pass through the endothelial cell in a vesicular fold of the plasmalemma. Finally, in the reverse procedure, the membrane surrounding the vesicle is reincorporated into the plasmalemma and its contents are extruded through the plasmalemma on the opposite side of the cell.

*Permeation*. Small molecules, such as nutrients and other building materials for cells, often permeate invisibly through endothelial cells **D12**.

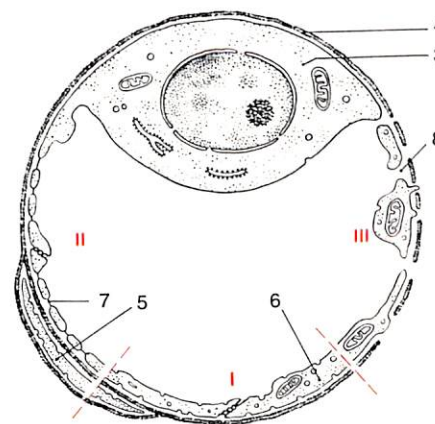
Prerequisites for transcytosis and permeation are usually membrane-bound receptors, specific enzymes and, for transport through fenestrated endothelia, an appropriate surface charge on the luminal plasma membrane of the endothelial cell.



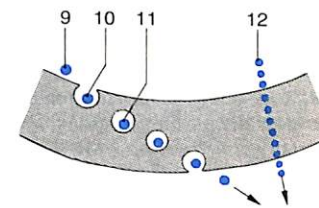
A Capillary bed supplied by anastomosing arteries



B Capillary bed supplied by end arteries



C Electron-microscopic pictures of various types of endothelia



D Material penetrating through endothelium: transcytosis and permeation



## Veins

Veins can take up large quantities of blood with only small changes in pressure (in the systemic circulation, on average four times more than the arteries). They are "capacity vessels." The walls of the veins are usually thinner than those of arteries. They can be distended even by low internal pressure, the pressure from the surrounding tissue affecting this process. The flow resistance inside veins and the pressure gradient towards the heart are small. The most important force for transporting blood in the veins is the "muscle pump," aided by the *arteriovenous coupling and respiration*.

**"Muscle pump."** As they run through the gaps and spaces in the locomotor system, the walls of the veins are readily compressed by contracting muscles and their contained blood is directed towards the heart by means of *semilunar valves* ABC1.

**Arteriovenous coupling.** There are usually two concomitant veins that lie on either side of medium-sized and small arteries. They are anchored to the arterial wall by connective tissue C in such a way that the pressure of the arterial pulse narrows the lumen of the veins. The resulting movement of the blood in the veins is directed towards the heart by means of *semilunar valves* ABC1. AB2 Orifice of a small vein. The arteriovenous coupling is not very important in the movement of venous blood.

**Respiration.** The negative pressure inside the chest (see p. 144) is transmitted to the venae cavae and so favors the return of blood to the heart.

The way in which the great veins near the heart are *built into the surrounding tissue* prevents them from collapsing. D3 In the lower region of the neck the venous walls are connected to the *cervical fascia*. D4 The *negative pressure* exerts suction on the walls of the veins in the thorax. D5 In the upper abdomen the walls of the great veins are stabilized by the surrounding *liver*.

## Specialized Blood Vessel Formations

**Anastomoses** are vascular connections.

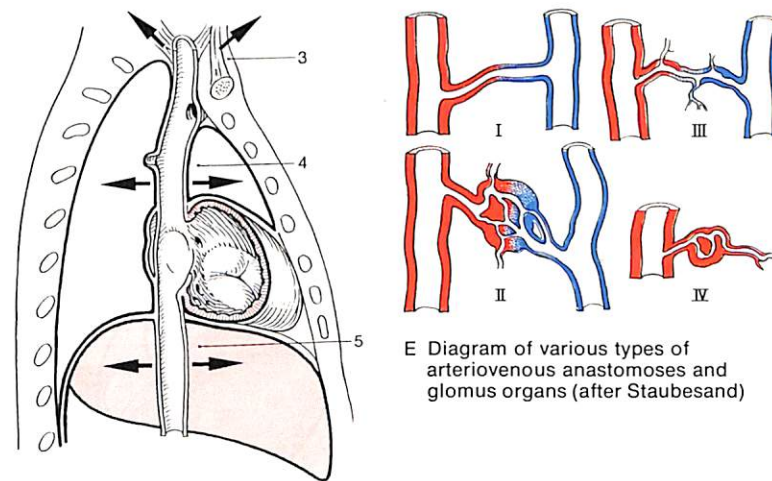
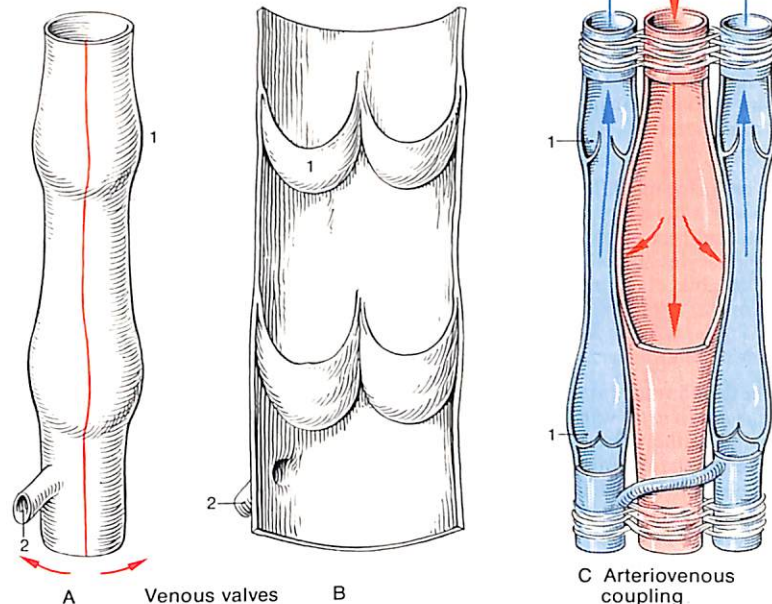
**Collaterals** are anastomoses which form a parallel route to the main pathway.

**Blocking arteries** have longitudinal, muscle-like cells in the intima, which buckle the latter and make it protrude like a cushion ("cushion arteries"), and so block the lumen of the vessel. Blocking arteries can cut off direct blood flow to the capillary area that they supply, e.g., endocrine organs, corpora cavernosa of the genitals, uterus, umbilical cord and fingers.

**Throttle veins** have strong, circular muscle strands with can throttle the blood flow from the capillary area behind them e.g., endocrine glands, nasal mucosa and genitalia.

**E Arteriovenous anastomoses** form short-cuts in the precapillary part of the circulation. Two main types can be distinguished. I *Direct anastomoses*: an arteriovenous bridge is formed by a vessel between an artery and a vein. It has a blocking mechanism similar to those of the blocking arteries. II *Multiple channel anastomoses* are small organs (*glomus organs*) encapsulated in fibrous tissue, in which there is a closely packed network of one or several vessels. They may lie between an artery and a vein as III *glomus anastomosis*, or they may connect *precapillary vessels* IV. They are found in: the prominent ends (tips) of the limbs, the fingertips and the ball of the thumb, the tip of the coccyx, nose, the back of the tongue and the corpora cavernosa of the genitalia and of the nasal mucosa, and the cock's comb and the rabbit's ear.

A *Rete mirabile* is a capillary network on the arterial side of the main capillary area; *arterial rete mirabile*, e.g., the capillaries in a renal glomerulus; or in the venous limb of a capillary area, *venous rete mirabile*, e.g., hepatic capillaries.



D Stabilization of walls of great veins near heart (after Tandler)



## Lymph Vessels

Fluid from the capillaries enters the tissues and organs as materials are exchanged between the blood **A1** and the tissue **A2**. This fluid flows mainly as lymph into the lymph vessel **A3**. The brain is an exception.

**Lymph.** Lymph differs from blood by its greater water content, lower protein content and lack of blood cells, except for lymphocytes. It contains fibrinogen and is capable of clotting. Lymph coming from the intestines (*chyle*) after a meal rich in fat is full of fat granules and has a turbid, milky appearance.

The lymph vessels are channels **A4** which run parallel to the veins. They conduct the lymph to the venous angle **A5** (confluence of the internal jugular with the subclavian vein, see p. 64). At this point, near to the heart, the lymph is returned to the venous blood stream. Lymph vessels provide a drainage system for the connective tissue regions of organs. Along the course of the lymph vessels a series of lymph nodes **ABC6** are interpolated which act as biological filters (see p. 98). From them lymphocytes pass into the lymph.

The lymph vessels of the skin and of the subcutaneous connective tissue run alongside the larger veins of the skin, while the deeper lymph vessels follow the course of the large arteries. The complete lymphatic pathway consists of three sections, lymphatic capillaries, conducting vessels and transport vessels.

**Lymph capillaries** start as blind sacs (cul de sac) **A3**, i. e., they have no permanent opening into the intercellular space, but temporary gaps do appear in the unfenestrated endothelium. They allow the influx of tissue fluid and the entrance of large particles, e.g., of fat globules in the villi of the intestine. A basal membrane is only partially formed. Lymph capillaries lead into a network of interconnected lymph vessels with a wider lumen. These vessels are compressed by pressure, for instance, from the surrounding muscles.

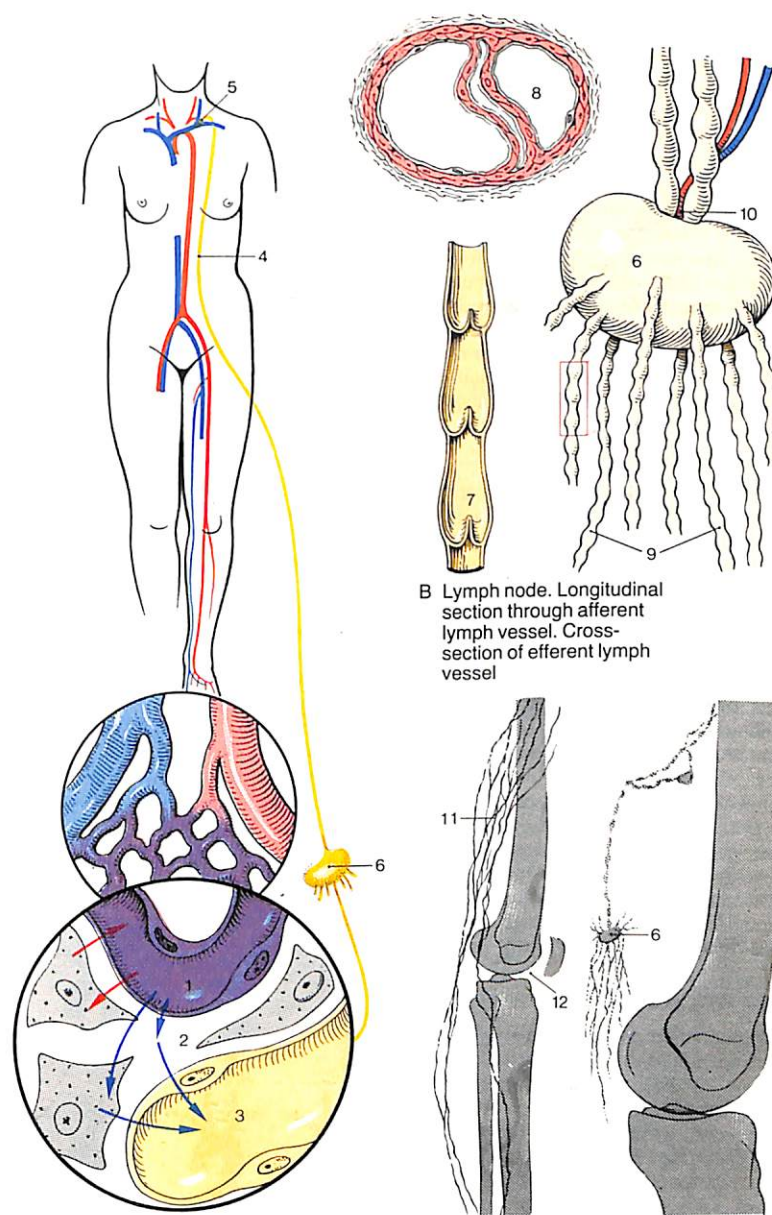
The resulting lymph movement is directed centrally by semilunar valves.

**Transport vessels.** The next set of lymph vessels possesses a muscular media like a vein. They are composed of valvular segments arranged in consecutive order. Each valvular segment consists of a semilunar valve **B7** and a subsequent length of lymph vessel. The base of the semilunar pouches does not contain any muscle, is only slightly extensible and is constricted when the vessel is filled. Therefore, in radiographs, if the lymph vessels are filled with a contrast medium, they look like a string of beads **C**. The vessel wall is innervated by autonomic nerves. The lymph is transported by consecutive contractions of valve segments (10–12/min).

**B8** Cross-section through a semilunar valve: the margins of 2 pouches are cut transversely, **B9** afferent lymph vessels to a lymph node **B6**, **B10** hilum of the lymph node with efferent lymph and blood vessels, **C11** lymphatics filled with contrast medium, **C12** knee joint.

**Regional lymph nodes** receive lymph directly from an organ or from a region of the body. Lymph from an organ may be given up directly to several groups of lymph nodes, and the association between regional lymph nodes and a particular organ hardly ever varies.

**Collecting lymph nodes** receive lymph from several regional lymph vessels.



A Beginning of lymphatic capillary

C Radiograph of lymph vessels of leg which have been filled with contrast medium



In the following pages the distribution of the most important vessels of the *systemic circulation* is discussed *systematically*. Their topographic location within the *structures of the locomotor system* is described in *Volume I*; for the vessels of the pulmonary circulation see the chapter on the lungs. The systemic organization of the vascular tree varies considerably. In reality it rarely corresponds in all details to the schemata described in the following pages which only indicate the pattern most frequently found. *Deviations* of the vascular pattern from "normal" have two main causes: formation of *collateral circulations* during postnatal life and the variability in embryonic development.

### Collateral Circulation

The ramifications of arterial branches provide numerous potential detours for the blood flow. If the main channel in **A** is occluded by obliteration of the popliteal artery at **A1** the byways can widen considerably in a short time so that the blood supply will be assured = *collateral circulation*. Before ligating any artery the question must always be asked whether past experience suggests that adequate collaterals will be formed. If not, a ligature must not be placed at that particular site. Not infrequently, even small branches make the formation of a collateral circulation possible. In *end arteries* (see p. 40) no collateral circulation can develop and if blood flow through them is obstructed for any reason the organs or their affected parts die – necrosis or infarction.

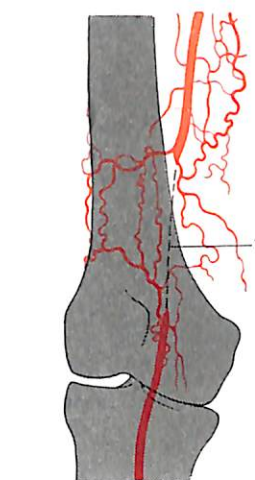
### Variability of the Blood vessels

Like any organ the blood vessels develop during embryonic life from primitive anlagen. Experience has shown that development is variable to a certain degree and vessel variations are therefore limited in scope and reducible to simpler stages in development. So many variants of the blood vessels are known that they cannot all be discussed here. The development of the branchial arteries will serve

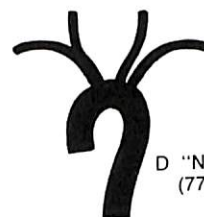
as one *example* of the variability of the embryonic anlage.

In each branchial arch of the early embryo an artery develops in progression from cranial to caudal. **B** shows all 6 branchial arteries simultaneously. They collect in an initially paired aortic anlage **B2** from which *dorsal, segment trunk arteries* arise. The seventh **B3** of them runs towards the anlage of the upper extremity. In addition the organs of the neck and part of the face are supplied by the common *ascending* vessels of the branchial arch arteries (which subsequently develop into the external carotid artery **BC4**). One artery from the *descending* common vessel, (which later becomes the internal carotid artery **BC5**) goes to the brain. The 6th branchial arch gives off a branch **BC6** to the anlage of the lung. In the course of further development the *original symmetry is lost as the left side become predominant*: the 4th left branchial arch artery becomes the aortic arch **C7**, the right one develops into the brachiocephalic trunk **C8** and the subclavian artery. The left aorta of the trunk persists unchanged **C9**, the right one disappears; the 6th left branchial arch artery retains for a time its communication with the descending aorta as the ductus arteriosus, not so the right one. The 1st, 2nd and 5th branchial arch arteries disappear.

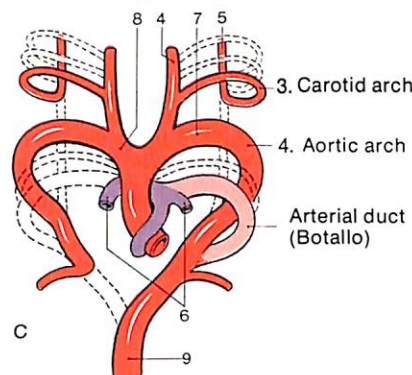
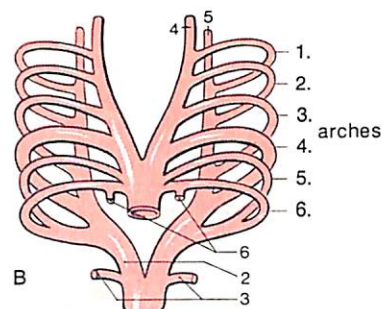
**DE** indicates the nature and frequency of variants of this "normal" pattern.



A Collateral circulation after occlusion of popliteal artery (after Loose)

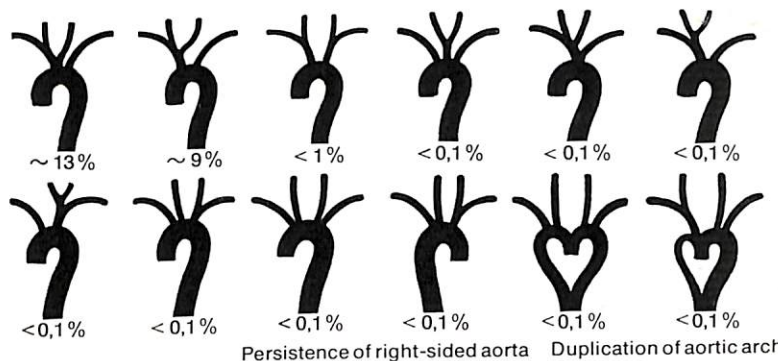


D "Normal" pattern (77%)



Development of arteries from branchial arch arteries (after Broman)

E Variants of aortic trunk (23%) (after Lippert)



Persistence of right-sided aorta Duplication of aortic arch



## Central or Great Vessels

## Main Artery of the Body (Aorta)

All the arteries of the systemic circulation arise directly or indirectly from the aorta. The diameter of the aorta near the heart normally is about 20 mm; in old age, due to loss of elasticity, it increases to about 30 mm. The aorta is the most important "hydraulic reservoir" in the arterial tree.

**Course of the aorta.** It ascends behind the pulmonary trunk toward the right as the **ascending aorta (pars ascendens aortae) A1**. It then forms the **aortic arch A2** and passes back toward the left across the hilum of the left lung **A3**. From the 4th thoracic vertebra downward the aorta descends first on the left side and then in front of the spine (vertebral column) as the **descending aorta (pars descendens aortae) AD4**. In the thoracic region the esophagus **A5** crosses in front of the descending aorta (**thoracic aorta [pars descendens aortae]**). After passing through the aortic hiatus of the diaphragm, the aorta is called the **abdominal aorta (pars abdominalis aortae)**. In front of the 4th lumbar vertebra it divides at the bifurcation (**bifurcatio aortae**) into the **right and left common iliac arteries C6**, each of which gives off one branch into the pelvis, the **internal iliac artery C7**, and one branch to the leg, the **external iliac artery C8**. The unpaired continuation of the aorta is the middle sacral artery **C9**, the remnant of a tail artery.

The **direct branches of the aorta** may be divided into 3 groups. One group is partly derived from the **branchial arch arteries**, the second from **embryonic segmental arteries** and the third from **embryonic visceral arteries**.

The **direct branches of the ascending aorta** are the coronary arteries, s. p. 20.

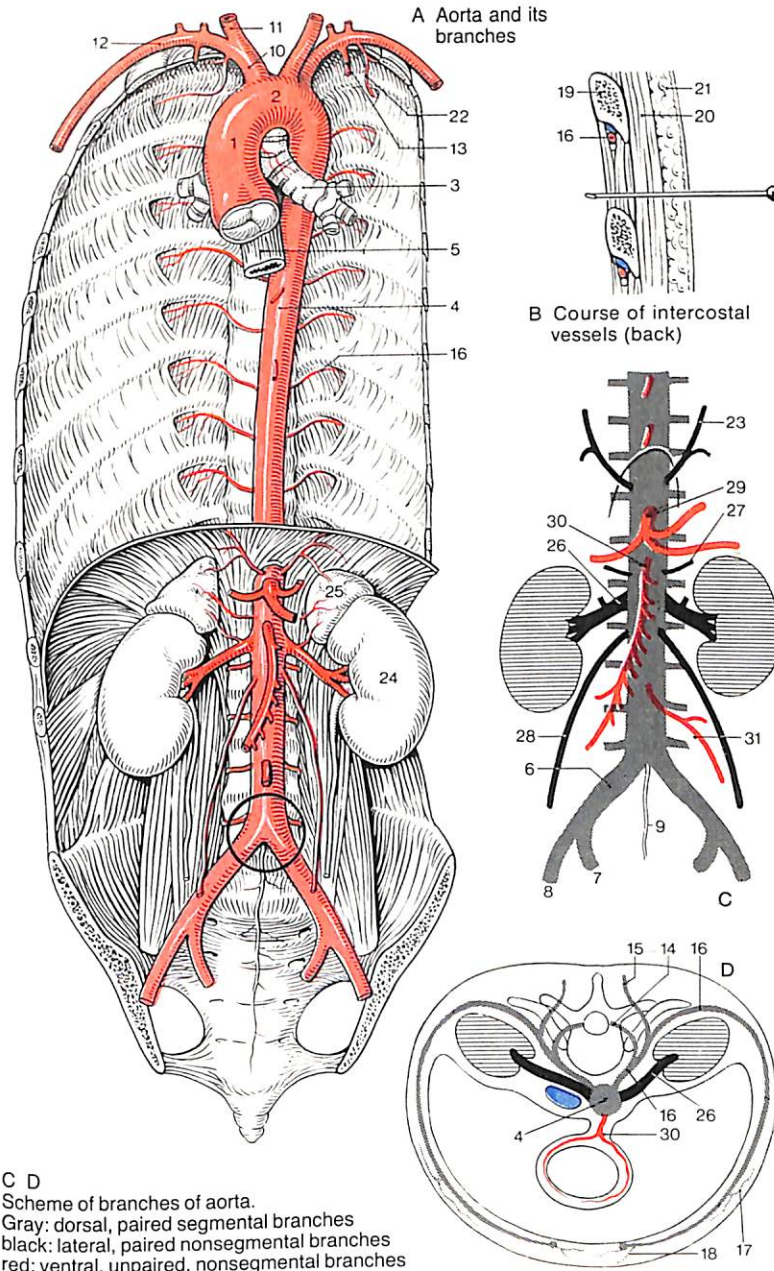
The **direct branches of the aortic arch** are derivatives of branchial arch arteries (p. 46), and they arise on the left near the midline and pass to the head and neck. To the right there is the **brachiocephalic trunk A10** with its principal branches the **right common carotid artery A11** and the **right subclavian artery A12**, and to the left the **left common carotid artery** and the **left subclavian artery** arise directly from the aortic arch. **A13** internal thoracic artery to the chest wall.

The **direct branches of the descending aorta** are partly **trunk wall branches** and **visceral branches**.

**Paired dorsal segmental arteries, trunk wall branches** shown gray in **C** and **D**, divide into a **dorsal branch** to the spinal cord **D14**, the muscles of the back and skin **D15**, and a **ventral branch D16** to the wall of the trunk and its appendages. In the chest region the ventral branches form the **posterior intercostal arteries ABD16 (D17 lateral and D18 anterior cutaneous branches)**, and they descend obliquely between the intercostal muscles to the anterior wall of the trunk. Near their origins the intercostal arteries run with the intercostal nerve and vein in a groove on the lower edge of the upper rib of each intercostal space. For this reason **puncture of the pleural space B** is performed from the back on top of the upper margin of the lower rib (**B19** rib, **B20** muscles of the chest wall, **B21** skin and subcutaneous tissue). The first and second posterior intercostal arteries arise from the **highest intercostal artery A22**, a branch of the subclavian artery. Four **lumbar arteries** arise in the abdominal cavity.

**Lateral, paired, nonsegmental arteries**, black in **C** and **D** (the superior phrenic arteries in the chest, **trunk wall branches**) are well developed in the **abdominal cavity**, where they supply the diaphragm (**inferior phrenic arteries C23, trunk wall arteries**) and as visceral branches, to paired organs such as the kidneys **A24** and adrenal glands **A25** (**renal arteries CD26, suprarenal arteries C27**) and to the gonads (**testicular or ovarian arteries C28**).

**Ventral, unpaired, nonsegmental arteries, visceral arteries**, red in **C** and **D**, supply the unpaired viscera in the chest and abdomen. **Chest:** small branches to the trachea, esophagus and mediastinum (bronchial, esophageal, pericardial, mediastinal branches). **Abdomen:** **celiac trunk C29** (with its three main branches, the splenic, left gastric and common hepatic arteries, see p. 242), **superior mesenteric artery** (see p. 246) **CD30** and **inferior mesenteric artery C31**.





### Venae Cavae

Blood from the systemic circulation flows back to the heart via the superior and inferior vena cava.

**Superior vena cava.** The roots of the *superior vena cava* **B1** are the *brachiocephalic veins* (*dextra, sinistra*) **B2**, through which blood is returned to the heart from the head and neck by the *internal jugular vein* **B3** and from the arms by the *subclavian vein* **B4**. It also receives additional blood from the thyroid gland, chest cavity and the neck. A large lymph vessel, the *thoracic duct* **A5** on the left, and the smaller *right lymphatic duct*, drains into the "venous angle," the confluence of the subclavian and internal jugular veins (see p. 80).

**Inferior vena cava.** The roots of the *inferior vena cava* **B6** are the *common iliac veins* **B7**, which return blood from the abdominal viscera via the *internal iliac vein* **B8** and from the lower limbs via the *external iliac vein* **B9** to the heart. The inferior vena cava also receives the blood from the *renal veins* **B10** and from the veins of the gonads, the *testicular* (see p. 283) and *ovarian veins*. The vein from the left gonad **B11** drains into the left renal vein, and the right vein **B12** goes directly into the inferior vena cava. Just below the diaphragm, the liver gives off 3 or more *hepatic veins* **B13** into the inferior vena cava. The *lumbar veins* of the wall of the trunk **B14** provide further afferent vessels. The abdominal aorta **A15** lies to the left of the inferior vena cava.

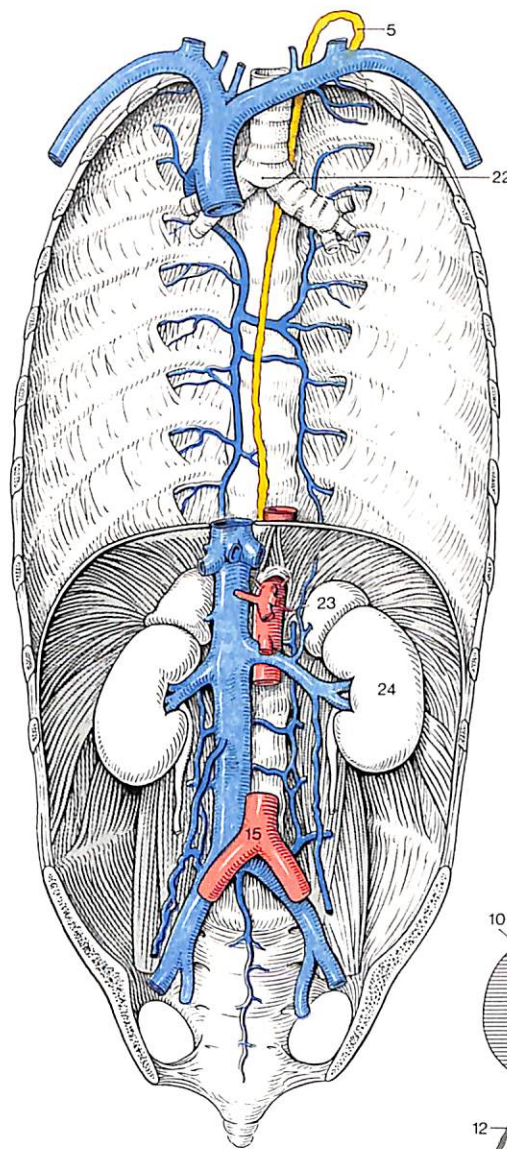
### Azygos System

**Azygos and hemiazygos veins.** The *segmental veins* of the dorsal chest wall, the *posterior intercostal veins* **B16**, drain into a longitudinal anastomosis on each side of the vertebral column in the chest. In the chest region they are the *hemiazygos vein* **B17** on the left and the *azygos vein* **B18** on the right, and are upward continuations of the *ascending lumbar veins* **B19**, which receive the *lumbar veins* **B14**. Veins from the viscera of the chest

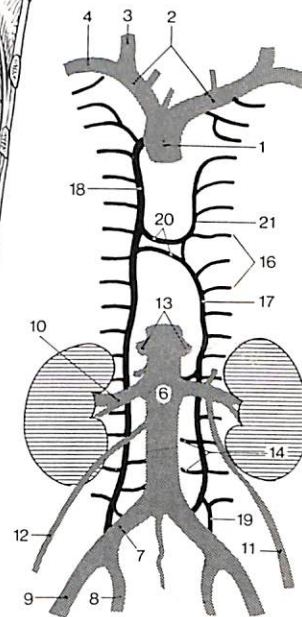
(esophageal and bronchial veins) also drain into the azygos vein. The *hemiazygos vein* joins the azygos vein at the height of the 6th to the 10th thoracic vertebrae **B20**. The *accessory hemiazygos vein* **B21**, into which blood flows from the upper left intercostal veins, passes from above into the hemiazygos vein. Veins from the 1st and 2nd intercostal space also enter the brachiocephalic vein. The azygos vein of pencil thickness, the largest vein of the wall of the trunk, crosses the hilum of the right lung and reaches the superior vena cava from behind. **A22** Bifurcation of the trachea. **A23** Adrenal gland, **A24** kidney. Compare **B** with **A**.

**Anastomoses and collaterals.** Connections (anastomoses) and bypasses (collaterals) between veins are easily formed, and may include subcutaneous veins.

**Clinical Tips.** Blood clots can form in veins after operations and in inflammations and may completely occlude the lumen of the vessel – *thrombosis*. They may remain unnoticed in small veins. If the clots become detached from the vessel wall, they can be carried with the blood stream through the right atrium and right ventricle into the pulmonary circulation to finally become trapped in the arteries or capillaries of the lungs – *pulmonary embolism*.



A Venae cavae, the azygos system and their roots



B Scheme of great veins



## Peripheral Pathways

The *peripheral vessels*, i. e., arteries, veins and lymph vessels, together with their associated nerves form the *peripheral pathways*. In the following description the vessels are traced up to the organs which they supply. In order to protect them from mechanical injury, the peripheral vascular pathways run in cracks, niches and canals between bones, muscles and fascia. This is particularly seen in the neck and limbs where there is a lot of movement and is less marked in the chest and abdominal cavities. The pathways of an organ are joined together by connective tissue into a cable which can remain moveable against the surrounding tissues. They cross over joints on their flexor aspect (see p. 38). The peripheral pathways in the viscera frequently form a stalk about which the organs can move without pulling the vessels.

*Guide structures and memory aids.* The course of peripheral pathways can be recognized by observing their guide structure e.g., muscles. Such anatomic signposts are of topographic and medical importance, e.g., points where the arterial pulse is palpable, where an artery can be compressed in case of a hemorrhage (marked by a circle in the illustrations), or where a nerve can be damaged by pressure against the underlying bone or by a fractured bone, etc. The topography of the peripheral pathways in the locomotor system is discussed in Vol. I.

## Arteries of the Head and Neck

The viscera of the head and neck are mainly supplied by the principal artery to the head, the *common carotid artery A1*. The brain and thyroid gland have an additional supply on both sides from a large branch of the *subclavian artery A2*. Other branches from the *subclavian artery* also go to the lateral aspect of the neck and to part of the shoulder girdle.

## Arteries of the Neck I

## Subclavian Artery

The *subclavian artery* leaves via the upper thoracic opening, runs across the 1st rib

(the artery can be compressed against the 1st rib **A3** by pulling the arm downward and backward) and through the scalenus gap (between the scalenus anterior **A4** and medial **A5**) into the lateral cervical region. The following arteries arise from the subclavian artery medial to the scalenus anterior muscle:

The *vertebral artery AB6* usually runs from the 6th cervical vertebra within the transverse foramina upward to the atlas (the uppermost cervical vertebra) where it perforates the atlanto-occipital membrane. Both vertebral arteries then unite and form the *basilar artery*, see p. 58.

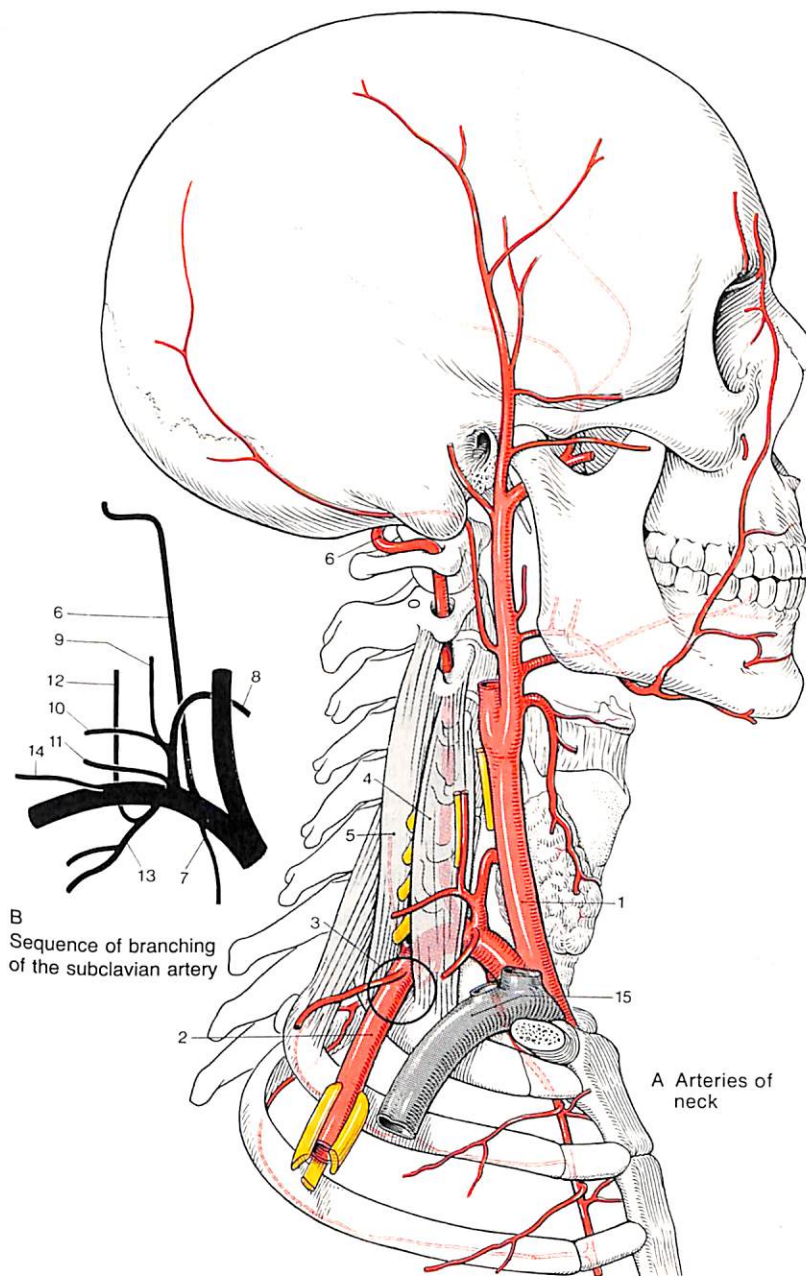
The *internal thoracic artery B7* runs downward inside the chest wall lateral to the sternum. It gives off the *pericardiacophrenic artery* which is accompanied by the phrenic nerve, the *musculophrenic artery* to the diaphragm and the lower intercostal arteries. Eventually as the *superior epigastric artery*, it forms an anastomosis with the *inferior epigastric artery*, see p. 72. Its branches go to the skin of the chest, the thymus, mediastinum and the root of the lung; there are communications with the upper 5-6 intercostal arteries via their *anterior intercostal branches*.

The *thyrocervical trunk* gives off the *inferior thyroid artery B8*, the *ascending cervical artery B9* that accompanies the phrenic nerve, and the *transverse cervical B10* and *suprascapular B11* arteries. The latter crosses the transverse ligament of the scapula to reach the shoulder blade muscles.

The *costocervical trunk* passes with the *deep cervical artery B12* to the deep muscles of the nape of the neck and with the *highest intercostal artery B13* to the 1st and 2nd intercostal arteries.

In 60% of cases the *transverse artery of the neck B14* arises lateral to the anterior scalenus muscle and passes through the brachial plexus to the upper medial angle of the scapula.

The *subclavian vein A15* lies in front of the anterior scalenus. Compare **B** and **A**.





## Arteries of the Neck II, Facial Arteries

## Common Carotid Artery

The *common carotid artery* **A1** forms, together with the *internal jugular vein* and the *vagus nerve*, the *neurovascular cord* from the neck to the head, which is covered by a connective tissue sheath (an extension of the middle leaf of the cervical fascia, see p. 166). In the lower part of the neck it lies beneath the *sternocleidomastoideus*. It leaves the protective cover of the latter in the middle of its anterior border and lies in the carotid triangle between the *omohyoid*, *sternocleidomastoid* and *digastric* (posterior belly) muscles, beneath the superficial layer of the fascia of the neck and the platysma.

The artery of the neck, the *common carotid artery*, passes through the neck without branching. It can be compressed **A2** against the prominent transverse process of the 6th cervical vertebra (carotid tubercle). At the level of the hyoid bone the common carotid divides into the *external* **A3** and *internal* **A4** carotid arteries at the *carotid bifurcation*. The vessel wall at the point of division is dilated into the *carotid sinus*, which contains a *pressorceptor area* with nerve endings sensitive to blood pressure. In the dividing fork there is also the *carotid glomus*, a pea-sized organ containing chemoreceptors sensitive to the partial pressure of oxygen in the blood. The internal carotid artery enters the skull without further division to supply blood to the orbits, hypophysis (pituitary gland) and the brain (see p. 58). The external carotid artery divides into branches to the neck, face, skullcap and the scalp.

## External Carotid Artery

The *superior thyroid artery* **B5** descends to the anterior surface of the thyroid gland giving off branches to the hyoid bone and sometimes to the *sternocleidomastoid* muscle, and then gives off the *superior laryngeal artery* **B6** to the

larynx as, together with the superior laryngeal nerve, it perforates the thyrohyoid membrane; see p. 118.

For the *lingual artery* **B7** see p. 56.

The *facial artery* **B8** runs behind the *styloideus* and *digastricus* deep to the submandibular gland, transverses the edge of the mandible at the anterior border of the *masseter* (where the pulse can be palpated **A9**) and arrives at the medial corner of the eye as the *angular artery* **B10**. Branches: the *ascending palatine artery* **B11**, the *tonsillar branch* **B12** (see p. 56) and the *submental artery* **B13** (see p. 56). The *inferior* and *superior labial arteries* **B14** anastomose with the corresponding vessels on the opposite side to form a vascular ring around the mouth, from which branches go to the upper and lower lips and to the nasal septum.

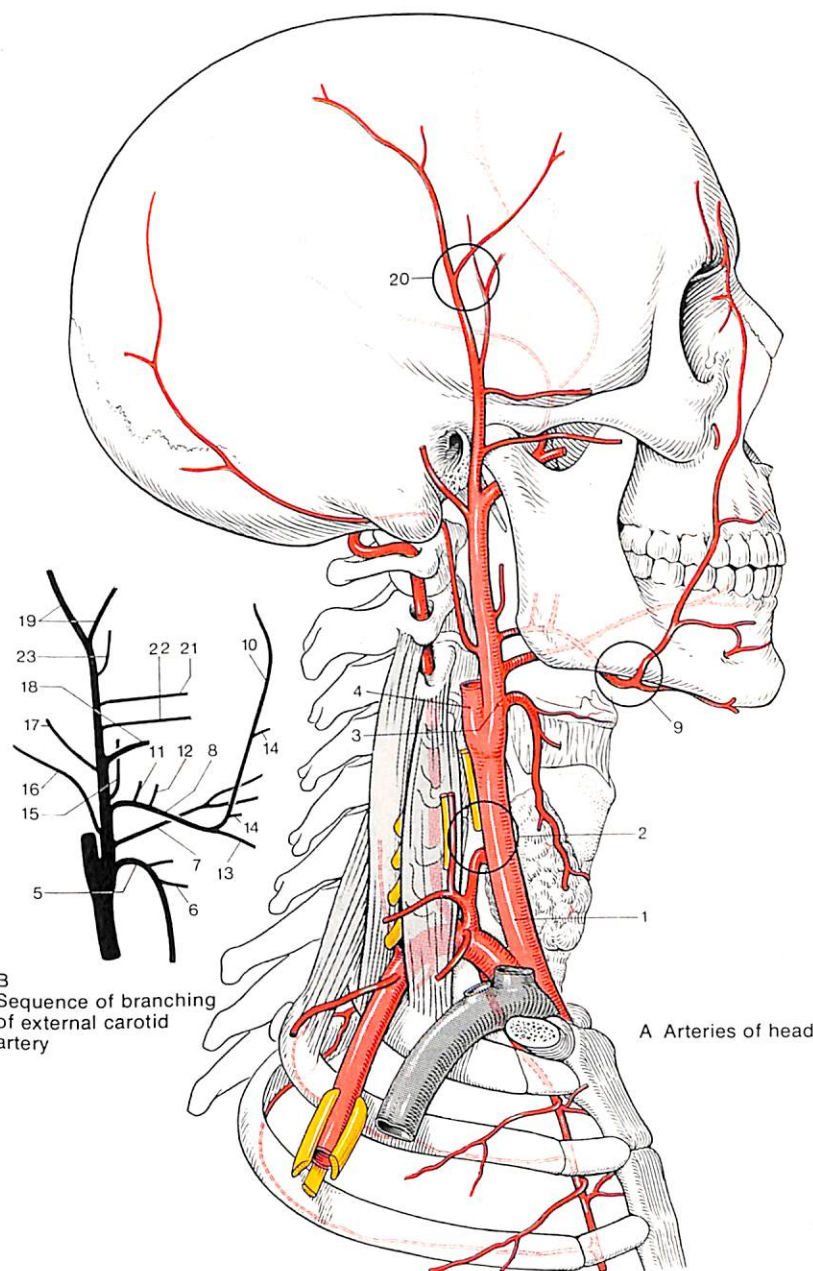
For the *ascending pharyngeal artery* **B15** see p. 56.

The *sternocleidomastoid branches* go to the muscle of that name. The *occipital artery* **B16** runs medial to the origin of the *digastricus* and then under the *splenius capitis* to the occiput.

The *posterior auricular artery* **B17** passes behind the ear, and gives off a branch, the *stylomastoid artery*, that runs through the *stylomastoid foramen* toward the facial nerve.

For the *maxillary artery* **B18**, see p. 56.

The *superficial temporal artery* **B19**, a superficial terminal vessel, divides in the temporal area into *frontal* and *parietal branches*. The pulse wave in it is visible and palpable **A20**. In old age the artery becomes quite prominent and coiled due to loss of elasticity and the deposition of calcium in its wall. Two branches, the *zygomaticorbital artery* **B21** and the *transverse facial artery* **B22** accompany the zygomatic arch. The *medial temporal artery* **B23** enters the temporal muscle. Compare **B** and **A**.



B  
Sequence of branching  
of external carotid  
artery

A Arteries of head



## Facial Arteries II

## Maxillary Artery

The *maxillary artery BC1*, the *deep terminal branch of the external carotid artery ABC2*, is larger than any of the superficial end branches. The maxillary artery passes behind the temporomandibular joint, obliquely through the deep region of the face to the pterygopalatine fossa. Three sections can be distinguished in the route of the artery, the section behind the temporomandibular joint, the section through the muscles of mastication and the part in the pterygopalatine fossa.

**Pathway around the temporomandibular joint.** Branches: small branch to the temporomandibular joint, external auditory meatus and middle ear (the deep auricular artery and anterior tympanic artery).

The *inferior alveolar artery BC3* gives off the *mylohyoid branch* before passing together with the inferior alveolar nerve into the mandibular canal. It supplies the teeth, the bone and the soft parts of the lower jaw. Finally, as the *mental artery B4*, it traverses the mental foramen to run to the skin of the chin.

The *middle meningeal artery ABC5* is the most important artery of the dura mater. It passes through the foramen spinosum into the middle cranial fossa. During its extradural course it divides into an anterior and posterior branch. The middle meningeal artery is usually accompanied near its origin by two branches of a cutaneous nerve, the auriculotemporal nerve **A6**. Small branches go to the soft palate, the trigeminal ganglion, the tympanic cavity and the facial canal.

**The pathway through the muscles of mastication.** Branches to the masticatory muscles: *masseteric artery B7*; *deep anterior B8* and *posterior B9 temporal artery B10* to the cheek and buccal mucus membrane (inner lining of the cheek).

**The pathway through the pterygoid fossa.** Branches: The *superior posterior alveolar artery B11* enters the maxilla at the

maxillary tuberosity and supplies the posterior teeth and gums. It forms an anastomosis with the *infraorbital artery B12* which passes through the inferior orbital fissure into the orbit and leaves it through the infraorbital canal and the infraorbital foramen. On its way it gives off the *anterior superior alveolar arteries* which supply the anterior teeth and the gums.

The *descending palatine artery B13* reaches the palate in the pterygopalatine canal. Note the *greater C14* and *lesser palatine arteries*. Compare **B** and **A**.

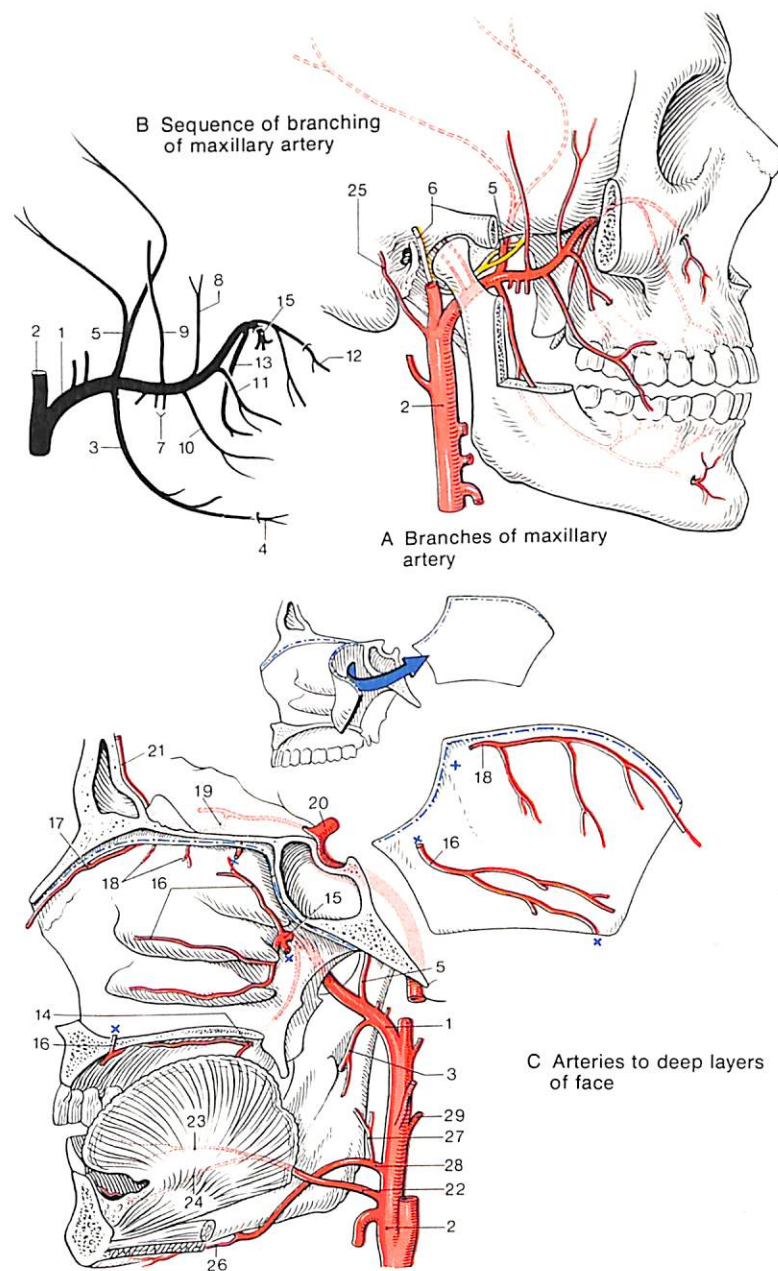
(The artery of the pterygoid canal runs in the pterygoid canal to reach the upper pharynx and Eustachian tube.)

The *sphenopalatine artery BC15* enters the nasal cavity through the sphenopalatine foramen and supplies its lateral, posterior and medial walls via the *posterior lateral nasal arteries C16*.

The roof of the nasal cavity receives the *anterior lateral nasal branches C17, 18* of the *anterior ethmoidal artery C19* (from the ophthalmic branch of the internal carotid artery **C20**). The latter also gives off the small anterior meningeal branch **C21**.

The *lingual artery C22* gives off branches **C23** to the sides of the tongue (the *dorsal lingual branches*), and to its body and tip (*deep lingual artery*). The *sublingual artery C24* goes to the sublingual gland and the gums.

The *posterior auricular artery* is shown as **A25**, the *submental artery* as **C26** and the *tonsillar branch C27* of the *facial artery C28*. The *ascending pharyngeal artery C29* supplies the lateral wall of the pharynx and the tympanic cavity. Its terminal branch is the *posterior meningeal artery* which passes through the jugular foramen.





## Arteries of the Brain

The brain is supplied by the *internal carotid artery B1* and the *vertebral artery B2*, see p. 52.

## Internal Carotid Artery

*Internal carotid artery B1* runs without dividing to the base of the skull. It enters the cranial cavity through the carotid canal in the petrous portion of the temporal bone (small branches from this part of the vessel go to the tympanic cavity). After leaving the canal it runs in an S-shape in the middle fossa of the skull (the *carotid siphon*) in the carotid sulcus beside the sella turcica (pituitary fossa) **A3** through the sinus cavernosus giving off small branches to the hypophysis, the trigeminal ganglion and the wall of the cavernous sinus. In its further course the internal carotid artery perforates the dura mater medial to the anterior clinoid process.

**Branches:** The *ophthalmic artery A4* runs with the optic nerve **A5** through the optic canal into the orbit. At first it lies beneath the optic nerve, then crosses over from its lateral to the medial side and divides into branches to the eyeball and the *external eye muscles*, namely the *central retinal* and *ciliary arteries*, and the *muscular arteries* (see Vol. 3), and to the tissues surrounding the orbit: the *lacrimal artery A6* to the lacrimal glands and to the eyelids (*lateral palpebral arteries*), the *supraorbital artery A7* to the forehead and the *ethmoidal arteries A8* to the ethmoidal air sinuses and the nasal cavity. From the anterior ethmoidal artery arises the *anterior meningeal branch A9* which runs to the dura mater. The *medial palpebral arteries*, the *supratrochlear artery* and the *dorsal nasal artery* go to the skin of the forehead, the medial corner of the eye and the bridge of the nose, respectively.

The *middle cerebral artery B10* is the immediate continuation of the internal carotid artery **B1** and runs in the lateral cerebral sulcus (of Sylvius). For its distribution in the brain see vol. 3. The

*anterior choroidal artery B11* goes to the tela choroidea of the lateral ventricles.

The *anterior cerebral artery B12* runs backward on the corpus callosum.

## Vertebral Artery

The *vertebral artery* arises from the subclavian artery (see p. 52) and passes on the arch of the atlas to the midline where it perforates the atlanto-occipital membrane and the dura mater to arrive in the posterior fossa of the skull by passing through the foramen magnum **A13**. Just above its anterior margin on the clivus the two *vertebral arteries* join to form the *basilar artery B14*. For its distribution in the brain see Vol. 3.

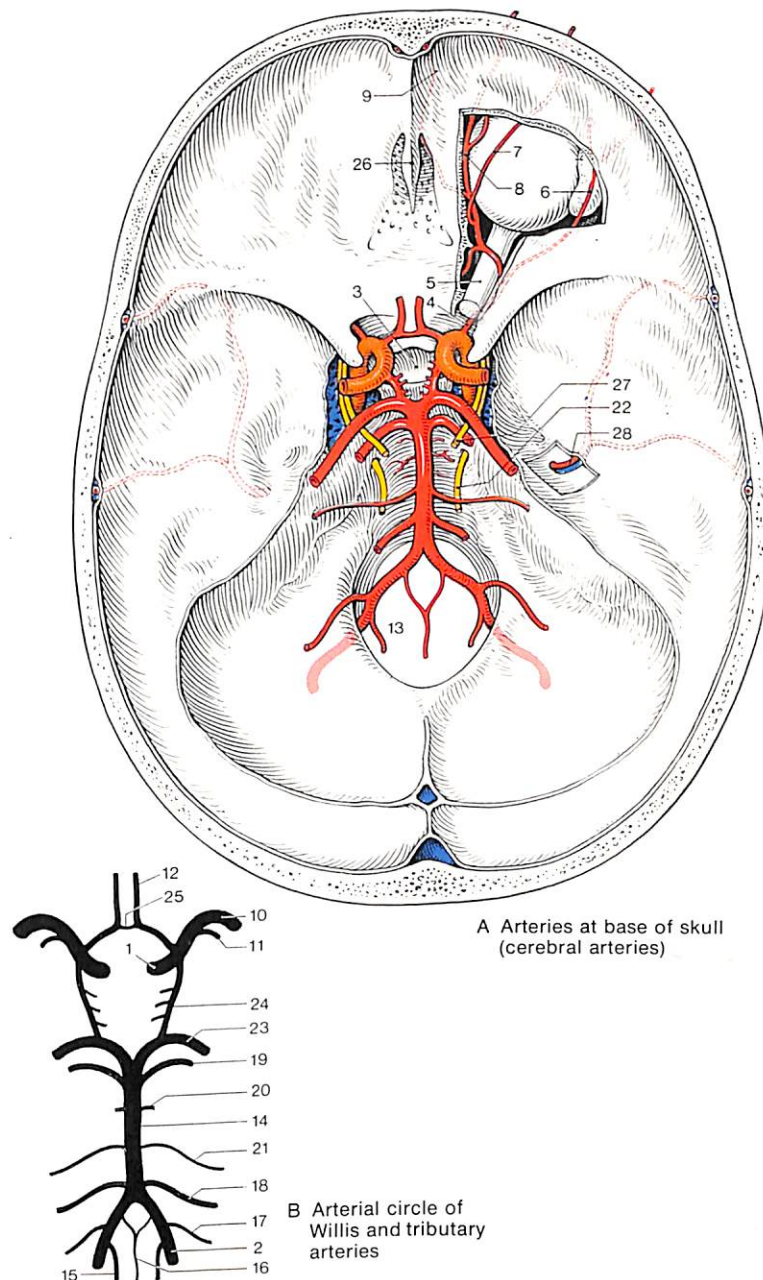
**Branches:** The horizontal segmental branches (the *spinal and muscular branches*) leave in the region of the cervical spine. Shortly before the vertebral arteries join to form the basilar artery, the longitudinal anastomoses for the spinal cord arise; the *paired posterior spinal arteries B15*, which run on the sides of the dorsal aspect of the cord, and the initially paired but subsequently unpaired *anterior spinal artery B16*, which runs along the anterior aspect of the spinal cord. The *paired posterior inferior cerebellar arteries B17* go to the cerebellum.

The *basilar artery B14* gives off the *anterior inferior cerebellar arteries B18* and the *superior cerebellar arteries B19* to the cerebellum. Between these vessels branches arise which go to the *pons B20* and the *labyrinthine artery B21* to the internal auditory meatus. **A22** Abducens nerve.

The basilar artery ends in the *posterior cerebral artery B23* above the cerebellar tentorium.

## Cerebral arterial circle (of Willis)

The *posterior B23* and *middle B10* cerebral arteries on each side are connected by the *posterior communicating artery B24*. Together with the *anterior communicating artery B25*, between the two anterior cerebral arteries, they form an arterial circle around the sella turcica at the base of the brain. Numerous short arteries arising from it pass into the neighboring basal part of the diencephalon. **A26** Crista galli, **A27** oculomotor nerve, **A28** middle meningeal artery. Compare **B** and **A**.



A Arteries at base of skull (cerebral arteries)

B Arterial circle of Willis and tributary arteries



## Veins of the Brain and Venous Sinuses of the Dura Mater I

### Veins of the Vertebral Column

Blood from the brain flows via the cerebral veins first into the rigid blood channels of the dura mater, the venous sinuses, and from there into the veins of the neck and face, or into the veins of the spinal canal.

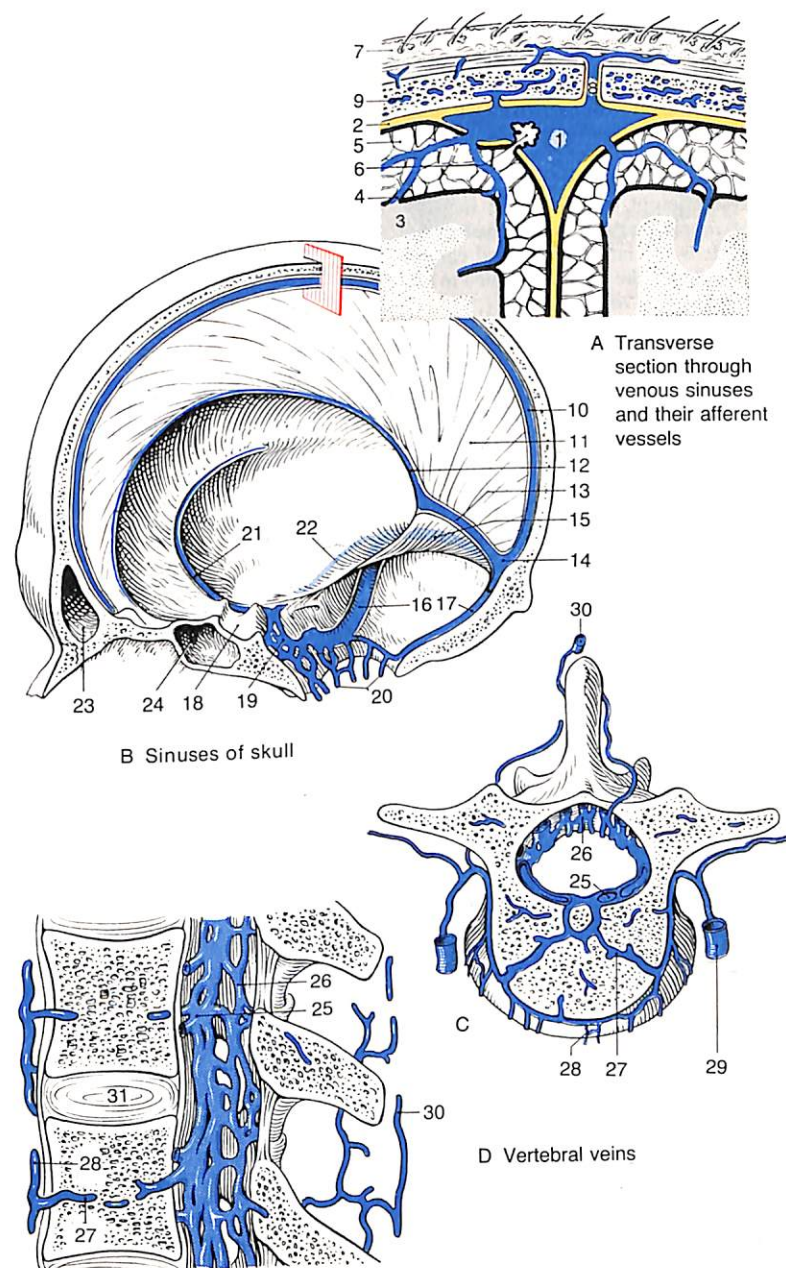
**A Sinuses of the dura mater.** The rigid walls of the venous sinuses **A1** are formed by reduplication of the dura mater **A2**. Each sinus is lined by endothelium but lacks the muscle layer of the venous wall. The cerebral veins **A4**, which emerge from the surface of the brain **A3**, pass through the subarachnoid space of the leptomeninges **A5** to enter the nearest venous sinus **A1**, either directly or, as in the case of the superior sagittal sinus, after having passed through lakelike confluences, the *lateral lacunae*. An arachnoid villus (*granulatio arachnoidealis*, Pacchionian granulation) **A6** extends into the superior sagittal sinus. At the base of the skull the sinuses join veins, but they also have direct communications leading to the veins of the scalp **A7**, the *emissary veins* **A8**. In addition, there are numerous veins inside the skull, the *diploic veins* **A9**, which have connections with the sinuses as well as with the frontal, temporal and occipital veins of the scalp. The sinuses are embedded in grooves in the bony skull.

Some of the cerebrospinal fluid is transferred into the venous blood (cf. vol. 3) via arachnoid villi, *granulationes arachnoideales* (Pacchioni) **A6**, nonvascular arachnoid bundles that bulge into the cranial veins and sinuses of the dura mater.

**B** The *superior sagittal sinus* **A1**, **B10** runs along the attachment of the falx cerebri **B11** to the cranium. The falx is formed by the dura mater and juts out between the two hemispheres of the brain. The *inferior sagittal sinus* **B12** lies at the lower border of the falx cerebri. The *straight sinus* **B13** takes the blood from the former sinus and from the *great cerebral vein* (see Vol. 3), to the conflu-

ence with the superior sagittal sinus, the *confluence of the sinuses* **B14**. There the *transverse sinus* arises, at the origin of the tentorium cerebelli **B15**, which is also formed by dura mater. The transverse sinus continues as the *sigmoid sinus* **B16** along the posterior lower margin of the pyramidal part of the petrous bone to the posterior circumference of the jugular foramen. The internal jugular vein begins in the jugular foramen with a bulge, the *bulb of the superior jugular vein*. The *occipital sinus* **B17** is a connection which extends from the confluence of the sinuses to the foramen magnum (connection to the sigmoid sinus via an anastomosis, the "marginal sinus"). The *basilar plexus* **B19** descends behind the sella turcica **B18** toward the foramen magnum. *Veins* **B20** arise from the circle of sinuses around the foramen magnum. They perforate the dura mater which becomes detached from the bone and periosteum at the rim of the foramen magnum. They drain into the epidural venous plexuses of the spine, particularly those of the spinal canal, the *vertebral venous plexus*. **B21** The *sphenoparietal sinus*, **B22** the *superior petrosal sinus*, **B23** the *frontal sinus*, **B24** the *sphenoidal sinus*. For the cavernous sinus and the inferior petrosal sinus see p. 62.

**CD Vertebral venous plexus.** In the vertebral canal between the dura mater and the periosteum is a large venous plexus consisting of the *anterior internal* **CD25** and *posterior* **CD26** vertebral venous plexuses. It also receives blood from the *basivertebral veins* **CD27**, which, in turn, are connected through the vertebrae to the anterior external vertebral venous plexus **CD28** in front of the vertebral column. This plexus is connected to the *azygos* and *hemiazygos veins* **C29**. In between the vertebral arches veins run to the poorly developed external posterior vertebral venous plexus **CD30** along the process of the vertebral column. Intervertebral disk **D31**. (From an illustration by Rauber-Kopsch.)





## Venous Sinuses of the Dura Mater II

The venous sinuses at the base of the skull have two main confluences on each side: in the *cavernous sinuses* **AB1** in the middle fossa of the skull, which receives numerous afferent vessels and drains into several efferent channels; and the *sigmoid sinus* **B2** in the posterior fossa of the skull. It is the largest sinus and carries blood through the jugular foramen to the internal jugular vein.

The *cavernous sinus* **AB1** is paired and lies on either side of the sella turcica and the pituitary gland **AB3**, above the sphenoidal air sinus **A4**. It is incompletely divided by connective tissue septa. The internal carotid artery **AB5** and the abducens nerve **A6** pass through it. The oculomotor nerve **A7**, the trochlear nerve **A8** and the ophthalmic nerve **A9** run in the lateral wall of the sinus, and the maxillary nerve **A10** lies at its base. The *cavernous sinus* has the following vascular connections which, according to the direction of the blood flow, may either be afferent or efferent.

The *intercavernous sinuses*, which connect the cavernous sinuses in front of and behind the hypophysis.

The *sphenoparietal sinus* **B11**, which runs on both sides along the crest of the lesser wings of the sphenoid bone.

The *superior petrosal sinus* **B12** runs along the superior margin of each side of the petrous bone to the sigmoid sinus.

The *inferior petrosal sinus* **B13** passes along the posterior aspect of the inferior margin of each petrous bone to reach the anterior part of the jugular foramen.

The *basilar plexus* **B14** is connected with the venous network of the spinal canal through the foramen magnum **B15** (see p. 60).

The *superior ophthalmic vein* **B16** connects the cavernous sinuses with the facial veins via the *angular vein* in the medial part of the corner of the eye. It is a pathway by which infections in the upper

lip area may cause thrombosis of the cavernous sinus. Venous pathways also extend via the foramen ovale and the orbits to the *pterygoid plexus* in the deep region of the face (see p. 64).

The *superficial middle cerebral veins* and *inferior cerebral veins* (see vol. 3).

The *sigmoid sinus* **B2**: blood flows into it from the *confluence of the sinuses* **B17**. It is the site where the *superior sagittal sinus* **B18** and the *straight sinus* come together (see p. 60).

The *transverse sinus* **B19** originates on each side from the confluence of the sinuses. It runs at first within the attachment of the tentorium cerebelli. On the posterior surface of the petrous bone it continues as the *sigmoid sinus*, which leads through the posterior part of the jugular foramen into the *superior bulb of the jugular vein*.

The *occipital sinus* **B20** is an unpaired venous sinus which divides at the posterior circumference of the foramen magnum. As an anastomosis, the "marginal sinus" **B21** it connects with the sigmoid sinus and the venous network of the spinal canal. **B22** Crista galli.

**Emissary veins** are direct connections between the sinuses and nearby extracranial veins.

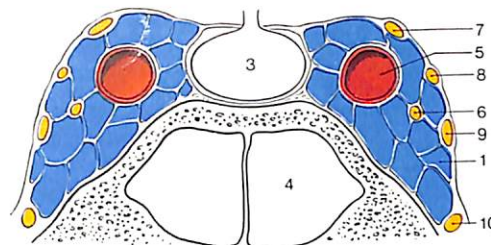
The *mastoid emissary vein* connects the transverse sinus with the occipital vein.

The *parietal emissary vein* connects the superior sagittal sinus with the veins of the scalp.

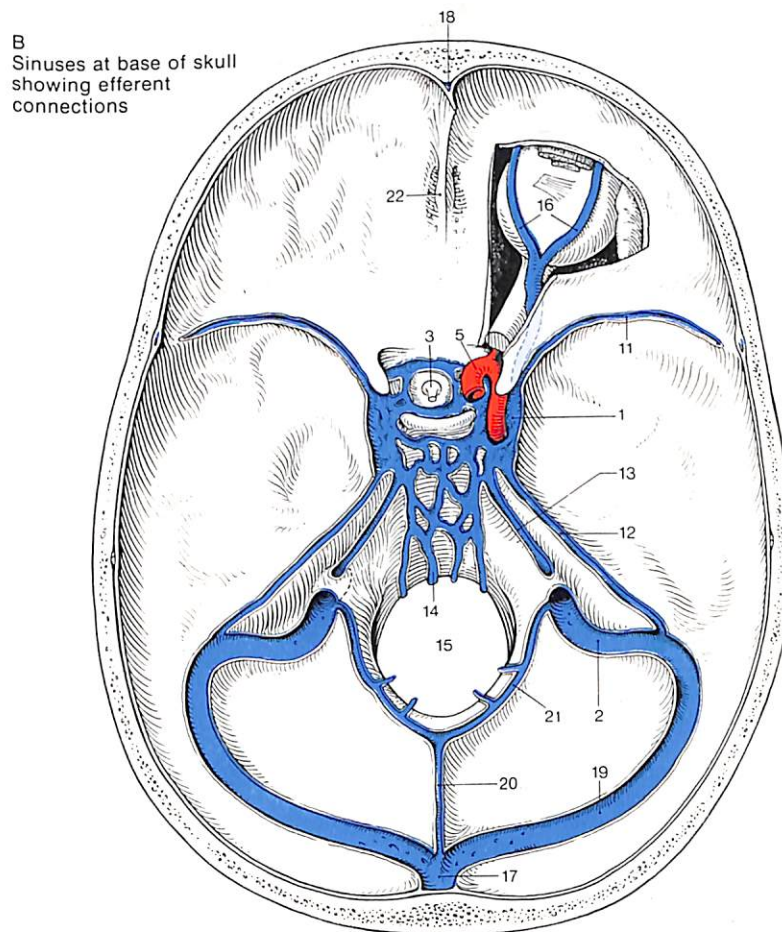
The *condyloid emissary vein* connects the sigmoid (transverse) sinus with the external vertebral venous plexus.

The *occipital emissary vein* connects the confluence of the sinuses with the occipital vein.

The *diploic veins* are veins in the diploe of the cranial bones that are connected, on the one hand, to veins inside the skull and, on the other, join up via four venous branches – the *frontal diploic vein*, *temporal diploic veins*, and *occipital diploic vein* – with more distant veins in the scalp (cf. p. 60).



A Transverse section through cavernous sinus



B Sinuses at base of skull showing efferent connections



## Veins of the Face and Neck

Blood coming from the facial part of the skull, from the upper cervical viscera and most of the blood from the cranium, as well as from the distribution areas of the internal and external carotid arteries, is directed via the great vein of the neck, the **internal jugular vein 1**, and several smaller veins on the upper thoracic aperture. There the internal jugular vein with the **subclavian vein 2** from the shoulder and arm forms the **brachiocephalic vein** (innominate). The innominate veins on either side combine to form the superior vena cava. At the **venous angle**, where the internal jugular and the subclavian veins combine, large lymph vessels flow into the veins: on the left the **thoracic duct** and on the right the **right lymphatic duct 3**. The subclavian vein lies in front of the anterior scalenus 4 and the subclavian artery 5 passes between the scalenus anterior and medialis 6 (in the scalenus gap).

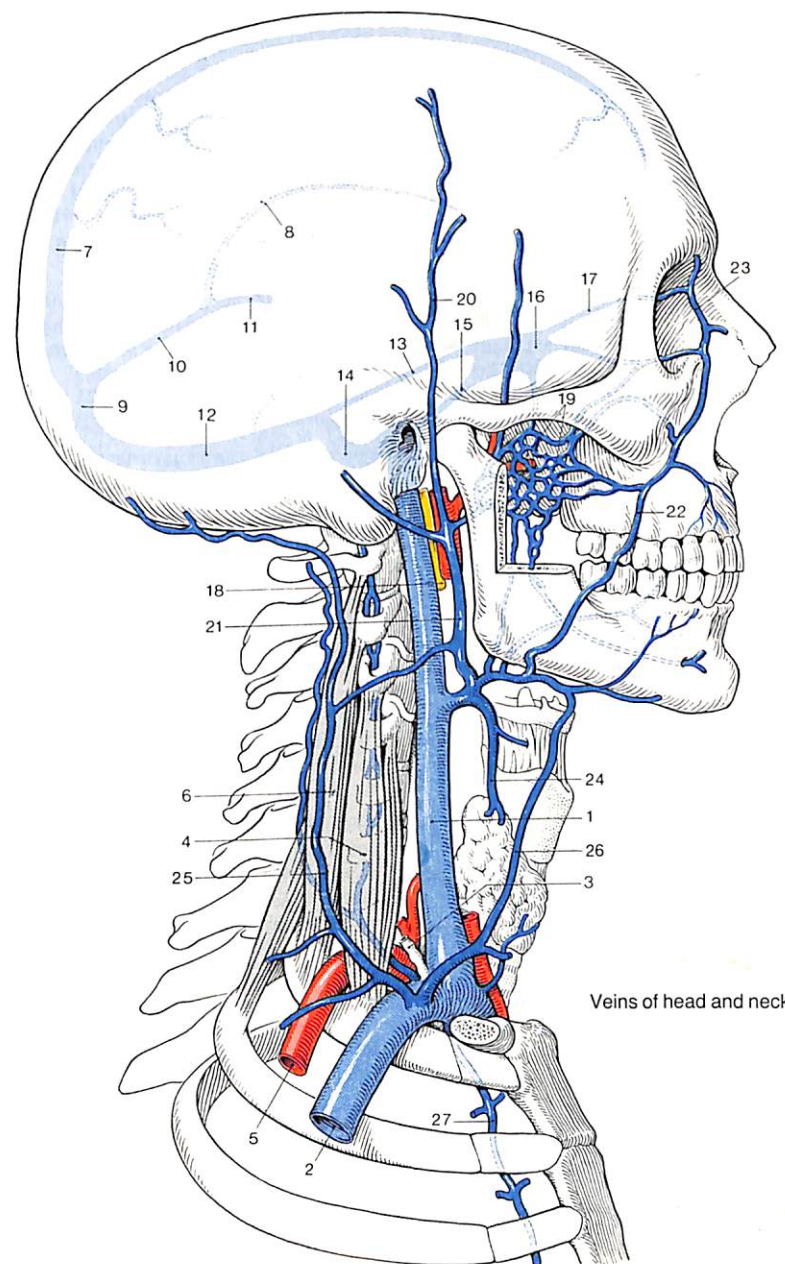
The **internal jugular vein** starts at the jugular foramen at the base of the skull where it has a dilatation, the **superior bulb of the jugular vein**. Here it receives its **afferents from the sinuses of the dura mater**:

7 Superior sagittal sinus, 8 inferior sagittal sinus, 9 confluence of the sinuses, 10 straight sinus, 11 great cerebral vein, 12 transverse sinus, 13 superior petrosal sinus, 14 sigmoid sinus, 15 inferior petrosal sinus, 16 cavernous sinus, 17 superior ophthalmic vein.

The **internal jugular vein** lies with the **vagus nerve 18** and the **internal carotid artery** in a common connective tissue sheath, the **vagina carotica**, which is connected to the pretracheal cervical fascia (cf. p. 167, C7). For this reason the lumen of the internal vein is kept open by the pull of the lower hyoid muscle and the return of the blood to the heart is facilitated. In perforating injuries to the vein (e.g., knife wound) air can be aspirated into the vein leading to air embolism.

Blood also flows into the internal jugular vein from the **face and neck**: from the **pterygoid plexus 19**, lying in the deep areas of the face between the masticatory muscles, which is connected with the **cavernous sinus 16**, and with numerous veins, among them veins from the orbits and the face and with the first part of the retromandibular vein via the maxillary veins. The pterygoid plexus and the **superficial temporal veins 20**, as well as the veins from the ear, drain into the **retromandibular 21 (posterior facial) vein 22**, which, as the **angular vein 23**, anastomoses in the medial corner of the eye with the **superior ophthalmic vein 17**, into the internal jugular vein. The **superior thyroid vein 24** also passes into the internal jugular vein. A venous network lying on the pharyngeal muscles, the **pharyngeal plexus**, often ends with its own veins, the **pharyngeal veins**, in the internal jugular vein. These veins may also carry blood from the larynx and the thyroid gland.

The **external jugular vein 25** originates from the occipital veins and the posterior auricular vein. It runs between the superficial layer of the cervical fascia and the platysma and often flows directly into the subclavian vein. The **anterior jugular vein 26** comes from the hyoid region and also lies outside the main fascia. The **vertebral and internal thoracic 27** veins usually empty into the brachiocephalic vein near the venous angle.



Veins of head and neck



### Arteries of the Shoulder and Upper Arm

The shoulder and upper arm are supplied by the *subclavian artery* **B1**. It runs behind the clavicle and becomes the *axillary artery* **B2**, which extends to the lower border of the pectoralis major (anterior axillary fold) and there becomes the *brachialis artery* **B3**.

**A4** Scalenus anterior, **A5** pectoralis minor, **A6** latissimus dorsi, **A7** long head of the triceps, **B8** common carotid artery.

**Compression:** The subclavian artery **A9** can be compressed against the first rib by pulling the arm backward and downward; the *brachial artery* at **A10** can be compressed against the humerus.

**Branches of the subclavian artery B1** to the shoulder girdle: the *suprascapular (transverse scapular) artery* **B11** which arises from the *thyrocervical trunk* **B12** (see p. 52), runs parallel to the clavicle through the lateral cervical region and across the transverse ligament of the scapula to the supra- and infraspinatus. The *transverse artery of the neck* arises from the thyrocervical trunk in 40% of cases and runs to the trapezius muscle. For cervical branches of the subclavian artery and branches to the chest wall see p. 52.

**Branches of the axillary artery B12:** the *highest thoracic artery* **B13** (which is variable) goes to the muscles of the chest wall and the *thoracoacromial artery* **B14** sends branches to the pectoral muscles and to the shoulder. The *lateral thoracic artery* **B15**, at the lateral border of the pectoralis minor, runs downward to the pectoral muscles and the mammary gland. The *subscapular artery*, a short vessel, divides into the *circumflex scapular artery* **B16**, which passes through the medial axillary gap to the dorsal face of the scapula, and the *thoracodorsal artery* **B17** (with the thoracodorsal muscle to the lateral margin of the inner surface of the latissimus dorsi). The latter reaches the lateral border of the inner surface of the latissimus dorsi and adjacent muscles,

together with the thoracodorsal nerve. The *posterior circumflex artery of the humerus* **B18** is a large branch which travels with the axillary nerve through the lateral axillary gap **A19** to lie on the surgical neck of the upper arm. The *anterior circumflex artery of the humerus* **B20** is a small branch in front of the surgical neck. Both of these arteries are endangered in a fracture of the neck of the humerus (unusual).

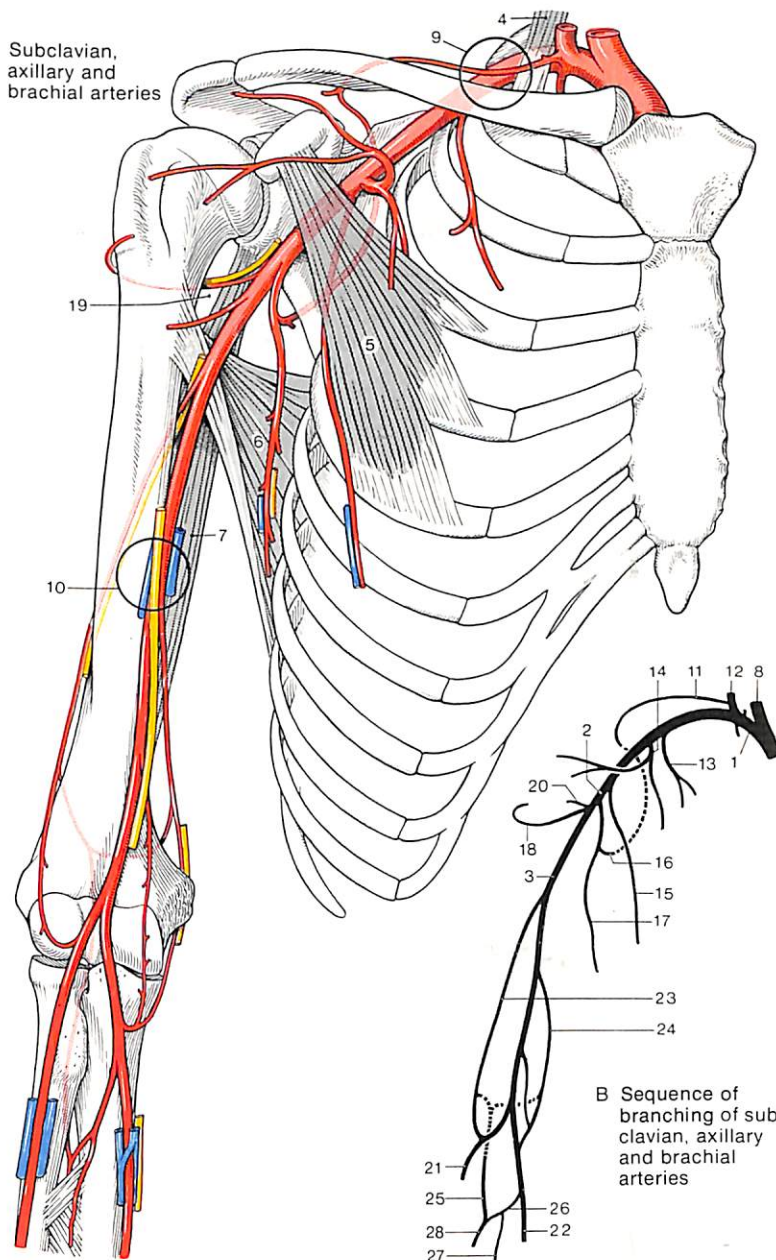
The *brachial artery* **B3** lies in the median groove of the biceps with the median nerve. At the elbow, the aponeurosis of the biceps muscle, the brachial artery divides into the *radial artery* **B21** and the *ulnar artery* **B22**.

**Branches of the brachial artery:** The *deep brachial artery* **B23** descends outward together with the radial nerve below the attachment of the latissimus dorsi on the posterior surface of the humerus. It ends as the *middle collateral artery*, situated behind the lateral epicondyle, and as the *radial collateral artery*, which is accompanied by the radial nerve. The *superior ulnar collateral artery* **B24** arises after the deep brachial artery and passes with the ulnar nerve behind the medial epicondyle. The *inferior ulnar collateral artery* runs through the intermuscular septum to the elbow.

**Arterial network around the elbow:** The collaterals of the brachial arteries and the recurrent branches from the antebrachial arteries (see p. 68) form together the arterial anastomotic network around the olecranon, the *rete articulare cubiti*.

**B25** Recurrent interosseous artery, **B26** common interosseous artery, **B27** anterior interosseous artery, **B28** posterior interosseous artery, see p. 68. Compare **B** and **A**.

**A** Subclavian, axillary and brachial arteries





## Arteries of the Forearm and Hand

The **brachial artery B1** divides between the aponeurosis of the biceps into the **radial B2** and **ulnar arteries B3**.

The **radial artery** runs with the superficial branch of the radial nerve beneath the brachioradialis **A4** (a guideline structure) to the thumb side of the hand. The pulse can be palpated at **A5** in the lower third of the forearm medial to the tendon of the brachioradialis muscle. The radial artery at the level of the carpus passes through the radial foveola ('anatomist's snuff box') (see Vol. 1) onto the dorsum of the hand. It runs dorsally around the 1st metacarpal bone and between the two heads of the 1st dorsal interosseous muscle to the palm as part of the **deep palmar arch AB6**. Branches:

The **radial recurrent artery B7** runs to the rete cubiti, and small branches to the carpus and the superficial palmar arch – the **palmar carpal, superficial palmar and dorsal carpal branches**. The **dorsal metacarpal artery** goes to the dorsal aspect of the thumb and index finger. The **principal artery of the thumb BC8** runs to the palmar aspect of the thumb and index finger.

The **ulnar artery B3** runs beneath the flexor carpi ulnaris **A9** to the little finger side of the wrist and ends as the superficial palmar arch. Branches:

The **recurrent ulnar artery B10** goes to the rete articulare cubiti, and the **common interosseous artery B11** leaves the ulnar artery in the cubital fossa. It gives off the **recurrent interosseous artery B12** which divides immediately into the **posterior** and the **anterior interosseous arteries**. The posterior vessel comes to lie between the oblique cord and the interosseous membrane on its dorsal aspect. From there it runs with the deep branch of the radial nerve between the superficial and deep extensor muscles toward the hand. The **anterior interosseous artery** runs along the palmar aspect of the interosseous membrane toward the hand. There are also smaller branches of the recurrent interosseous artery which go to the carpus and to the deep palmar arch: the **dorsal and palmar carpal branches** and the **deep palmar branch**.

The arteries of the hand lie mainly in the muscles of the palm where the metacarpal and finger arteries arise from the **two arterial palmar arches**. A weaker dorsal carpal branch of the radial artery gives off arteries to the back of the hand.

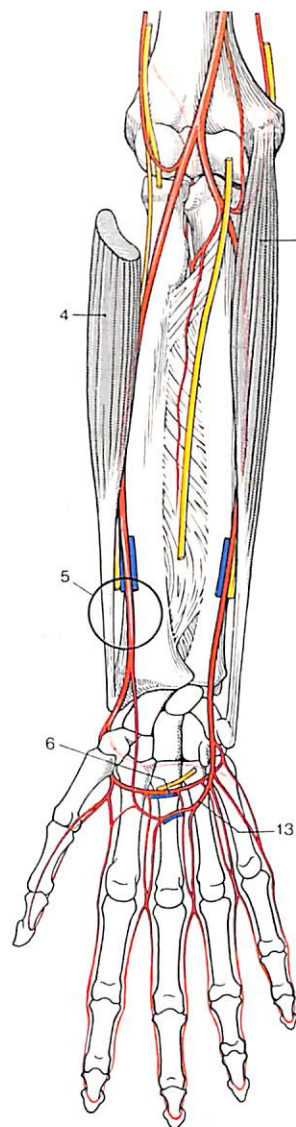
The **superficial palmar arch AB13**, distally near the heads of the metacarpal bones, is supplied mainly by the **ulnar artery B3** (the **superficial palmar branch** of the radial artery is an inconstant vessel). The **three common palmar digital arteries B14** arise from the superficial palmar arch and each divides into 2 **common palmar digital arteries B15** to the adjacent sides of pairs of fingers. The little finger receives its artery directly from the palmar arch.

The **deep palmar arch AB6** lies proximally near the bases of the metacarpal bones. It is supplied mainly by the **radial artery B2**, but it also receives a **deep palmar branch** from the ulnar artery. The **3rd and 4th palmar metacarpal arteries** arise from the deep palmar arch. They form anastomoses with the common palmar digital arteries of the superficial arch and through **perforating branches** with the dorsal metacarpal arteries.

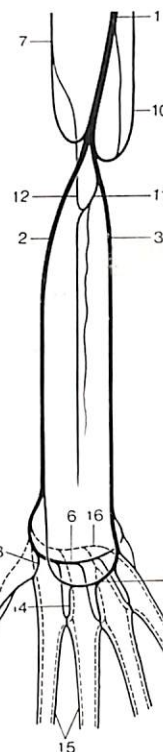
The **dorsal carpal branch BC16**, a small branch of the radial artery, passes to the dorsal aspect of the carpus. It gives off the **dorsal metacarpal arteries** from which the small digital arteries arise. The carpal branches form networks: the **palmar and dorsal carpal rete**.

**D** Course of the dorsal and palmar arteries and nerves of the fingers. Compare **B** with **A**, **C** and **D**.

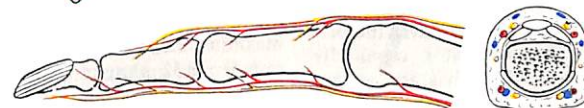
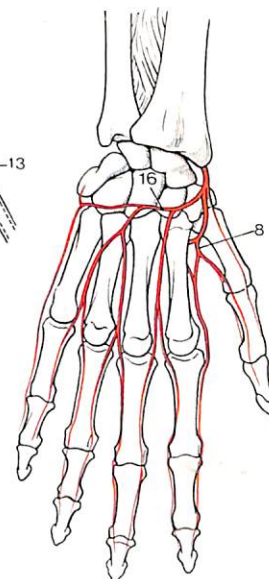
A Arteries of forearm (flexor aspect)



B Sequence of branching of antebrachial arteries



C Arteries of dorsum of hand



D Arteries and nerves of finger



## Arteries of the Pelvis

The **aorta C1** divides (bifurcation of the aorta) in front of the 4th lumbar vertebra (at the origin of the median sacral artery **C2**) into the **two common iliac arteries C3**. Each then divides without giving off further branches into the **internal C4** (for the pelvic organs) and the **external C5 iliac arteries**. The latter passes below the inguinal ligament **A6**, through the "lacuna vasorum" **A7** to the thigh. It supplies the leg and gives off small branches to the anterior abdominal wall and the external genitalia.

**Internal iliac artery C4.** The short artery divides into an anterior **C8** and a posterior **C9** part and gives off *parietal branches* for the wall of the pelvis and buttock region, and *visceral branches* for the viscera. There is marked variability in the origin and distribution of its branches.

**Parietal branches:** *Iliolumbar artery C10* to the upper part of the ilium, *psaos and quadratus lumborum muscles and vertebral canal*.

The *lateral sacral artery C11*, often duplicated, runs laterally downward along the sacrum and gives off spinal branches into the anterior sacral foramina.

The largest branch, the *superior gluteal artery C12*, leaves the pelvis through the suprapiriform part of the greater sciatic foramen **AB13** to supply the gluteal muscles; a deep branch supplies the hip joint.

The *inferior gluteal artery BC14* leaves the pelvis together with the sciatic nerve and the internal pudendal artery through the infrapiriform part of the greater sciatic foramen **AB15**. It supplies the glutei and adductor muscles.

The *obturator artery C16* passes forward along the lateral wall of the pelvis and has a *pubic branch* that runs toward the inferior epigastric artery. It leaves the pelvis through the obturator canal. Its branches outside the pelvis are: an *anterior branch* to the adductor muscles and the skin of the external genitalia, a *pos-*

*terior branch* to the deep external muscles of the hip, and an *acetabular branch* through the ligamentum capitis femoris to the head of the femur (see p. 72).

The *internal pudendal artery BC17* passes through the infrapiriform part of the greater sciatic foramen **AB15**, around the sacrospinous ligament **A18** in the pudendal canal (in the fascia of the internal obturator muscle, Alcock's canal). Then, accompanied by the pudendal nerve **A19**, it passes along the ramus of the ischium, beneath the subpubic angle. It gives off branches to the anus, perineum, urethra and the penis or clitoris (see p. 310).

**Visceral branches:** The *middle rectal (hemorrhoidal) artery C20* supplies the rectal ampulla. It has anastomoses with the superior rectal branch of the inferior mesenteric artery and the inferior rectal artery (compare p. 248). It supplies the levator ani muscle and in the male the prostate and seminal vesicles.

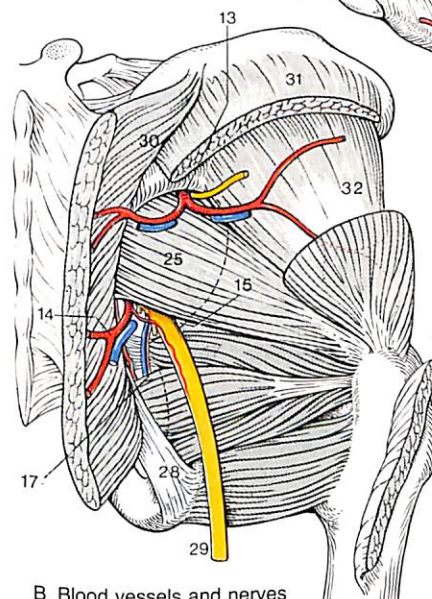
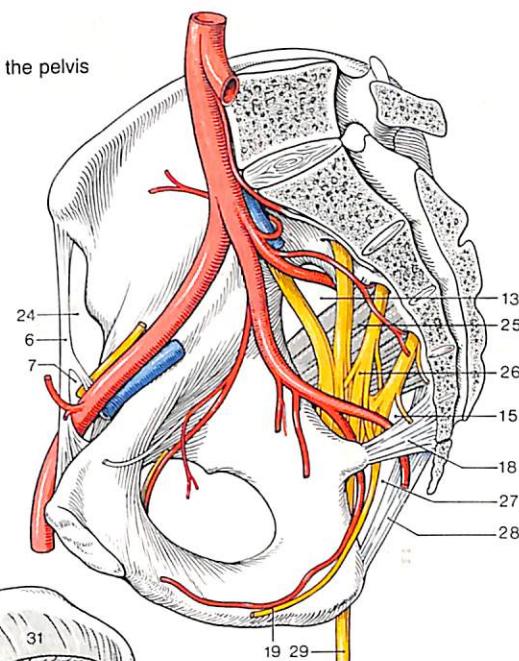
The *uterine artery C21* runs in the connective tissue below the broad ligament of the uterus to the cervix (see p. 304). In the male the artery to the ductus deferens is a thin vessel.

The *inferior vesicular artery* gives branches to the fundus of the bladder, the ureter and prostate or vagina.

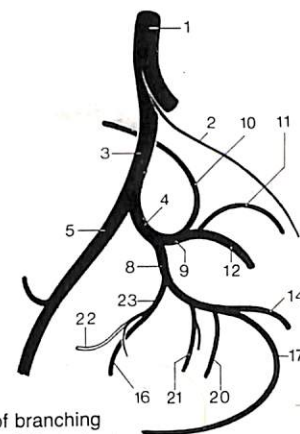
During fetal life, the *umbilical artery C22* runs to the placenta (see p. 332) and after birth gives off the *superior vesical artery*, the *artery of the ductus deferens*, and branches to the ureter (*pars patens*). After birth the rest of it becomes obliterated (*pars occlusa*) and forms the medial umbilical ligament. **C23** is the common stem of the obturator and umbilical arteries.

**A24** Acuna of muscles, **AB25** piriformis muscle, **A26** sacral plexus, **A27** lesser sciatic foramen, **AB28** sacrotuberous ligament, **AB29** sciatic nerve, **B30** gluteus maximus muscle, **B31** gluteus medius muscle, **B32** gluteus minimus muscle. Compare C with A and B.

A Arteries of the pelvis



B Blood vessels and nerves of the deep gluteal region (supra- and infrapiriform foramina)



C Sequence of branching of the internal iliac artery



## Arteries of the Pelvis and the Thigh

(Compare with p. 70.) The *internal iliac artery C1*: C2 superior gluteal artery, C3 iliolumbar artery, C4 common iliac artery, C5 abdominal aorta, C6 middle sacral artery, C7 lateral sacral artery, C8 inferior gluteal artery, C9 uterine artery, C10 inferior rectal (hemorrhoidal) artery, C11 obturator artery after exit of the umbilical artery, C12 internal pudendal artery, C13 piriformis, and C14 sacrospinal ligament.

The *external iliac artery C15* reaches the terminal line from above and runs through the lacuna vasorum to the thigh as the *femoral artery (A16 site of compression against the pubic crest)*. The *femoral artery* passes laterally and the *femoral vein* and *lymph vessels* pass medially through the *lacuna vasorum*, situated between the inguinal ligament and the psoas fascia. (The femoral nerve runs with the iliopsoas muscle through the lacuna musculorum which lies laterally.)

*Branches of the external iliac artery to the internal abdominal wall:* The *inferior epigastric artery C17*, which runs to the posterior surface of the rectus abdominis muscle, forms a longitudinal anastomosis with the internal thoracic artery, the continuation of which, the *superior epigastric artery*, runs across the transversus abdominis muscle into the rectus sheath. The inferior epigastric artery crosses the posterior wall of the inguinal canal and sends a *pubic branch* to the obturator artery. The *deep circumflex iliac artery C18* runs in an arch along the iliac crest and gives off branches to the abdominal wall before anastomosing with the iliolumbar artery.

The *femoral artery C19*, the continuation of the *external iliac artery*, passes along the groove between the vastus medialis muscle and the adductor muscles. It is covered by the fascia lata and the aponeurosis of the adductor muscle A20, and by the sartorius muscle (guideline structure). It runs downward in the *adductor canal* and as the *popliteal artery* it enters the popliteal fossa medial to the femur.

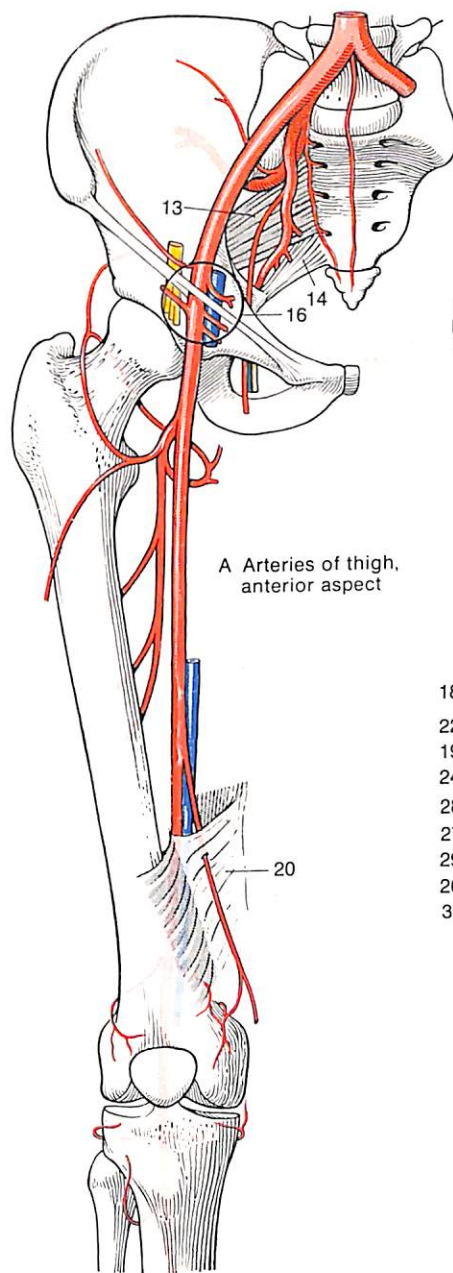
**Superficial branches:** The *superficial epigastric artery C21* goes to the outer surface of the abdominal wall, the *superficial circumflex iliac artery C22* runs parallel to the inguinal ligament to the anterior superior iliac spine. The *external pudendal artery C23*, often duplicated, supplies the external genitalia. Other branches go to the extensor and adductor muscles and to the wall of the inguinal region.

**Deep branches:** The largest branch is the *deep femoral artery BC24* which supplies the thigh muscles and the femur. Other branches that also commonly arise directly from the femoral artery are the *medial circumflex femoral artery C25*, with the *deep branch B26a* to the origins of the ischiofemoral muscles and with the *ascending branch BC26*, which rises behind the neck of the femur and forms an arterial ring together with the lateral circumflex femoral artery (anastomoses with the gluteal arteries). A *transverse branch B26b* branches into the adductors. The variable *acetabular branch* enters the incisura of the acetabulum to supply the head of the femur.

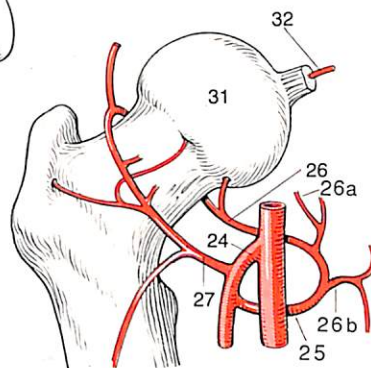
The *lateral circumflex femoral artery BC27* gives off an *ascending branch C28* to the head of the femur and a *descending branch C29* to the quadriceps femoris muscle. Terminal branches of the deep femoral artery C30 are represented by 3(-5) *perforating arteries* to the adductors and the dorsal muscles of the thigh.

The *head B31* and *neck of the femur* and the capsule of the hip joint are thus supplied by both circumflex femoral arteries; the head receives an additional supply from the obturator artery by its *acetabular branch* in the ligamentum capitis femoris B32.

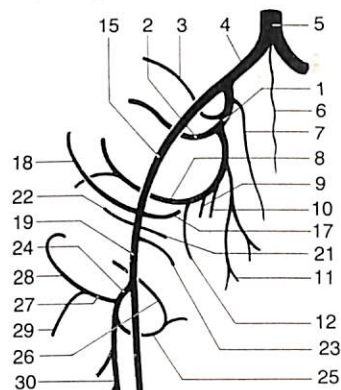
The *articular rete of the knee* in front of the knee joint (not shown) has the following afferent vessels: the *descending genicular artery C33* arises from the femoral artery and penetrates the aponeurosis of the adductor muscle A20 on which it descends. The lateral C34 and medial C35 superior genicular arteries, the lateral C36 and medial C37 inferior genicular arteries, are all branches of the *popliteal artery*. The anterior C38 and posterior recurrent tibial arteries arise from the tibial arteries. The anterior tibial artery is C39. The *medial genicular artery C40* penetrates the knee joint. Compare C with A and B.



A Arteries of thigh, anterior aspect



B Arteries of hip joint



C Sequence of branching of internal and external iliac arteries



## Arteries of the Leg and Foot

The **popliteal artery** runs through the adductor canal to enter the popliteal fossa at the flexor side of the knee. It is called the popliteal artery until its division into the **anterior ABC1** and **posterior AB2 tibial arteries**. Lying in the popliteal fossa **A3** from dorsolateral to ventromedial, are the tibial nerve, popliteal vein and popliteal artery.

Branches to the *genicular rete* (see p. 72): Lateral **AC4** and medial **AC5** superior genicular arteries, and lateral **AC6** and medial **AC7** inferior genicular arteries.

The **medial genicular artery A8** perforates the capsule of the knee joint and supplies the connective tissue space within it. The sural arteries supply the calf muscles.

The **anterior tibial artery ABC1** perforates the interosseous membrane at the lower border of the popliteus muscle, where the anterior **B9** and posterior **B10** recurrent tibial arteries join the genicular rete. The anterior tibial artery runs with the deep peroneal nerve, embedded in the extensor muscles to the dorsum of the foot, where it continues as the **dorsal artery of the foot B11**.

The **lateral and medial malleolar rete** above the ankles are supplied by branches from the anterior and posterior tibial arteries: the medial anterior malleolar artery and lateral anterior malleolar artery originate from the anterior tibial artery.

The **dorsal artery of the foot B11** lies with the deep peroneal nerve, lateral to the tendon of the extensor hallucis longus muscle, when the pulse can be palpated **C12**. It gives off the **lateral tarsal artery B13**, and together with these arteries it forms a vascular arcade, the **arcuate artery B14**, across the heads of the metatarsal bones. The **dorsal metatarsal arteries C15** are branches of the arcade and from them arise the **dorsal digital arteries C16** to the toes, and also the **perforating branches** and **deep plantar branch** between the 1st and 2nd metatarsal bones which go to the sole of the foot. Superfi-

cial peroneal nerve **C17**, fibula **C18**, tibia **C19**.

The **posterior tibial artery** is the larger of the two tibial arteries. It passes beneath the tendinous arch of the soleus muscle between the superficial and deep flexor muscles, runs behind the medial malleolus together with the tibial nerve and finally, covered by the abductor hallucis, it reaches the sole of the foot.

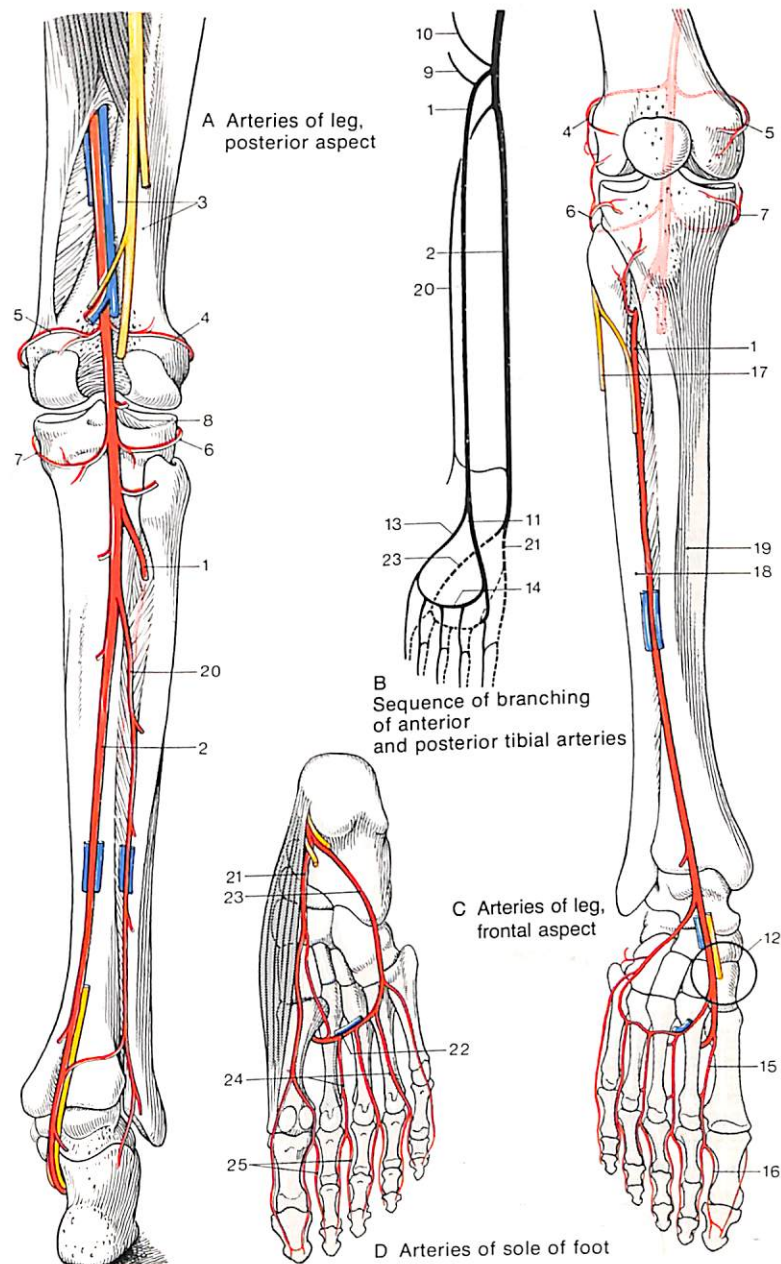
Branches: The **peroneal (fibular) artery AB20**, that runs along the fibula to the lateral malleolus, supplies the soleus muscle and the peroneus muscles and feeds the lateral malleolar rete via lateral malleolar branches and the calcaneal rete via calcaneal branches (the retia are linked to the posterior tibial artery).

The medial malleolar branches run from the posterior tibial artery to the medial malleolar rete, and the calcaneal branches to the calcaneal rete.

The **medial plantar artery BD21** gives off a superficial branch to the great toe (hallux) and a deep plantar artery to the **plantar arch D22**.

The **lateral plantar artery BD23** crosses the quadratus plantae muscle, and descends deep to the lateral border of the foot.

The **deep plantar arch D22** anastomoses with the deep plantar branch from the dorsal artery of the foot. The deep plantar arch gives off the **plantar metatarsal arteries D24**, from which arise the **common and proper plantar digital arteries D25** to the toes, and **perforating branches** to the dorsal metatarsal arteries. Compare **B** with **A**, **C** and **D**.





## Subcutaneous Veins

The **deep veins** run accompanying the arteries. These are paired veins (venae comitantes) with small and medium sized arteries, such as those in the arms and legs. These veins are not discussed separately but they are shown in the illustrations of the arteries.

In contrast, **subcutaneous veins** follow a course independent of the arteries. They form a widespread *venous network* in the subcutaneous connective tissue between the skin and the muscle fascia. Some larger named veins form communications with the deep veins by perforating the fascia. Congestion of the deep veins can be relieved by drainage of blood into the subcutaneous veins, which aid regulation of intravenous pressure and body temperature.

**Clinical Tips.** Congestion in the deep veins of the legs (deep varicose veins, *varices*) leads to congestion in the subcutaneous veins of the legs. The lumina become dilated so that the valves can no longer close and become incompetent. The excessive filling of these veins makes their course become elongated and tortuous.

When there is congestion in the portal vein, the paraumbilical veins may direct blood to the skin of the abdominal wall. Compare p. 250. Tumours of the thoracic and abdominal cavities may act as space-occupying masses and lead to venous congestion extending into the subcutaneous veins.

Due to the enlargement of the mammary glands in pregnancy, the veins of the breasts become more numerous and engorged.

The blood conveys body heat which is generated by chemical reactions mainly in the muscles and liver. Infrared photographs of the body surface therefore show the subcutaneous venous network most spectacularly.

**Trunk:** At seven points on the trunk the subcutaneous veins converge like a star in order to pierce the fascia and open into the deep veins.

**Groin:** The *superficial epigastric vein AD2*, *superficial iliac circumflex vein AD3*, *superficial external pudendal vein*

*AD4* and the *great saphenous vein D5* pass through the saphenous hiatus of the fascia lata to drain into the *femoral vein D1*.

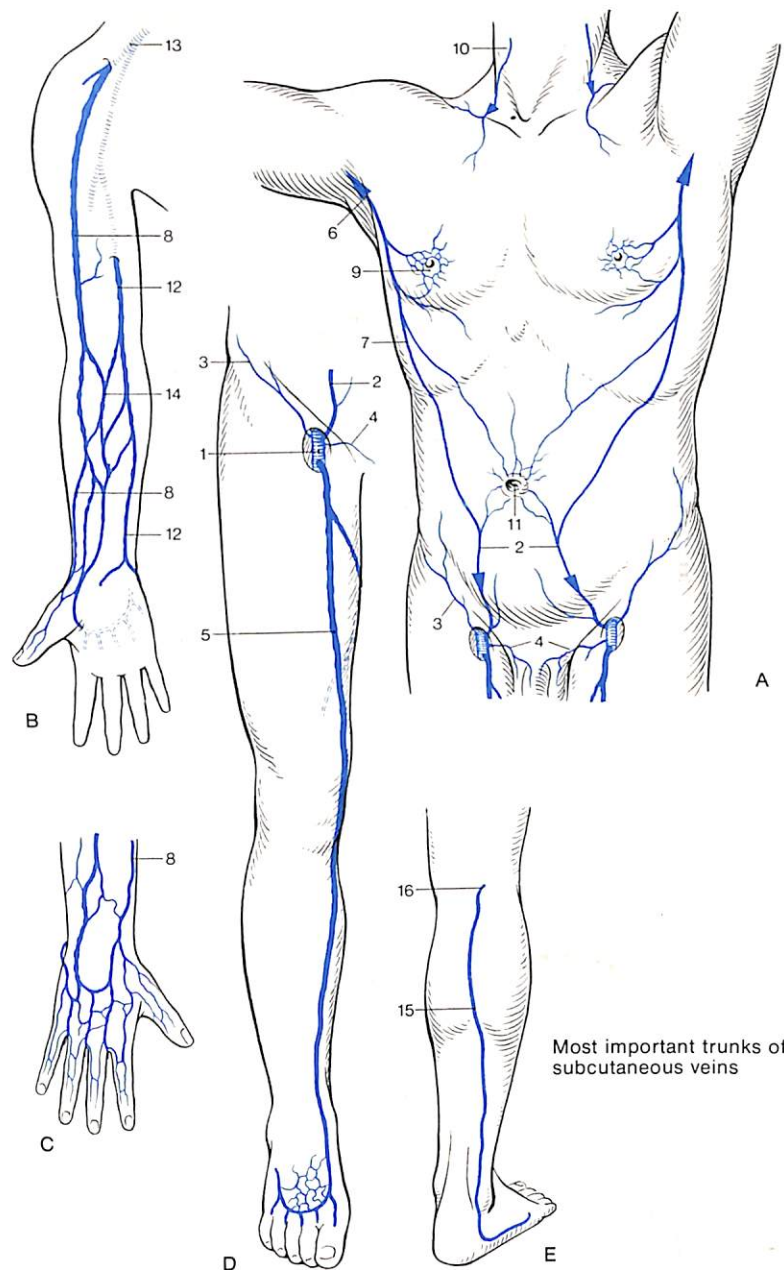
**Axilla:** The *thoracoepigastric A7* and *cephalic B8* veins drain into the *axillary vein A6*. Venous plexus around the areola of the nipple *A9*.

**Lateral cervical region:** The *anterior jugular vein A10* and cutaneous branches from the breast drain into the subclavian vein.

**Umbilical zone A11:** The *paraumbilical veins* perforate the abdominal wall to drain into the portal vein. This communication is of importance only in certain diseases.

**Arm:** The *basilic vein B12* runs along the little finger (ulnar) side of the forearm towards the *brachial vein* in the median groove of the biceps muscle. The *cephalic vein BC8* runs along the thumb (radial) side of the arm in the lateral groove of the biceps muscle and drains into the *axillary vein B13* (the vein used for catheterization of the heart). The *median cubital veins B14* lie in the cubital fossa and run between the basilic and cephalic veins; they are used for intravenous injections.

**Leg:** The *small saphenous vein E15* runs behind the lateral malleolus along the lateral side of the calf and drains into the *popliteal vein E16*. The *great saphenous vein D5* runs anterior to the medial malleolus, along the medial side of the leg and drains into the *femoral vein D1*.





### Superficial Lymph Vessels of the Trunk and Lymph Nodes of the Arm and Leg

**Regional lymph nodes** are the first to receive lymph from a region of the body or from an organ. A region of the body or an organ may drain lymph into several different regional lymph nodes, and a lymph node may receive lymph from several organs.

**Mass lymph nodes** lie proximal to the regional nodes and receive lymph from several of these nodes.

*Clinical Tips.* The regional lymph nodes are the first to be affected by the spread of an infection along the lymphatics and by seeding of a malignant tumour.

The superficial lymph vessels vary in their number and course. They pass to the regional lymph nodes in parallel with the subcutaneous veins. Most subcutaneous lymphatics arise from intracutaneous lymphatic capillaries.

*Clinical Tips.* Extensive movements of the skin may tear intracutaneous lymphatic capillaries. In areas of high lymphatic capillary density (palms and soles) this may produce lymphorrhagia "water blisters" beneath the epithelium. Lymphatic capillary damage is also implicated in the formation of blisters after burns, freezing and chemical damage. In infections of the skin, the subcutaneous lymphatics may be seen as red streaks, and regional lymph glands become painful, due to increased tension of the capsule.

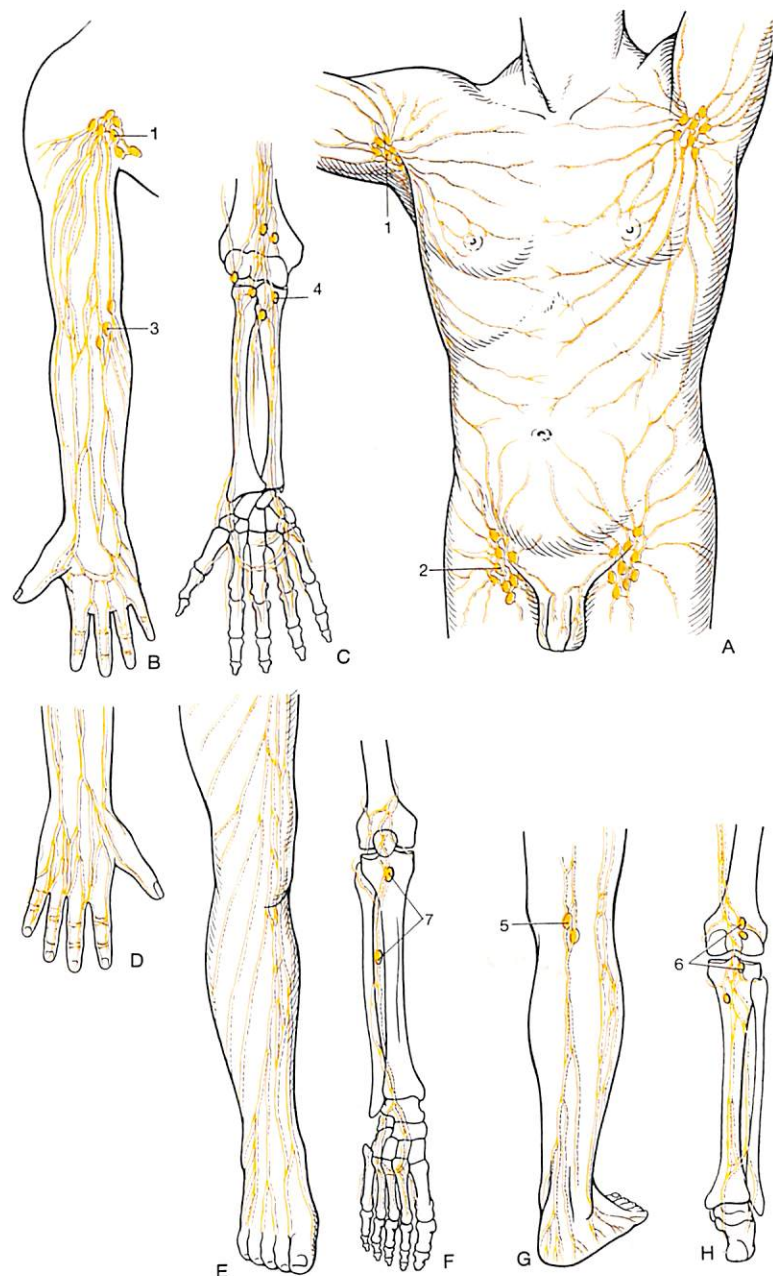
The regional subcutaneous lymph nodes of the trunk and the extremities lie on the flexor side of the joints A. If there is no local inflammation or generalized, immunobiological reaction, and no malignant tumors have invaded them (seedlings, metastases from carcinomas in their drainage area), the subcutaneous lymph nodes are only millimeters in size and are difficult to palpate and are mobile over their beds.

*Clinical Tips.* Pathologically, lymph nodes may grow to one or more centimeters in diameter, they may become visibly protuberant and may fuse to form an immobile mass. Lymph node palpation may often lead the diagnosis.

**Axillary lymph nodes AB1** and **superficial inguinal lymph nodes A2** are the regional lymph nodes of the skin, of the trunk (anterior and posterior), the arms and legs, and are also the last point of entry of lymph into the lymphatics. The margin between the area which drains to axillary and that which drains to the inguinal lymph nodes lies in a girdle about the level of the navel. Lymph from the skin of the external genitalia, the perineum and anus drains to the inguinal lymph nodes.

The superficial **B3** and deep **C4 cubital lymph nodes** lie at the elbow joint. The deep lymph vessels of the arms, which follow the course of the arteries, receive subcutaneous lymphatics even in the hand. Some lymphatics from the thumb and the extensor side of the hand **D** pass directly to the axillary lymph nodes.

The superficial **G5** and deep **H6 popliteal lymph nodes** lie in the popliteal fossa. Some deep lymph nodes lie in front of the interosseous membrane and below the patella **F7**. Lymphatics from the great toe and the extensor side of the foot **E** run directly to the inguinal lymph nodes.





# Lymph Vessels (Lymph Nodes) of the Head and Neck, and the Deep Lymph Vessels (Lymph Nodes) of the Trunk

The lymphatic drainage of the various organs and the regional lymph nodes of the viscera are discussed under the appropriate organs.

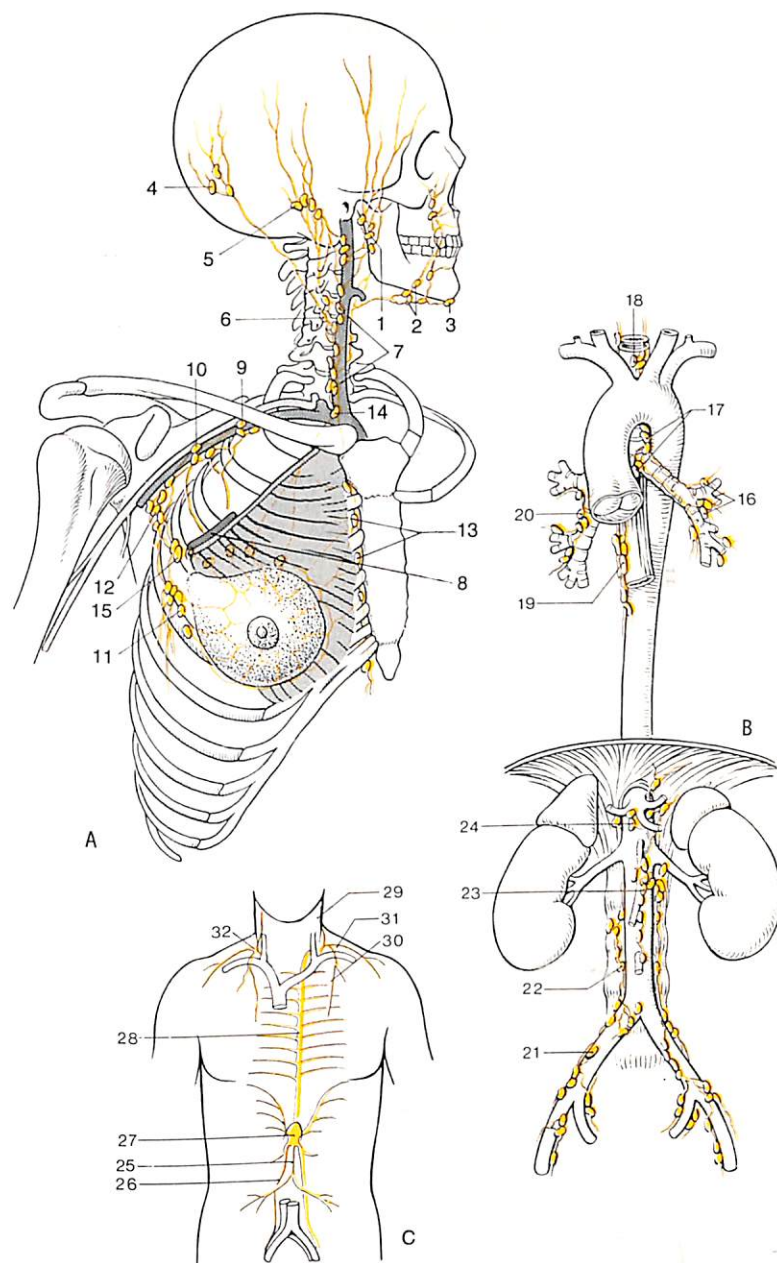
The lymph nodes for the forehead and upper eyelid lie in front of the ear, the *parotid lymph nodes A1*. The lymph nodes of the middle and lower facial regions including the teeth, of the maxilla and mandible, and those of the tongue are situated at the lower border of the mandible, *submandibular lymph nodes A2*. Lymph from the lower lip drains into the *submental lymph nodes A3*. The lymph nodes of the posterior nasal cavities lie in the retropharyngeal space in front of the vertebral column, *retropharyngeal lymph nodes*. Lymph from the posterior half of the scalp flows to the *occipital A4* and *mastoid A5 lymph nodes*. Lymph from the superficial tissues of the neck and the parotid gland flows into the *mastoid lymph nodes A5*. Lymph from the superficial tissues of the neck and the parotid gland runs into the *superficial lateral cervical lymph nodes A6*. More proximal lymph nodes for this catchment area, the *deep cervical lymph nodes A7*, surround the neurovascular trunk deep in the neck. Lymph from the base of the tongue and the tonsils flows directly into the upper part of this group, the superior cervical lymph nodes.

The *axillary lymph nodes* from several groups which receive lymph from the arm, chest wall and mammary glands. They are situated beneath the pectorales major and minor muscles *A8*, above these *A9*, deep to border of the pectoralis major *A11*, and deep in the axilla *A12*. Other lymph nodes draining the mammary gland are the *parasternal lymph nodes A13*, which also receive lymph from the liver, diaphragm, pericardium and intercostal spaces. Some lymph from the breast passes to nodes near the *venous angle A14*. Lymph from the shoulder drains into the subscapular lymph nodes *A15*. The deep lymphatic vessels of the wall of the trunk lie segmentally together with the intercostal blood vessels; the nodes lie in the intercostal spaces on either side of the vertebral column (paravertebral group) and the sternum (parasternal glands) *A13*.

The *bronchopulmonary lymph nodes B16* are collection nodes for lymph drainage from the lungs. *Pretracheal and paratracheal lymph nodes B18* lie under and over the bifurcation of the trachea *B17* and along it. Other lymph nodes are situated in the anterior and posterior mediastinum *B19, B20* pulmonary lymph nodes.

The superficial inguinal lymph nodes continue in groups of lymph nodes situated along the external and internal iliac artery, *external, internal and common iliac lymph nodes B21* and the aorta, *right and left lumbar lymph nodes B22*. Afferent vessels to this group come from the pelvic organs and the intra- and retroperitoneal viscera *B23*. The *celiac (pre-aortic) lymph nodes B24* around the celiac trunk are important. Lymph from the liver, gall bladder, stomach, spleen, duodenum and pancreas drains into them.

Lymph from the entire abdominal cavity flows via large *lymphatic trunks*, the *intestinal C25* and *lumbar C26 lymphatic trunk*, into the *cisterna chyli C27*, which lies between the aorta and the vertebral column at the level of the aortic hiatus. The *thoracic duct C28* arises from the cisterna chyli. It ascends in front of the thoracic vertebral column, crosses behind the aorta to the left side and enters the left venous angle from above and behind (see p. 50). On its way it receives intercostal lymph vessels. The following lymph vessels drain into the left venous angle, either direct or via the thoracic duct: the *jugular trunk C29*, which drains the left side of the head and neck, the *bronchomediastinal trunk C30* draining the left half of the posterior mediastinum and the left lung, the *subclavian trunk C31* from the left axilla and the left arm. The lymph from the right side of the head and neck, from the right axilla, the right arm and from the right half of the anterior and posterior mediastinum, including the right lung, drains via the *right lymphatic duct C32* into the right venous angle.





## Blood and Defense Mechanisms

The *blood* is the medium for the exchange of gases and metabolites between cells – the supply of oxygen and nutrient materials and the removal of metabolic waste products and  $\text{CO}_2$ . It also assists in maintaining the equilibrium of the “milieu intérieur” (homeostasis), i. e., the electrolyte and water balance of the body and serves for transport of heat, hormones, antibodies and defense cells.

### Blood

Blood is a concentrate of blood cells and platelets in the blood plasma. The blood cells, which share a common medium and path of transportation, belong to various functional systems. The blood plasma (ca. 56% of the blood volume) consists of over 90% water, salts, and 7–8% of plasma proteins (some 60% of which are albumins, as well as alpha, beta, and gamma globulins – the latter functioning as antibodies – and fibrinogen).

The blood corpuscles: The red blood corpuscles, *erythrocytes*, serve the transport of gases; the white blood corpuscles, *leukocytes* (colorless cells), are representatives of the defense mechanisms; the platelets, *thrombocytes*, are part of the blood clotting system.

**Erythrocytes.** Their number depends on the  $\text{O}_2$  requirement of the body and  $\text{O}_2$  supply. A considerable increase (*polycythemia*) or decrease (*anemia*) is pathologic. The mature human erythrocyte does not possess a nucleus, is biconcave, can change its shape, is homogeneous in appearance and measures  $7.7\ \mu\text{m}$  in diameter. More than 90% of its dry substance consists of *hemoglobin*, the iron-containing blood pigment. This gives blood its red appearance – *oxygenated hemoglobin* in arterial blood is bright red, and *deoxygenated hemoglobin* in venous blood is dark red. About 5–15% of the erythrocytes are *reticulocytes*, immature cells, see p. 86. The number of reticulocytes increases after loss of blood. Irregularly shaped and abnormally large erythrocytes circulating in the blood after birth are pathologic. Erythrocytes shrink in hypertonic solu-

tions (“thornapple form”) and they burst in hypotonic solutions, when the normal opaque appearance of the blood becomes translucent.

**Blood groups.** The erythrocytes are covered by a layer of glycoprotein, the *glycocalyx*, which determines the blood group (functioning as a blood-group antigen in the AB0 system) and against which foreign blood may contain agglutinins.

**Disintegration.** Erythrocytes have a life span of 3–4 months and are then broken down mainly in the spleen. Bile pigments are formed from the iron-free part of the hemoglobin and the iron is recycled for erythropoiesis (iron circulation).

**Leukocytes.** The number of leukocytes varies at different times of the day. An increase to more than  $10000/\text{mm}^3$  (*leukocytosis*) is pathologic in adults, e.g., in inflammations or in tumor growth; a reduction to below  $2000/\text{mm}^3$  (*leukopenia*, *agranulocytosis*) is also pathologic and may, for example be caused by damage to the erythropoietic system. The leukocytes include *granulocytes*, *monocytes* (see p. 86) and *lymphocytes* (see p. 86).

**Granulocytes.** Neutrophils, eosinophils and basophil granulocytes are differentiated by the staining properties of their cell granules. *Neutrophil granulocytes* (cell nucleus segmented 3 to 4 times) contain small granules – *azurophilic granules* with lysosomal enzymes and peroxidase, and *specific granules* with lysozymes and bactericidal materials. *Eosinophilic granulocytes*: the strongly acidophilic large granules, which stain with eosin, also contain proteolytic enzymes. *Basophilic granulocytes* also have large granules which contain heparin and histamine.

**Thrombocytes.** The *thrombocytes* (platelets) disintegrate easily and liberate *thrombokinas*, a group of enzymes closely concerned with blood clotting. They also transport the local vasoconstrictor serotonin. Thrombocytes are  $1\text{--}3\ \mu\text{m}$  in size. They do not contain a nucleus and so are really cell fragments.

### Blood cells (from Faller)

#### A Derivatives from red bone marrow



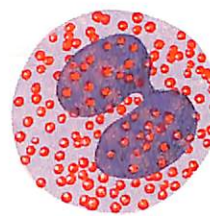
Red blood corpuscles  
(erythrocytes)



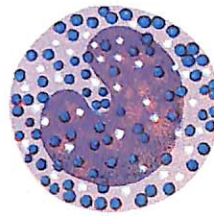
Blood platelets  
(thrombocytes)



Neutrophil  
granulocytes



Eosinophil  
granulocytes

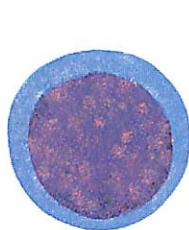


Basophil  
granulocytes

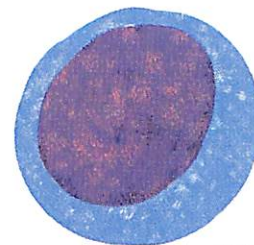


Monocyte

#### B Derivatives from lymphatic organs



Small lymphocyte



Large lymphocyte



## Numbers of Blood Cells

One  $\mu$ l of blood contains:4.5–5 million erythrocytes  
4000–8000 leukocytes of which:

granulocytes:

neutrophils

with segmental nuclei

"rod" or "stab" neutrophils

eosinophils

basophils

monocytes:

lymphocytes:

200,000–300,000 thrombocytes

55 – 68%

2 – 3%

2.5– 3%

0.5– 1%

4 – 5%

36 – 20%

**Hemopoiesis after birth.** After birth hemopoiesis normally takes place only in the *bone marrow*. **A** With the termination of bone growth in length, blood formation is restricted to the marrow in the *epiphyses* of the long bones and the *short, flat bones*. In a case of chronic blood loss or of interference with medullary (bone marrow), hemopoiesis after birth, blood formation can be resumed in the marrow of the diaphyses of the long bones, in the connective tissue of the liver and in the other sites of fetal hemopoiesis.

The total weight of *bone marrow* is about 2600 g, or about 4.6% of the body weight. The bone marrow exceeds in mass all other organs except the blood, the muscles and the skeleton. It contains up to 10% of the total blood volume. The red, hemopoietic bone marrow contains mainly the cells responsible for *granulopoiesis* (formation of the granulocytes, colorless or white blood corpuscles, leukocytes) and *erythropoiesis* (formation of red blood cells) **B1**, as well as the giant cells of the bone marrow (megakaryocytes) **B2** (which are responsible for *thrombopoiesis*, the production of platelets), and also fat cells **B3** and trabeculae of bone **B4**. The survey **B** shows a colorful, complex picture.

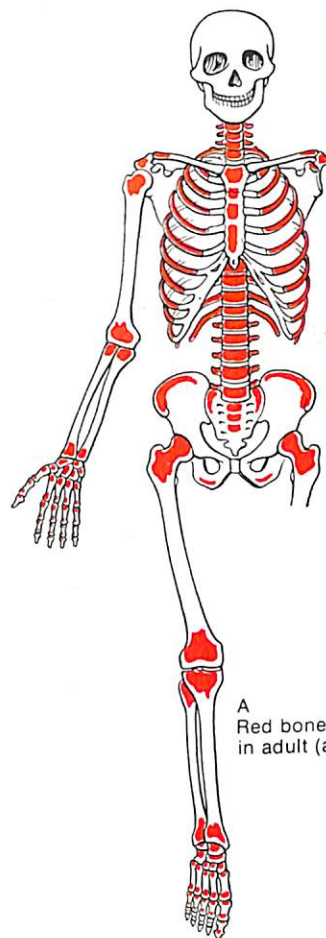
The common pluripotent *stem cell* of all the blood cells is the *hemocytoblast*. It is functionally but not morphologically dissimilar lymphocyte. Hemocytoblasts appear during early embryonic development; in the adult they are found in red bone marrow and also singly in the blood.

**Hemopoiesis during fetal life.** The following periods of hemopoiesis can be distinguished **C**:

**Megaloblastic period:** The very earliest erythropoiesis starts in the *extraembryonic connective tissue of the yolk sac* and abdominal ridge of the germinal tissue, about 2 weeks after fertilization. The blood corpuscles are large nucleated erythrocytes, *megaloblasts*. At this stage leukocytes are absent. The megaloblastic period lasts until the end of the third month.

**Hepatolienal period:** Toward the end of the second month hemopoiesis starts in the *liver* and *spleen* and to a less extent in the *lymph nodes*. Leukocytes now appear and the erythrocytes attain the normal adult size. The hepatolienal period ends before birth.

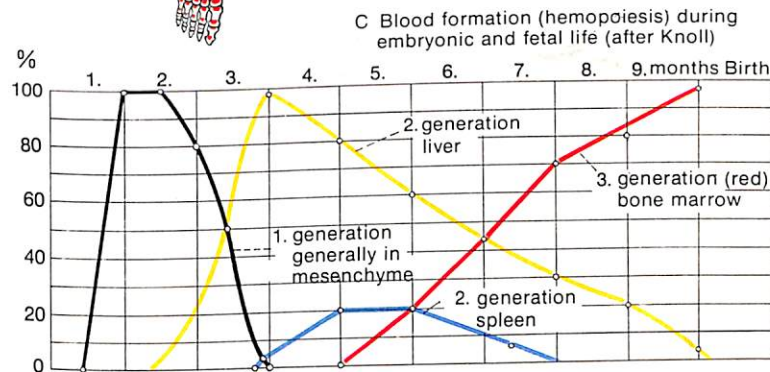
**Medullary (bone marrow) period:** During the 5th fetal month hemopoiesis commences in the *bone marrow* in all bones. This is the final site of hemopoiesis throughout life, in the red bone marrow. *Lymphocytes* are formed in the 4th month first in the liver and then in the bone marrow. From there they migrate partly into the thymus and thence (as T lymphocytes) into the lymphatic organs in which they multiply, and partly they leave the bone marrow (as future B lymphocytes) to pass directly into the peripheral lymphatic organs. Even after birth, lymphocytes migrate from the bone marrow into lymphatic organs (specific defense system, p. 88).



A Red bone marrow in adult (after Rohr)



B Section of red bone marrow





## Origins of the Cells of the Blood and the Defense Systems

The cells of the blood and the defense systems originate partly in the *bone marrow* (hematopoiesis); (erythrocyto-, granulocyto-, monocyto-, lymphocyto-, thrombocytopoiesis, or erythro-, granul-, mono-, lympho-, and thrombopoiesis for short) and partly in the *lymphatic organs* (cells of the immunological system). The common stem cell of all blood cells is the *hemocytoblast* 1. Two cells are produced during its mitosis. They behave differently. One remains a *pluripotential hemocytoblast*, whilst the other becomes an *irreversibly unipotential precursor cell* which lies at the beginning of a cell line (erythro-, granul-, mono-, lympho-, thrombopoiesis). Under the influence of active substances, *poietins*, the precursor cells become "*blast*" cells and then via intermediate stages they become mature blood cells.

**Erythropoiesis.** About 30% of the immature blood cells of the bone marrow are involved in erythropoiesis. The *erythroblast* 3 develops from the *hemocytoblast* 1 via the precursor cell, *proerythroblast* 2. This cell produces hemoglobin and so becomes acidophilic. Erythroblasts are grouped around reticular cells (see p. 88) which are looked upon as "*nurse cells*". They supply the erythroblast with iron necessary for the formation of hemoglobin. The iron enters into the following *iron circulation* in the body: senile erythrocytes are phagocytosed and broken down mainly in the reticular connective tissue of the spleen (and perhaps in other organs). Iron from the hemoglobin is principally stored in the phagocytes of the reticular connective tissue as *hemosiderin* (Berlin blue reaction). In cases of massive blood destruction there is macroscopically visible iron storage, *hemosiderosis*. Hemosiderin in turn is broken down to *ferritin*, a molecular combination of 6 atoms of iron that can be followed in the electron microscope. With two  $\text{Fe}^{3+}$  ions always bound to each transferrin protein molecule, the iron is carried from the spleen through the bloodstream to the bone marrow. Here it is taken up by histiocytic reticular cells which eventually release it to the neighboring erythroblasts, and these in turn incorporate it into hemoglobin. Subsequent cell divisions result in nests of *normoblasts* 4.

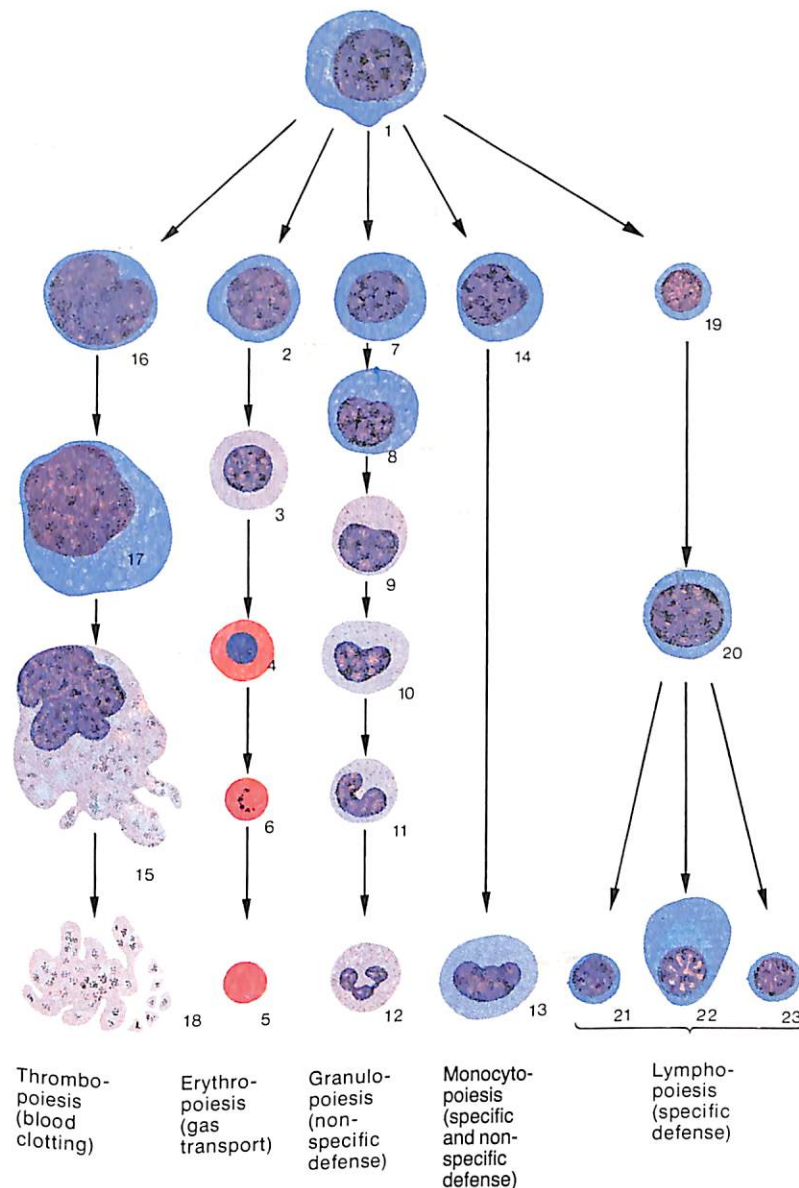
After their nuclei have been extruded they become *erythrocytes* 5. Erythrocytes which are not yet quite mature still contain a network-like residue of basophilic ribosomes (*substantia granulofilamentosa*), *reticulocytes* 6.

**Granulopoiesis.** Development proceeds via the *myeloblast* 7, and *pro-myelocyte* 8 to the *myelocyte* 9, when the neutrophil, eosinophil (acidophil) or basophil granules appear. From this stage on three lines of granulopoiesis (neutrophil, shown here, eosinophil, basophil) can be distinguished, which lead via the *metamyelocyte* to the polymorphonuclear leukocyte (granulocyte). The nucleus of the *metamyelocyte* 10 becomes elongated and the cell develops into a granulocyte with a *horsehoe-shaped nucleus* 11 which is not yet quite mature. With increasing segmentation of the nucleus eventually the mature, *polymorphonuclear granulocyte* 12 develops (criterion of maturity). The nucleus consists of 2–4 segments which are connected by extremely thin (nucleogenic) threads; hypersegmentation of the nucleus (> 4 segments) is abnormal. The granulocyte now migrates through the walls of the bone marrow capillaries into the blood stream. The bone marrow contains a store of granulocytes many times larger than the number of granulocytes circulating in the bloodstream and which can be quickly mobilized if required.

**Monocytes** 13 stem from *monoblasts* 14 via *promonocytes*.

**Thrombopoiesis.** The *megakaryocyte* 15 (giant cell of the bone marrow), the precursor of the thrombocytes (platelets) develops via the intermediate forms, the *megakaryoblast* 16 and the *immature megakaryocyte* 17. Megakaryocytes have a diameter of more than 50  $\mu\text{m}$  and contain a large lobulated nucleus. Granules in their cytoplasm move into peripheral, pseudopodialike protrusions and ultimately, *thrombocytes* 18 are separated off. After repeated thrombocyte formation the megakaryocyte dies.

**Lymphopoiesis.** The precursor cell which is still immunologically incompetent, when it leaves the bone marrow and later moves to lymphatic organs, becomes the *differentiated* (T- or B-) *lymphocyte* 19. After primary contact, they produce a T- or B-*immunoblast* 20, which by T differentiation produces *immunocytes* 21, or by B differentiation produces *plasma cells* 22, or *memory cells* 23 either of T- or B-cell type (see p. 90ff).



Formation of blood cells and cells of defense systems at sites of hemopoiesis



## Defense Systems

**Reticular connective tissue A**, the basic tissue of the lymphatic organs and the bone marrow, is a **spongy conglomeration of cells** formed by fibroblastic *reticulum cells* reinforced by reticulum fibers.

The reticulum cells are not uniform in their functions. *Fibroblastic reticulum cells* form fibers, *histiocyte reticulum cells* are phagocytic, and two other types of cell have a "guide function" in the settling of T- and B-lymphocytes in the lymphatic organs.

The formation of blood cells and the defense systems occurs in the meshes of the *reticular connective tissue*, as the basic tissue of the bone marrow and lymphoid organs.

The defense systems defend the body from invading pathogens. There is a *nonspecific* and a *specific resistance system*.

### Nonspecific Defense System

The *nonspecific defense system* aims at instant, local destruction of pathogens (foreign bodies). The cells of this mechanism are the phagocytic cell, *macrophages* and *macrophages*.

**Macrophages** are *neutrophil granulocytes*. They collect in the early stages in inflammatory foci attacked by pathogens and substances released by cell breakdown. The neutrophil granulocytes digest the phagocytosed material **B1** (streptococci in this instance) with the help of their lysosomes, the neutrophil granules. At the same time they produce proteolytic enzymes to soften the inflammatory infiltrate (abscess formation). This kills the granulocytes, thereby producing *pus cells*. **B2** Cell nucleus, **C3** phagolysosomes.

**Macrophages** are derived from *monocytes* and are mobile or (temporarily) sessile. They are found in all tissues as "tissue macrophages", *histiocytes*. They migrate into inflammatory foci as "exudate macrophages", and in the serous cavities they form *pleural* and *peritoneal macrophages*, and in the lungs, *alveolar macrophages*. Sessile macrophages in-

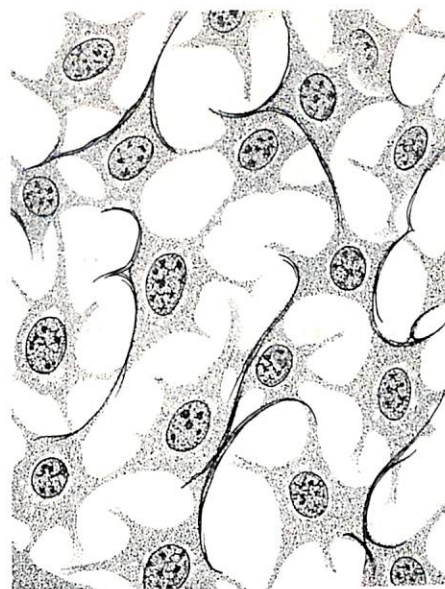
clude the *Kupffer cells* of the liver and the *histiocyte reticulum cells* in the spleen, lymph nodes and bone marrow. Macrophages phagocytose foreign materials in the body and break them down in part enzymatically. The cells are now known collectively as the **mononuclear phagocytic system, MPS** (formerly known as the reticuloendothelial system, *RES*, or reticulohistiocytic system, *RHS*). They also play a decisive role in the specific defense system. Among the macrophages derived from monocytes are *osteoclasts*, which absorb and remove bone, and *mesogial cells*, defense cells in the central nervous system.

### Specific Defense System

The *specific defense system* or *immune system* works quite differently from the nonspecific system. It enables the organism to distinguish its *own proteins* from foreign proteins, *antigens*, in the longer term, and to produce specific *antibodies* against them.

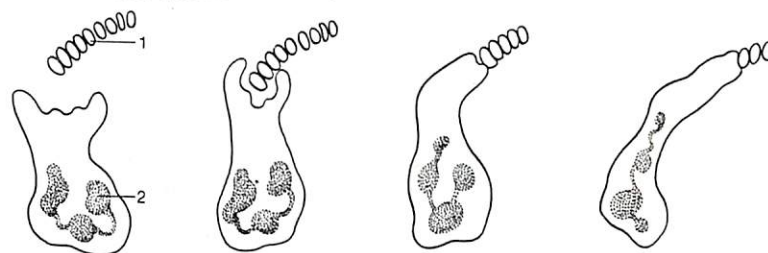
Foreign antigens (pathogens, foreign albumins) which enter the body, react with antibodies produced there. The *antigen-antibody reaction* is a chemical process. It is specific. Each antigen evokes the production of an (antigen-homologous) antibody specifically against itself, which may be reproduced after a long period, even up to decades. It gives the body *immunity* against that particular antigen, and this immunity may continue for several years. The specific defense system is principally situated in the lymphatic organs.

The cells of the *specific defense system* are the *immunologically competent T- and B-lymphocytes*. They perform their functions in association with the *accessory cells of the specific defense system* (macrophages, specialised reticulum cells of lymphatic organs). The T- and B-lymphocytes represent the two arms of the immune system, the *cellular* and *humoral immune responses*. Both types of lymphocyte arise initially from the stem cells of the bone marrow and develop their defence characteristics (immunocompetence) stepwise through precursor cells.

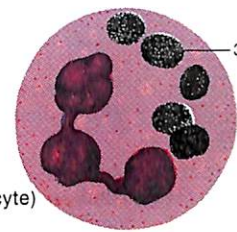


Microscopic section through reticular connective tissue

Non-specific defense system: granulocyte system



B Phagocytosis of chain of streptococci by neutrophil granulocyte



C Neutrophil granulocyte (leukocyte) with phagosome



### Cells of the Specific Defense System

The cells of the specific system, the immunologically competent *T*- and *B*-lymphocytes, **A**, fulfill their functions in cooperation with the accessory cells of the specific defense system.

The **T-lymphocytes** (thymus-dependent lymphocytes) undergo selection in the cortex of the thymus. Only those T-lymphocytes leave the thymus that can "recognize" the body's own (autologous) tissues and tolerate them (*general T-lymphocyte tolerance* of self, i.e. of the body's own tissues) and can develop resistance only against non-self material, *antigens*. They leave the thymus either as *regulatory cells* (*T-helper cells* or *T-suppressor cells*) or as *cytotoxic T-cells* and migrate in the bloodstream into the T-regions of the lymphatic organs. From there, the immunocompetent T-lymphocytes may again enter the blood stream through the lymph vessels and so *recirculate*. T-lymphocytes are always available throughout the body (T-lymphocyte reservoir).

The *T-helper-cells* stimulate B-lymphocytes to produce and secrete antibodies, either directly by cell *membrane-bound* factors or indirectly by soluble helper-factors. The B-cell-response to most antigens is dependent on this T-cell help. This function of the T-helper cells presupposes that they are able to "recognize" the antigen. It is "presented" to them by the accessory cells with which they come into close contact.

*T-suppressor-cells* may under certain conditions, suppress the immune response of the B-cells, the T-helper cells and the cytotoxic T-cells.

The *cytotoxic T-cells* may destroy antigenic cells by direct contact ("cellular immune response") without themselves being damaged. They are stimulated by T-helper cells.

The specificity of each of these functions is developed at the first antigen contact, the *primary contact*, when the T-cell first

becomes activated into a proliferating *T-immunoblast*. **B**. "Memory cells," too, which are able to recognize the provoking antigen, are produced during proliferation (cell multiplication) of T-immunoblasts.

The mature **B-lymphocytes** (*bone marrow lymphocytes*) have antigen receptors (immunoglobulin) on their membranes.

The *primary contact* (by activation with T-helper-cells) may lead directly or indirectly to plasma cell production. *Plasma cells* produce and secrete humoral antibodies ("humoral immune response").

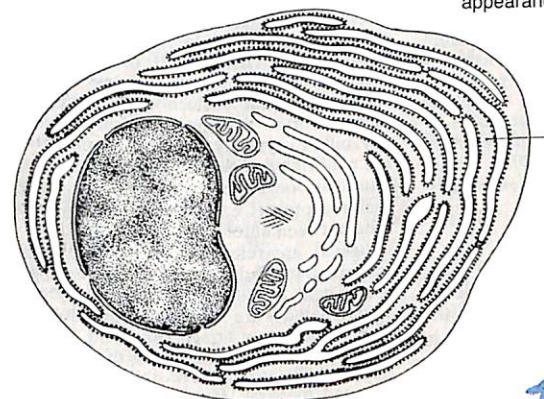
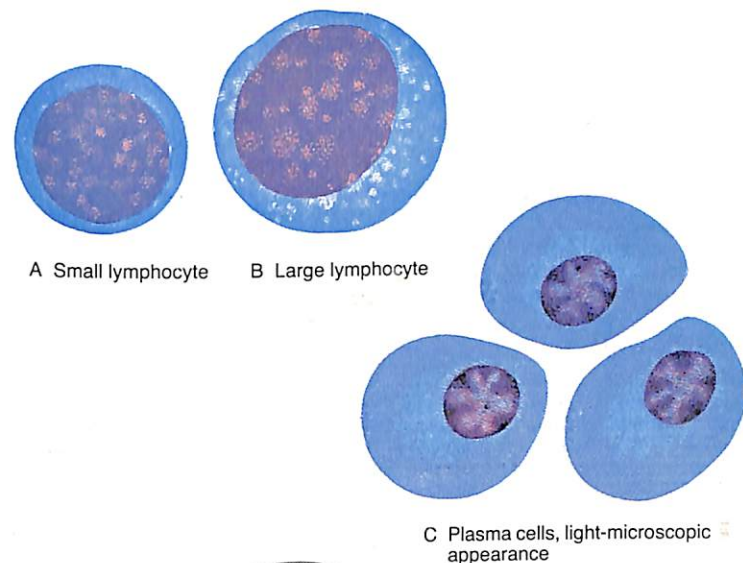
**Plasma cells** are large, basophilic cells with a nucleus containing chromatin shaped like the spokes of a wheel (**C** light microscopy, **D** electron microscopy). Plasma cells produce large amounts of *immunoglobulins*, which are discharged into the connective tissue and reach the antigen via the blood stream. They combine with the antigen and destroy it. The humoral immune response proceeds rapidly in a matter of minutes or hours. **D1** ergastoplasm = the site of immunoglobulin formation. **C** magnification about  $\times 1000$ .

In *direct* plasma cell production, proliferative *B-immunoblasts* develop from B-cells and from these identical daughter cells are formed (clone formation) which then differentiate into plasma cells.

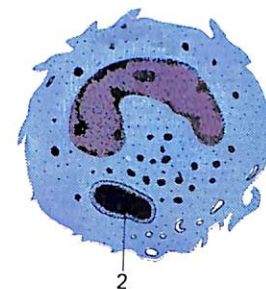
Indirect production of plasma cells occurs in *lymph follicles* by the formation of germinal centers (secondary follicles). The B-lymphocyte develops (through intermediate stages of centroblasts and centrocytes) into the "memory cell," forming receptors for the antigen concerned, and then (even years later) after renewed contact with the same antigen (secondary contact) it reacts rapidly by differentiation into plasma cells.

The "natural killer cells" (NK cells) are a third type of lymphocyte in the immune system, as yet little investigated, which can have cytotoxic effects without maturing in the thymus.

**E** Macrophage, **E2** Phagosome.



**D** Plasma cell, electron-microscopic appearance



**E** Histiocyte with phagosome



The accessory cells of the immune system are required for the course of the immune response. The *phagocytic accessory cells*, macrophages may amongst other activities "present" antigens to immunocompetent lymphocytes. The *non-phagocytosing accessory cells* (specific reticulum cells) permit settling of T-lymphocytes as *interdigitating reticulum cells* (in the T-region) and B-lymphocytes as *dendritic reticulum cells* (in the B-region) in the lymphoid organ. The *M cells* in the intestinal mucosa and *Langerhans cells* in the epidermis are also counted as interdigitating reticulum cells.

### Lymphatic Organs

Different roles of the immunobiologic system are allocated to different lymphatic organs, - thymus, lymph nodes, spleen, tonsils, lamina propria of the intestinal mucosa. It is therefore not possible for one organ to completely take over the function of another. The *thymus* is irreplaceable as the primary immunologic organ for the development of cellular immunity. During childhood active immunologic maturation processes are accompanied by exaggerated, often dramatic growth of the lymphatic organs. By about the 6th year they have already attained their adult size, during the 10-12th year about double that size is attained and then the organs shrink to return to their final size by the age of 20. A further regression to thymus remnants (adipose tissue) occurs in old age.

### Thymus

The *thymus* consists of two oval lobes joined together. It is situated in the mediastinum above the pericardium, in front of the left innominate vein and the superior vena cava, between the two mediastinal layers of the pleura and behind the sternum. During childhood it is well developed and extends downward to the sternal attachment of the 4th rib, and may produce broadening of the shadow at the base of the heart in a radiograph. The lobes reach to the lower border of the thyroid gland. They lie under the middle layer of the fascia of the neck.

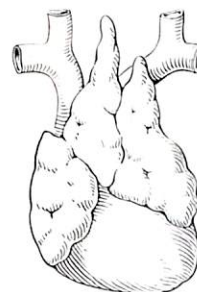
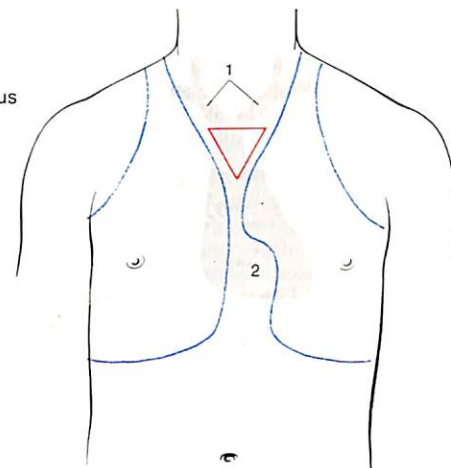
During childhood, the superficial surface of the thymus is arranged in lobules, which hang on a common, central vascular cord. These are, in turn, composed of smaller lobules in which microscopically a cortical and a medullary zone can be distinguished, see p. 94. **A1** Innominate veins, **A2** heart, red triangle = triangular outline of thymus.

**T-lymphocytes** (thymus lymphocytes) reach the cortex of the thymus as T-precursor cells, *thymocytes* where they mature into *regulator cells* (T-helper cells, T-suppressor cells) and *cytotoxic T-cells*.

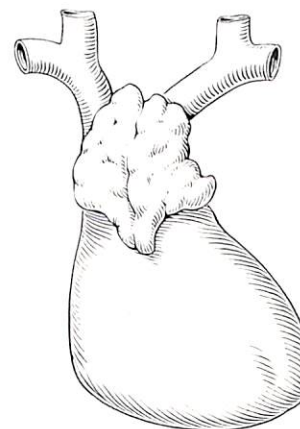
**T-lymphocyte selection.** Each human body develops two classes of specific membrane proteins of the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)* that are unique to itself. These enable the cells to identify themselves as autologous (self). All cells are marked with the MHC class I protein, and the immune system's accessory class (e. g., macrophages), which "present" foreign antibodies, are additionally marked with MHC class II proteins. T-lymphocytes develop *receptors* to recognize these autologous MHC proteins, the cytotoxic T-cells develop receptors to recognize MHC class I proteins, and T-helper cells additionally develop receptors for MHC class II proteins. The receptors arise through more or less random variation, so that a selection process in the thymus cortex becomes necessary. Every day, billions of newly formed T-lymphocytes are confronted with autologous MHC proteins, and only those they "recognize" by their receptors (i. e., those that can differentiate between autologous and foreign MHC antigens) are released into the blood to mediate the cellular immune response (regulator cells and cytotoxic T-lymphocytes). The remainder are destroyed. The cytotoxic T-cells then only attack cells with foreign MHC proteins, as well as cells that have an "alienated" autologous protein (e. g., those affected by viral infection). The T-helper cells, with the help of their MHC class II receptors, recognize a foreign antigen presented by autologous accessory cells as being "foreign," and then activate defense cells against it, e. g., B-lymphocytes.

When *failures* occur, as when T-lymphocytes erroneously fail to recognize autologous cells—either because their MHC protein is "alienated" or the lymphocyte receptor does not "fit"—self-destructive *autoimmune diseases* result: allergies, rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis, etc.

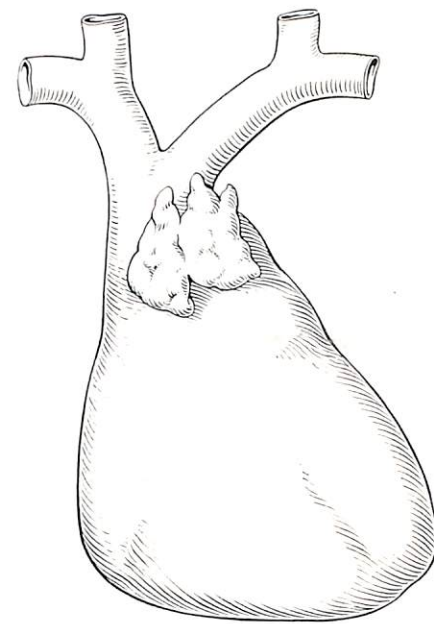
A Position of thymus  
T = Thymus



B Thymus in newborn



C Thymus in 2-year-old child



D Thymus in adult



### Microscopic Structure of the Thymus

The thymus of the child has a characteristic structure. The lobules are attached to vascular cords; in each lobule the *medulla* **B1** and *cortex* **B2** are distinguishable.

**Cortex.** The stroma **B3** has the appearance of a loose reticulum. It is arranged like an epithelium towards the surface and the margins of the lobules. The reticulum of the tissue is densely filled with T-lymphocytes **B4**. In the marginal zone, immediately beneath the capsule, lymphocytes which have migrated into the thymus multiply. The population of small lymphocytes in the cortex of the thymus is renewed every three to four days. Lymphocytes from the thymus enter the blood stream continuously, though in smaller numbers with increasing age. Most of the lymphocytes that enter the thymus die in the cortex of the thymus during the development of general lymphocyte tolerance; they have failed to develop the receptor needed for autologous cells to be recognized.

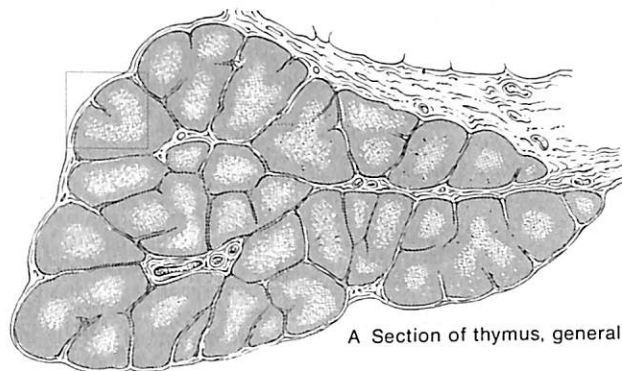
**Medulla.** In the medulla the network of the stroma **B3** is narrower than that of the cortex and there are fewer lymphocytes (thymocytes) **B4**. Occasionally, there are concentrically arranged cells in the stroma, *Hassal's corpuscles* **B5**. There are about 1 million of the latter in the newborn and 1.5 million in juveniles; in the 20 year old they still number about 700 000 but after the 40th year there are only 250 000. A Hassal's corpuscle can consist of a few cells, or it can develop into a cyst 0.1–0.5 mm in diameter which contains cellular debris. The *corpuscles* are round or many concentrically arranged cells of the basic tissues. Hassal's corpuscles may develop rapidly and then disappear or may form cysts. The function of these corpuscles is unknown, but they appear to be formed in connection with immunologic processes. The stroma of the thymus is separated from its surface and from blood vessels by a basement membrane. In addition, thymus differs from

other lymphatic organs by a blood-thymus-barrier (which is probably confined to the cortical area). Antigens are trapped in the walls of the vessels and do not penetrate into the thymus.

**Function.** The importance of the thymus lies in the development of the different T-cell subgroups and in the formation of the humoral thymic factors. The *removal* of the thymus in newborn mice produces a wasting syndrome which leads to death within two weeks. The lymphatic organs contain very few lymphocytes, are abnormally small and have no germinal centers. The spleen does not form follicles and the blood lymphocyte count is low. There is an *immunobiologic insufficiency* which affects cellular immunity to a greater extent than humoral immunity. The longer removal of the thymus is delayed, the less severe the syndrome. Comparable pathologic states may be observed in man due to *aplasia*, *hypoplasia* or *hypofunction* of the thymus. A humoral thymus factor, *thymopoietin*, stimulates differentiation of the peripheral lymphatic organs.

**Postpubertal involution** (age involution). From the 18th year onwards thymic tissue undergoes a process of involution to become the *thymic remnant* (still functional) and is partly replaced by adipose tissue **C6** (*adipose body of the thymus, lipomatous atrophy*).

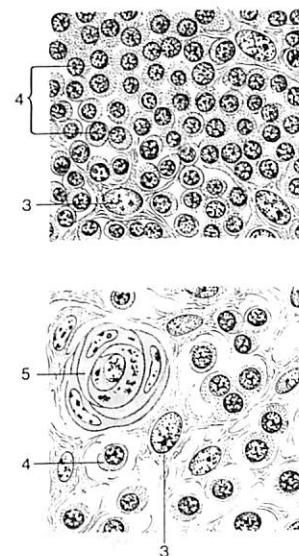
**Accidental involution** which may be due to infection, malnutrition, radiation etc., goes hand-in-hand with emigration of lymphocytes from the cortex and shrinkage of the entire organ. In infections, the number of Hassal's corpuscles increases considerably – *infection type*, and in malnutrition they decrease – *hunger type* of accidental involution. In cases of sudden death in children an abnormal enlargement of thymus is occasionally found (status thymolympathicus, “thymic death”) due to misdirected immunologic processes.



A Section of thymus, general view



B Thymus of child (detail from A)  
above right: cortex of thymus,  
higher magnification  
below right: medulla of thymus,  
higher magnification



C Thymus of adult



### Structural Elements of Peripheral Lymphoid Organs

The peripheral lymphoid organs, *thymus*, *tonsils*, *lymph follicles of the mucous membranes*, *lymph nodes* and *spleen* as producers of lymphocytes are important organs of the specific defense system, the *immune system*.

**B- and T-regions.** B- and T-lymphocytes occur in different regions of the lymphatic tissues. The primary and secondary follicles are mostly occupied by *B-lymphocytes* (*B-region*) and *T-lymphocytes* occur in a specific region of each individual lymphatic organ (*T-region*).

In the *primary follicle*, prior to antigen contact (e.g. in the newborn), there is a homogenous mass of differentiated, small, lymphocytes, evenly distributed even the entire lymph follicle which appears darkly stained throughout.

The *secondary follicle* is characterized by a *germinal center* (reaction center); it arises after antigen contact as a transitory structure, which develops in phases. In the germinal center, macrophages, dendritic reticulum cells, and T-helper cells provide the B-lymphocyte with the antigen. The B-lymphocyte is then transformed into a *centroblast*, and is proliferated by cloning to produce *centrocytes*. Memory cells and precursors of plasma cells arise. The germinal center is divided into two overlapping zones: a darker (basal) zone formed by densely packed lymphoblasts, large and medium-sized lymphocytes, and macrophages; and a lighter (apical) zone, in which loosely packed lymphocytes predominate and dendritic reticulum cells appear. A darker lymphocyte coating surrounds the germinal center. It sits on the tonsillar follicle like a cap, and surrounds the lymph-node follicle eccentrically and the splenic follicle in a wide, concentric position.

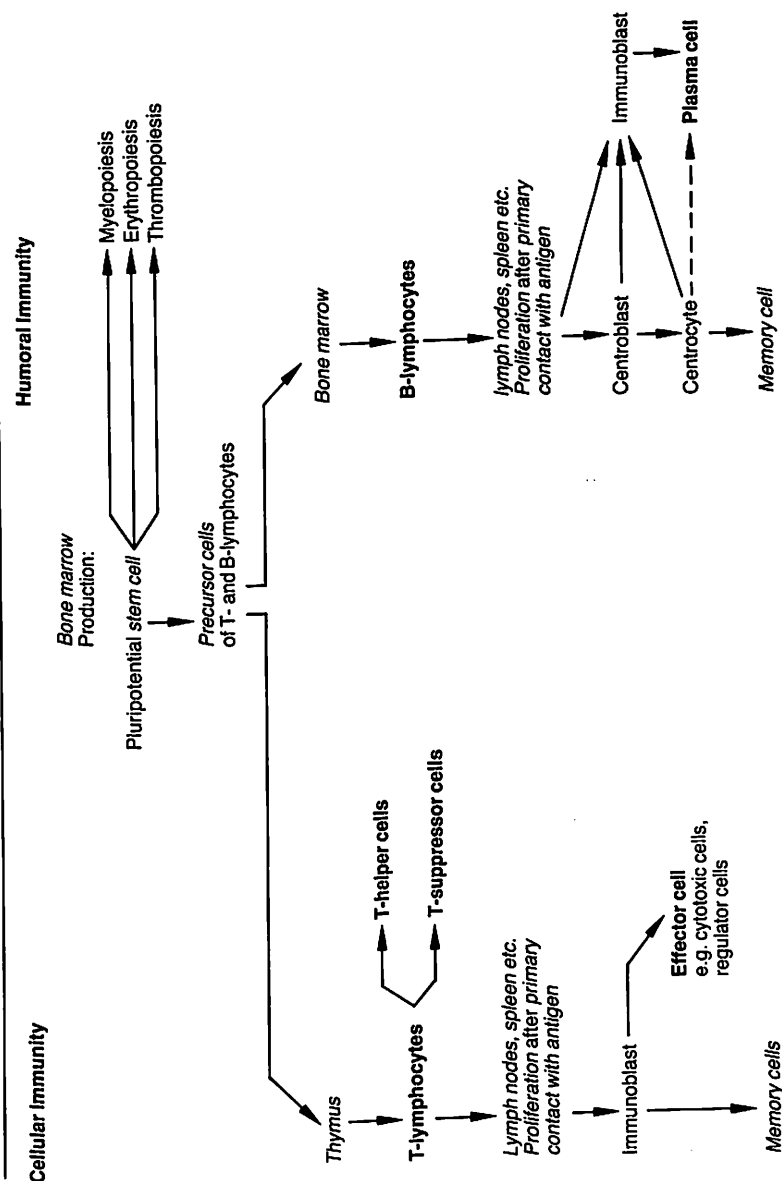
**Types of reticulum cells.** Four types of reticulum cells, histiocytes, fibroblastic, dendritic and interdigitating reticulum cells can be distinguished in the lymphatic

organs. *Histiocytes* and *fibroblastic* cells are found in all parts of lymphatic tissues. The *dendritic* and *interdigitating* cells associated with the B- and T-regions as *accessory cells* of the *immune system*, control the further differentiation of B- and T-lymphocytes, respectively, within restricted areas.

The *lymph vessels* drain some of the tissue fluid from the "interstitial spaces" of the intercellular connective tissue region of the organs and tissues (with the exception of brain tissue). The fluid passes out of the blood vessels into the connective tissue during transport of metabolites and is returned to the venous blood via the lymph vessels.

**Recirculation of lymphocytes.** The mass of lymphocytes which enters the blood stream in 24 h. through the largest lymph trunk, the thoracic duct is 2–4 (–20) times the number of lymphocytes in the blood; i.e. the lymphocytes spend less than one day in the blood. Lymphocytes, especially T-lymphocytes, leave the postcapillary epitheloid veins of the lymphatic organs between the endothelial cells, and so leave the blood to enter the reticular connective tissue to be returned later via the lymph tract into the blood—*lymphocyte recirculation*. About 98% of all lymphocytes are held in the interstitial connective tissue and in the reticular tissue of lymphatic organs, with only 2% "under way" in the bloodstream. "*Epitheloid venules*" – postcapillary veins whose endothelial cells look like cuboid epithelial cells – are the site of lymphocyte recirculation. The endothelial cells form receptors that are recognized by T-lymphocytes and control the extent and location of lymphocyte return.

Two arms of the Immune System (after Müller-Hermelink, Würzburg)





## Lymph Nodes

Lymph nodes are found along the course of lymph vessels and act as biological filters. Lymph nodes near to organs which are the first to receive lymph from an organ or from a limited region are called *regional lymph nodes*. Lymph nodes which receive lymph from several regional lymph nodes are called *collecting lymph nodes*.

A **lymph node** or gland (*nodus lymphaticus*) is usually covered by a fibrous connective tissue capsule **B1** so that it forms a bean-shaped body about 1 mm in length. Trabeculae **B2** extend from the capsule into the interior. Several lymph vessels carry lymph to the node on its convex side (*afferent vessels AB3*). At the hilum lymph leaves the node in a few *efferent vessels AB4*. The reticular connective tissue forms a *marginal sinus BCE5* below the capsule, lined by flattened cells, which is transversed by solitary reticular cells. Radial sinuses (*intermediate sinuses BC6*) lead into the central sinuses of the medulla. There are both lymphocytes and macrophages in the sinus. Between and beneath the endothelial cells that coat the sinus lie macrophages that serve as phagocytic border cells. The *cortex* of the lymph node consists of lymph follicles **BC7**, and **D**, the *medulla* of medullary cords. The lymphocytes are densely packed in the cortex and usually form the secondary follicles (*B-region*). In the *medulla* they are less densely arranged in the cords of the reticular connective tissue (medullary cords). Between the cortical follicles and the medullary cords there is a paracortical zone which mainly contains T-lymphocytes (*T-region*).

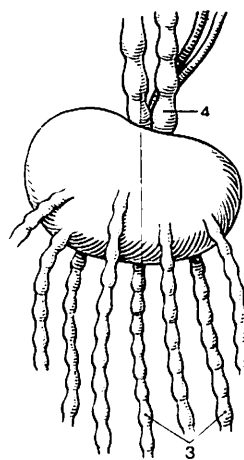
With increasing age the number of lymphocytes decreases, the reticular connective tissue is reduced and both are replaced by fat and connective tissue. At the hilum blood vessels enter the parenchyma, subdivide within the trabeculae and finally pass to the cortical follicles surrounded by lymphatic tissue. The cortical follicles are highly vascularized by

circular vessels. In **C** an oval encloses the B-lymphocyte zone of a segment and a circle shows the T-lymphocyte zone.

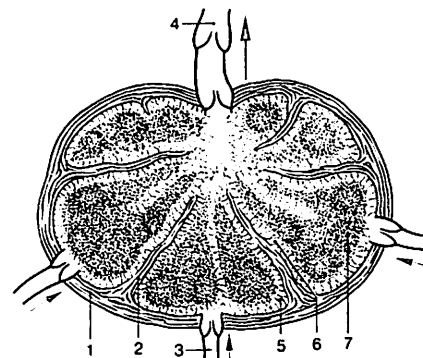
The *lymph* is in contact with lymph node tissue over a wide area. Foreign bodies and pathogenic microorganisms are phagocytosed by macrophages ("biological filter"). Cancer cells may establish secondary deposits (metastases) in lymph nodes. Inflammatory processes lead to swelling and pain through distension of the capsule. Lymphocytes enter the blood stream with lymph from the *vas efferens AB4*. Lymph nodes are the most important *source of lymphocytes* during postfetal life.

"**Epitheloid venules**", postcapillary veins, whose endothelial cells take on the form of cuboidal epithelial cells, are the region in which *lymphocytes recirculate*. Epithelial venules are the characteristic structures of the lymph nodes, tonsils and the lymphatic tissue of the intestine.

**Lymph.** According to investigations done on cats, lymph distal to lymph nodes can be virtually devoid of cells or it may contain from 200 to 2000 lymphocytes per  $\text{mm}^3$ . When lymph leaves a lymph node it contains 1500–150 000 cells  $\text{mm}^3$ . Whilst the efferent lymph of non-stimulated lymph nodes contain only about 1% of newly formed lymphocytes, 60 hours after antigenic stimulation of a lymph node almost 100% of lymphocytes are newly formed. Thus, as a consequence of the immune response provoked by the antigen, the efferent lymph carries specifically sensitized lymphocytes and plasma cell precursors into distant, nonregional lymph nodes.

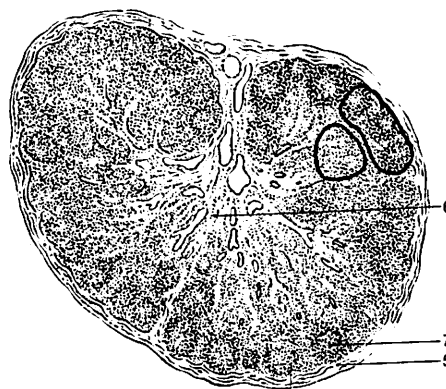


A Lymph node

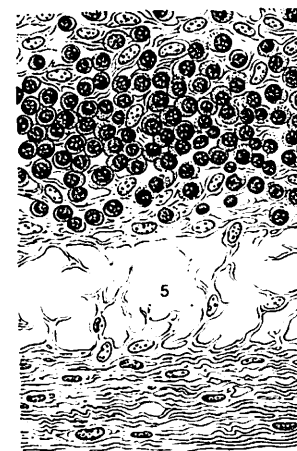
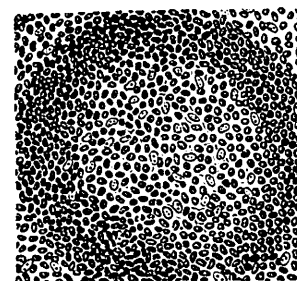


B Passage of lymph through lymph gland (schematic)

D Lymph follicle (magnification of upper square in C)



C Section through lymph gland



E Cortical sinus (magnification of lower square in C)



## Spleen

The **spleen** (*lien*) is interpolated into the bloodstream **A**. It is the size of a fist, is bluish-red in color, soft and shaped like a coffee bean. The spleen is 10–12 cm long, 6–8 cm wide, 3–4 cm thick and weighs 150–200 g. The organ lies at the back in the left upper abdomen below the diaphragm, at the level of the 9th–11th rib, with its longitudinal axis parallel to the 10th rib **A1**. **A2** Lower border of the lung, **A3** lower border of the pleura.

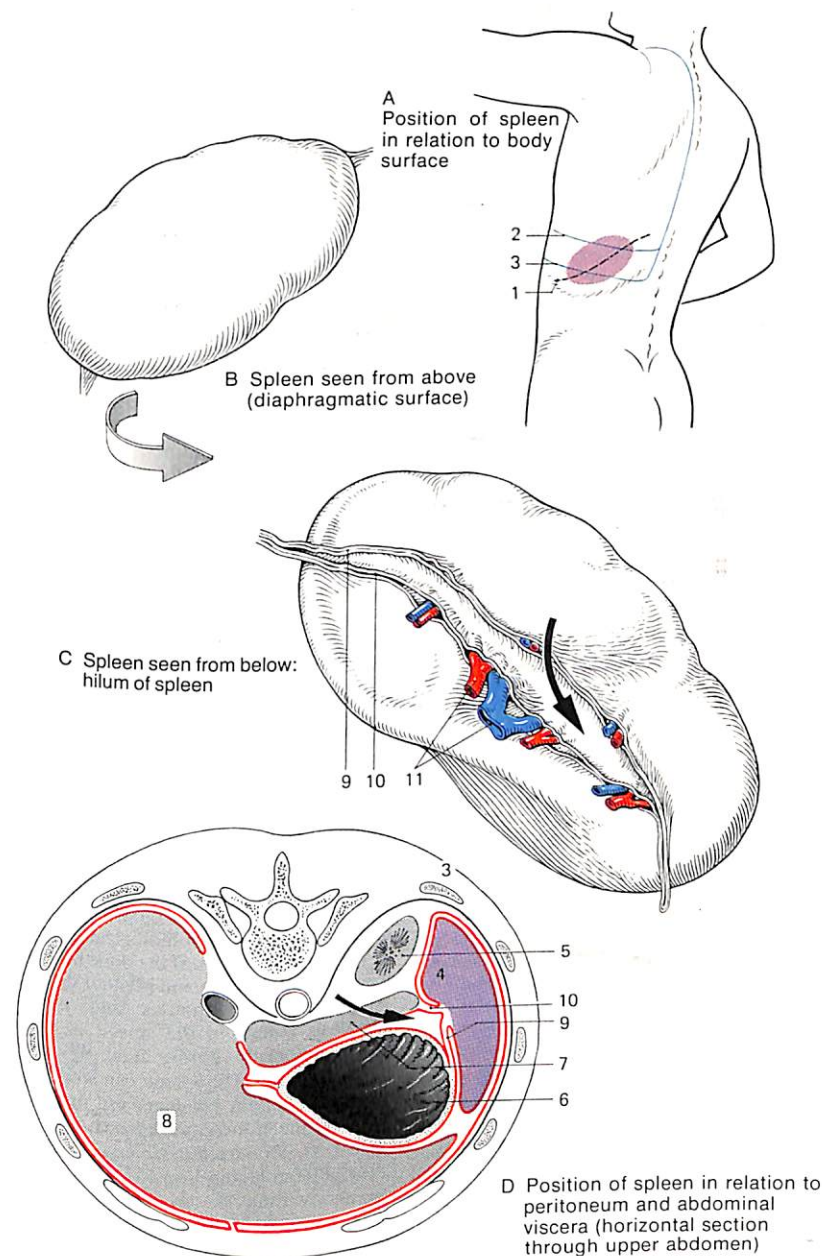
The upper *diaphragmatic surface*, *facies diaphragmatica* **B**, is convex and upward-facing, and the *faceted lower surface*, *facies visceralis*, is concave and downward-facing. The anterior superior margin of the spleen is narrow and has indentations: the posterior, inferior border is broad and blunt. The posterior (upper) pole of the spleen reaches to within 2 cm of the transverse of the 10th thoracic vertebra, the anterior (lower) pole to the medial axillary line. It is difficult to palpate. The spleen is mainly held in position by the *phrenicocolic ligament* which extends from the left colic (splenic) flexure to the lateral wall of the trunk. It forms the floor of the space in which the spleen lies.

The *hilum* is the point of entry and exit of the vessels and nerves; it is situated at the visceral surface **C**. It is narrow and elongated and extends along the *hilar groove*. The visceral surface of the spleen **D4** is situated behind the hilum and touches the left kidney **D5**, the surface in front of the hilum touches the stomach **D6**, the tail of the pancreas **D7** and the left colic flexure. **D8** Liver. The spleen is covered by the peritoneum and lies intraperitoneally. The *gastrosplenic (gastrosplenic) ligament* **CD9** stretches from the hilum of the spleen to the greater curvature of the stomach **D6**. The *spleno-renal (lienorenal) ligament* **CD10** goes to the posterior wall of the trunk. The splenic recess of the *bursa omentalis* (arrow) extends to this ligament (see p. 244). The short gastric artery and vein and the left gastropiploic artery run in the gastrosplenic

ligament. The spleno-renal ligament is shorter than the gastrosplenic ligament and contains the splenic artery and vein **C11**. It extends to the diaphragm. The spleen is displaced during breathing. If the body lies on its right side the spleen can follow the traction of the abdominal viscera and move a little lower down and forward.

*Accessory spleens* are derived from scattered splenic anlagen. They are either solitary or multiple and are the size of a pea to a chicken egg. They lie mainly beside the main spleen or along branches of the splenic artery, or they may appear at the greater curvature of the stomach, in the great omentum or elsewhere.

*Blood vessels and nerves.* The splenic artery (see p. 240) runs behind the upper border of the pancreas **D7** to the left (spleno-renal ligament) and to the hilum of the spleen. It has a thick muscular wall and is often very tortuous. The first branches arise in the spleno-renal ligament so that the artery enters the organ with 6 or more branches. The *splenic vein* is composed of several veins from the spleen and is one of the 3 great root veins of the portal vein, see p. 250. The *lymph vessels* come partly from the subserous connective tissue. *Lymph vessels* around the proximal parts of the central arteries and in the trabeculae show fluid flow in the opposite direction to the blood stream. The *lymph nodes* are: the pancreaticosplenic and celiac lymph nodes, see p. 80. The *nerves* contain viscerosensory and visceromotor nerve fibers from the celiac plexus. The myofibroblasts of the splenic trabeculae and the trabecular arteries (up to the divisions in the lymph tracts and the follicles) are supplied by adrenergic nerve fibers which contribute to the contractility of the trabecular-capsular system.





## Fine Structure of the Spleen

**Capsule and trabeculae.** The spleen has a connective tissue capsule **AB1**. The fibrous elastic tissue trabeculae **B2** extend from the hilum to the opposite area of the capsule.

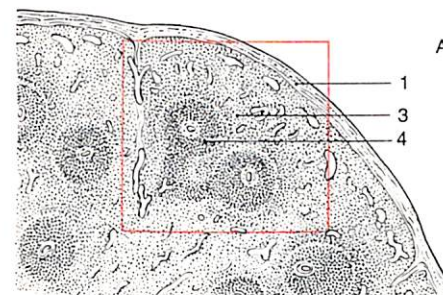
**Pulp.** A blood-containing substance, the "red pulp" **A3**, may be scraped off the cut surface of the spleen. Pinhead-sized, whitish spots, together known as the "white pulp" **A4** then remain. The red pulp, which is mostly formed of the sinuses of the spleen, makes up about 77% of splenic tissue. In the adult, the white pulp, lymph follicles and lymphoid cords comprise about 19% of the volume, about a third of its lymph follicles. 10000–20000 in the spleen of a 20 year old person.

**Blood vessels.** The structure of the spleen is determined by the arrangement of the blood vessels. The major arterial branches are end arteries and occlusion of them leads to splenic infarction. Branches of the splenic artery run as trabecular arteries **B5** with the corresponding trabecular veins **B6** in the trabeculae **B2**. As central arteries **B7** they enter the lymphoid cords which at some sites form lymph follicles **B8**. In their course through the lymph cords, every central artery gives off numerous lateral branches which open into the network of the marginal zone **B9** or into the red pulp. At those points where a lymph follicle (B region) has developed in a lymph cord (T region), it lies lateral to the lymph cord. The central artery ends in about 50 terminal pulp arterioles (penicillate arteries) **B10**. The latter penetrate the neighboring red pulp and subdivide into capillaries. For a short stretch the capillaries are enveloped by a fusiform coat of densely packed macrophages, the Schweigger-Seidel sleeve (ellipsoid) **B11**—sleeve capillaries. The capillaries mostly drain through a reticular cord of the reticular connective tissue **B12** surrounding the sinus into the broad splenic sinus **B13** ("open circulation"). A few capillaries may open directly into the sinus of the spleen ("closed circulation").

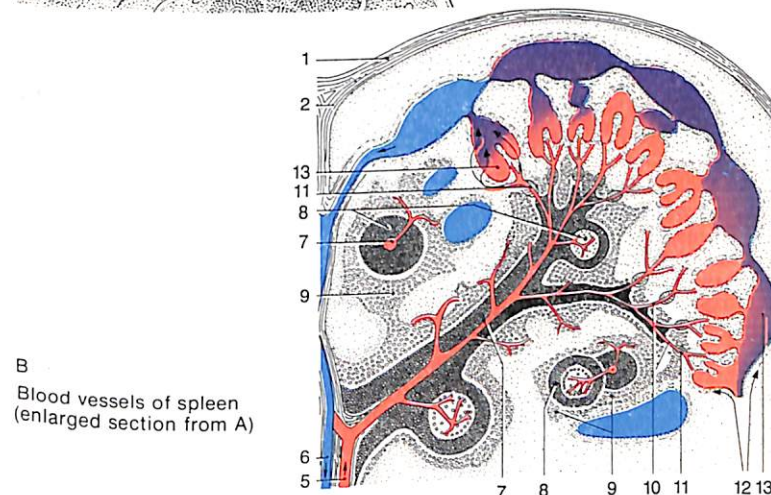
The sinuses communicate with one another like a loose net by connecting channels. The sinus wall is composed of three elements: (1) a layer of spindle shaped endothelial cells **C14**, whose nuclei project into the lumen, (2) an incomplete basal membrane in the form of circular fibers, and (3) an incomplete, outer layer of special reticulum cells **C15**. The sinus is held together by circular fibers **C16** and is surrounded by reticular tissue **C17**, which forms the pulp cord around it. It contains cells of the immune system and blood cells (not shown in **C**). The sinuses open directly, or via veins of the pulp into the trabecular veins and these drain into the splenic vein. Blood cells in the reticulum of the spleen are formed either there (immune cells, lymphopoiesis) or arrive there through the capillaries which freely enter the reticulum of the spleen ("open circulation"). Blood cells pass through the (temporary?) holes in the reticular network into the sinuses (**C18** a penetrating erythrocyte). This is the pathway taken by newly formed blood cells into the blood of the sinus. **C19** Mitosis, **C20** macrophage.

Lymph vessels come from the vicinity of the central arteries. Nerves are adrenergic, and also contain vasoactive peptides (neuropeptide Y, VIP, substance P).

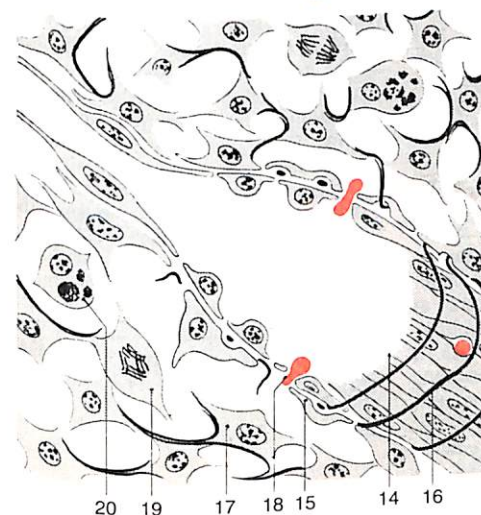
**Function.** In the spleen, the vascular system is expanded and the blood flow is slowed. In this way the spleen can cause many changes in the composition of the blood. As an immune organ, the spleen takes part in immunobiological processes. **Blood formation:** If the bone marrow becomes inadequate and in other disease situations, granulopoiesis and erythropoiesis restart in the spleen as they did temporarily during fetal development. **Storage:** The spleen can store discarded metabolic products and thereby become much increased in size (storage diseases). **Blood cell destruction:** An excess of hemoglobin iron from blood cell breakdown may be stored in the spleen and may be apparent microscopically (hemosiderin), and in extreme cases macroscopically as brown staining of the organ (hemosiderosis). In man the spleen does not function as a blood storage organ.



A Section through spleen, general view.



B Blood vessels of spleen (enlarged section from A)



C Opening of capillary into sinus of spleen (enlarged section from B)



## Tonsils

The **tonsils** surround the exits of the oral and nasal spaces into the pharynx (throat). They form a circle and have a protective function by early activation of specific defense mechanisms. They form the "pharyngeal circle" of Waldeyer which consists of the *unpaired pharyngeal tonsil* in the roof of the pharynx **AC1**, the *paired palatine tonsils* **AB2** on each side of the palatine arch **AB3** and the *lingual tonsil* **A4** in the retrolingual region. There is some additional lymphatic tissue in the lateral wall of the pharynx (*lateral cord*) which, at the entrance to the Eustachian tube, is condensed into the *tonsilla tubaria* **A5**. **A6** Entrance into the larynx.

The lymphoid tissue in the *tonsils* consists of *aggregated lymph follicles* **D7** lying directly beneath the covering epithelium, the surface of which is deeply fissured by *crypts* **D8** (invaginations). The lymphocytes immigrate into the intercellular gaps between the epithelial cells. In the crypts there are plugs of detritus from shed epithelial cells and leukocytes. The marginal wall of lymphocytes in the secondary follicles, which is thickened toward the epithelial surface, sits like a semilunar cap on the germinal center. The tonsil is demarcated from its surroundings (connective tissue, glands and muscles) by a taut fibrous capsule which allows it to be surgically enucleated. Its lymph vessels lead to regional lymph nodes.

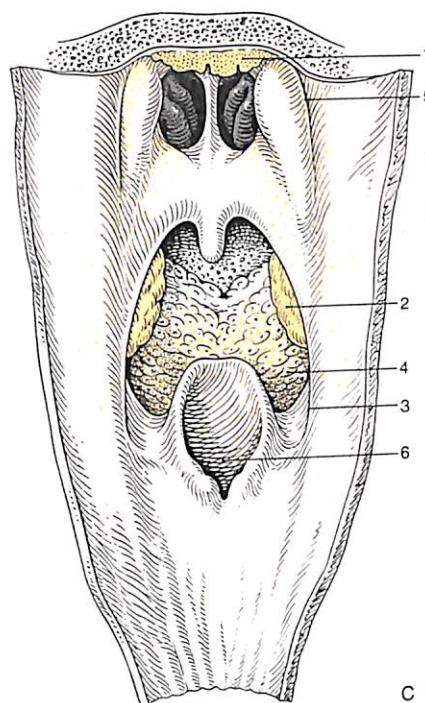
The *pharyngeal tonsil* (*tonsilla pharyngealis*) **AC1** protrudes from beneath the roof of the pharynx. It lies behind the choanae (see p. 114) and in early school age can block them during the period of most marked development of the immune system, which occurs at this age. The consequences of such blockage are interference with sleep, lack of concentration at school, breathing through the continuously open mouth, and malformation of the facial bones. The tonsil is covered by stratified ciliated epithelium. **C9** Sella turcica, **C10** soft palate.

The *palatine tonsils* (*tonsilla palatina*) **AB2** have 10–20 crypts and are covered by a stratified non-keratinized squamous epithelium.

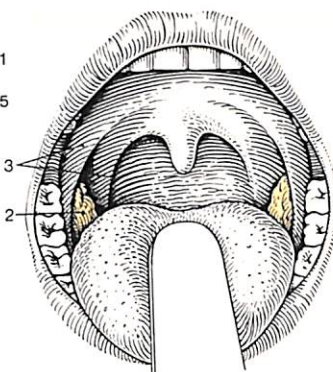
The *lingual tonsil* (*tonsilla lingualis*) **A4** is flat, has shallow crypts and is covered by a stratified, non-keratinized squamous epithelium. Into the crypts empty mucous glands, the *lingual glands*, which lie between the muscle fibers of the tongue.

## Lymphatic Tissue of the Mucous Membranes

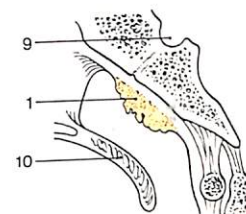
Lymph follicles occur singly or in groups in mucous membranes, especially in the *intestinal mucous membrane*. The *gut-associated lymphatic system* in the stomach, small intestine and appendix mucosa **E** forms an independent organ complex which responds to ingested antigens. It consists of lymphocytes which are *diffusely distributed in the mucosal connective tissue*, and *intraepithelial lymphocytes* particularly from the *folliculi lymphatici aggregati*, *Peyer's patches* of the small intestine and appendix mucosae **E11**. Where the latter occur there are no villi or crypts, and they form an arch or dome. *M-cells* (membranous cells) particularly absorb antigens from the intestinal lumen and present them to the underlying lymphocytes and macrophages. B-lymphocytes which have been stimulated in this way migrate along the lymphatic pathways and so spread the defensive response throughout the intestine. They return via the bloodstream and then become plasma cells, which particularly form IgA as an antibody, which is linked to a secreted protein and released into the lumen of the intestine. Activated B-lymphocytes also migrate via the lymph and blood into other secretory organs (mammary glands, salivary glands, and lacrimal glands) which also release IgA with their secretions. **E12** Lumen of gut, **E13** circular muscle layer, **E14** longitudinal muscle layer.



A Throat, opened from behind position of tonsils at entrances to throat



B View into oral cavity: position of palatine tonsils



C Position of palatine tonsil in newborn (median sagittal section through roof of pharynx)



D Section through palatine tonsil



E Section through appendix



## Respiratory System

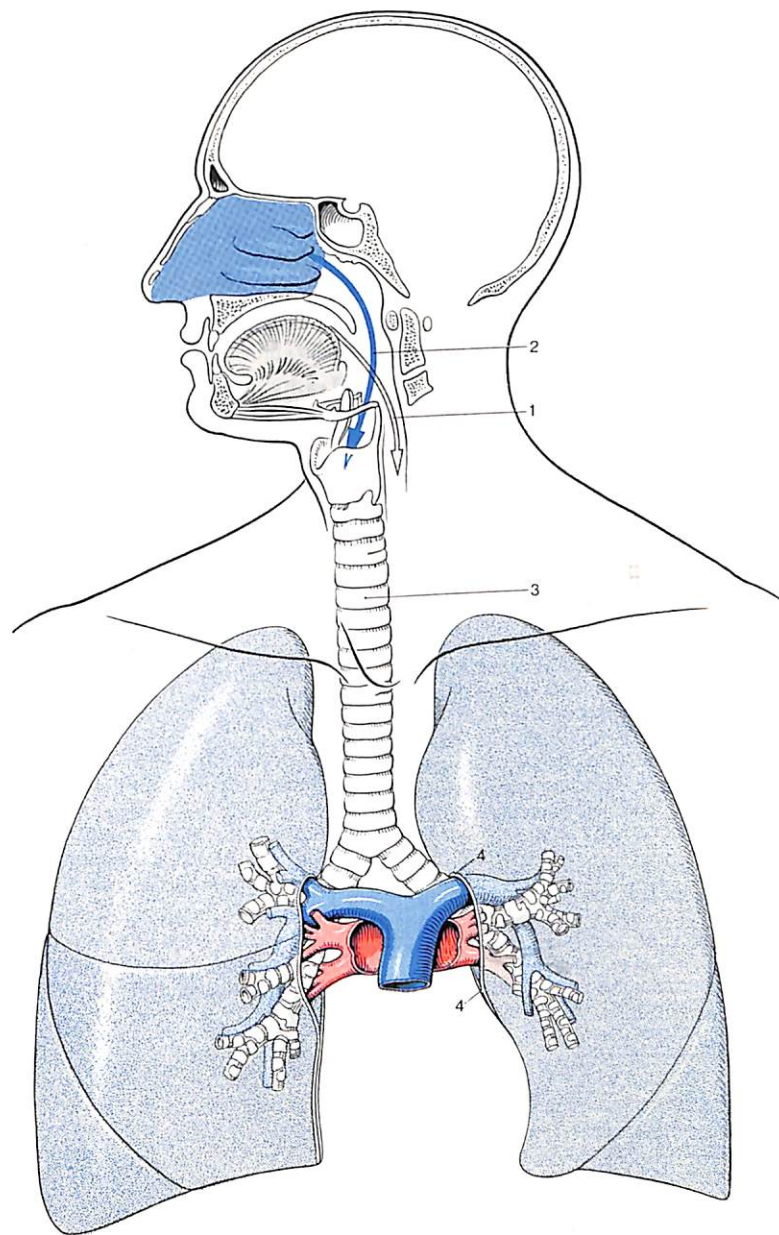
Under *respiration* we understand the *transport of gases* to and from cells – accessible to anatomical examination – as well as the *biological processes of oxidation* which take place within cells with the help of oxygen, and which are studied by biochemical methods (physiological chemistry). In animals which breathe through lungs the gases are carried via the *respiratory tract*, the trachea and the bronchi, into the lungs. Here oxygen from the inhaled air diffuses into the blood and CO<sub>2</sub> from the blood into the exhaled air. The *inhaled air* contains about 20.93% O<sub>2</sub>, 0.03% CO<sub>2</sub> and 79.04% N<sub>2</sub> and *exhaled air* contains about 16% O<sub>2</sub>, 4% CO<sub>2</sub> and 80% N<sub>2</sub>, as well as the noble gases.

The transport of gases between the lungs and the cells of organs and tissues is achieved via the *blood stream*. During the process of intracellular biological oxidation large molecular nutrients are broken down into smaller, energy-poorer metabolites and energy is released: The combustion of fats and carbohydrates into H<sub>2</sub>O and CO<sub>2</sub>.

The **respiratory organs** serve for the transport of gases. We distinguish respiratory organs through which air flows, i.e., the *nasal cavities*, *pharynx*, *larynx* and *trachea*, from the *lungs* which serve the immediate exchange of gases between air and blood. A large part of the respiratory tract (air passages), the *bronchi*, is within the lungs. The larynx serves also for the production of sound. The olfactory organ (the nose) controls the inhaled air, aids orientation in the environment and, together with the sensory nerves of the nasal mucosa, helps to protect the individual (see Sense Organs, Vol. 3). One part of the air passages is situated in the head; the *upper respiratory tract*: the nose with the nasal cavities, the nasal sinuses and the pharynx (throat). From a clinical point of view oral cavity, too, is often included with these struc-

tures. The other part is situated in the neck and in the trunk, the *lower respiratory tract*: the larynx, trachea, bronchi and the lungs. In all parts of the respiratory tract the inhaled air is prepared, i.e., it is cleaned in various ways, moistened and warmed.

Unlike other mammals, the larynx and trachea of adult humans do not immediately follow the nasal cavity, since they have a longer pharynx and the upright position has produced a right-angled bend with respect to the long axis of the trachea. The larynx and nasal cavity are separated by the middle (oral) part of the pharynx (*mesopharynx*). Since the mesopharynx provides a passage for the *respiratory tract* and the *alimentary canal* which cross here in man, to permit the ingestion of food **1** the respiratory tract **2** must be closed for short periods for swallowing (see p. 206). **3** Trachea. In the infant, whose pharynx is not yet stretched, breathing and ingestion of food can proceed simultaneously. **4** Hilum of lung: red = pulmonary veins, blue = pulmonary trunk and arteries.



Survey of organs of respiration



## Nose

The external nose is thrown into relief against the lips and the cheeks by the *nasolabial fold* A1. The framework of the nose is formed at its *root* by the *nasal bone* A2 and toward its tip by hyaline cartilages, which are moveable against each other and which keep the nostrils open. The *nasal cartilages* and *ala of the nose*, the *major alar cartilage* on each side, A3 stiffen the entrance to the nose with their middle and lateral crura on each side. A facial muscle, the *nasalis* muscle, arises from the root of the nose, and together with the *levator labii superioris alaeque nasi*, it controls the movements of the nose (see Vol. 1). The nose is covered by the skin of the face and it contains sebaceous glands in the region of the tip and the nasolabial fold (comedones, blackheads, may form in them).

The *nasal septum* consists of a bony and a cartilaginous part and extends from the nasal cavity into the external nostril where it ends in fibrous connective tissue. Its cartilage consists of a *septal lamella*, the cartilage of the nasal septum B4, and the paired lateral lamella of the dorsal nose, the *lateral nasal cartilage* A5. The cartilage is interpolated posteriorly and above between the bony parts of the nasal septum, the *perpendicular plate* (lamina perpendicularis) of the ethmoid bone B6 and the vomer B7. B8 Skin.

On both sides of the border between the cartilaginous and the bony part of the septum the vomer forms a narrow cartilaginous ledge, the *vomer nasal cartilage* (Jacobson's cartilage). Foreign bodies which are introduced into the nose can slide along this crest upward into the back of the nasal cavity (N. B. risk of perforation of the ethmoid bone in children!). The ledge has a highly vascularized thickening of the mucosa, *Kieselbach's point*, which bleeds easily in nasal injuries. Anteriorly in the septal mucosa on both sides of the septum there is a *cavernous body* which can narrow the atrium (vestibule) at the level of the middle meatus. The septum of the nose is

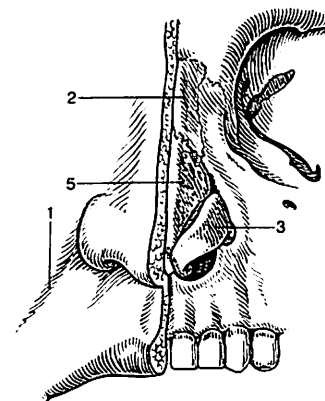
frequently deflected to one side or the other – *septal deviation*.

The *external nares* (nostrils) lead into the *vestibule* of the nose. This lies in the mobile part of the nose and is separated from the nasal cavity by a curved elevation, the *limen nasi* B9. The vestibule has a circle of hairs, *vibrissae*, which curve outward to guard against the entry of foreign bodies. The epithelium of the facial skin merges in the vestibule into a stratified, squamous epithelium. Further up, at the *limen nasi*, it is replaced by columnar epithelium.

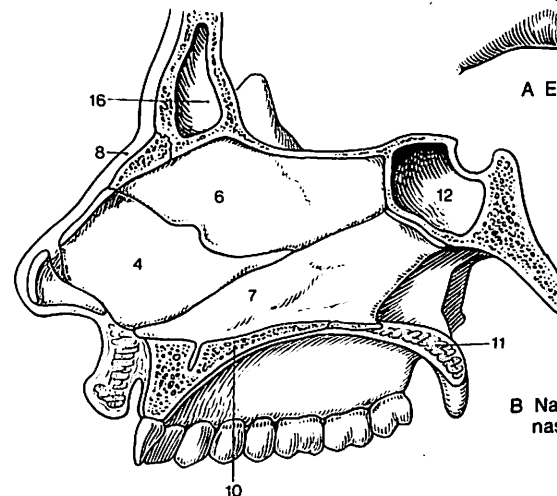
**Nasal cavity.** The *nasal cavities* are separated from each other by the *septum* and from the oral cavity by the *palate*. The lateral wall starts at the floor of the nasal cavity 10–15 mm from the septum. The nasal cavity narrows like a gable towards the top. Each nasal cavity ends in a posterior nasal aperture, *choana*, which communicates with the throat (pharynx). The floor of the nasal cavities is formed by the *hard palate* BC10 (anteriorly the palatine process of the maxilla and posteriorly the horizontal lamella of the os palatinum) and by the *soft palate* BC11 (*velum palatinum*).

The *roof of the nasal cavity* is a groove which slopes forward under the bridge of the nose towards the nostrils, and posteriorly along the anterior wall of the sphenoid bone BC12 in the *sphenoethmoidal recess* toward the choanae.

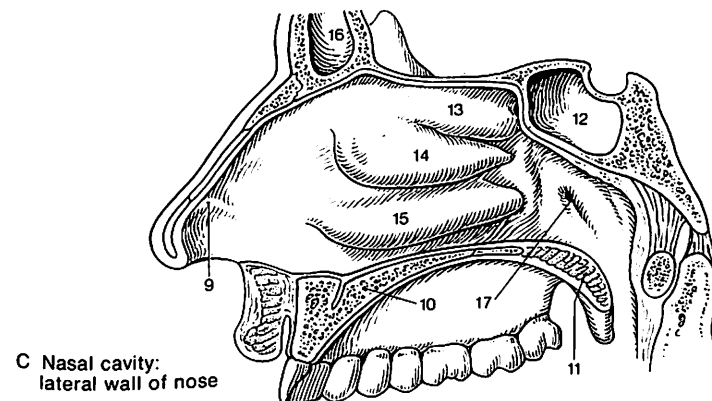
The *lateral wall* is enlarged by 3 elevations, the *conchae* C13–15 (see p. 110), BC16 frontal sinus, BC12 sphenoidal sinus, C17 pharyngeal orifice of the Eustachian tube.



A Exterior of nose



B Nasal cavity: nasal septum



C Nasal cavity: lateral wall of nose



## Nasal Conchae and Meatus I

The **nasal conchae** are thin bones which are covered by a mucous membrane. There is a nasal passage or meatus beneath each of the *three conchae*, *superior*, *middle* and *inferior*. The inferior, the longest concha **A1**, consists of an independent bone **B2**. Into the *inferior meatus* **A3** opens the *nasolacrimal duct*, which collects the lacrimal fluid from the conjunctival sac of the eye and via two ductlets, *lacrimal canals*, collects and empties off the fluid through the *lacrimal sac*. The bone of the middle concha **A4** is part of the ethmoid bone. The *frontal sinus* **A6, the *maxillary sinus* **A7** and the *anterior ethmoidal sinuses* **A8** all open into the *middle meatus* **A5**. The superior concha, the smallest of the 3, is formed by the ethmoid bone. The *posterior ethmoidal sinuses* **A9** drain through 1 or 2 openings into the *superior nasal meatus*.**

**Clinical Tip.** Because the opening of the maxillary sinus into the middle meatus lies just below its roof, discharge of secretions from the sinus into the nasal cavity is greatly restricted. An artificial passage can be created by perforating the lateral wall of the nasal cavity in the inferior meatus **A10**. **A11** Access to the maxillary sinus by perforation of the root of a tooth.

Openings of the nasal sinus are marked by blue arrows.

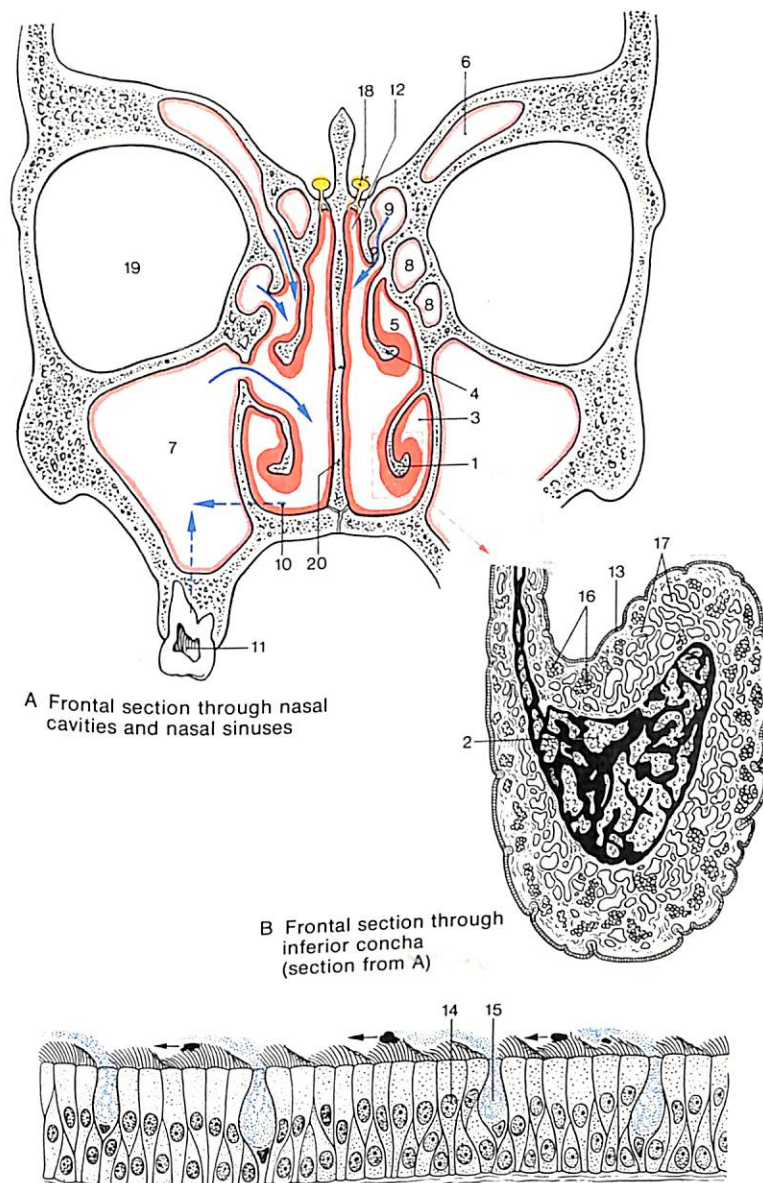
**Mucous membrane of the nose.** We distinguish 2 sections: 1) The *respiratory region* covers the inferior and the middle concha, the corresponding area of the septum and the floor of the nasal cavity. It serves to condition inhaled air. 2) The *olfactory region* covers the superior concha, the part of the septum opposite it and the roof of the nasal cavity **A12**. It contains the olfactory organ.

**Respiratory region.** The mucosa consists of a *ciliated columnar epithelium* **B13**, **C14**. Its cilia beat toward the pharynx and distribute the mucus, which is produced by the goblet cells **C15** and by small *nasal glands* **B16** over the surface of the mucosa. The mucus traps dust parti-

cles and carries them away and it also helps to humidify inhaled air. The mucosa contains veins **B17** which form a *cavernous body*, the cavernous plexus of the concha, in the wall of the conchae and, if this becomes engorged, the mucosa can swell to a thickness of 5 mm, resulting in a obstruction of the nasal cavity and a "stuffy" nose. The veins give off heat to the inhaled air. The undulating movement of the cilia is coordinated. It can be observed in the living mucosa (e.g., roof of the pharynx of the frog) under the microscope.

**Olfactory region.** Here the epithelium is composed of sensory and supporting cells. Below the mucosa lie serous *olfactory glands*, the olfactory glands of Bowman and the non-myelinated fibers of the *olfactory nerves*, bundles of which run through openings in the lamina cribrosa of the ethmoid bone toward the *olfactory bulb of the brain* **A18** (cf. Vol. 3).

The *air stream* passes mainly through the middle and inferior meati. On its way it is sampled by the olfactory organ. Sniffing produces currents which whirl air into the olfactory region and prolong its stay inside the nasal cavity. Deformities of the walls of the nasal cavity influence the air-current conditions. **A19** Orbit, **A20** nasal septum.



A Frontal section through nasal cavities and nasal sinuses

B Frontal section through inferior concha (section from A)

C Epithelium of respiratory part of nasal mucosa (section from B)



## Nasal Sinuses and Meatus II

**Inferior nasal meatus.** The *nasolacrimal canal* A1 opens into the anterior part of the inferior nasal meatus. If the head is bent forward lacrimal fluid runs out through the external nares (nostrils), and if it is bent backward it runs out through the choanae. The pharyngeal opening of the auditory tube (*ostium pharyngeum tubae auditivae*) A2 lies in the extension of the inferior concha.

**Middle nasal meatus.** After removal of the middle concha in A a curved gap, the *semilunar hiatus*, becomes visible. Its upper border is formed by the *ethmoidal bulla* A3, a rounded elevation open on the top (the opening of the anterior *ethmoidal sinuses*). A fold of the mucosa, the *plica semilunaris*, in which lies the uncinate process of the ethmoid bone, forms the lower border. The *frontal sinus* AB5 leads into the anterior upper end A4 and the *maxillary sinus* A6 into the posterior lower end of the hiatus. About 1 cm behind the middle concha in the *sphenoethmoidal recess* beneath the mucous membrane of the *sphenopalatine foramen*, there is an opening into the *pterygopalatine fossa*.

**Superior nasal meatus.** It bears 1–2 openings of the *posterior ethmoidal sinuses*. The *sphenoethmoidal recess* runs between the posterior border of the superior concha and the anterior wall of the sphenoid bone. The *sphenoidal sinus* AB8 enters it from behind A7.

**Nasal sinuses.** The sinuses of the nose (*paranasal sinuses*) mainly develop after birth. In the newborn child the frontal and maxillary sinuses are present as recesses which only start to grow slightly towards the end of the first year. They reach about half their final size at about 10 years, and become fully developed with the lengthening of the face between the 15th and 20th year. The nasal sinuses are lined by the nasal mucosa, which is invaginated where they open into the nose. The air sinuses warm the inhaled air. Infections which are difficult to get at

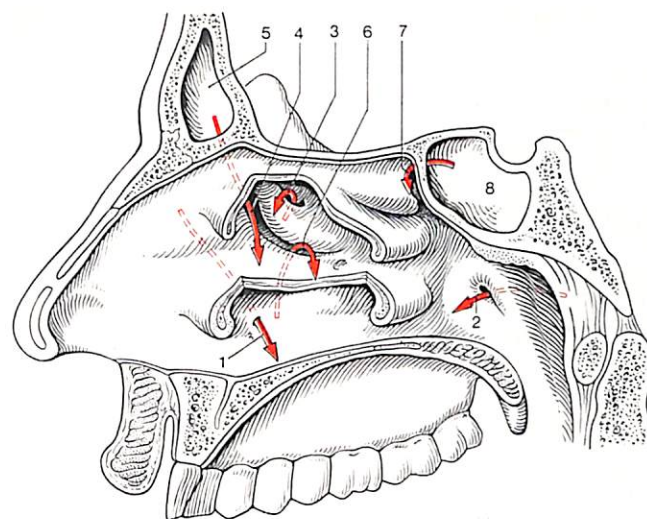
may persist in the sinuses. The following sinuses are distinguished bilaterally:

**Maxillary sinus (Higmore's antrum) B9.** It extends below the orbit and its floor is separated from the roots of the molars and premolar teeth by a bony plate only a few millimeters thick.

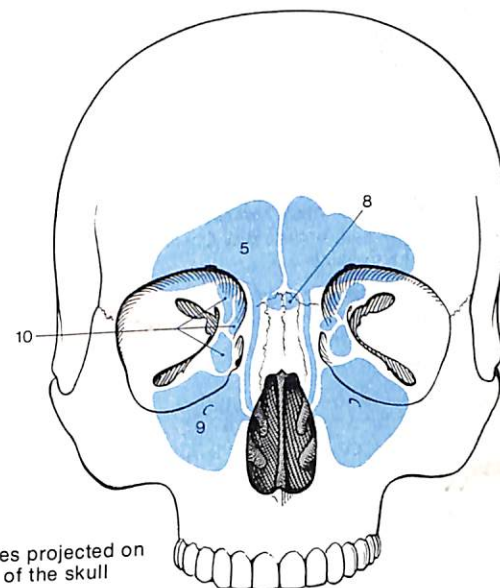
**Frontal sinus AB5.** The degree to which this extends into the frontal bone varies greatly and usually it is asymmetrical. Near it lie the anterior cranial fossa and the roof of the orbit.

The **ethmoidal sinus** consists of *ethmoidal air cells* B10. It develops at an early age. It borders on the orbit, the anterior cranial fossa and the nasal cavities and is separated from them in places by paper-thin bony lamellae. We distinguish anterior, middle and posterior cells.

**Sphenoidal sinuses B8.** They are separated by a sagittal septum, often incomplete. The roof of the sphenoidal sinus is formed by the sella turcica at the base of the skull.



A Openings of nasal sinuses and nasolacrimal canal



B Nasal sinuses projected on the surface of the skull



### Posterior Nares (Choanae) and Soft Palate

The **posterior nares (choanae)** are framed by the base of the skull, the vomer **A1**, the pterygoid process of the sphenoid **A2**, the hard palate and the muscles of the soft palate. The orifice of the *Eustachian tube* **A3** points toward the choanae, hence the possibility of spread of infected mucus from the nose through the Eustachian tube into the middle ear if the nose is blown under pressure.

**Soft palate (velum palatinum).** This consists of a sheet of muscle and tendon covered by mucous membrane. The muscles are the *levator veli palatinum* **A4**, and the *tensor veli palatini* **A5**, which originate from the base of the skull and the latter also from the tip of the Eustachian tube. Both these muscles radiate into the aponeurosis of the palate. The levator elevates and the tensor stretches the soft palate in its course around the pterygoid hamulus **A2**. The ostium of the tube is dilated by contraction of the muscles, which permits adjustment of the air pressure in the middle ear to the external air pressure by the act of swallowing. The *uvular muscle* **A6** runs sagittally into the connective tissue of the uvula. The *palatopharyngeus muscle* **A7** passes into the wall of the pharynx (see Deglutition, act of swallowing, p. 206).

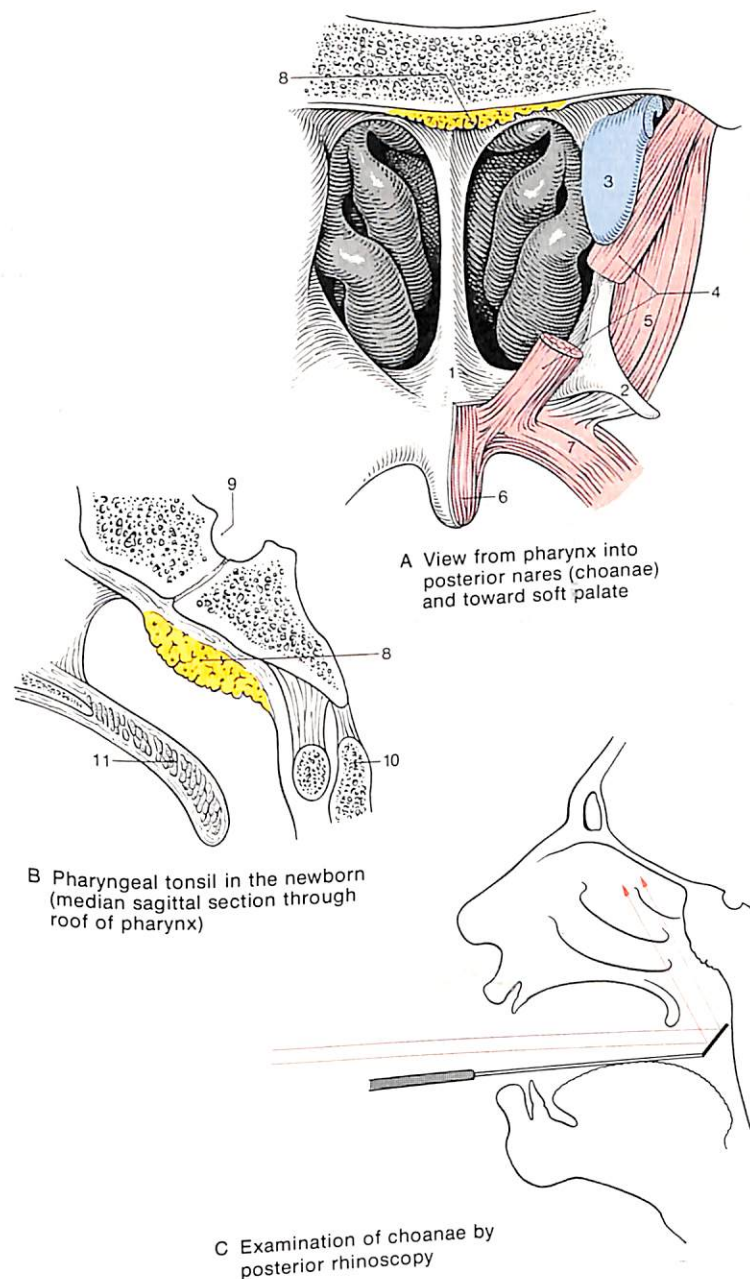
In the infant the choanae can be blocked by an enlarged *pharyngeal tonsil* **AB8**, see p. 104. **B9** Sella turcica, **B10** dens of the axis, **B11** soft palate.

**Rhinoscopy.** By use of a laryngeal mirror the anterior part of the nasal cavity can be examined through the choanae (*anterior and posterior rhinoscopy*).

**Blood vessels and nerves.** The arteries: 1) The terminal branches of the *maxillary artery*, viz. the posterior lateral nasal arteries and septal posterior branches enter through the foramen sphenopalatinum into the nasal cavity; 2) the anterior and posterior ethmoidal arteries stem from the ophthalmic artery of the *internal carotid artery*, see p. 58. The

*veins* communicate with the orbital veins, the pterygoid plexus and the venous sinuses of the skull, see p. 64.

The *lymphatics* drain into lymph nodes which are situated in front of the 2nd cervical vertebra, on the greater horn of the hyoid bone and near the parotid gland. **Nerves:** Sensory fibers from the 1st and 2nd branch of the trigeminal nerve. Secretomotor postganglionic parasympathetic fibers from the carotid plexus. The olfactory nerves are also involved.





## Larynx

The **larynx** can shut off the lower airways from the pharynx (coughing, vomiting). All the laryngeal muscles except for the posterior cricoarytenoid muscle take part in the closure. In addition, the larynx produces tones. The larynx consists of a cartilaginous skeleton with ligaments, which carries the muscles and is mostly covered by mucous membrane.

## Skeleton of the Larynx

The **thyroid cartilage A1** consists of two quadrilateral laminae which are fused in front like the bow of a ship. At the tip of the bow is a notch, the **superior thyroid notch A2**, which can be felt as the "Adam's apple". The laminae diverge toward the back to enclose a sheltered space in which most of the other parts of the larynx are situated. The anterior surface of each lamina is subdivided by an oblique line into an anterior facet for the origin of the thyroideus and a posterior facet for the origin of the sternothyroideus and inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscles. A **superior A3** and an **inferior A4 horn (cornu)** arise from the posterior edge of each lamina, the inferior one forming a joint with the articular (outer) surface of the cricoid cartilage (arrow), the **cricothyroid joint**.

**Movements:** The thyroid and cricoid cartilages can tilt around a transverse axis: see arrows in A, p. 119.

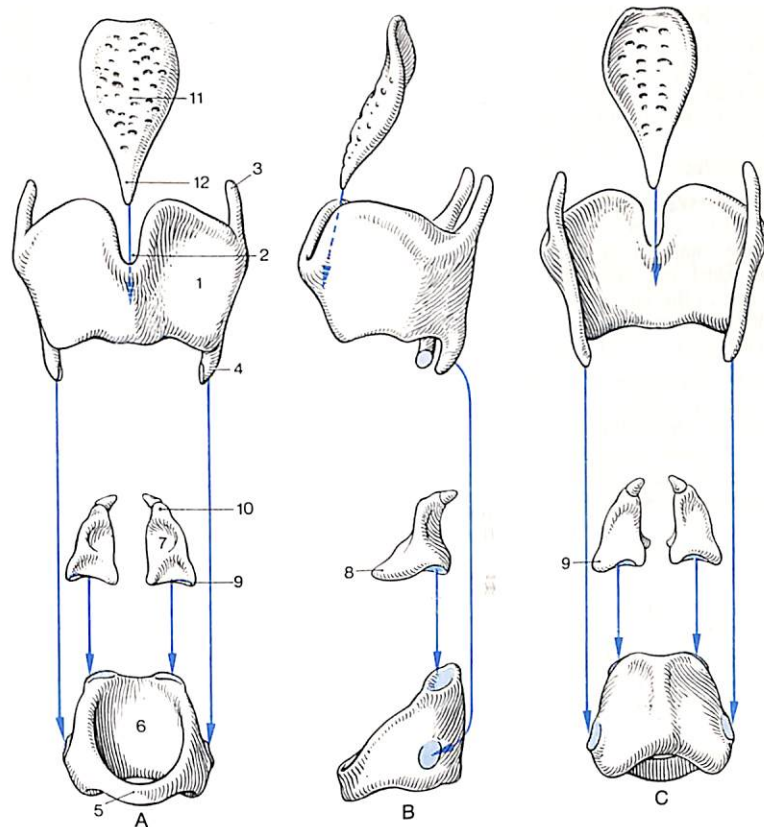
The **cricoid cartilage A5** is shaped like a signet ring. Its **lamina A6** is 2–2.5 cm high and lies at the back. The **upper edge of the lamina** has two articular surfaces for the arytenoid cartilages **A7**, the lateral surface on each side has an articular surface for the inferior horn (cornu) of the thyroid cartilage.

Both **arytenoid cartilages A7** sit on the upper edge of the lamina of the cricoid cartilage. Each has the shape of a triangular pyramid. There are 3 lateral surfaces, medial, dorsal and lateral, a basal articular surface and 3 processes. From the anterior process, the **vocal process B8**,

the vocal cord arises; on the lateral, **muscular process AC9** the posterior and lateral cricoarytenoid muscles are inserted; and the upper process, the **apex of the arytenoid cartilage A10** is inclined toward the midline and carries the **corniculate cartilage (of Santorini)**, which produces a rounded eminence, in the aryepiglottic fold, the **corniculate tubercle** (see p. 120). The arytenoid cartilages, together with the rolled upper edge of the lamina of the cricoid cartilage, form a cylindrical joint on each side, the **cricoarytenoid joint** (arrow). Its axis runs obliquely from dorso-medio-cranial to ventro-lateral-caudal.

**Movements:** Lateral gliding along the cylinder axis by the arytenoid cartilages produces separation or approximation by 2 mm. Tilting around the cylinder axis produces an elevation or lowering of the vocal processes; turning around the vertical axis (loose joint capsule) alters the distance between the vocal processes (arrows in C, p. 119).

The **epiglottis A11** lies against the middle of the internal (posterior) surface of the thyroid cartilage (arrow). The epiglottis has a stem (**petiolus A12**) which forms the **epiglottic tubercle** beneath the mucosa, and an oval lamina, concave posteriorly.



Laryngeal cartilages separated



## Laryngeal Ligaments

These may be divided into *inner* and *outer laryngeal ligaments*. The inner ones join the different parts of the laryngeal skeleton together, and the outer ligaments fix the larynx between the hyoid bone and the trachea.

**Inner laryngeal ligaments.** The *fibroelastic membrane of the larynx* is the membrane composed of a dense elastic fiber net which lies below the mucous membrane of the larynx and corresponds to the tela submucosa. It varies in thickness in the three areas of the larynx.

In the region of the *infraglottic cavity* it is called the *conus elasticus* (see p. 122). This is a short tube which begins with a round lumen on the inner side of the cricoid cartilage and ends in a slit-shaped, sagittally orientated fissure beneath the mucous membranes forming the left and right vocal cords.

The *vocal cords* are the two, thickened, upper ends of the conus elasticus. They are attached posteriorly to the vocal processes of both arytenoid cartilages and anteriorly to the inner surface of the angle of the thyroid cartilage. The conus elasticus and the two vocal cords form the elastic wall of the tone producing mechanism ("lip pipe") in the larynx.

The *median cricothyroid ligament A1* is a firm fiber band in the conus elasticus which runs anteriorly in the midline between the cricoid cartilage and the lower border of the thyroid cartilage.

**Clinical Tip.** As the median cricothyroid ligament lies below the glottis, in life-threatening obstruction of the glottis, e. g., swelling of the mucous membrane, or glottal oedema, the air passage may be opened artificially by a cut or puncture through the ligament, *coniotomy* (see p. 126).

The *quadrangular membrane* is the poorly formed part of the fibroelastic membrane of the larynx, which lies beneath the mucous membrane of vestibulum of the larynx.

The *vestibular ligament* ("false vocal cord", see p. 122) is the lower, free margin of the quadrangular membrane. The band-like marginal zone of the membrane lies in the vestibular fold and is attached on both sides to the anterior surface of the arytenoid cartilage and the inner surface of the bow of the thyroid cartilage above the insertion of the vocal cord.

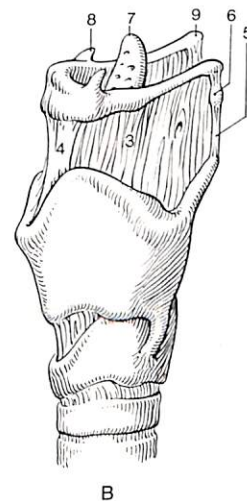
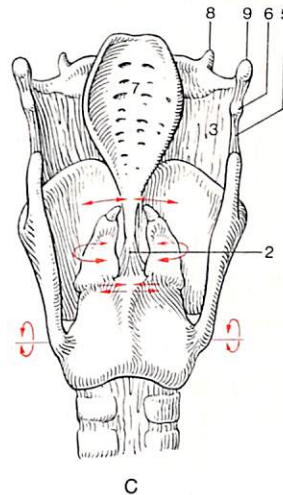
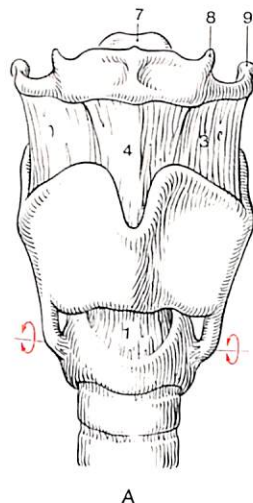
The elastic *posterior cricoarytenoid ligament* medially strengthens the lax joint capsule of the arytenoid-cricoid joint.

The *cricopharyngeal ligament* extends from the corniculate cartilage to the posterior surface of the lamina of the cricoid cartilage and more fiber tracts attach it to the connective tissue of the mucous membrane of the esophagus, which lies behind it.

The *thyroepiglottic ligament C2* attaches the petiolus of the epiglottis to the inner surface of the bow of the thyroid cartilage.

**External laryngeal ligaments.** The *thyrohyoid membrane ABC3* stretches between the upper margin of the thyroid cartilage and the hyoid bone. Thickened fiber tracts of the membrane are called the *median thyrohyoid ligament* (between the superior thyroid notch and the body of the hyoid bone **AB4**) and the *thyrohyoid ligament BC5* (between the upper horn of the thyroid cartilage and the posterior end of the greater horn of the hyoid bone). A small cartilage, the *triticeal cartilage BC6* lies in the thyrohyoid ligament.

**ABC7** Epiglottic cartilage, **ABC8** lesser horn of the hyoid bone, **ABC9** greater horn of the hyoid bone.





## Muscles of the Larynx

The *upper* and *lower hyoides* muscles (see Vol. 1) elevate, lower and tilt the larynx and fix it in position. Quite distinct from them are the *laryngeal muscles* which move various parts of the larynx against each other. According to position and origin they are divided into *external* cricothyroid muscles in front of the cricoid cartilage and *internal* laryngeal muscles inside the thyroid cartilage.

The **cricothyroideus A1** arises on each side anteriorly from the bridge of the cricoid cartilage and extends in two parts (anteromedially the pars recta, and then laterally the pars obliqua) toward the lower edge of the thyroid cartilage and the inferior surface of the lower cornu. When the thyroid cartilage is fixed in position this muscle tilts the cricoid cartilage backward around a transverse axis, because of the movements possible in the cricothyroid joints (arrows in A). It stretches the vocal cord, diagram in A.

The **cricoarytenoideus posterior BCD2** (called "posticus" clinically) arises on both sides from the dorsal surface of the cricoid plate and runs laterally and upwards to the muscular process of the arytenoid cartilage **B3**. It pulls the muscular process backward and thus displaces the vocal cords sideways. The movement is mainly around the longitudinal axis with a slight tilt toward the back. It widens the *rima glottidis* and is in fact the only dilator for the whole rima diagram in B. **B4** Vocal cord = upper margin of the elastic cone.

The **cricoarytenoideus lateralis BD5** (called "lateralis") arises from the upper margin and outer surface of the side of the cricoid cartilage. It, too, runs upward and backward to the muscular process of the arytenoid cartilage. It is the antagonist of the cricoarytenoideus posterior because it moves the muscular process forward and so pulls the vocal cords toward the middle. It narrows the *rima glottidis*: movement mainly around the longitudinal axis and slight backward tilting: schema in B.

The **vocalis B6** arises from the posterior surface of the thyroid cartilage and runs within the vocal fold (the true vocal cord) to the vocal process **B7** of the arytenoid cartilage. By isometric contraction the muscle controls the tension of the true vocal cord, thereby affecting the pitch at which it vibrates.

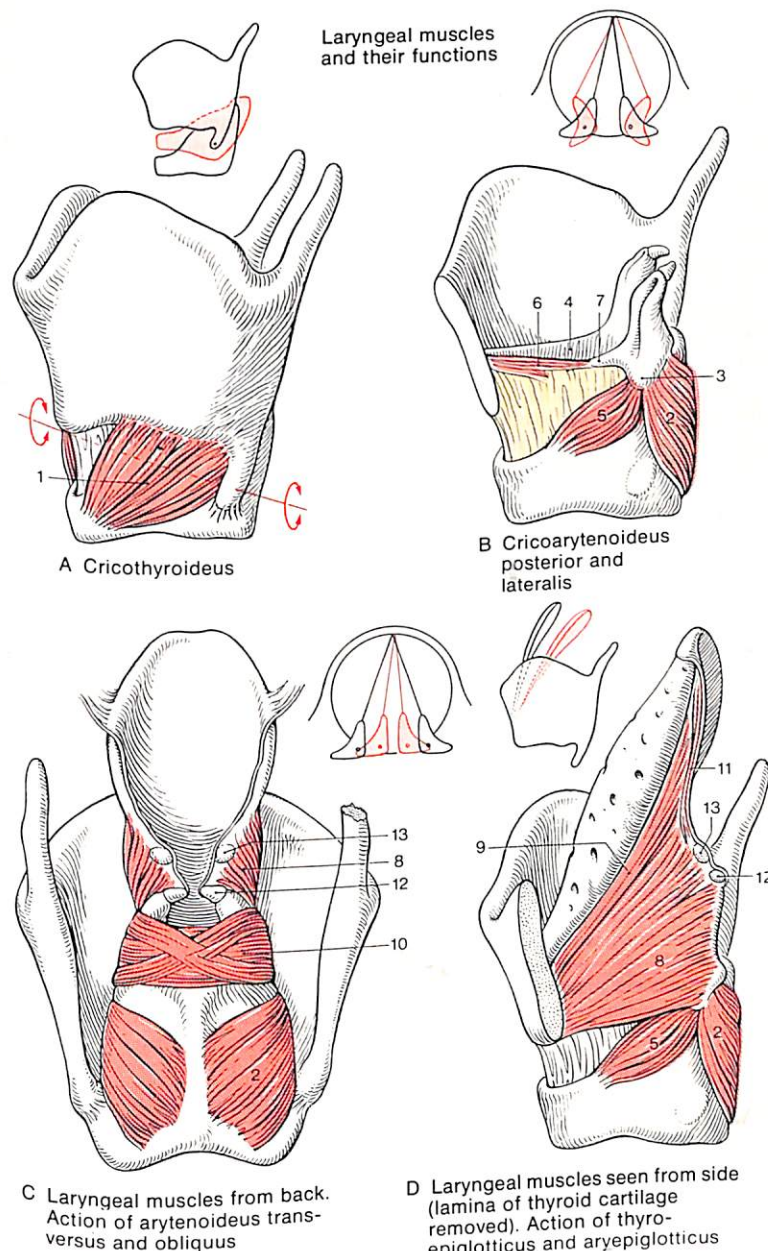
The **thyroarytenoideus CD8** is paired. It arises together with the vocal muscle, which it continues laterally, and is attached by thin fiber tracts to the anterior surface and the lateral edge of the arytenoid cartilage. This muscle acts as *constrictor of the rima glottidis* (movement mainly around the longitudinal axis). The **thyroepiglottic muscle D9** consists of fiber bundles extending toward the epiglottis; it assists in constricting the entrance into the larynx.

The **arytenoideus obliquus and transversus C10** consist of transverse and dorsal fibers crossing each other between the posterior surfaces of the arytenoid cartilages. They approximate the arytenoid cartilages toward each other by a sliding movement along the upper rim of the cricoid plate (diagram C) and so aid closure of the *rima glottidis.*

The **aryepiglotticus D11** continues the course of the arytenoideus obliquus toward the epiglottis. It runs in a fold of the mucosa, the aryepiglottic fold, and by lowering the epiglottis assists in narrowing the entrance into the larynx; diagram in D.

The **aryepiglottic fold** envelops the **corniculate cartilage CD12** (of Santorini) and the inconstant **cuneiform cartilage CD13** (of Wisberg). Both are visible through the mucosa as a yellowish sheen, and within the mucosa they form nodules, the *corniculate tubercle* and *cuneiform tubercle*.

Laryngeal muscles and their functions





### Mucous Membrane of the Larynx

The framework, ligaments and muscles of the larynx are largely covered by *mucous membrane*. It extends from the root of the tongue to the upper anterior side of the epiglottis and forms 3 folds and 2 grooves on its way between them. The *plica aryepiglottica* (the aryepiglottic fold) runs from the lateral margin of the epiglottis on both sides to the tips of the arytenoid cartilages. It embraces the oval entrance into the vestibule of the larynx. A reserve fold in between the arytenoid cartilages permits their lateral movement.

Lateral to the *aryepiglottic fold* and medial to the *thyroid cartilage AC1* on both sides in a groove in the mucous membrane, the *piriform recess AC2*, which diverts food away from the entrance into the larynx and into the esophagus, arrow in **AC**. Another mucosal fold, the *plica nervi laryngei* runs across the piriform recess. It is caused by the underlying superior laryngeal blood vessels and superior laryngeal nerve, which pierce the thyrohyoid membrane and run to the internal laryngeal muscles.

The space below the entrance to the larynx is subdivided into sections by 2 pairs of *sagittal folds AC3, 4* lying above each other.

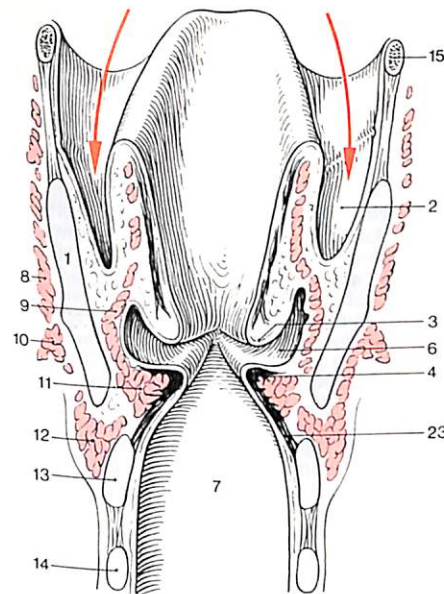
**Vestibule of the larynx.** The vestibule of the larynx extends to the upper pair of the folds, the *ventricular folds AC3* (false vocal cords). The 4–5 cm long anterior wall of the *vestibule* is formed by the epiglottis **C5**, whose stem protrudes as a tubercle. In the submucosa of the vestibular folds are some muscle fibrils and the weak, elastic, quadrangular membrane.

**Laryngeal ventricle.** The space between the *vestibular folds* and the lower pair of folds, the *vocal folds (true vocal folds) AC4* widens into the 1 cm high *laryngeal ventricle AB6*. The laryngeal sacculle, an extension of it, may reach as far up as the hyoid bone.

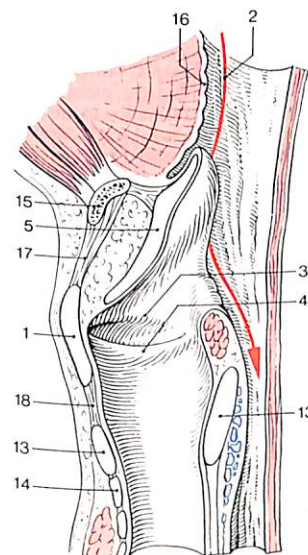
The widened space below the vocal cords is called the **infraglottic cavity A7**.

**A8** Thyrohyoid muscle, **A9** thyroepiglottic muscle, **A10** sternothyroid muscle, **A11** vocalis muscle, **A12** cricothyroid muscle, **AC13** cricoid cartilage, **AC14** first tracheal cartilage, **AC15** hyoid bone, **C16** root of the tongue, **C17** median thyrohyoid ligament, **C18** median cricothyroid ligament.

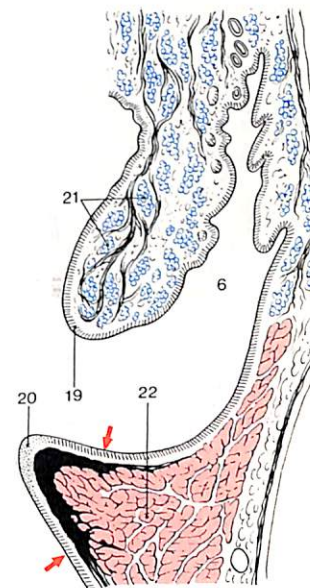
**Fine structure of the larynx.** The framework of the larynx consist of hyaline cartilage with the following exceptions: the epiglottic, corniculate, and cuneiform cartilages and the vocal process of the arytenoid cartilage, all of which consist of elastic cartilage. From the second decade of life the hyaline cartilages of the larynx may ossify to a varying degree. The mucosa on the upper surface of the epiglottis is covered by stratified squamous epithelium, and on the lower surface stratified, ciliated, columnar epithelium on which seromucous glands open. A two-row (stratified) *ciliated columnar epithelium B19* starts in the vestibule of the larynx and extends into the bronchioles. The *true vocal cords* are covered by stratified *squamous epithelium* (extent shown by arrows in **B**) **B20**. They are subject to severe mechanical stress during phonation. The cords stand out at *laryngoscopy* by their whitish-gray appearance against the reddish color of the rest of the mucosa. The mucosa covering them is immovably fixed to the connective tissue by its strong papillae. In contrast, the mucosa above the vocal cords and everywhere else in the larynx is more loosely attached to the surrounding tissue: hence the danger of edema of the glottis, swelling of the mucosa inside the vestibule of the larynx, which can result in death by asphyxiation. The vestibular folds and the ventricle of the larynx contain numerous *glands B21*, their secretions drip onto the almost glandless vocal folds. **B22** Vocalis muscle. Elastic fibers in black. **A23** *Conus elasticus*.



A Frontal section through larynx



C Sagittal section through larynx



B Frontal section through vestibular and vocal folds; latter is true vocal cord. Section from A



## Glottis, Phonation

The structures concerned with phonation, i.e., all those which adjoin the rima glottidis, are collectively termed the "glottis". The *vocal fold*, *plica vocalis*, often called the vocal cord, is the free margin of the vocal lip, a mucous tissue fold.

The anterior  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the **rima glottidis**, the *intermembranous part*, is bordered by the vocal folds **A1**, its posterior  $\frac{1}{3}$ , the *intercartilaginous part*, by the vocal processes of the arytenoid cartilages (**A2** apex of the vocal process). The rima glottidis in the male is 2.0–2.4 cm long, its width in quiet respiration is 0.5 cm and in forced respiration up to 1.4 cm. These dimensions are smaller in children and in females. **E** When viewed by the *laryngeal mirror* the intercartilaginous part appears at the bottom, and the intermembranous part and the epiglottis **A3** appear at the top. **A4** Ventricular fold, **A5** cuneiform tubercle, **A6** corniculate tubercle.

The *shape of the rima glottidis* changes. **D** In *quiet respiration* or *whispering* the vocal processes usually lie adjoining each other. The intermembranous part is closed, the intercartilaginous part is opened and forms a triangle due to the tension exerted by the lateral cricoarytenoid muscle. **A** During *medium respiration* both the intercartilaginous and the intermembranous parts are opened (pulled by the cricoarytenoid posterior) and the rima glottidis becomes a rhomboid, **B** *forced respiration*. The movements are *symmetrical*. In unilateral paresis of the recurrent nerve the affected vocal fold is retarded in its movement.

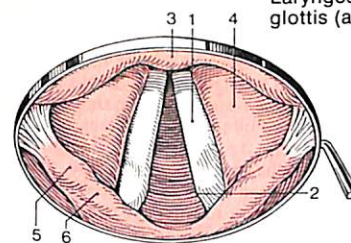
**C Closure of the glottis.** For *phonation* and during *coughing* the rima glottidis is first closed – closure of the glottis, the *position for phonation*. During *coughing* the closed glottis is burst open by thrusts of expiration. During the *act of swallowing* the larynx is closed by the root of the tongue, which presses the epiglottis against the entrance to the larynx (*tongue-epiglottis mechanism*), and by contraction of the thyrohyoid muscles. An adipose tissue body, lying beside the thyroid cartilage, is pushed between the thyroid cartilage and the epiglottis, which in turn is pressed against the ventricular folds

(*adipose body-epiglottis mechanism*). The food slides across the epiglottis and through the piriform recesses into the esophagus. Closure of the larynx is assisted by the action of the aryepiglotticus, which lowers the epiglottis, and by forward tilting of the arytenoid cartilages. If the epiglottis is destroyed it can effectively be replaced by the action of the root of the tongue.

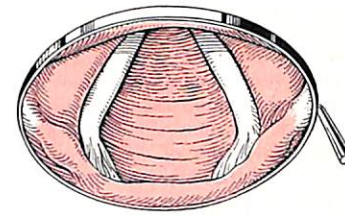
**Phonation.** The voice is produced when the closed, taut vocal folds in the position of phonation are opened and made to vibrate by an air stream expelled from the lungs, causing sound waves to be produced. The *volume of sound* depends on the force of the air stream, and the *pitch* is determined by the frequency of vibration. The latter depends on the length (sex and age differences), tension and thickness of the vocal cords, as in the strings of a musical instrument. The gross adjustment is controlled by the cricothyroideus and the other muscles inserted into the muscular process, and the fine adjustment by the vocalis muscle. The air passages above the larynx i.e., pharynx, mouth and nasal cavities, act as *sound resonators*. The air column vibrating within the passage gives the voice its *quality* (timbre) chest-head voice. The timbre will change if different parts of the passage are blocked, e.g., obstruction of the nose by the soft palate or a head cold.

**Speech.** Because of the low position of the larynx in man the expiratory air stream reaches the palate and mouth where it can be articulated into speech. *Vowels* are formed by alterations within the passage and *consonants* by sound formation in the mouth. In case of loss of the vocal cords, the ventricular folds **A4** can also produce sound. A sound can also be produced in another way, by articulation in the mouth. Thus, after removal of the larynx a "belch language" (esophageal speech) can be learned, the patient articulates sounds produced by eructation of swallowed air.

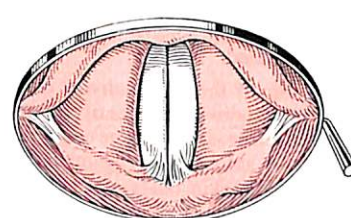
Laryngoscopic view of glottis (after Pernkopf)



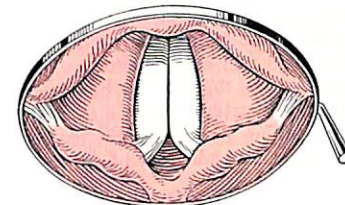
A Mid-position in normal respiration



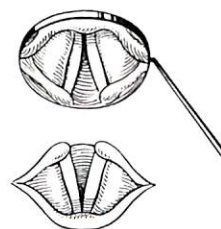
B Forced respiration



C Phonation position (closure of glottis)



D Whispered speech



E Laryngoscopy



## Position of the Larynx

**Motility.** The larynx is situated in the visceral space of the neck which merges into the connective tissue areas of the head and the chest. The position of the cervical viscera changes with movement of the head and the neck. The viscera of the neck are moveable against each other. *Movements of the larynx in the longitudinal axis of the body* occur during swallowing (deglutition), and it can be elevated by 2–3 cm during phonation and increased respiration. When the head is raised and the cervical spine is stretched the larynx rises by more than the height of 1 cervical vertebra. When the head and the neck are bent (flexed) the cricoid cartilage drops as far down as the opening into the chest cavity; its excursion does not exceed 4 cm.

**Position.** In the male standing with the head held upright, the hyoid bone **A1** lies at the level of the 3rd–5th cervical vertebrae. The upper margin of the thyroid cartilage lies 1 segment lower and the lower margin of the cricoid cartilage lies at the border between the cervical and thoracic spine.

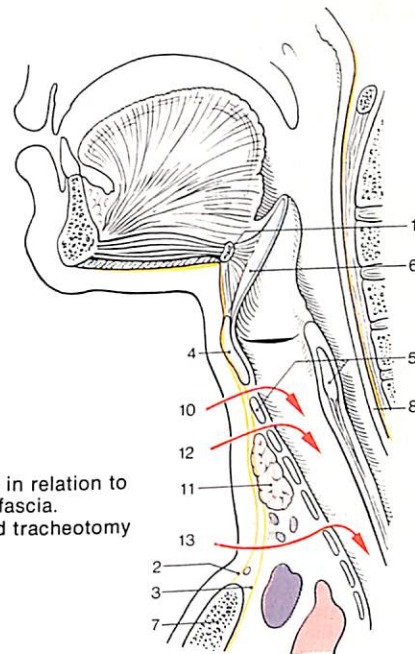
The low position of the larynx is characteristic of the adult human (see Speech). In babies the larynx lies higher.

The larynx is covered in front by the *superficial A2* and *pretracheal A3* layers of the *cervical fascia*. It is only a few millimeters below the skin. The *laryngeal prominence* (Adam's apple) **ABC4**, the *cricoid cartilage A5* and the *cricothyroid ligament* can be felt. In this position the larynx is passively attached to the base of the skull by means of the thyrohyoid membrane and the hyoid bone, and it is also anchored to the thorax by the tension of the elastic structures of the trachea and determined by the superior and inferior hyoid muscles and the inferior constrictor of the pharynx. **A6** Epiglottis, **A7** sternum (breast bone), **A8** posterior wall of the esophagus in front of the prevertebral layer of the cervical fascia.

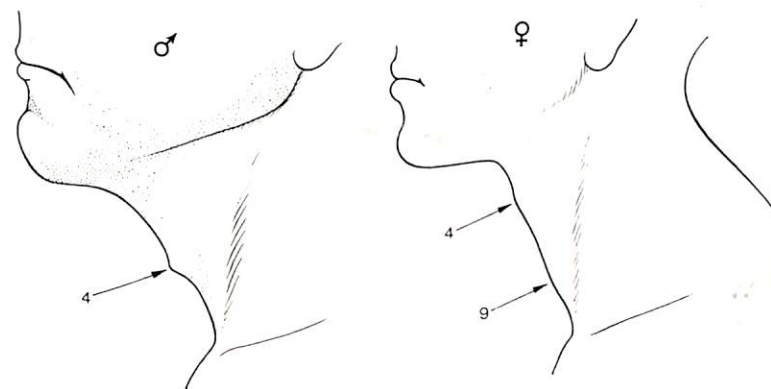
**Effects of Age.** The larynx in the *newborn* lies 3 vertebrae higher than in the adult and immediately below the hyoid bone. The upper margin of the epiglottis extends as far as the palate, the oral part of the larynx is short and its laryngeal part is all but absent. About half the rima glottidis in the newborn is still formed by the intercartilaginous part and altogether it is only  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the length of the adult. At the first growth period of the larynx the range of the voice is increased by about 3 notes in the first year and by  $1\frac{1}{2}$  octaves in the 2nd year. During *puberty* laryngeal growth leads to sex differences: in the male the rima glottidis becomes almost twice as long (about 1.5 cm) as before; compare **B** larynx in the male, **C** in the female. **C9** Thyroid gland.

**Clinical Tip.** If the upper airway is obstructed and there is a danger of choking, a new life-saving airway can be created by splitting the cricothyroid ligament and the layers of the skin and fascia in front of it, *coniotomy (laryngotomy) A10*, or by cutting the trachea above or below the isthmus of the thyroid gland **A11** (*upper A12 and lower A13 tracheotomy*). (Cf. p. 118).

**Vessels and nerves.** The superior laryngeal artery stems from the superior thyrohyoid artery. It perforates the thyrohyoid membrane and passes to the larynx. The inferior laryngeal artery arises from the inferior thyroid artery and ascends dorsally to the larynx, see p. 52. Lymph vessels from the vestibule and the ventricle of the larynx run to the upper deep cervical lymph nodes, the lymph vessels from the vocal cords and the laryngeal cavity drain into the pretracheal nodes (lower deep cervical lymph nodes). Innervation from the vagus nerve: The superior laryngeal nerve (internal branch through the thyrohyoid membrane is sensitive the mucous membrane of the upper half of the larynx, the external branch passes lateral to the larynx to the cricothyroid muscle). Inferior laryngeal nerve supplies motor fibers to all the inner laryngeal muscles and is sensitive to the mucous membrane of the lower half of the larynx. See Vol. 3.



A Position of larynx in relation to layers of cervical fascia. Laryngostomy and tracheotomy



Form and position of larynx

B In an old man

C In a young woman



## Trachea and Bronchial Tree

The 10–12 cm long **trachea** (windpipe) extends as an elastic pipe between the larynx and the bronchi. By its structure it maintains the air flow. The anterior lateral wall consists of 16–20 horseshoe-shaped hyaline **cartilages BCD1**, which are connected by the **annular ligaments B2**. In the posterior wall, **paries membranaceus BCD3**, the cartilages are closed into a ring by connective tissue and muscle. The transverse diameter of the trachea is 1.3–2.2 cm and exceeds its sagittal diameter by  $\frac{1}{4}$ .

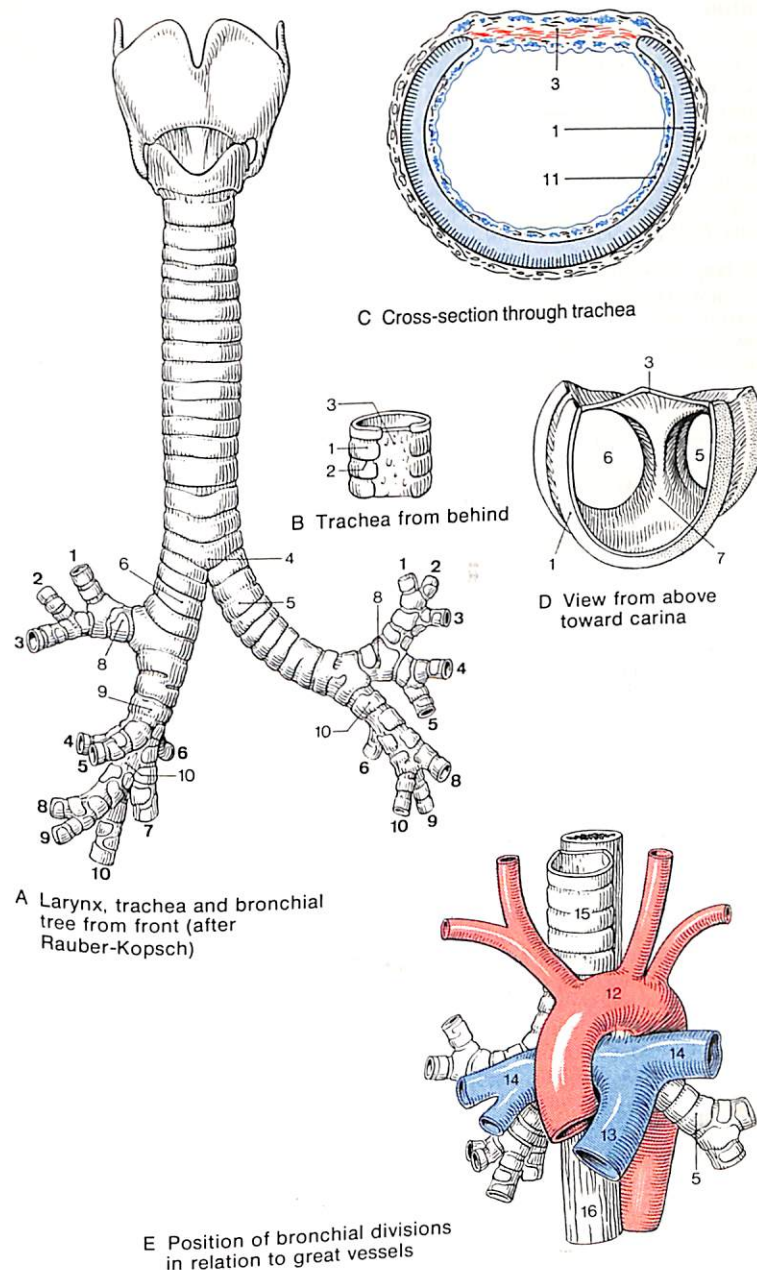
The trachea bifurcates **A4** into the left **ADE5** and right **AD6** principal bronchi forming an angle of 50–100 degrees. The right principal bronchus almost continues the course of the trachea, the left one turns more sideways. Because the lungs, which are of different size, pull with different force on the 2 principal bronchi, the bifurcation lies somewhat to the right of the mid-line at the level of the 4th–5th thoracic vertebra. Aspirated foreign bodies usually get into the right principal bronchus. At the tracheal bifurcation a sagittal furrow, the **carina D7**, points upward. It separates the air stream during inspiration. Each principal bronchus divides into **lobar bronchi**, three on the right **A8, 9, 10** and two on the left **A8, 10**. **Bold numbers 1–10** are the numbers of the segmental bronchi **A**.

**Fine structure of the trachea.** The wall consists of 3 layers. The middle layer, a **fibromusculocartilaginous membrane**, is composed of the **tracheal cartilages BCD1** and the **annular ligaments**. The perichondrium radiates into the annular collagen and elastic fibers and their longitudinal framework helps to keep the trachea open. The middle layer in the **paries membranaceus** consists of connective tissue and the transverse **trachealis muscle**. The latter can narrow the lumen of the trachea by about  $\frac{1}{4}$ . The external layer, the **adventitia**, consists of loose connective tissue and permits movement against the surrounding organs.

The inner layer, the **respiratory mucous membrane, C11** adheres to the perichondrium of the tracheal cartilages, but it is moveable over the membranous wall. It is in this layer that contraction of the trachealis muscle produces longitudinal folds in between which open the **seromucous tracheal glands**. The mucosa has a ciliated pseudo-stratified, **columnar epithelium**, containing goblet cells. Mucus and dust particles which penetrate as far as the trachea are shifted back into the pharynx within hours. In the epithelial cell layer there are also **brush border cells** which have no kinocilia (goblet cells after secretion of mucous, sensory cells?, immature cells) and **endocrine cells**, which occur either singly or in the form of **neuroepithelial bodies**; they are included in the APUD-system (see p. 148) and form **serotonin** and peptides (**bombesin, calcitonin, enkephalin**). The bodies which are innervated are thought to be **chemoreceptors sensitive to hypoxia**. **Clara cells** in the epithelium of bronchioles are notably light in colour, their secretion dissolves mucous and cell detritus etc., by proteolytic enzymes and other substances and so prevents obstruction of the airways.

In **straining** and before a **cough**, when the intrathoracic pressure is increased, the thoracic part of the trachea is constricted and the larynx pushed forward. After reopening of the glottis, i. e., after a cough, the larynx descends again, and the bifurcation ascends by about 5 cm due to the elastic shortening of the trachea and relaxation of the diaphragm. In **inspiration** the bifurcation descends by a maximum of 1 segment. The angle of the bifurcation narrows when the diaphragm descends and widens when it is elevated; the difference is 5–16 degrees.

**Position.** The aortic arch **E12** lies across the left principal bronchus **ADE5**. Below the aortic arch and in front of the left main bronchus the pulmonary trunk **E13** divides into the two pulmonary arteries **E14**. The esophagus **E16** runs behind the trachea **E15**. The azygos vein passes over the right principal bronchus, see p. 50.





## Lungs

Gas exchange between inhaled air and the blood takes place in the lungs. The lungs incorporate the *bronchial tree*. All structures of the lungs are connected by connective tissue and are covered by a serous membrane, the *pleura*. The bronchi, the blood and lymph vessels and nerves enter and leave the lung at the *hilum*. Each lung lies in a *pleural cavity*.

The **lung** completely fills its space within the chest. The *apex* of the lung extends from the upper aperture of the thorax and rises ventrally above the first rib in front. The base of the lung, its *diaphragmatic surface*, rests upon the diaphragm; the flat *mediastinal surface EF* faces the medial connective-tissue space in the thorax, the mediastinum, and the strongly curved *costal surface CD* faces the ribs and vertebral column. The lungs are always adapted to the changing shape of the thorax and diaphragm and are constantly expanded.

**Lobes of the lungs.** Each lung is divided into lobes by deep clefts, the *interlobar fissures*. Normally the *right lung* has an *upper lobe*, the *lobus superior ABCE1*, a *middle lobe*, the *lobus medius ACE2* and a *lower lobe*, the *lobus inferior ABCE3*. They are separated by 2 fissures, one of which runs obliquely from the top at the back to the base at the front, *oblique fissure CE4*, and the other is the *horizontal fissure CE5*. The smaller *left lung* is divided into an *upper lobe*, the *lobus superior ABDF1* and a *lower lobe*, the *lobus inferior ABDF3* by a fissure that runs obliquely from the top at the back to the base in front, *oblique fissure DF6*. The upper lobe reaches the diaphragm on upper and lower lobes is the middle lobe. The volume of the left lung is only about  $\frac{3}{4}$  of that of the right lung. The fissures are lined by the visceral pleura.

The **surface** of the lung in a young person has a faint pinkish color. With age, pollution of the air we breathe gives the lungs a slate-gray, mottled and streaky discoloration.

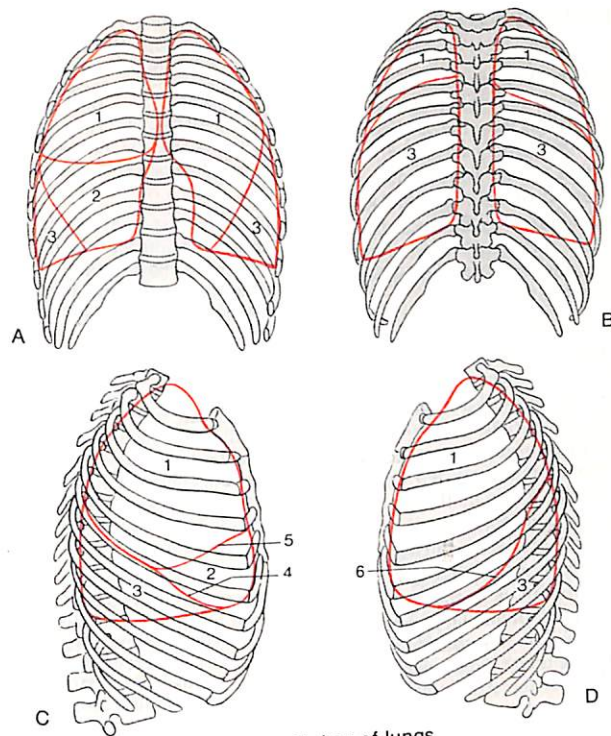
The surface of a lung that has been fixed in situ reflects all the unevenness of the mediastinal and costal walls. The mediastinal surface of the *right lung* carries the impression of the subclavian artery **E7**, the azygos vein and esophagus **E8**. The surface of the *left lung* is distinguished by the impression of the heart, which causes the cardiac notch and formation of the *lingula F9* in the upper lobe. The subclavian artery **F7** and aorta **F10** also leave impressions.

The specific gravity of an aerated lung lies between 0.13 and 0.75, hence it floats in water. A lung which has not yet become aerated sinks (the controversial *floating test* determines whether a new born baby has breathed before death).

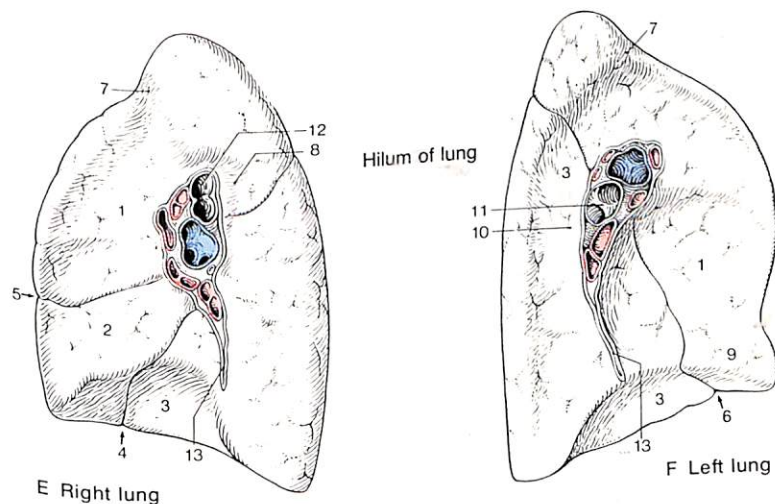
**Hilum (Hilus).** The bronchi and vessels that form the root of the lung are situated at the hilum as follows – *Left hilum*: in front and above are the branches of the pulmonary artery, below the branches of the pulmonary vein; behind lies the principal bronchus **F11**. *Right hilum*: because of the early division of the right principal bronchus, a further bronchial cross section, the “*eparterial*” bronchus **E11**, lies across the pulmonary artery.

**Pulmonary ligament.** At the hilum the visceral pleura merges into the parietal pleura. The margin of the pleural reflection stretches out into a point, a reduplication of the pleura, “*mesopneumonium*”, which extends in the frontal plane from the mediastinum to the lung. This *pulmonary ligament EF13* separates the anterior from the posterior half of the inferior paramediastinal portion of the pleural cavity.

Pleural cavity and pleura, see p. 138.



Outline of lobes of lungs



E Right lung

F Left lung



## Root of the Lung and Base of the Heart

The **root of the lung** is formed by the **principal bronchi**, the main trunks of the **pulmonary artery B1**, the **pulmonary veins B2**, the **bronchial nerves and veins**, and the lymph vessels which enter and leave the lung at the **hilum**. The root of the lung is stabilized by the bronchi and by the flexible elastic tube of the pulmonary arteries, the blood pressure in which is about  $\frac{1}{2}$  that in the aorta.

The **bronchopericardial membrane** (v. Hayek). The root of the lung and the bifurcation of the trachea are firmly connected to the posterior wall of the pericardium by means of strong fiber bands. The fibers radiate across the wall of the inferior vena cava **A3** into the posterior border of the tendinous center of the diaphragm **A4**. Together they form a central connective tissue membrane, the bronchopericardial membrane **A5**. The adventitious connective tissue layers of the great pulmonary vessels and bronchi also radiate into this membrane. The connective tissue membrane secures the connexion of the structures involved in movements of the thorax and the diaphragm. Together with the bifurcation it forms the **partition wall** between the middle and posterior mediastinum, see p. 138. **A6** The inferior tracheobronchial lymph nodes.

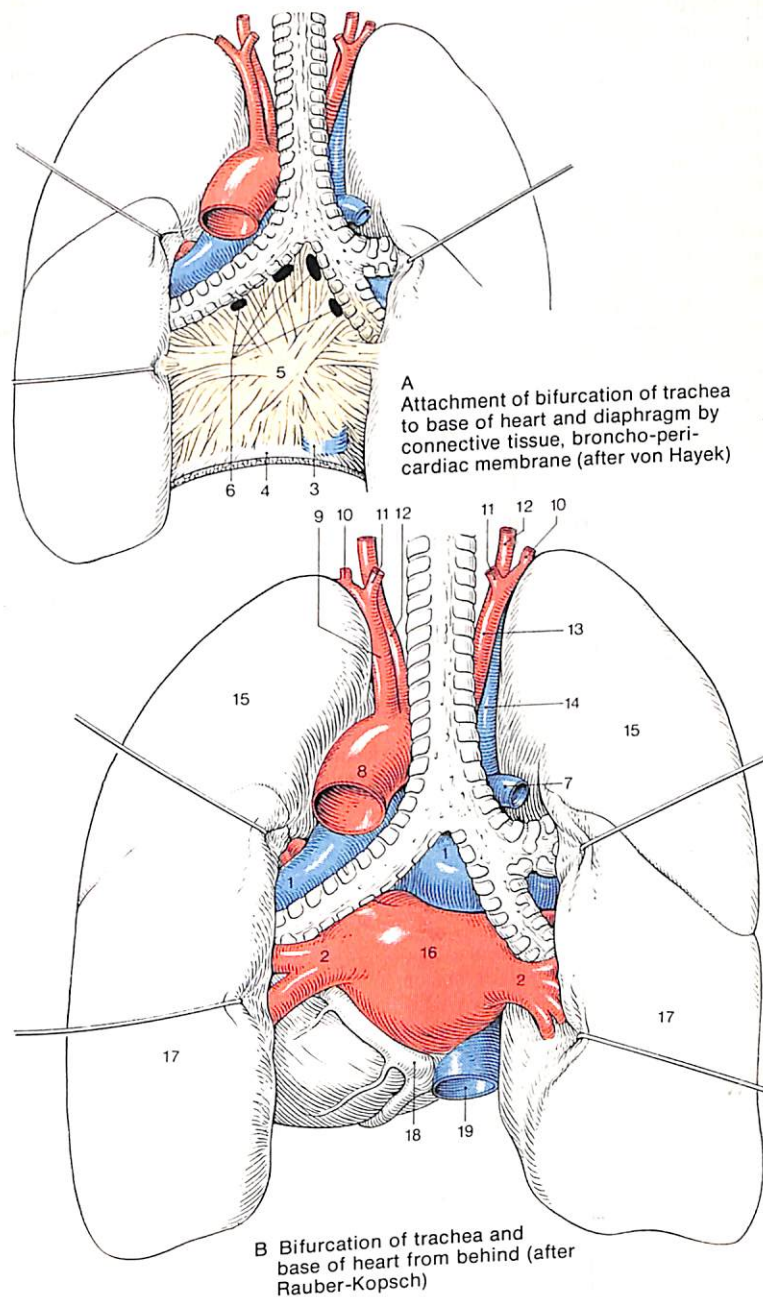
The azygos vein **B7** passes over the root of the **right** lung from the posterior to the anterior mediastinum; the aortic arch **B8** passes over the **left** root from the anterior to enter the posterior mediastinum. **B9** Left subclavian artery, **B10** thyrocervical trunk, **B11** vertebral artery, **B12** common carotid artery, **B13** brachiocephalic trunk, **B14** superior vena cava, **B15** upper lobes of the lungs, **B16** left cardiac atrium, **B17** lower lobes of the lungs, **B18** coronary sinus, **B19** inferior vena cava.

**Blood vessels and nerves.** The connective tissue, bronchi and pleura are supplied to some extent by branches of the pulmonary arteries and veins, but to a much larger extent by their own vessels, the bronchial

arteries and veins. The bronchial branches arise mainly from the aorta. They divide together with the bronchial tree. There are anastomoses between the bronchial and pulmonary arteries beneath the pleura and between small bronchi. The bronchial veins drain blood via the pulmonary veins and some mediastinal veins and end in the vena cava.

**Lymphatics** arise from the loose connective tissue underneath the pleura, in the interlobular septa and from the periarterial and peribronchial connective tissue. Because of the negative pressure prevailing there, fluid seeps from the alveoli into the peribronchial and subpleural connective tissue and into the lymph vessels (a consequence of this is blackening of the lung surface by inhaled coal dust). The lymphatics convey the lymph indirectly to the tracheo-bronchial, tracheal and mediastinal lymph nodes. The regional lymph nodes near the hilum (hilar glands, or pulmonary and bronchopulmonary lymph nodes) are visible against the air-filled lung tissue in radiographs.

**Innervation:** Efferent and afferent fibers from the vagus nerve and sympathetic trunk (stellate ganglion and 2nd–5th thoracic ganglia; compare neuroepithelial bodies, see p. 128). Afferent fibers of the vagus conduct impulses from stretch receptors in the lung which inhibit the respiratory center in the medulla oblongata. The cough reflex can only be elicited as far down as the bifurcation of the trachea and not in the lobar bronchi. Afferent fibers in the sympathetic nerves are part of a reflex arc through which nociceptive reactions may be mediated. Efferent fibers from the vagus nerve produce contraction of the bronchial muscles, and efferent fibers from the sympathetic trunk produce dilatation of the bronchial muscles and contraction of the pulmonary vessels, see Vol. 3.





## Division of the Bronchi, The Lobes and Segments of the Lung

**Division of the bronchi.** The *primary bronchi*, *bronchi principales* divide into 3 right and 2 left *lobar bronchi* **A 1, 2, 3**, corresponding to the lobes of the lungs. Their diameter is 8–12 mm. The first division on the right is 1–2.5 cm, and the second division on the right and the first division on the left are each about 5 cm away from the bifurcation. 10 numbered *segmental bronchi* arise from the lobar bronchi: in the right upper lobe are segmental bronchi 1–3, in the middle lobe numbers 4 and 5, in the lower lobe 6–10; in the left upper lobe 1–5, in the lower lobe 6, 8–10 (7 + 8 form a common segment on the left; **A, B, C, D, E: 1–10** numbered according to *Boyden*). The segmental bronchi supply cone-shaped pulmonary segments of different sizes. Each segmental bronchus divides into two subsegmental branches, which also differ in size; for their further ramifications see p. 136.

**Distribution of the connective tissue.** The connective tissue subdivides the lungs into *lobes*, *segments*, *lobules* and still smaller units.

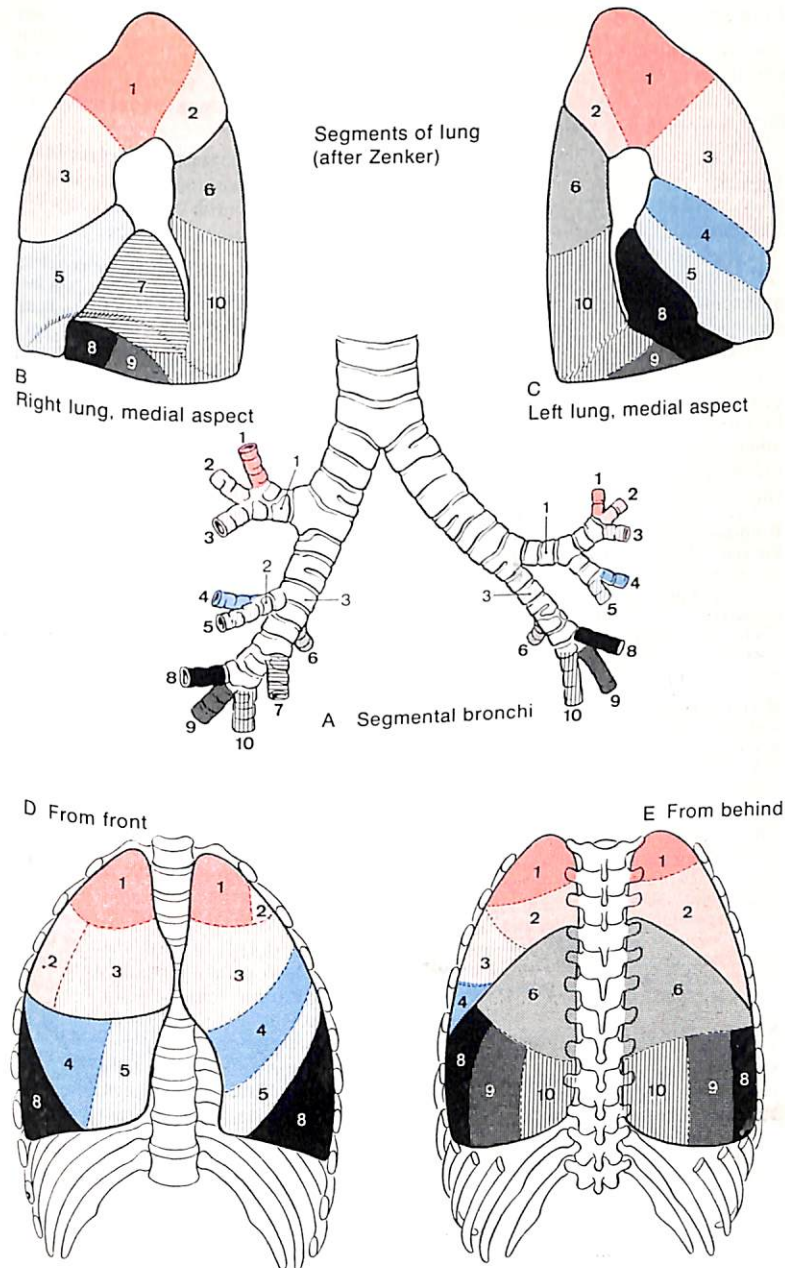
**Lobe and Segment.** Each *pulmonary lobe* is enveloped by a *basal membrane* of connective tissue to which the visceral pleura is loosely attached without any folds. Connective tissue septae from this membrane extend at various depths toward the hilum. They subdivide the lobe into cone-shaped bronchoarterial *segments 1–10* (numbered like the segmental bronchi). In the center of each wedge lies a segmental bronchus. Each lobe of the lung is mostly covered by the pleura but not the segment.

**Lobule.** The surface of the lung, except in the interlobar fissures, shows polygonal areas. They are not completely delimited, their edges are 0.5–3 cm long and they may appear especially prominent because of their pigment infiltration. These areas delimit the basal part of the lobules, the *lobuli pulmonis*, which can-

not be completely separated from each other after stripping off the pleura, as each lobule is enveloped by its own boundary membrane. At this membrane the elastic fiber network of the interalveolar tissue is inserted. The loose interlobular connective tissue allows the lobules to move against each other.

**Details of the lobular subdivision.** The lobular formation is most apparent at the periphery of the lung (marked capacity for deformation of the lung), and is almost absent from the center. Although any given lobule does not always contain equivalent structural elements, a lobule can usually be considered to contain the *terminal and respiratory bronchioles* and *alveoli* which originate from that *bronchiole*. The divisions resulting from one terminal bronchiole are also called *acini*. An acinus lacks septal borders (the terminology of lobule and acinus is not constant). At the boundary between bronchus and bronchiole, in particular where the wall cartilage is lost, it is firmly connected and braced by the connective tissue of the lung parenchyma.

**Clinical Tip.** In certain pathological conditions, interstitial pulmonary edema (accumulation of fluid) or emphysema (collection of air) can develop in the *loose interlobar connective tissue*.





## Fine Structure of the Lung

The microscopic structure of the respiratory and vascular systems changes in the course of their subdivisions as the total cross sectional area of the branches increases.

**Bronchi.** They divide 6–12 times until they eventually reach a caliber of 1 mm. The adventitia contains elastic fibers in progressively increasing numbers, the cartilages become irregular plates and also contain elastic fibers. The height of the epithelium with its cilia and goblet cells diminishes, but seromucous bronchial glands are still present. A tubular layer of circular muscles appears beneath the mucosa. When these muscles contract longitudinal folds form and the lumen of the bronchus is narrowed, e. g., in bronchial asthma.

**Bronchioles and terminal bronchioles.** From the small bronchi **A1** bronchioles **A2** arise and from each of these 4–5 terminal bronchioles **A3** develop. Their walls are free of cartilage, but they are kept open by elastic fibers. The goblet cells disappear. **A4** Visceral pleura, **A6** branch of a pulmonary vein.

**Respiratory bronchioles BC7** are 1–3.5 mm long and about 0.4 mm wide. They stem from the terminal bronchioles. They have a cuboidal epithelium and their walls are occasionally interrupted by thin walled sacs, the **alveoli**, which are followed by **alveolar ducts C8**. The walls of the latter consist only of alveoli which end in the **alveolar sacculle C9**. **Alveoli C10** measure 0.06–0.2 mm or more in diameter. About 200 alveoli are attached to each terminal bronchiole, and they form the pulmonary acinus **A5**. Both lungs together contain about 300 million alveoli with a total surface area in the mean inspiratory position of 100–140 m<sup>2</sup>.

**Vascular system.** The branches of the pulmonary artery follow the ramifications of the bronchial tree **A1, 2, 3** and the arterioles **B11** follow the respiratory bronchioles. Prethe capillaries accompany the alveolar ducts and **C10**. Between each precapillary artery and postcapillary vein there are 4–12 capillary loops: short ones (resting capillaries) for permanent perfusion, and longer ones (active capillaries) for circulation when the O<sub>2</sub>

requirement is increased. The *postcapillary veins B13* lie in the interlobar and intersegmental tissue. Each vein carries blood from several arteries. The vein **A6** converge in the center of the lung toward the arterio-bronchial trunk.

**Alveoli.** Gas exchange takes place in the alveoli. The microscopic structure of the blood-air barrier can only be recognized under the electron microscope.

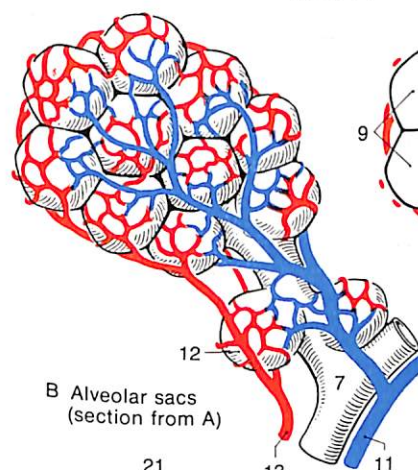
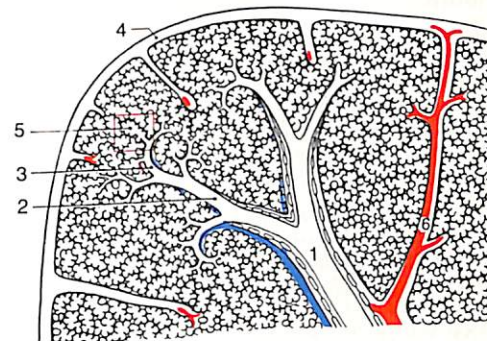
The alveolus has a flat cellular covering which in places is stretched into thin less than 0.1  $\mu$ m thick plates sitting on a basal lamina **E14** – “small alveolar cells” (pneumocytes Type I) **DE15**. In between these cells lie larger, taller cells without cell processes – “large alveolar cells” (pneumocytes Type II) **D16**. They are thought to produce a phospholipid film of an antiatelectatic factor. *Alveolar macrophages D17* (monocytes from the blood) take up dust (“dust cells”) or, after a hemorrhage (with vascular congestion) hemoglobin (“heart failure cells”).

**The capillary wall:** The uninterrupted endothelium **DE18** lies on a basement membrane. In the fissure between the alveolar epithelium and the capillary wall both basal laminae **E19** fuse for long stretches.

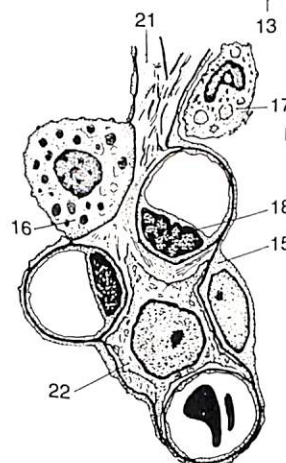
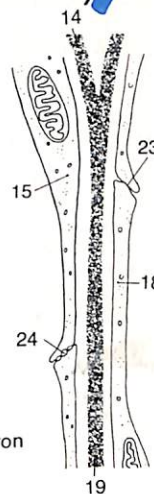
**The blood-air barrier** 0.3–0.7  $\mu$ m thick, consists of **alveolar epithelium DE15**, **basal lamina E19** and the **capillary endothelium E18**. Breaks between the alveoli, **alveolar pores C20**, occur regularly.

In the **alveolar septa** are networks of elastic fibers **D21** and connective tissue cells **D22**. Together with smooth muscle cells they form “basal rings” at the entrance to the alveolus. These structures cross each other at an angle. By contraction of the myofibroblasts associated with the alveolar walls, the lumen of the interalveolar capillaries is reduced. The lymph capillaries only begin outside the lobule. The intercellular contact of the capillary endothelium **E23** is more permeable for fluids than the compact intercellular contact of type I pneumocytes **E24**.

A Section through lung. Division of air passages and blood vessels (after von Hayek)



C Section through B



D Alveolar wall and capillaries, light microscopic appearance (section from C)

E Blood – air barrier, on electron microscopy (section from D)



## Pleura

The *serous membrane* which invests the lung is called the **pleura**. We distinguish the *visceral or pulmonary pleura* that covers the lung from the *parietal pleura*, divided into *costal*, *mediastinal* and *diaphragmatic pleura*, that lines the wall of the lung cavities.

The **visceral pleura A1** forms a cover over the lungs. It consists of a single layer of epithelium, a fibrous layer of collagenous and elastic fibers and a subpleural layer in which lie the lymphatics and blood vessels. The *negative pressure* in the interpleural space causes a shift (transudation) of fluid from the lung into the interpleural spaces. This fluid carries dust particles from the alveoli to the visceral surface of the pleura, which leads to discoloration of the lung surface. The visceral pleura does not take up any particulate matter from the interpleural space.

The **parietal pleura**, particularly the *costal part A2* is firmly attached to the substrate. The development of the fibrous layer varies. Over the ribs and pericardium collagen fibers are predominant and over the diaphragm elastic fibers. The parietal pleura over the dome of the pleura is fixed by connective tissue strands to the deep layer of the cervical fascia and to the upper thoracic opening. Subpleural lymph vessels run in strands in the intercostal areas and over the diaphragm. The parietal pleura can absorb particulate matter, fluid and air from the pleural cavity. **AB3** Pericardium.

**Pleural cavity.** The visceral and parietal pleura, which join at the hilum **CD**, surround the completely closed pleural cavity **BD4** (see pericardium and peritoneal spaces). It contains a few milliliters ( $\text{cm}^3$ ) of fluid. *Pleural recesses.* The parietal pleura over the ribs and that covering the diaphragm form a fold of variable width, the *costodiaphragmatic recess ABCE5*; the width depends on the respiratory position. This also applies, to a lesser degree, to the parietal pleura of the

mediastinum and the chest wall, where it forms the *costomediastinal recess D6*, and to the pleura of the mediastinum and diaphragm, forming the *phrenicomediastinal recess*.

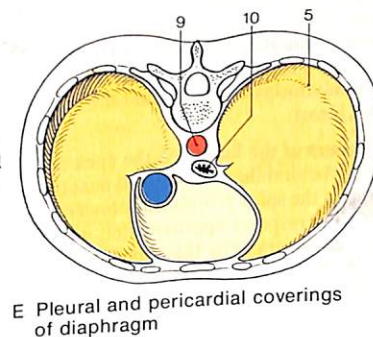
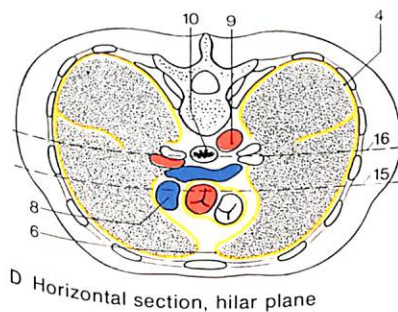
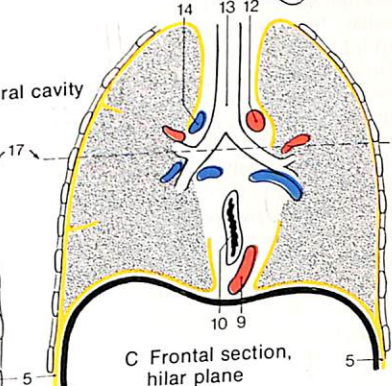
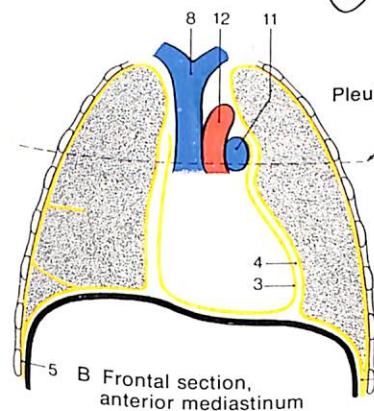
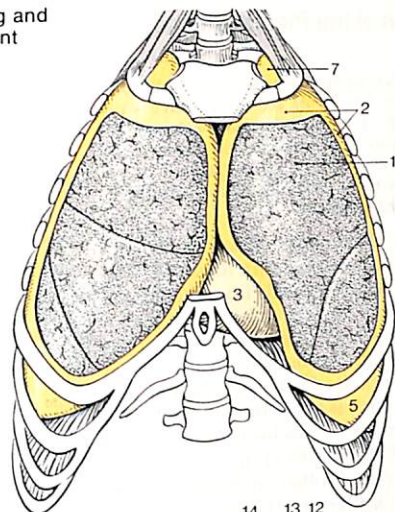
**Clinical Tip.** The serous fluid in the pleural cavity may be increased in inflammatory disorders (*pleural exudate*). It contains protein and may lead to pleural adhesions (reduction of pulmonary expansion).

**Innervation:** While the visceral pleura is insensitive to pain, the parietal pleura is highly sensitive with afferent fibers contained in the intercostal nerves and the phrenic nerve.

The *position of the dome of the pleura* and of the **hilum**. The 3 scalenus muscles form a tent over the *pleural dome A7*. The brachial plexus and the subclavian artery pass through the "*scalene gap*" between the anterior and middle scalenus into the lateral cervical region. The subclavian vein runs between the anterior scalenus and the clavicle. These two vessels and the cervicothoracic ganglion of the sympathetic system (in front of the head of the first rib) lie on the pleural dome. The phrenic nerve, which runs on the surface of the anterior scalenus from above laterally to downward medially, touches the dome of the pleura on its medial aspect. The root of the right lung lies behind the superior vena cava **BD8** and partly behind the right atrium of the heart. The phrenic nerve descends ventrally and the vagus nerve dorsally to the hilum. The aorta **CDE9** and the esophagus **CDE10** cross in the posterior mediastinum. Compare mediastinum **B11** pulmonary trunk, **BC12** aortic arch, **C13** bifurcation of the trachea, **C14** azygos vein.

Planes of the section: for **B** see **D15**, for **C** see **D16**, for **D** see **BC17**. **E** View of the dome of the diaphragm.

A Borders of lung and pleura from front





### Borders of the Pleura and the Lungs

The borders of the pleura are immovable but the lower border of the lungs move with breathing. They can be demonstrated by radiography and by percussion (air-containing lung tissue) and can be related to the intersections of the ribs with the meridional lines of the trunk.

**Borders of the pleura** (Regions for percussion and auscultation). *Right side:* The parietal pleura extends from the pleural dome **A1**, 3 cm above the first rib behind the sternal angle, then medial to the right margin of the sternum to the insertion of the 6th rib. Its further lateral and posterior course is marked by the following intersections: medioclavicular line (through the middle of the clavicle) – 7th rib, anterior axillary line (through the anterior axillary fold) – 8th rib, middle axillary line (through the middle of the axilla) – 9th rib, posterior axillary line (through the posterior axillary fold) – 10th rib, scapular line (through the lower angle of the scapula with the arm hanging down) – 11th rib, paravertebral line (parallel to the vertebral column) – lower margin of the 12th rib. The *costodiaphragmatic recess*, corresponding to the variable origin of the lumbar part of the diaphragm, may extend paravertebrally up to 2 cm below the 12th rib. The pleural margin runs paravertebrally up to the pleural dome at the level of the head of the first rib.

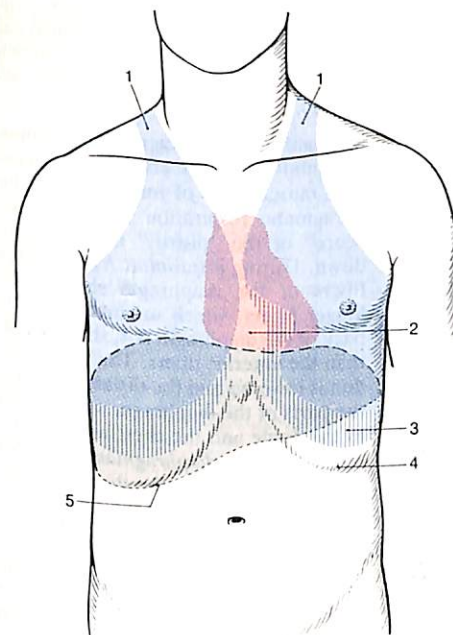
*Left side:* The borders of the pleura take the same course on both the left and right sides. The only difference is that the left anterior border leaves the sternum at the level of the 4th rib and descends in a curve (*incisura cardiaca*) to the intersection of the medioclavicular line and the 6th rib. **A2** Heart.

**Borders of the lungs.** At the apex of the lung, behind the sternum and next to the side of the spine (*costomediastinal recess*) they correspond approximately to those of the pleura. On the other hand, the lower borders of both lungs in the mid-respiratory position are 1–2 intercostal

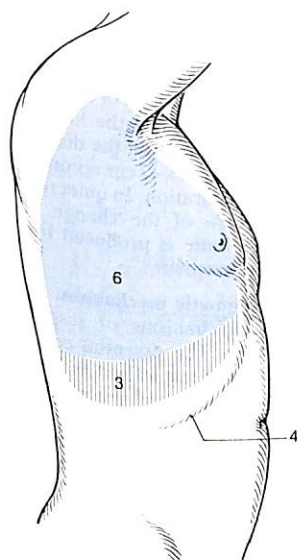
spaces above the pleural borders. The borders of the lungs can be shifted one intercostal space from this middle position upward and downward by deep inspiration or expiration (opening of the *costodiaphragmatic recess*). The border line between the upper and lower lobes runs dorsally on both sides from the 4th thoracic vertebra obliquely forward to the intersection of the 6th rib and the anterior axillary line. The groove between right upper and middle lobes runs from the middle axillary line at the 4th rib to the sternum.

On the *right* side we find therefore only the upper and middle lobes next to the sternum, and next to the spine only the upper and lower lobes. All 3 lobes converge in the axilla on the right. On the *left*, the upper lobe, which contains the *incisura cardiaca*, extends by its tip, the *lingula pulmonalis*, to the diaphragm. **AC3** Costodiaphragmatic recess, **ABC4** costal arch, **A5** margin of the liver, **BC6** lung, **B7** spleen, **B8** course of the 9th rib.

**Age differences:** the baby and infant show a "habitual inspiratory position" with a more horizontal position of the ribs, but later in life the ribs are lowered by the pull of the muscles and by gravity. With age there is a general tendency for the organs to descend and to reduce joint excursions, which produces a reduction of the respiratory excursions. In old age, elasticity of the lung diminishes and this may result in emphysema.

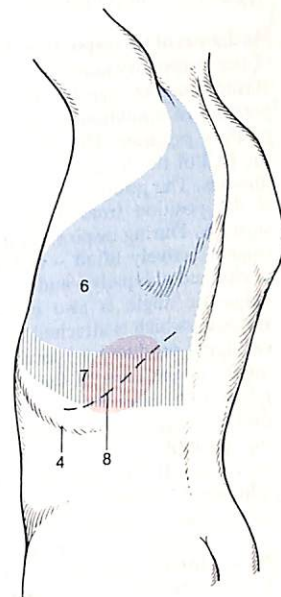


A From front



C From right

Borders of lungs and pleura



B From left



### Mechanics of Respiration

During *respiration* there is an alternating increase and decrease in thoracic volume. Two components, the *ribs* and *diaphragmatic respiration*, work together to produce an ingenious "pump" mechanism. The diaphragm may be regarded as a "piston" in the "pump cylinder" of the thoracic cavity. It is pushed in and pulled out, thus pushing air out of the trachea (*expiration*) or pulling it in (*inspiration*). Throughout this process the diameter of the thorax continuously alters. In expiration **B** 1, 2, 3 it becomes smaller, and during inspiration it enlarges **A** 1, 2, 3. Apparatus of movement, see Vol. 1.

**Mechanics of rib respiration.** When none of the respiratory muscles are acting, the elastic thoracic cage lies in the median position of equilibrium, the *resting respiratory position*. This is influenced by the pull of the lungs and the abdominal muscles. The position of respiratory rest is the position from which *inspiration* starts **A**. During inspiration the thoracic cage is actively lifted – as the ribs are positioned obliquely – and enlarged. The epigastric angle is also enlarged. The sternum, which is attached to the ribs by cartilage, produces a "parallel displacement" of the ends of the ribs. In quiet respiration, after inspiration the elastic thoracic cage passively returns to its resting position. It is only during forced *expiration B* that the thoracic cage in addition is actively lowered against the elastic force. During artificial respiration, compression of the thorax may produce a forced expiration, and the elastic recoil of the thorax to the resting position then produces an inspiration. During quiet rib respiration, the external intercostal and the posterior serratus muscles produce inspiration, and the internal intercostal muscles in the region of the bony ribs are the muscles of expiration. The intercostal muscles hold the intercostal spaces tense against the external air pressure and the negative intrathoracic pressure. In forced rib respiration, the muscles of the shoulder girdle ("access-

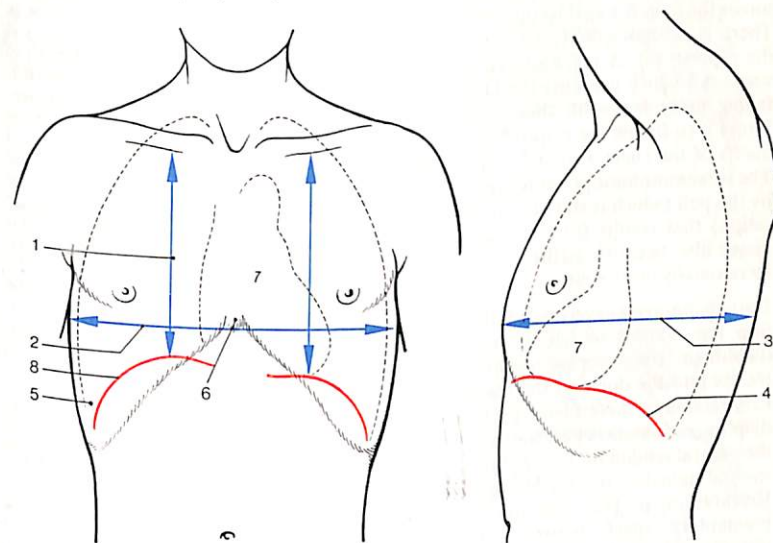
sory muscles of respiration") act as inspiratory muscles and the abdominal wall muscles and the latissimus dorsi muscle produce expiration (for muscles, see Vol. 1).

**Mechanism of diaphragmatic respiration.** The abdominal viscera and abdominal wall muscles are of importance in diaphragmatic respiration. The liver, the "core" of the "piston," moves up and down. During *inspiration A*, the muscle fibers of the diaphragm shorten: the longer fibers, which originate from the back of the diaphragm **A** 4, shorten more than the anterior fibers. The central tendon is lowered and the distance between the parts of the diaphragm which ascend to the dome and the chest wall becomes larger, the *costodiaphragmatic recess A* 5, more marked dorsally than ventrally. The lungs expand to fill the extra volume of the virtual space thus opened, the basal parts more than the apices. A left and right anterior diaphragmatic muscle band which lie beneath the pericardium attached to the central tendon, pull down the diaphragm like a pocket under the plane of the xiphoid process **A** 6. The heart **AB** 7 is displaced during diaphragmatic respiration.

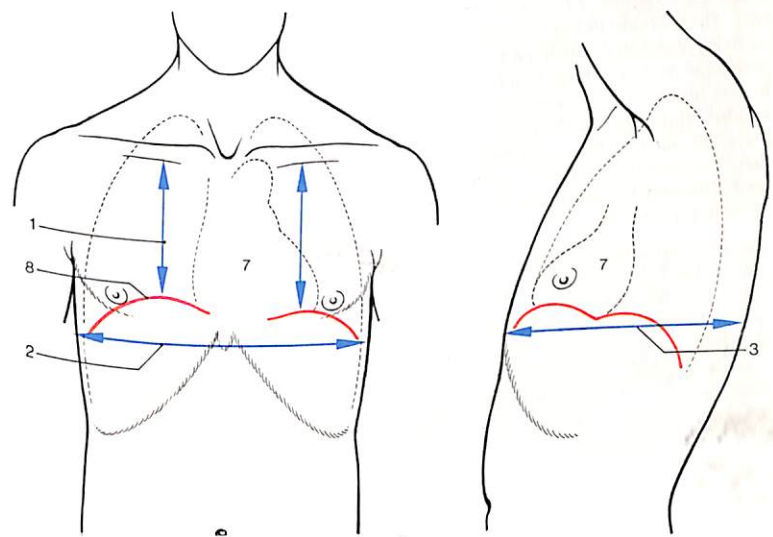
In *expiration B* the diaphragm and the liver move into the thoracic cavity due to contraction of the muscles of the abdominal wall and the pull of the lungs. The excursion of the dome of the diaphragm **AB** 8 varies from 1.5–7 cm according to the depth of respiration. In quiet respiration about 75% of the change in intrathoracic volume is produced by diaphragmatic movement.

**Costodiaphragmatic mechanism.** In the adult both mechanisms of respiration work together. The essential condition for effective rib respiration is that the diaphragm contracts and is not pulled up into the thoracic cavity by lung suction. Effective diaphragmatic respiration requires stable, tense intercostal spaces.

Respiratory position of the thoracic cage and the diaphragm on the left anteriorly and on the right laterally.  
Photograph and X-ray superimposed



A Position of inspiration



B Position of expiration



## Respiratory Dynamics

**Respiration.** Air pressure exerted through the respiratory pathways **A2** forces the lung **A1** against the chest wall. There is *subatmospheric pressure* (Donder's pressure) in the enclosed pleural space **A3** which prevents the lung from falling away from the chest wall, and forces it to follow the respiratory movements of the chest wall and diaphragm. The subatmospheric pressure is produced by the pull (which is still present in expiration) that results from stretching the elastic fiber networks of the lung, and it is increased by inspiration.

**Costodiaphragmatic recess A4.** In expiration the relaxed muscle fibers of the diaphragm rise steeply upward in the thorax into the dome of the diaphragm. Contraction of these fibers displaces the diaphragm from the chest wall and forces the central tendon of the diaphragm into the abdominal cavity. See Mechanisms of Respiration, p. 142. This frees a complementary space between the diaphragm and the chest wall, the costodiaphragmatic recess **A4**: *Inspiration.* Inspiratory enlargement in all the thoracic diameters contributes to opening the recess. The increase in lung volume causes air to be drawn in through the respiratory pathways = *respiratory (tidal) volume*, forced inspiration = *inspiratory reserve volume*. In expiration the *tidal volume* is breathed out and forced expiration further displaces the *expiratory reserve volume*. This only leaves the *residual volume* of air in the lung.

The *costomediastinal recess*, which lies on both sides behind the sternum and on either side of the vertebral column, also serves for expansion of the lung. The inspiratory enlargement of the lung increases caudally and ventrally. In the thoracic type of respiration the upper lobes are better ventilated than during abdominal respiration.

## Pathological Changes in Lung Dynamics

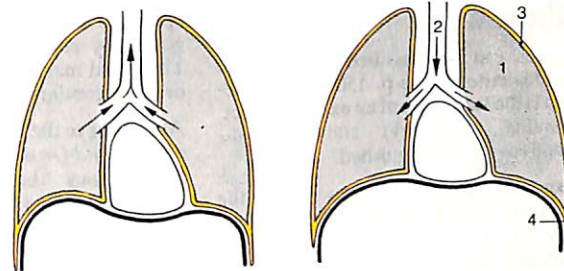
**Pneumothorax.** If the pleural space is opened from the outside **B5**, air rushes in **B6**, the subatmospheric pressure rises, and the elasticity of the lung makes it contract to about one-third (minimal) of its volume **B7**. In this case the lung no longer follows movement of the thorax and the diaphragm = *external pneumothorax*. This also occurs if there is a tear in the lung and the visceral pleura, and air is able to pass from the respiratory pathways into the pleural space = *internal pneumothorax* (spontaneous pneumothorax). In this case the mediastinum **B8** (see p. 24) is pulled toward the healthy side during inspiration and to the diseased side during expiration ("mediastinal flutter"; danger of circulatory failure). After closure of the tear, air in the pleural space is reabsorbed within a few days.

**Tension pneumothorax.** If the opening in the lung acts like a flap valve **C9**, air will be drawn in during inspiration and it will be unable to escape on expiration **C10**. As a result the mediastinum **C8** is considerably displaced to the healthy side (extreme danger of circulatory embarrassment). **C7** Collapsed lung.

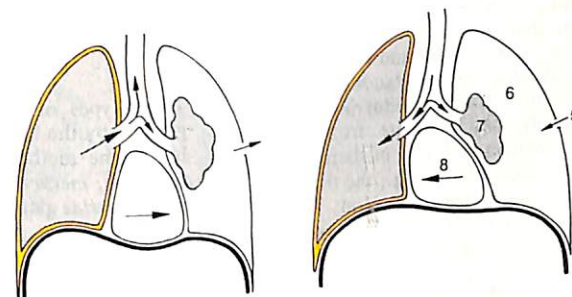
**Bronchial obstruction.** Mediastinal displacement may also be caused by obstruction of a main bronchus **D11**; in inspiration elastic stretching of the affected side fails to equalise the tension and the mediastinum is displaced to the diseased side **D8**. During expiration, poor emptying of air from the diseased side results in movement of the mediastinum to the healthy side (danger of circulatory failure).

**Positive pressure respiration.** In failure of the respiratory apparatus, e.g., paralysis due to curare given during surgery, or resulting from bilateral pneumothorax, breathing may be maintained by positive pressure respiration, in which the volume of the lungs is alternately increased and decreased by deliberately forcing air into and out of the respiratory pathways. This is also the principle of *mouth-to-mouth respiration* in the emergency treatment of respiratory paralysis.

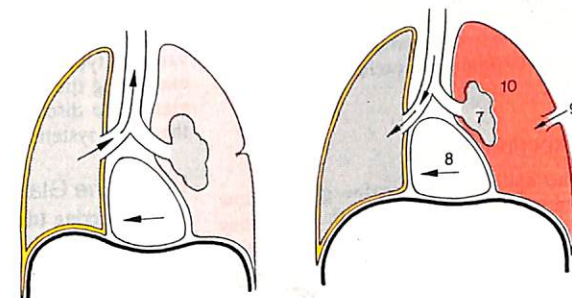
A Normal



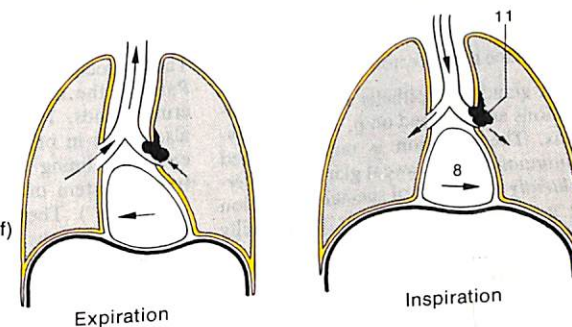
B Pneumothorax



C Tension pneumothorax



D Bronchial narrowing (after Pernkopf)





## Glands

Glands can be classified according to various criteria, see p. 150. If the criterion is the formation of an excretory duct, *exocrine* (excretory) and *endocrine* glands can be distinguished.

**Exocrine glands** A grow from the epithelium of an external or internal surface into the interior and the connection with the surface becomes the **excretory duct**. The product of the gland, its **secretion**, is discharged to the external or internal surface at circumscribed sites, e. g., sweat, scent and sebaceous glands of the skin, and the glands of the gastrointestinal tract. **Endocrine** (ductless) glands may originate from a surface epithelium with loss of their connection with the surface, e. g., the thyroid gland with its follicle formation, B, and the parathyroid gland which lacks follicles C. They may also arise from connective tissue cells, e. g., the intercellular gland of the testicle. The secretion of an endocrine gland, the **hormone**, passes via the intercellular connective tissue into the blood and lymph vessels and through the **blood circulation** it reaches all parts of the body.

## Exocrine Glands

The epithelia of **exocrine glands** show polar differentiation. At the base they absorb basic substances (sugars, amino acids) from the intercellular fluid of the connective tissue, which is derived from the blood capillaries, and at their free superficial surfaces they secrete into external ducts, i. e., transport of substances takes place in a directed way.

Most glandular epithelia expel their secretions as described on p. 148 by **exocytosis**. The secretion is mostly formed **continuously** (e. g. sweat glands) or **intermittently** as a result of special stimulation (e. g. salivary glands), or periodically (e. g. scent glands).

**Exo-epithelial glands** are usually referred to by the term gland. They are secretory

epithelial cells which are grouped together by connective tissue as **organs**. The gland may be microscopically small or many centimeters in size.

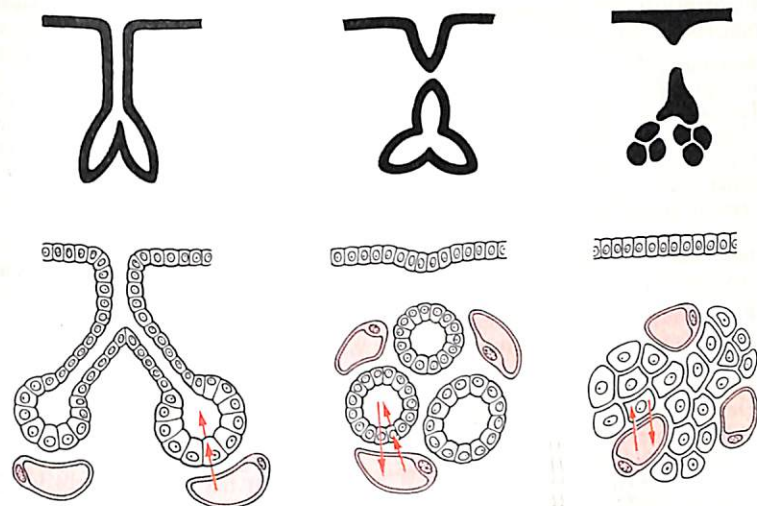
According to the **form of the terminal part of the gland** (= the secretory part) there are **acinous** (berry-shaped), **alveolar** (sac-shaped) and **tubular** (tube-shaped) **terminal parts**, and "mixed glands" which may have tubular and acinar or alveolar parts. When several secreting terminal parts open into one excretory duct, the gland is **branched**; if the excretory duct itself is divided then the glands is **composite**.

Three types of glands may be distinguished by the light microscope according to the method of **extrusion of the secretion**, **merocrine** (*eccrine*), **apocrine** and **holocrine** glands (cf. p. 148).

Basically glands may be distinguished by the **chemical nature of their secretions**. Although this is definitely the most important means of characterization, in many cases it cannot be achieved by staining. It is supplemented by the observation of typical cellular structures and by examining the excretory duct. Exocrine glands are discussed in connection with the organ system they belong to.

## Endocrine Glands

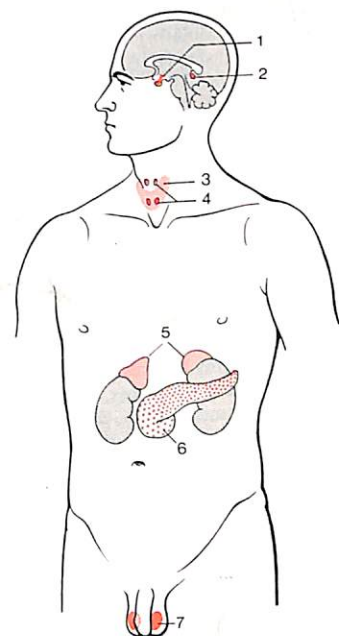
The **endocrine** (ductless) glands, are the **hypophysis** (pituitary gland) **D1**, the **epiphysis** (pineal body) **D2**, the **thyroid gland** **D3**, the **parathyroid glands** **D4** the **adrenal cortex** and **adrenal medulla** **D5**, the **islets of the pancreas** **D6**, and parts of the **gonads** **D7** (reproductive glands). They produce "**glandular hormones**". Parts of the diencephalon act as endocrine glands. Hormone-producing cells also occur in other organs, e. g. in the epithelial lining of the gastrointestinal tract ("system of gastrointestinal endocrine cells"). These **diffusely distributed endocrine organs** will be discussed with the organs in which they occur. They produce peptide hormones and/or monoamines.



A Exocrine gland

B Endocrine gland, follicle formation

C Endocrine gland without follicles



D Survey of major endocrine glands



## Formation and Release of Secretion (Incretion)

**Secretion** is the production and discharge of cell-specific substances which have been synthesized for the specific purpose of release. Secretion takes place in the cells of glands but it may also occur in other cells, e.g., the formation and release of precursors of connective tissue fibers by connective tissue cells. Secretion may be triggered by vegetative (autonomic) nerves.

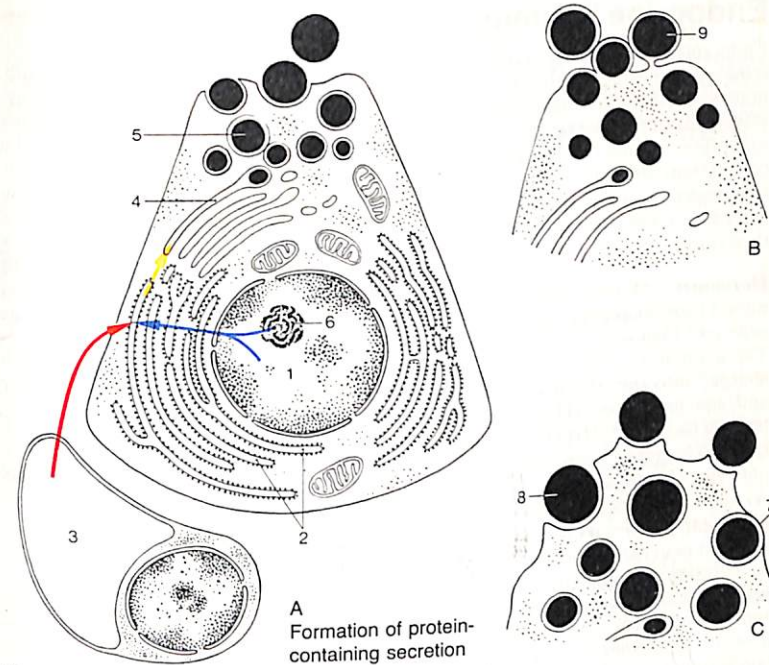
**Formation:** Protein-containing secretions ("proteohormones" in endocrine glands) are produced by the general method of cellular synthesis of proteins. On a gene, i.e., on the DNA of a chromosome, a "matrix", messenger of ribonucleic acid (messenger-RNA or mRNA) is formed. This substance migrates from the nucleus **A1** into the cytoplasm to the surface of ribosomes where protein production takes place. Ribosomes consist mainly of stable ribosomal RNA. The ribosomes and the lamellae of the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) form the granular ER (ergastoplasm) **A2**. Another type of RNA, transfer RNA, takes up amino acids, which have been activated by enzymes after their transfer from the blood vessels **A3** and converts them according to the genetic messenger of the m-RNA into protein molecules, in accordance with the information supplied by the DNA of the gene. Newly synthesized proteins pass via the cisterns of the granular ER into the vacuoles of the Golgi apparatus **A4**, where they grow into larger droplets of secretion (hormone) **A5**. The (stained) visible "basophilic" (with an affinity for basophilic dyes) protein-producing structures, which are visible by light microscopy, namely the nucleolus **A6** from which ribosomal-RNA and the ergastoplasm **A2** originate, are much magnified in Fig. A. Steroid hormone on the other hand occurs in the agranular ER.

**Release:** Several modes of release of a secretion (hormone) from the cell can be distinguished.

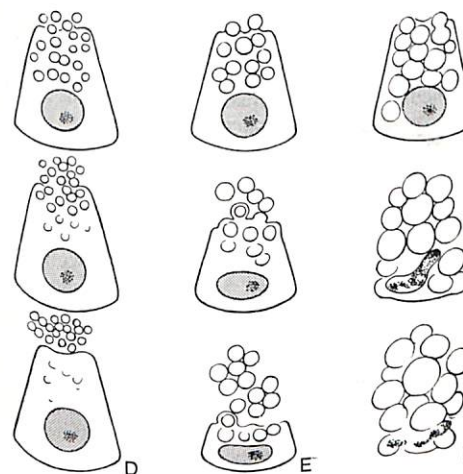
**Release without excretion of the membrane (crinocytosis).** Droplets of secretion still enveloped by a membrane from the Golgi apparatus become attached to the internal surface of the cell membrane (plasmalemma) **C7**. Where both membranes are in contact, the membrane enveloping the droplet becomes incorporated into the cell membrane and an opening into the extracellular space is created for the discharge (excretion) of the secretion (hormone) **C8**. Thus, secretions, such as hormones, that are discharged by crinocytosis have lost their covering membrane: microscopically, this is known as **merocrine (eccrine) secretion D**.

**Release with excretion of the membrane** is well recognized when milk fat is released from the epithelial cells of the mammary gland. The fat granules (droplets) at first arch from the surface of the cell **B9** and the protruded cell membrane forms a cover around the fat globule. After separation of the globule from the cell the secretion is enveloped by a membrane; microscopically **apocrine secretion E**. This mode of discharge probably occurs also in other glands, when, together with the cell membranes a cytoplasm is discharged.

**Release with destruction of the cell.** In some glands the formation of secretion is so excessive that eventually the entire cell becomes completely filled and perishes in the process. The lamellae of the ER and the Golgi apparatus disappear and pyknosis and disintegration of the nucleus ensues; microscopically **holocrine secretion F**.



Modes of release, scheme from an electron micrograph  
A, C Release without loss of cell membrane, eccrine secretion crinocytosis  
B Secretion with loss of cell membrane, apocrine secretion



Modes of secretion, scheme from light microscopic appearances

- D Eccrine secretion
- E Apocrine secretion
- F Holocrine secretion



## Endocrine System

*Endocrine glands are organs of the endocrine system which only produce hormones. On the other hand, organs which principally fulfil other functions but at the same time contain a hormone producing cell system are also known as endocrinologically active organs. The most extensive of the latter is the gastro-intestinal tract.*

**Hormones.** Minute amounts of hormones coordinate metabolic processes in cells and organs by *activating enzymes*. The amount of a hormone which is discharged into the organism is important and can usually be calculated from its level in the blood. Hyper- or hyposecretion of a hormone leads to typical disease patterns. Hormones are vital substances. As many hormones are not specific to any particular species, deficiency of a hormone in man can often be made good by substituting an animal hormone. Certain hormones are now also manufactured synthetically. The stability of the blood level of a hormone is the result of a complicated regulating mechanism so that if the blood level of hormone falls, more of it is released, and if it rises less hormone is produced. This is known as a *feedback control mechanism*. The nervous system is also involved in these regulatory mechanisms. Furthermore, endocrine glands act and react upon each other. Although each hormone is distributed throughout the body, only particular cells, tissues or organs with a specific receptor for it react to each individual hormone. The effect of a hormone is often detectable morphologically.

Hormones may be subdivided into different chemical types, the *amines* (e.g., adrenalin, noradrenalin, dopamine, melatonin, serotonin), the *steroids* (e.g., mineralocorticoids, glucocorticoids, sex hormones), the *peptides* (e.g., regulatory hormones of the hypothalamus, gastrointestinal hormones) and *proteins* (e.g., gonadotrophins, growth hormone). *En-*

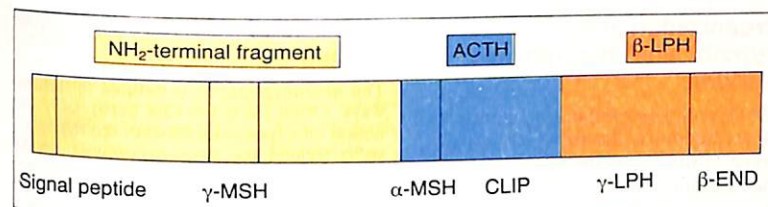
*docrine cells may produce more than one hormone.*

When there are several hormones produced in one cell as is frequently observed in peptide-synthesizing cells, they may be split off enzymatically from a *common precursor* (*pre-prohormone, prohormone*) and form a "peptide family", e.g. 1 the family of the proopiomelanocortin derivatives. However they may 2 arise from *different precursors*; the endocrine cell may activate the programs for production of more than one peptide family. 3 Hormones produced by an endocrine cell may belong to *different groups of substances*. This is particularly true of peptides and amines.

*Endocrine cells* 4 secrete into blood vessels and may 5 influence neighbouring cells in a paracrine manner.

*Hormones of all chemical types are also produced as active substances by neurons of the central and peripheral nervous systems.* The neurons release active substances either 6 as *neurotransmitters* (or neuromodulators), or as 7 *neurohormones* into the blood vessels of a neurohemal region (see median eminence p. 156).

**APUD system.** The origin of aminergic and peptidergic endocrine cells is not completely understood. A theory of unitary origin suggests that they are uniformly able to produce peptides with hormonal characteristics and simultaneously to produce biogenic amines and/or to take up and concentrate the precursors of biogenic amines, i.e. amino acids and to decarboxylate them to amines. For this reason these cells were called "Amine and/or amine precursor uptake and decarboxylation"-cells, *APUD*-cells by Pearse (1968). Many workers believe that all these cells arise from the neural crest (see Vol. 3). However, not all experts share this view. *Pathologically*, there is increasing evidence that APUD cells play an important role; hormone producing tumors, "apudomas" with characteristic symptoms may arise from them.



### 1. Pro-opiomelanocortin molecule.

Vertical lines:  
basic amino acid pairs, splitting-off active peptide hormones.

MSH: melanocyte stimulating hormone; CLIP: corticotropin-like intermediate lobe peptide; LPH: lipotropic hormone; END: endorphin.

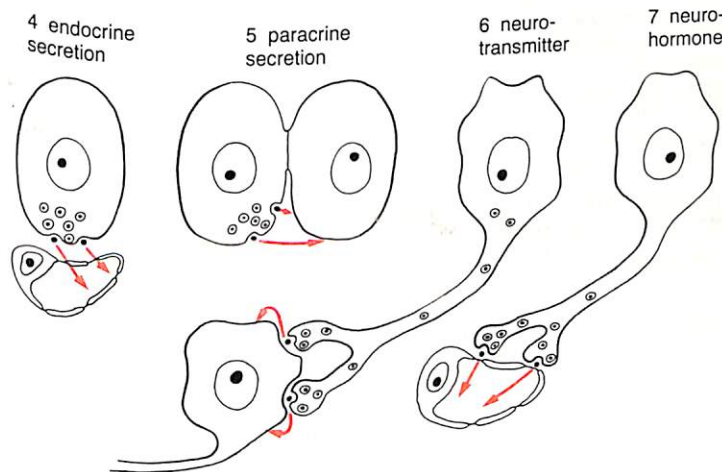
### 2. Simultaneous occurrence in cell of different peptide precursors, examples

Somatostatin	+ Enkephalin
Substance P	+ Enkephalin
Corticoliberin	+ Enkephalin
Corticoliberin	+ Vasopressin
Vasopressin	+ Dynorphin
Oxytocin	+ Enkephalin
Oxytocin	+ Cholecystokinin
TRF*	+ Somatostatin
TRF	+ Somatotropin
TRF	+ Substance P

(\* TRF=thyrotropin-releasing factor)

### 3. Simultaneous occurrence in cell of monoamines and peptides, examples

Noradrenaline	Somatostatin
	Enkephalin
	Neurotensin
	Vasopressin
Dopamine	Enkephalin
	Cholecystokinin (CCK)
Serotonin	Substance P
	Thyrotropin-releasing factor (TRF)
	Calcitonin





## Organization of the Hypothalamo-Hypophyseal System

The hypothalamus, the basal part of the diencephalon, is the primary regulating organ of the endocrine glands (nuclei of the hypothalamus, see p. 154).

The hypothalamus projects two types of efferent: descending *neural efferents* into the brain stem to visceromotor nuclei, which influence i.a. endocrine glands via the autonomic nervous system (see Vol. 3). The hypothalamus also projects *hormonal efferents* which regulate the secondary endocrine glands. The active substances in these hormonal efferents are *neurohormones* which are synthesized in (neurosecretory) nerve cells and are transported to their targets via the bloodstream. They enter the bloodstream either via the median eminence (regulatory hormones) or *neurohypophysis* (effector hormones).

Only a few hormones directly influence their targets as do the *effector hormones* of the hypothalamus or the hypophysis. Most of the hormones of the hypothalamus and hypophysis influence peripheral endocrine glands indirectly via the adenohypophysis, as *regulating neurohormones* of the hypothalamus, or as *glandotropic hormones* of the adenohypophysis. The hypothalamus and hypophysis – connected by blood vessels – are a functional entity.

### I. Hypothalamo-Neurohypophyseal System (Effector Neurohormones)

**Hypothalamus.** Oxytocin and vasopressin are hypothalamic hormones which influence their targets directly as *effector neurohormones*, i.e. they act without interposition of the adenohypophysis. Transported in axons these neurohormones reach the neurohypophysis where they are released into the blood.

The *neurohypophysis* is only a storage and release site for oxytocin and vasopressin, production of neurohormones

does not occur in the neurohypophysis proper.

The *neurohypophysis* is defined in various ways. Often (as is the case here), only the neural lobe (posterior lobe) of the hypophysis is termed the neurohypophysis. In an expanded definition, the *median eminence* and *neural lobe* are both ascribed to the *neurohypophysis* as the *distal* and *proximal* parts of it, respectively.

### II. Hypothalamo-Adenohypophyseal System (Regulatory Neurohormones)

Representing the principal endocrine center, the *hypothalamus* indirectly influences peripheral endocrine glands which are secondary to the adenohypophysis: hypothalamic *regulatory neurohormones* act as *releasing factors* (hormones), *liberins*, or inhibit as *release-inhibiting factors* (hormones), *statins*, the release of adenohypophyseal hormones. In general, each hormone of the adenohypophysis is associated with a regulatory neurohormone. Transported in axons, the regulatory neurohormones reach the *median eminence* (infundibulum) of the diencephalon, and from there they are conveyed to the *adenohypophysis* via the bloodstream (portal vessels).

**Adenohypophysis – effector hormones.** Three hormones of the adenohypophysis, *somatotropin*, *prolactin* and *melanotropin*, directly influence their targets as effector hormones, i.e. without interposition of a secondary peripheral endocrine gland. However, this is only true with qualifications.

**Adenohypophysis – glandotropic hormones.** The remainder of adenohypophyseal hormones are *glandotropic hormones* which induce growth and hormone production and release by secondary peripheral endocrine glands.

The *feedback* from the peripheral endocrine glands to hypothalamus and hypophysis mainly occurs via the *bloodstream*; in addition, *neural feedback* pathways are known.

Review of the important hormonal efferents of the hypothalamo-hypophyseal system in man  
(Using the Nomenclature of Peptide Hormones of the Commission on Biochemical Nomenclature 1974)

Hypothalamic Hormones	Adenohypophyseal Hormones	Peripheral Endocrine Gland and Principal Action
<b>A. Releasing factors and release-inhibiting factors</b>		
<i>Folliberin</i> (Follicle stimulating hormone-releasing factor = FSH-RF)*	<i>Follitropin</i> (follicle stimulating hormone = FSH)	Stimulates ripening of egg follicles and spermatogenesis
<i>Luliberin</i> (luteinizing hormone releasing factor = LH-RF [LRF]) (= LHRH; gonadotropin-releasing hormone = GnRH)	<i>Lutropin</i> (luteinizing hormone = LH; = interstitial cell stimulating hormone = ICSH)	Interstitial cells (ovary and testis), stimulate ovulation and luteinisation of egg follicle and secretion of testosterone
<i>Corticoliberin</i> (corticotropin releasing factor = CRF)*	<i>Corticotropin</i> (adrenocorticotropin hormone = ACTH)	Stimulates growth and secretion of adrenal cortex
<i>Thyroliberin</i> (thyrotrophin releasing factor = TRF) (= TRH)	<i>Thyrotropin</i> (thyrotrophic hormone, thyroid-stimulating hormone = TSH)	Stimulates growth and secretion of thyroid gland
<i>Somatoliberin</i> (somatotropin-releasing factor = growth hormone releasing factor = GH-RF)	<i>Somatotropin</i> (somatotrophic hormone = STH; = growth hormone = GH)	Stimulates growth of body
<i>Somatostatin</i> (somatotropin-release inhibiting factor)	<i>Melanotropin</i> (melanocyte stimulating hormone = MSH)	Probably an endogenous anti-opioid in man
<i>Melanoliberin</i> (melanotropin-releasing factor = MRF)*	<i>Prolactin</i> (mammatropic hormone = PRL)	Stimulates proliferation and formation of milk gland secretions (in rodents maintains function of corpus luteum)
<i>Melanostatin</i> (melanotropin-release inhibiting factor = MIF)*		
<i>Prolactoliberin</i> (prolactin-releasing factor = PRF: oxytocin?)		
<i>Prolactostatin</i> (prolactin-release inhibiting factor = PIF; Dopamin)		
<b>B. Effector hormones</b>		
<i>Oxytocin</i> (oxytocin = OXT)		Leads to contraction of sensitised smooth muscle Encourages water retention
<i>Vasopressin</i> (= VP; = <i>aduretin</i> = ADH)		

\* The existence of these substances has been postulated on indirect grounds. Their chemical structure has not yet been proven.



## I. Hypothalamo-Neurohypophyseal System

**Hormones.** *Vasopressin* raises the blood pressure and promotes reabsorption of water from the renal tubules. *Deficiency:* diabetes insipidus. *Oxytocin* sensitizes smooth muscle; it stimulates the uterus into labor and causes milk to be expressed by contraction of the myoepithelial cells of the terminal parts of the breast glands. *Impaired function* produces uterine hypoactivity in labor.

### Hypothalamus

The perikarya of the neurosecretory neurons, nerve cells of the hypothalamo-neurohypophyseal system lie in the large-celled nuclear zones of the diencephalon, in the *supraoptic nucleus AB1* and the *paraventricular nucleus AB2*. The axons terminate in the neurohypophysis **AB3**. The neurohormones are bound to a carrier substance, *neurophysin*. Both are produced by cell organelles in the perikarya. The *neurosecretion* (= neurohormone + carrier substance) lies in the perikaryon **C4**, the axon nerve cell processes **C5** and the axon endings **C6**. It passes along the axons out of the perikarya to the neurohypophysis and is there released (Bargmann and Scharrer).

The axons which carry the neurosecretion form the *hypothalamo-hypophyseal tract B7*, which ends in the neurohypophysis. Larger axonal swellings, which contain neurosecretion, are known by the older name of Herring bodies. The neurosecretory substance may be stored in the axonal endings. **D** it consists of membrane-bound *elementary granules* with a mean diameter of 100–300 nm.

### Neurohypophysis

The neurohypophysis **AB3** consists of a network of glial cells (pituicytes) and glial fibers, a type of "connective tissue" of the nervous system. There are numerous capillaries but no nerve cells. In the neurohypophysis (one of the neurohemal regions see p. 156) neurosecretory sub-

stances leave the axonal endings and pass into the blood vessels **B8**.

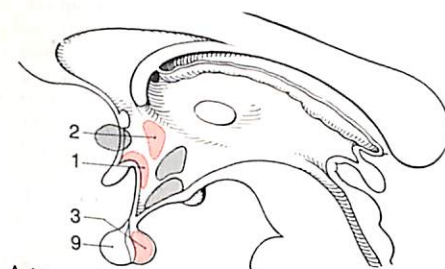
### Hypophysis

The bean-shaped **hypophysis** (pituitary gland) weighs about 0.6 g and lies in the sella turcica of the sphenoid bone, at the center of the base of the skull, see Vol. 1. It consists of a *glandular part*, the *adenohypophysis A9*, and a *cerebral part*, the *neurohypophysis A3*. The following areas may be distinguished (see also p. 158.)

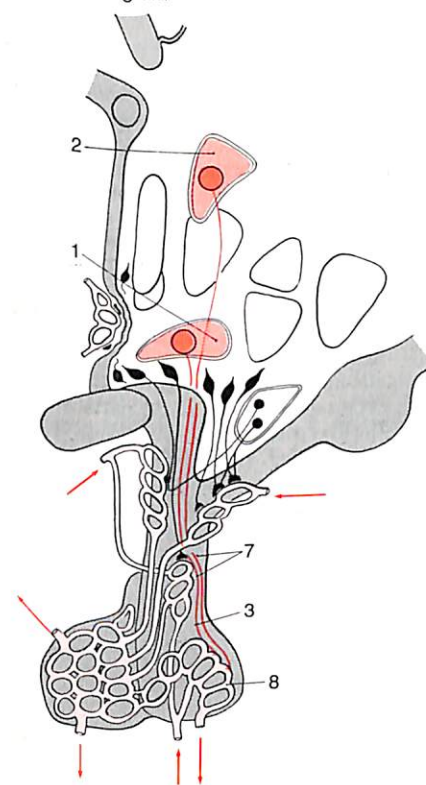
The *adenohypophysis* (= anterior lobe) may be divided into: *pars distalis* which is the largest part, *pars intermedia* ("middle lobe") which forms a small border zone with the neurohypophysis, *pars tuberalis* ("funnel lobe," *pars infundibularis*), which lies anteriorly on the hypophyseal stalk.

The *neurohypophysis* (= posterior lobe) is joined to the hypothalamus of the diencephalon by the *infundibulum* (funnel, hypophyseal stalk). The *infundibulum* and the *median eminence* may be considered part of the neurophysis in the wider sense (see p. 152).

**Position of the hypophysis.** The *sella turcica* is bordered on both sides by the cavernous sinus. The optic chiasm lies anterior to the hypophysis and may be damaged by pressure caused by tumors of the hypophysis (*bitemporal hemianopsia*, see Vol. 3). The *tuber cinereum* (base of the diencephalon) lies on the *diaphragm of the sella turcica*, surrounded by the *cerebral arterial circle* (of Willis), see p. 58. As the base of the sella turcica juts into the sphenoidal sinus, surgical access to the hypophysis via the nasal cavity and sphenoidal sinus is possible.



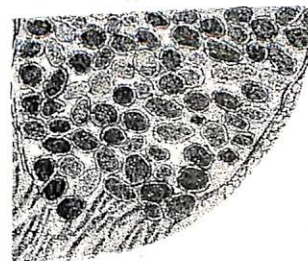
A Neurosecretory nuclear region of the hypothalamus (diencephalon). Outline diagram



B Hypothalamo-neurohypophyseal system (red cells) and hypothalamo-adenohypophyseal system. Schematic view



C Neurosecretory cell



D Neurosecretion, electron microscope view



**Vessels of the hypophysis.** The internal carotid artery (see p. 58) gives off lower arteries which arise within the cavernous sinus, and upper arteries which arise above it. They pass to the infundibulum and the infundibular process and amongst other things form special vessels. Venous return is via the cavernous sinus and possibly via the cerebral veins.

## II. Hypothalamus-Adenohypophyseal System

### Hypothalamus

**Hormones.** Releasing factors and release-inhibiting factors, see review p. 153.

The neurons of the infundibular nucleus **AB1** in the mid-hypothalamic region control the release of *releasing factors* and *release-inhibiting factors* by transmitter substances. These are also formed by the neuroendocrine cells of the hypothalamus, but they are dispersed diffusely and do not form any nucleus-like cell groups. The *releasing* and *release-inhibiting hormones* stimulate or inhibit the release of hypophyseal hormones, which themselves are mostly glandotropic hormones influencing the subordinate endocrine glands (thyroid, adrenal and sex glands). The *releasing* and *release inhibiting hormones* are produced in the perikarya of the nerve cells **C** and pass in the axons of the *tubero-infundibular tract B2* to the median eminence.

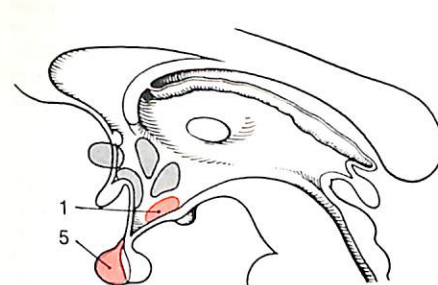
The neuronal cell bodies containing the regulatory neurohormones *luliberin* (LRF, LHRH), *somatostatin* (SRIF) and *thyroliberin* (TRF) lie scattered in the periventricular zone, the perikarya of each individual hormone being situated in a different region of the "hypophysiotropic region." In contrast, perikarya producing the corticotropin-releasing factor corticoliberin (CRF) are concentrated in the *paraventricular nucleus*. The *nucleus infundibularis* contains scattered cells synthesizing prolactin inhibiting factor *prolactostatin* (PIF) (= dopamine) together with the neurons in which

*corticotropin* (ACTH) is produced (and which may also contain *prolactin*), and those for *somatoliberin* (*somatokrinin*). The infundibular nucleus, a small-celled, well defined nucleus in the wall of the infundibulum, receives neural afferents from other parts of the brain, and regulates the release of regulatory hormones on the *median eminence*. The unmyelinated efferent fibers of these systems are directed towards the median eminence and each of them forms a relatively discrete bundle within the *tuberoinfundibular tract*.

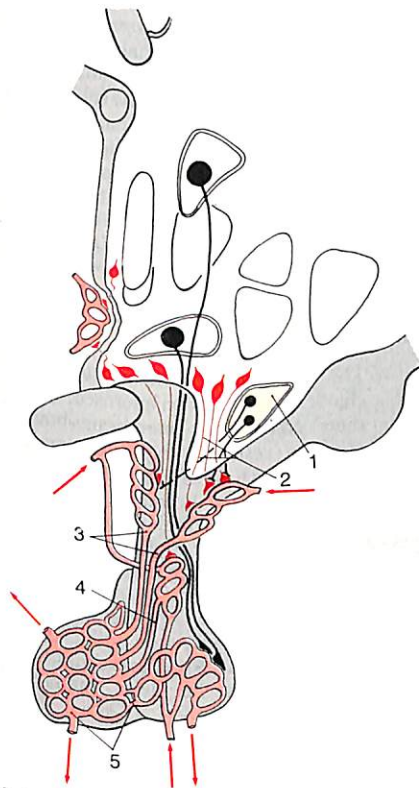
### Median Eminence

The **median eminence B3**, in the wall of the infundibulum, is the *neurohemal region* where the neurohormones pass into the capillaries. The capillaries of the median eminence, the mesh of capillaries which penetrates the hypophyseal stalk radially from the outside, are surrounded by extended *perivascular connective tissue spaces*. The axonal endings of the neurohormonal nerve cells open into them and release the neurohormone into the perivascular space. Then the neurohormones pass into the blood stream through the "portal" veins **B3,4** ("portal" because like the portal vein of the liver, between two capillary beds they run between the capillary beds of the median eminence and the adenohypophysis) into the adenohypophysis **AB5**, where they stimulate or inhibit the release of hypophyseal hormones. The neurohormone appears in the form of variable-sized vesicles with a dense core in the axons and the axon endings.

**Regulatory circuits.** The production and release of neurohormones can be under humoral control (through the blood vessels of the hypothalamic nuclear region) or under control by the central nervous system (e.g., influence of psyche on ovarian cycle tactile stimulation on the breast to release milk etc.).

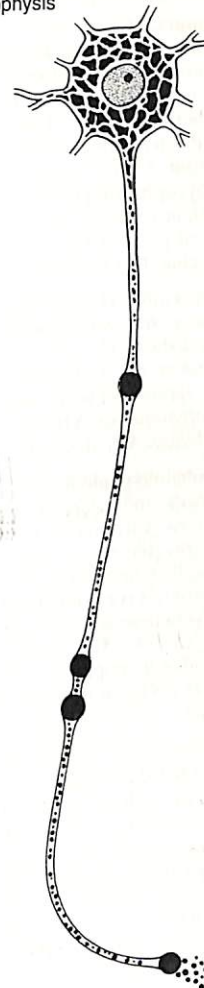


A Neurosecretory nuclear region of the hypothalamus (diencephalon)



B Hypothalamo-adenohypophyseal system (red cells) and hypothalamo-neurohypophyseal system: schematic view

Hypophysis



C Neurosecretory hypophyseal cell



## Adenohypophysis

**Hormones.** *Glandotropic* and *effector* hormones, see p. 152, review p. 153. *Malfunction* of glandotropic hormones leads to malfunction of their dependent peripheral endocrine glands. *Inadequate production of somatotropin:* hypophyseal dwarfism. *Overproduction of somatotropin:* hypophyseal gigantism or, after full growth has ceased, acromegaly (enlargement of parts of the body like the ear, nose, chin, hands, feet).

The *pars tuberalis* (*pars infundibularis*) of the *adenohypophysis* covers the hypophyseal stalk. The *pars intermedia* **AB1** borders on the neurohypophysis and the other, larger part is the *pars distalis* **AB2**. *Neurohypophysis* **AB3** (see p. 154), *infundibulum* **A4**, *diencephalon* **A5**.

The *adenohypophysis* consists of irregular cords and nests of *epithelial cells*, which are surrounded by a sparse network of connective tissue fibers. The thin-walled *sinusoidal capillaries* spread out between the epithelial cells. The entire hypophysis is covered by a *connective tissue capsule*. The portal vessels enter the *adenohypophysis* near the *pars tuberalis*. The veins form a plexus in the capsule.

The *glandular cells* of the hypophysis may be stained differentially by a number of methods. A division into three groups of cells according to their staining characteristics mirrors the chemical nature of the hormones produced in these cells. The usual staining methods divide the cells into *chromophilic* (acidophilic or basophilic) and *chromophobic* ("neutrophil") cells.

The *proteohormones* STH and prolactin (PRL) are found in the so-called *acidophilic cells*, which may be stained with orange **G C6**.

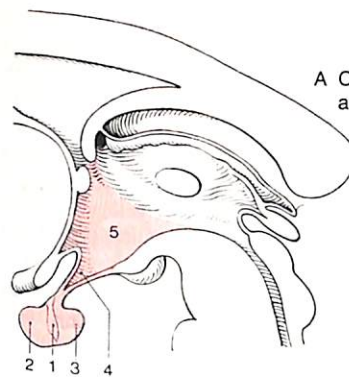
The *proteohormone* ACTH and the *glycoprotein hormones* TSH, FSH, LH and MSH are produced in *basophil* (*PAS-positive*) cells **C8**.

*Chromophobe cells* **C7** are *degranulated* (empty) cells of all types, or *stem cells* or "*stellate cells*" which are surrounded incompletely by groups of gland cells with long, thin processes which subdivide the gland.

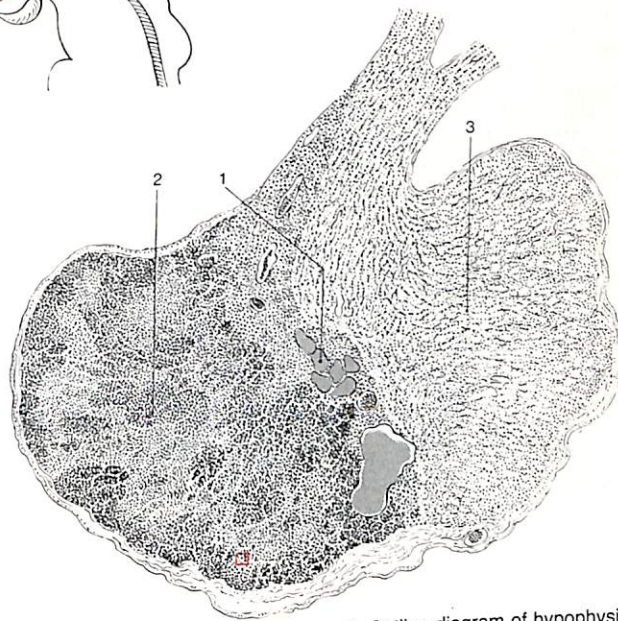
The cells may be identified microscopically by the hormones which they produce with the aid of *immunohistochemical methods*. The gland cells are not strictly separated to their cell type, they have a scattered arrangement, though each all group does show local concentrations. The *somatotropin* (and *prolactin*) forming acidophilic cells lie mostly posteriorly and laterally; the *corticotropin* and *melanotropin* (or *lipotropin*) containing basophilic cells occur mainly in the central and anterior parts of gland; the *thyrotropin* producing basophilic cells are common in the antero-central part of the *pars distalis* and basophilic cells which contain *gonadotropins* (*follicleotropin* and *lutropin*) are found more laterally. The *chromophobe*, possibly *stem cells* have no characteristic position. *Degranulated chromophobe cells* may be observed amongst all cell types and branches of *chromophobe stellate cells* penetrate everywhere.

The differently stained cells may be characterised electron microscopically by their content of membrane-bounded granules (vesicles with a dense core), the size of which varies from 140–600 nm according to the hormone they contain and according to their functional state. The cells may be further distinguished by the shape and position of their granules and the different appearance of their ergastoplasm and Golgi apparatus. The production and secretion of the hormone is by exocytosis. Specific hormone identification may be done immunohistochemically.

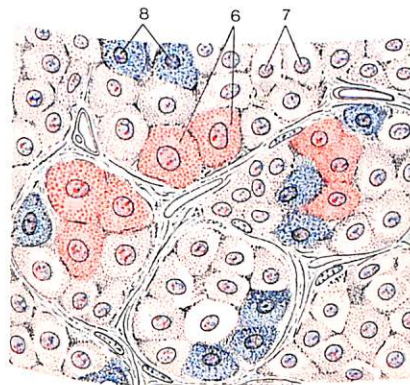
A Outline diagram of hypophysis and hypothalamus (diencephalon)



B Outline diagram of hypophysis anterior and posterior lobes



C Cellular composition of anterior lobe of hypophysis (adenohypophysis)





### Epiphysis (Pineal Body)

The *epiphysis* **AB1** is a piriform structure, about 12 mm long, in the roof of the third ventricle. It lies above the anterior two colliculi **AB2** of the midbrain and is connected to the brain by pedicles, the *habenulae* **AB3**. Phylogenetically it arises like the parietal eye of the reptile, as the parietal organ (phylogenetic change from receptor cell to secretory cells).

**Hormones.** In amphibia the epiphyseal hormone, *melatonin*, causes contraction of the pigment cells, the melanocytes, with resultant lightening of color. It acts, therefore, as an antagonist to the melanotropin of the adenohypophysis. In mammals, melatonin which is produced from serotonin by the enzyme HIOMT (hydroxyindole-O-methyl transferase) restricts the release of gonadotropin hormone and through this restrains development of the gonads. Particular types of pubertas precox (early sexual maturation) may be due to a subfunctional pineal gland. The effect of light on their development is also important. These and other observations suggest a relationship with circadian rhythms. In submammals (birds) and probably also in mammals, the epiphysis is important in the coordination of hormonal processes in the hypothalamus.

**Fine structure.** In the lobular structure **C5**, vessels, connective tissue **C4** and parenchymal cell islands may be seen. With age, degeneration and cyst formation occur. **C6** Calculi (acervulus).

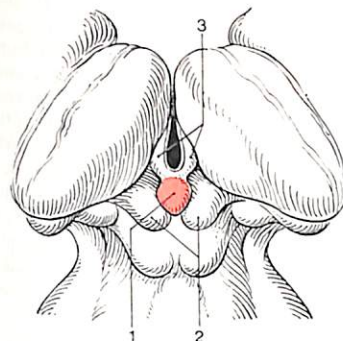
### Adrenal (Suprarenal) Glands

Each *adrenal* consists of two endocrine glands of different origin and with different functions: the *adrenal cortex* and the *adrenal medulla*. The adrenals weigh about 5 g each and sit like caps on the upper pole of the kidneys. Each is separated from the kidney by adipose tissue, but is enclosed within the renal fatty capsule. The right adrenal gland **D7** is more triangular and the left one **E8** more semilunar in shape. At the back each adrenal gland has a *hilum* where the veins and lymph vessels leave, whereas arteries and nerves enter the glands at many sites.

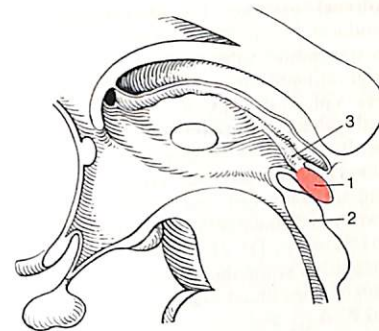
The adrenal gland is enclosed in a connective tissue capsule which radiates into it. The organ, rich in lipids, is visible through the capsule as a yellowish shining structure.

On the *cut surface* of the fresh organ, in parts less than 1 cm thick, it is possible to distinguish the broader yellowish-brown *cortex* **E9** from the smaller, greyish-red colored *medulla* **E10**.

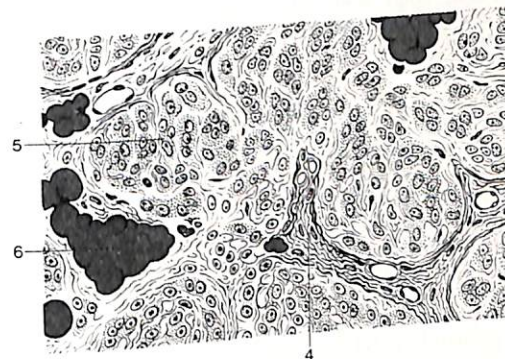
**Adrenal hormones.** The adrenal cortex produces several *corticosteroid hormones (corticoids)*. The most important can be summarized in three groups: *mineralocorticoids* (e.g., aldosterone) which regulates sodium-potassium balance (Na retention if K is excreted) and water balance. The *glucocorticoids* (e.g., cortisone) diminish carbohydrate utilization by cells (so the blood sugar rises) and control gluconeogenesis. The glucocorticoids can also produce a reduction in the number of lymphocytes circulating in the blood and inhibit the phagocytic action of granulocytes and monocytes, thus suppressing the symptoms of inflammation. Glucocorticoids also aid the nonspecific resistance of the organism to stress situations (adaptation to hunger, thirst and change of temperature). *Hyperfunction* (or excessive drug administration) leads to *Cushing's syndrome* with a moon face and obesity of the trunk, and *hypofunction* to general weakening of resistance which is ultimately lethal. Masculinizing hormones (*androgens*) are produced during the synthesis and breakdown of corticosteroids. *Overproduction* of androgens in women leads to their masculinization: *adrenogenital syndrome*. Female sex hormones are also produced in small quantities.



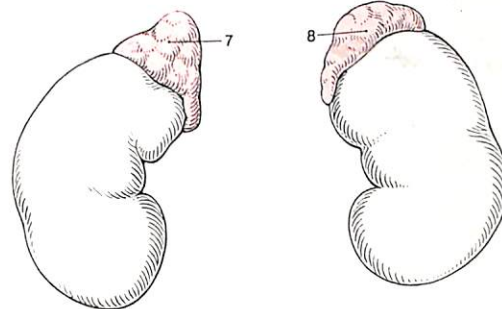
A Position of epiphysis from above and behind in relation to diencephalon and mesencephalon



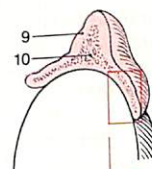
B Position of epiphysis in relation to 3rd ventricle (sagittal section through diencephalon)



C Microscopic section through epiphysis



D Right adrenal gland



E Left adrenal gland, transverse section on right

(see also p. 163)



**Adrenal hormones.** The adrenal medulla produces hormones which also function as transmitter substances in the second efferent neurones of **sympathetic** nerves (see Vol. 3; its cells correspond to sympatheticoblasts), **noradrenalin** and **adrenalin**. Both of these hormones increase the blood pressure and the cardiac output, and adrenalin also raises the blood sugar level and stimulates the adenohypophysis to release ACTH. **Hyperfunction** leads to increased sympathetic tone, **hypofunction** to a low blood sugar level, low blood pressure and general weakness (cachexia).

### Adrenal Cortex

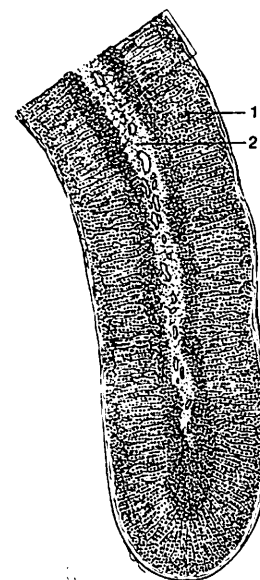
The **adrenal cortex** A1 accounts for 80–90% of the total weight of the organ. It contains, apart from lipoids, lipofuscin and other substances, and large amounts of vitamin C. A2 Adrenal medulla.

**Fine structure.** The parenchyma of the adrenal cortex consists of strands and nests of epithelial cells between which connective tissue, blood vessels and nerves penetrate radially from the capsule into the medulla. During the course of life the epithelial cells of the cortex are arranged in zones which are transformed several times. Three layers are seen at the time of puberty. The glomerular zone (**zona glomerulosa**) B3 lies in the form of cell nests externally beneath the capsule. The **zona fasciculata** B4 follows toward the center and forms a broad layer of parallel strands of epithelial cells. This zone occupies the largest part of the cortex. Its big polygonal cells contain lipid droplets which are dissolved by the usual histological fixatives to leave only holes. Lipochromes stain the cortex a yellowish-golden color. The **zona reticularis** B5 adjoins toward the center. Its network of strands of cells is acidophilic; in old age the cells contain increasing amounts of lipofuscin granules. Even in freshly cut tissue the zone can be recognized with a magnifying glass as a pigmented band.

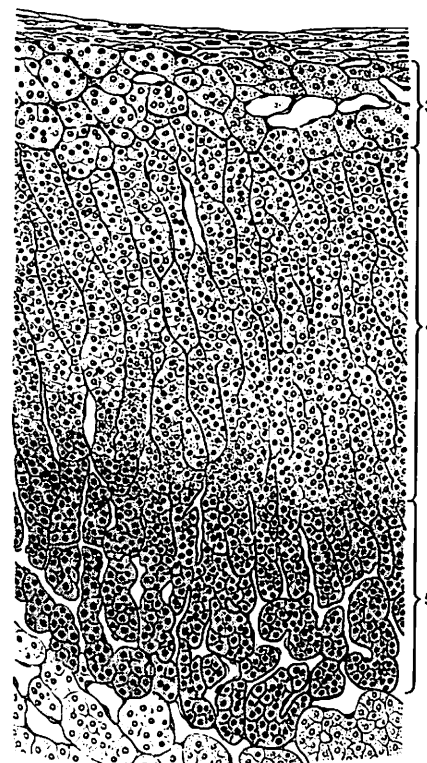
**Transformation of the cortex.** In the course of life the zones undergo changes, and shifts occur particularly at both borders of the **zona fasciculata**, the **outer** and **inner transformation zones**. The **fetal** and **newborn adrenal cortex**, under the influence of choriogonadotropic hormones from the placenta, possesses a well developed **zona reticularis**. The **zona glomerulosa** is absent. In the **1st year after birth** the fetal **zona reticularis** disappears and a three-layered cortex with an indistinct **zona glomerulosa** and **reticularis** is apparent. In the **postpubertal period** the **zona glomerulosa** and **reticularis** become wider; the three layers are better defined in the female than in the male. In **post-climacteric** old age the **zona glomerulosa** and **reticularis** again become smaller, more abruptly so in the female than in the male – **regressive transformation**. If the organism is under **stress** ACTH is released in increased quantities, and this quickly results in temporary widening of the **zona fasciculata**, increased amounts of lipid deposit and expansion of the **zona glomerulosa** and **reticularis** – **progressive transformation**. The two inner zones are dependent on the hypophysis (ACTH).

It is not possible to allocate with certainty the production of particular hormones to particular types or zones of cells with the exception of the mineralocorticoids which are in the **zona glomerulosa** and are not dependent on the hypothalamo-hypophyseal system but are stimulated by the renal renin-angiotension-system. The precursors of the corticosteroids are probably produced by many cells of the cortex, but the last steps of synthesis are undertaken by specialized cell organelles of a restricted number of cells. The **zona fasciculata** is the most productive of all the layers.

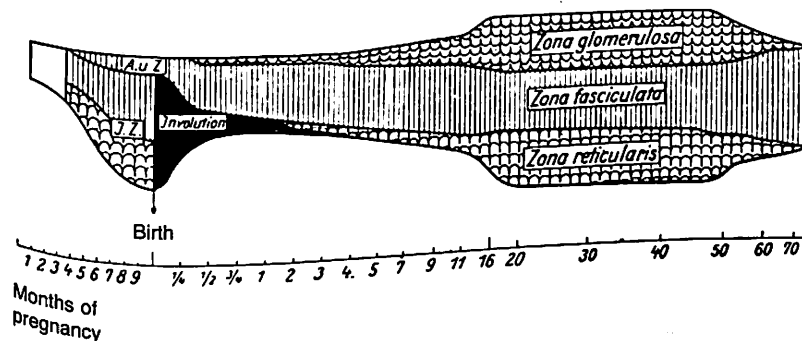
Vessels and nerves, see p. 164.



A Survey of adrenal cortex and medulla (section from E, p. 161)



B Section through adrenal cortex, cortical zones



C Transformation of adrenal cortex at different ages (from Rotter)

A.U.Z. = outer transformation zone

I.Z. = inner transformation zone



## Adrenal Medulla

The **adrenal medulla** is a derivative of sympathoblasts, a "*sympathetic paraganglion*." The cells of the adrenal medulla correspond to a *second sympathetic neuron*, which has no nerve cell processes. Like the second parasympathetic neuron in the peripheral vegetative nervous system, the adrenal medullary cells are innervated by preganglionic sympathetic fibers.

**Fine structure.** The polygonal cells of the medulla form nests and strands. Between them there are wide *capillaries* **A1** and large *veins* surrounded by a thick muscle coat. It is characteristic of most cells of the adrenal medulla, like cells of other sympathetic paraganglia, that they contain cored vesicles, filled with *noradrenalin* or *adrenalin*. The two types of fluorescence microscopy. After treatment with potassium dichromate they turn brown, and so the cells **A2** are called *chromaffin (pheochromic)*. Between the epithelial cells there are vegetative nerve cells **A3** and nerve fibers.

The cells of the adrenal medulla, derivatives of sympathicoblasts, have the potential of APUD-cells. In the human adrenal medulla, in addition to adrenalin and noradrenalin, the derivatives of *proopiomelanocortin* ( $\beta$ -endorphin and  $\alpha$ -melanotropin and *lipotropin* and ACTH) may be observed as well as *enkephalins*, *substance P*, *somatostatin* and *vasoactive intestinal polypeptide* (VIP).

**Vessels and nerves.** The arteries of the adrenal gland, the inferior phrenic artery and the renal artery (see p. 48), arise from the aorta. Wide, radially arranged capillaries run from the arteries into the cortex and blood flows from them into the capillaries of the medulla. Several arteries run directly from the capsule into the medulla. There the blood flow may be arrested temporarily by *veins* with strong muscle coats (blocking veins). The direction of flow from the cortex into the medulla enables cortisol indirectly to in-

duce the conversion of noradrenalin into adrenalin (by affecting an enzyme in the medulla). The *lymph vessels* form capillary networks in the capsule and the parenchyma. Amongst the numerous autonomic nerves there are many preganglionic sympathetic fibers (see Vol. 3) that enter the medulla.

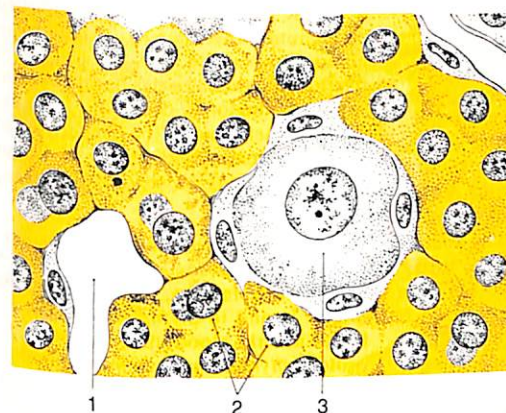
## Paraganglia

The small pea-sized knots of epithelial cell heaps which lie on the nerves are called "*paraganglia*." In the past they were subdivided into "*sympathetic paraganglia*," which lay on sympathetic nerve fibers, and "*parasympathetic paraganglia*" on nerve fibers which also contained parasympathetic nerves.

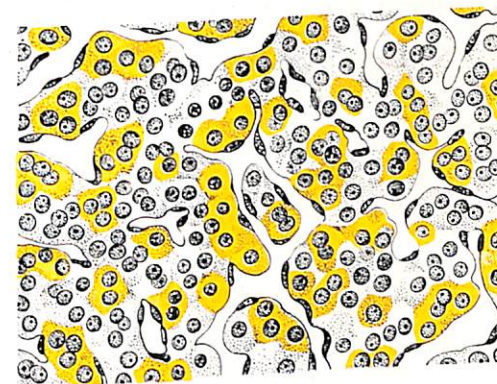
**Sympathetic paraganglia.** These are small *endocrine glands*, which produce noradrenalin and adrenalin and develop from sympathetic anlagen, which emigrate from the neural crest. Their structure and staining characteristics are the same as those of the adrenal medulla, the largest sympathetic "*paraganglion*." The sympathetic paraganglia in regard to the adrenal medulla are also called "*extramedullary, chromaffin cell groups*." They mostly occur in the retroperitoneal space. A sympathetic paraganglion about 1 cm long lies at the origin of the inferior mesenteric artery, the *abdominal aortic paraganglion* (Zuckermandl).

The "*parasympathetic paraganglia*" associated with the glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves, the *carotid glomus* and *aortic glomus*, are *chemoreceptors* involved in regulation of respiration. The term "*parasympathetic paraganglion*" is no longer used.

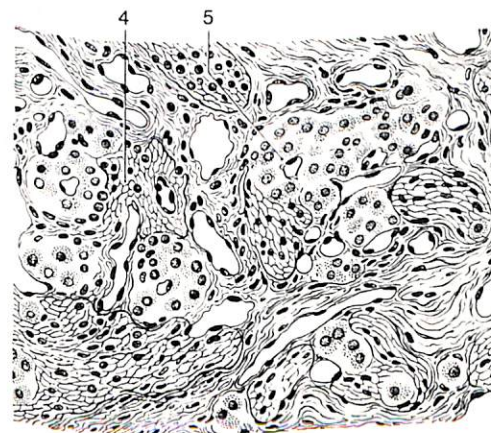
**Carotid glomus:** **C4** nerve fibers, **C5** parenchymal cells.



A Section through adrenal medulla



B Section through retroperitoneal sympathetic paraganglion (after Watzka)



C Section through carotid glomus (carotid body) (after Watzka)



## Thyroid Gland

The **thyroid gland** weighs 18–60 g and consists of two oval lobes **ABC1, 2**, which lie on either side of the trachea and the larynx. They are connected by a bridge, the **isthmus AC3**, at the level of the 2nd–4th tracheal cartilage. In 50% an appendix, the **pyramidal lobe A4** extends from the isthmus toward the hyoid bone. The gland is enveloped by a **fascia C5** and subdivided by connective tissue. Another tough **fibrous capsule C6** from the middle leaf of the cervical fascia is loosely connected to the thyroid gland in front and at the back to the trachea and to the sheath of the neurovascular bundle **C7** of the neck. In front of the thyroid are the sternothyroid and sternohyoid muscles and the middle layer of the cervical fascia **C8**. Between the organ capsule and the fibrous capsule posteriorly are the **parathyroid glands B9, BC10**.

**C11** Skin of the neck, **C12** platysma, **C13** superficial layer of the cervical fascia and sternocleidomastoid muscle, **C14** deep layer of the cervical fascia, **C15** esophagus.

**Hormones.** The thyroid gland produces two hormones, thyroxine and triiodothyronine, on the one hand, and calcitonin on the other. Thyroxine and its bioactive derivative triiodothyronine, stimulate cell metabolism and are essential for normal body growth. Parafollicular somatostatin-producing cells are involved in the regulation of hormone release. In a case of **hyperfunction (hyperthyroidism, "soft struma," goiter, Grave's or Basedow's disease)**, oxidative processes in cells are accelerated (loss of weight, rise of temperature, acceleration of the heart beat) and nervous irritation results. In **hypofunction (hypothyroidism)** metabolism, growth and mental activity are slowed down, and **myxedema** (swelling of subcutaneous tissues) develops. In congenital hypothyroidism (thyroid deficiency) dwarfism and idiocy (**cretinism**) ensue.

**Calcitonin** lowers the blood calcium level and promotes bone formation (antagonism to the action of the parathyroid hormone).

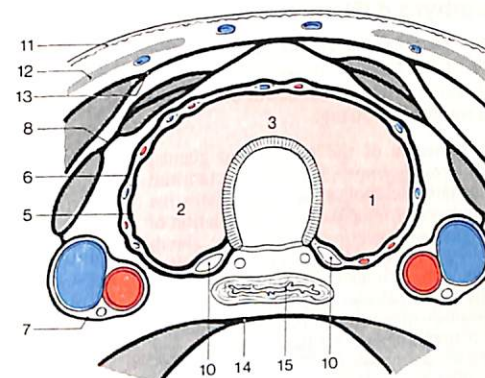
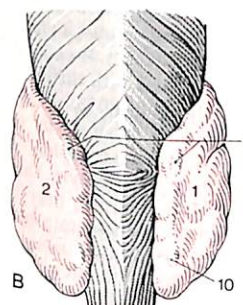
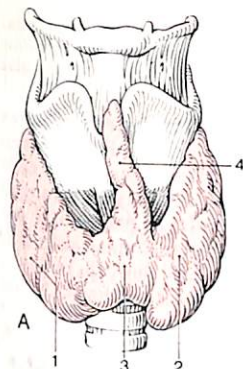
**Fine structure.** The gland consists of vesicular **follicles D16** and ducts where **thyroxine** is produced, and of loose connective tissue **D17**. The follicles are lined by

a simple squamous to high cuboidal epithelium. Their lumen is filled with homogenous colloid. In the process of fixation marginal vesicles develop. Within the conglomeration of follicular epithelial cells and in the connective tissue are interspersed groups of lighter staining **parafollicular C-cells D18** which form **calcitonin**.

**Hormone production and release.** Thyroxine and triiodothyronine are produced in a stepwise fashion, then stored in the follicle bound to **thyroglobulin**, and released into the blood when required. The protein **thyroglobulin** is synthesized in the basal part of the cell and is released apically into the lumen of the follicle. Circulating iodide (under the influence of thyrotropin) is rapidly taken up from the basal plasmalemma and oxidised to iodine. It is bound to thyroglobulin extracellularly in the colloid. In order to release the hormone, which is inactive in the follicle, under the influence of thyrotropin the epithelial cells take up the colloid at their apices. There, the apical lysosomes break the bonds between the hormone and the globulin and the hormone is released into the circulation by diffusion.

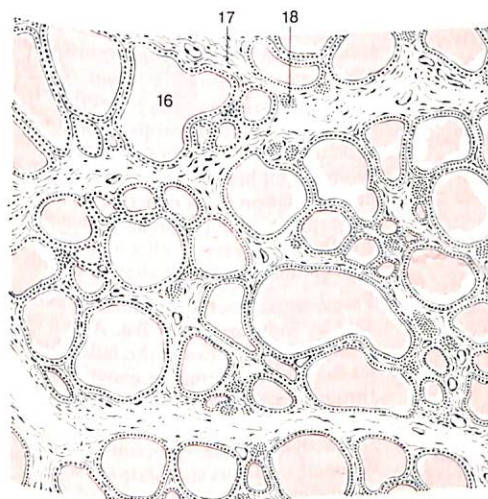
**Functional phases of the follicle.** While the secretion is being formed the epithelial cells are cuboidal **E19**, and during storage of the secretion they become flatter **E20**. During the phase of secretion the epithelium again grows taller **E19** (in animal experiments within 30 minutes after injection of TSH). A follicle may shrink into a collapsed vesicle, but it can be refilled with colloid within a day. The thyroid gland is activated by cold and darkness, and is inhibited by warmth and light. The gland is enlarged during puberty and pregnancy. It gets smaller with age; starvation leads to degeneration.

**Vessels and nerves.** For the **superior thyroid artery** see p. 52. The **inferior thyroid artery** divides near the inferior laryngeal nerve. The **veins** drain into the jugular and left innominate veins. **Lymph vessels** drain into the deep and pretracheal cervical lymph glands. The **nerves** arise from the superior and inferior laryngeal nerves and from the third cervical ganglion of the sympathetic trunk.

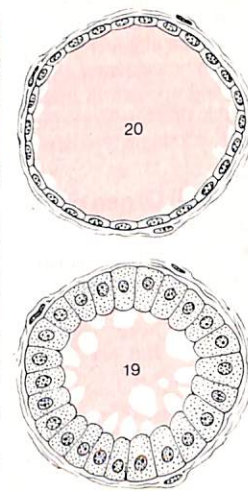


C Position of thyroid gland in relation to organs of neck; schematic horizontal section

A, B Position of thyroid gland from front and from back



D Section through thyroid gland



E Thyroid follicle above: filled, below: empty



### Parathyroid Glands

The 4 **parathyroid glands A1** lie at the back of the thyroid inside its organ capsule. Each is lentiform, about 8 mm long and weighs 30–50 mg.

The **hormone** of the parathyroid glands, **parathyroid hormone**, regulates calcium and phosphate metabolism, and stimulates the breakdown of bone tissue by stimulation of osteoclasts. **Hyperfunction** of the glands leads to increased phosphate excretion, breakdown of bone tissue (decalcification), a rise in the calcium in the blood level with deposition of calcium in the vessel walls and the formation of renal calculi. **Hypofunction** leads to faulty calcification of the skeleton and the teeth and to increased excitability of the nerves through reduction in blood calcium. Removal of the parathyroid gland leads to muscle spasms – *tetany*.

**Fine structure.** Each parathyroid gland consists of nests of epithelial cells, a dense capillary network, and with increasing age an increasing number of fat cells **A2**. Principal and oxyphilic cells may be distinguished. The (smaller) principal cells vary in their acidophilic properties. **Clear principal cells A3**, rich in glycogen are thought to be inactive, whilst **dark, ergastoplasm rich principal cells A4** are active. The **oxyphilic (Welsh) cells** appear at puberty (proportion about 3%), they are larger than the principal cells and are rich in mitochondria. It is possible that they are different functional states of a single type of cell.

### Islet Cell Organ of the Pancreas

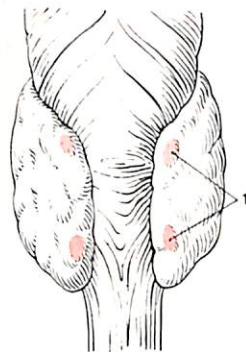
0.5–1.5 million **cellular islets of Langerhans** are distributed throughout the *pancreas*, more in the body and tail than in the head. They consist of endocrine cells and are known as the *islet organ*.

**Islet hormones.** The islets produce at least 2 antagonistic hormones: **Insulin** promotes glycogen synthesis in the liver and thereby lowers the blood sugar level. **Glucagon** leads to glycogenolysis in the liver and so raises the blood sugar level. Hyper- and hypofunction with regard to insulin are known. *Hy-*

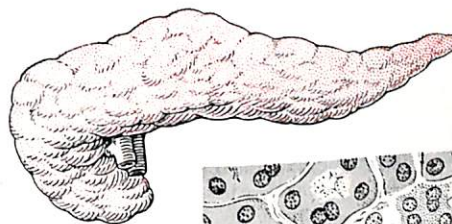
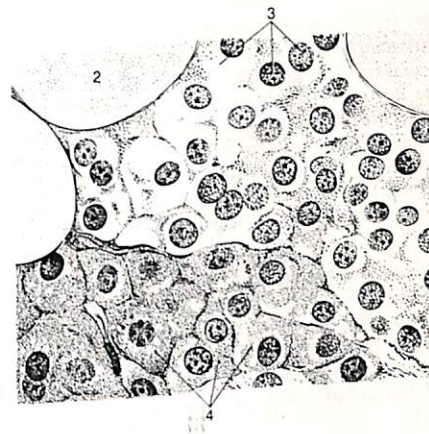
*perfunction*: tendency to hypoglycemia. *Hypofunction* is present in *diabetes mellitus* and is manifested by hyperglycemia, glycosuria and polyuria.

**Fine structure.** Each islet measures 100–500  $\mu\text{m}$ , and consists of an average of some 3000 hormone-producing cells linked as in a network. They are arranged in groups or strands. In places they are connected with exocrine gland cells **B5**, comparable with endocrine cells between the exocrine intestinal epithelia. Using immunohistochemistry and special staining techniques, the following types of cell may be distinguished. **A-cells, B6** (blackened with silver staining), about 20% of all cells, produce glucagon and a gastrin inhibitory polypeptide (GIP). **B-cells, B7** (secretory granules fixed with difficulty, cells appear clear), about 80% of cells, form insulin, which is retained in the granules as a precursor zinc complex. At the same time a  $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid (GABA) synthesizing enzyme, may be demonstrated. **D-cells** (which stain blue with azan) are rare and contain *somatostatin*, which regulates insulin release (inhibitory). In addition D-cells contain  $\beta$ -endorphin. In human diabetics there is a shift in the proportion of A- to B-cells in favor of A-cells; the glucagon-insulin antagonisms is upset in favor of glycogenolysis. Many other peptide hormones may be demonstrated immunohistochemically. Corresponding to its developmental history, in the formation of the association of its exocrine and endocrine parts, the pancreas resembles a greatly compressed collection of modified epithelial cells enriched by B cells.

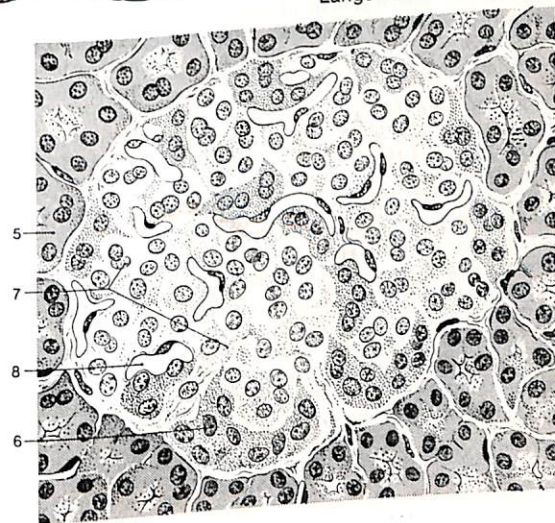
**Vessels and nerves.** The islets are permeated by wide **capillaries B8**. A *microcirculation* exists between the individual islet and the surrounding exocrine tissue through small *insuloacinar portal vessels* (influence, for example of the D-cells on the activity of the exocrine pancreas). *Sympathetic fibers* stimulate the secretion of glucagon and inhibit that of insulin, which is stimulated by the *vagus nerve*. *Serotonergic nerve fibers* inhibit the release of insulin.



A Position of parathyroid glands  
Right: microscopic section through gland



B Pancreas  
Below: microscopic section through one islet of Langerhans





## Gonads as Endocrine Glands

The sex hormones are formed in the gonads (reproductive glands), and to a lesser extent in the adrenal cortex (see pages 160, 162).

## Ovary as an Endocrine Gland

The regulation of endocrine activities is particularly conspicuous in the female sexual (menstrual) cycle. We distinguish the actions of the *hypophysis*, and indirectly the *hypothalamus*, on the ovary. Other actions result from the influence of the *ovary* on the mucosa of the uterus (womb), and so eventually (by retroaction) on the hypothalamus and the hypophysis.

**Ovarian (menstrual) cycle.** For further information on the phases of the menstrual cycle see p. 300. *Releasing factors* of the *hypothalamus* (see p. 153) cause secretion of the gonadotropic hormones of the anterior lobe of the hypophysis **A1**.

*Desquamation-regeneration phase* (Days 1–4). *Hypophysis*: a small rise in LH and FSH at the end of the previous cycle affects the ovary. *Ovary*: the corpus luteum of the previous cycle degenerates and there is a fall in the production of progesterone. The beginning of a rise in estrogen production in the cells of the *theca interna* of the growing follicle **A2** with effect on the mucous membrane.

*Phase of proliferation* (“estrogenic phase”) (Days 5–15). *Hypophysis*: Steady level of LH and at first a small reduction in FSH. Around the 15th day a short-lived peak in LH production and a (smaller) FSH-peak. These hormones act on the ovary. *Ovary*: FSH stimulates the follicle to ripen and LH stimulates the production of **estrogens**. Immediately after the LH peak *ovulation* (follicle rupture) occurs **A3**. *Hormonal feedback*: the rise in estrogen level suppresses the formation of hypophyseal hormones. The estrogens act on the mucous membrane.

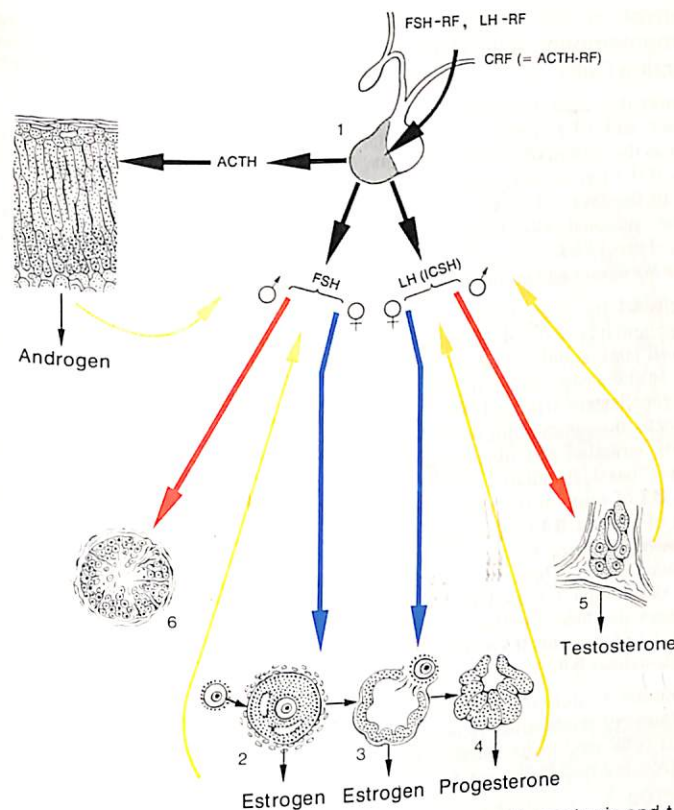
*Secretory phase* (“luteal or gestagenic phase”) (Days 15–28). *Hypophysis*: reduction in the LH and FSH peak until the

28th day, when there is a small rise in LH and FSH release. The hormones act on the ovary. *Ovary*: LH produces the conversion of the empty follicle after ovulation into the *corpus luteum A4*, with simultaneous inhibition of estrogen production, and starts the secretion of **progesterone**, the hormone which is produced by the corpus luteum. At the same time, the ripening and ovulation of other follicles is inhibited. *Hormonal feedback*: the high concentration of progesterone restricts the formation of gonadotropic hormones in the hypophysis. At about the 22nd day, the corpus luteum begins to regress and there is a reduction in the formation of progesterone. (If pregnancy ensues, the trophoblast takes over its production = chorionic gonadotropin, progesterone production remains high and the corpus luteum remains intact = corpus luteum of pregnancy.) Toward the end of the cycle, the low level of progesterone stimulates the production of FSH. The hormones act upon the mucous membranes.

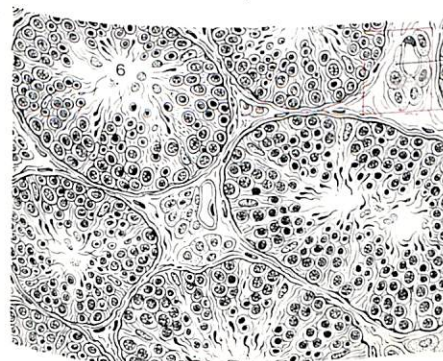
## Testes as Endocrine Glands

*Leydig's interstitial cells ABC5*, the producers of the male sex hormones, **androgens**, are arranged in groups situated around the blood vessels **C7** in loose connective tissue between the convoluted seminiferous tubules (tubuli seminiferi contorti) **AB6**. Small amounts of female hormones are also supposed to be produced. Androgens have a local effect on sperm maturation, as well as a general one in which they promote development of the genitalia and of the secondary sex characteristics. The *interstitial cells* are stimulated by LH and *sperm maturation AB6* by FSH from the hypophysis (see p. 154).

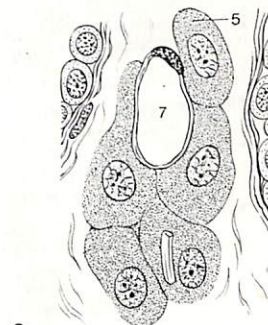
**Inhibin**, which is produced in the granulosa cells of the ovary and Sertoli cells of the testis, when FSH stimulation occurs, inhibits FSH production but not LH production.



A Sex hormones, dependence on hypothalamus and hypophysis and their effects on them (menstrual cycles)



B Section through testis



C Interstitial cells of testis (section from B)



### System of Gastroenteropancreatic (GEP) Endocrine Cells

The endocrine cells of the gastrointestinal tract and islet organ are together known as the system of gastroenteropancreatic (GEP) endocrine cells. They are found in the layer of secretory and absorptive epithelial cells and as representatives of the *APUD*-system they produce *peptide hormones* and *monoamines*.

The cells **A1** are small, oval or pyramidal in shape and have extensive contact with the basal lamina and the adjacent capillaries. In the gastrointestinal tract, their cell organelles are arranged in the opposite way to those in exocrine cells, and the secretory granules of endocrine cells lie basally ("basal granulated cells"). The apices **B2** of some of the cells reach the lumen of the gut **B3** ("open type") and are directly exposed to stimuli from the intestinal lumen whilst others do not reach the lumen ("closed type"). The hormones produced in the cells **B4** in response to a stimulus **B5** secreted basally by exocytosis **B6**.

Distribution **C** and effects of the active substances of endocrine cells. (Long-familiar cells used to be known by their acronyms, but now they are labeled with hormones).

*A cells* form *glucagon* in the islet organ, and they mediate glycogenolysis.

*B cells* form *insulin* in the islet organ, which causes glycogenesis and glucose utilization.

*D cells* form the local inhibitor *somatostatin*.

*D<sub>1</sub> cells* form *vasoactive intestinal polypeptide (VIP)*, which produces dilatation of smooth muscle (vasodilatation, sphincter release of several hormones and inhibits release of gastric acid).

*EC cells*, *enterochromaffin cells*, produce a brown reaction product on fixation with potassium chromate. They produce *serotonin*, which induces contraction of the musculature of the blood vessels and the intestinal wall etc. *Occurrence*: stomach, intestine, pancreas, bronchi.

*ECL cells*, "enterochromaffin-like", resemble *EC*-cells. They produce *histamine*, a hormone which increases the local permeability of capillaries. *Occurrence*: only stomach.

*ENK cells*: *Enkephalins* inhibit the action of somatostatin. *Occurrence*: gastrointestinal tract, particularly the antrum.

*G-cells* produce *gastrin*, which enhances water, electrolyte and enzyme secretion in the stomach, duodenum and pancreas, and inhibits reabsorption of water in the small intestine.

*GRP cells* produce the *gastrin-releasing peptide (bombesin)*, which stimulates the release of gastrin and thereby increases gastric acid secretion. *Occurrence*: stomach, duodenum.

*I cells* produce *cholecystikinin (CCK) (pancreozymin)*. Under the influence of fatty acids, amino acids and low pH in the intestinal lumen it is released from the intestine into the blood; in the stomach it stimulates secretion of gastric acid and peptides, enhances stomach and small intestinal motility. It gives the feeling of satiation.

*K cells*: their hormone, *gastrin-inhibitory peptide (GIP)* acts antagonistically to gastrin (inhibition of hydrochloric acid secretion).

*L cells (EG cells)* are *glucagon* producers (enteroglucagons), like the *A cells* of the islet organs.

*Mo cells*: *motilin* stimulates intestinal motility.

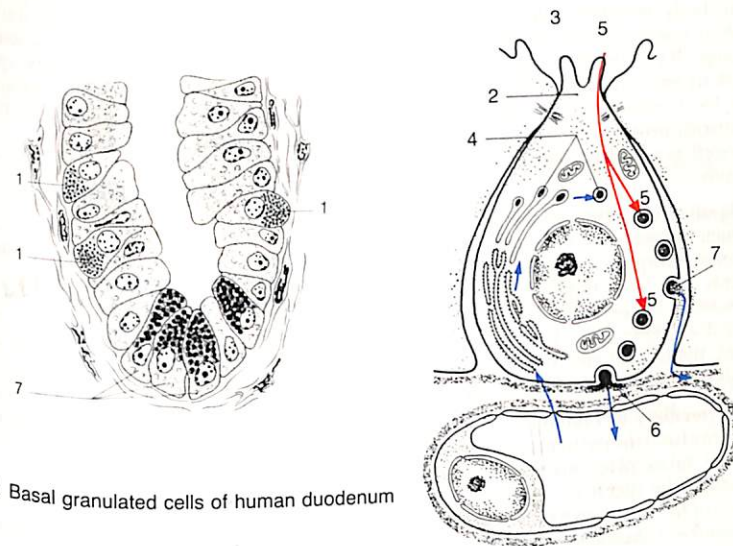
*NT cells*: *neurotensin* produces hyperglycemia on release into the blood after a meal.

*PP cells* produce *pancreatic polypeptide*, the function of which is unclear.

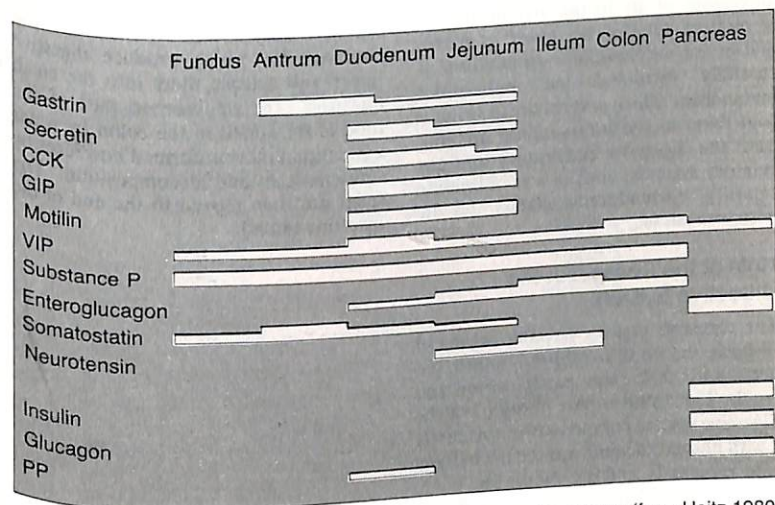
*S-cells* produce *secretin*, which stimulates the release of pepsin and enhances the secretory activity in the intestine, pancreas and gall bladder.

**Endocrine and paracrine secretion.** Many hormones of the gastrointestinal endocrine cells produce their effects via the bloodstream. However, other hormones have such a short half-life in the blood (less than one minute), that a (prolonged) action via the blood stream **B6** is unlikely. A more local action has been hypothesized either in the extracellular space **B7**, on other cells or on nerve-end receptors, or via locally limited vascular systems. This has been called "paracrine" secretion.

B Endocrine cells, open type



A Basal granulated cells of human duodenum



C Distribution of a selection of gastrointestinal endocrine cells, human (from Heitz 1980)



## Digestive System

The body maintains its structures and its functions by a constant *supply of energy*. It continuously exchanges matter with its environment. Energy is supplied by food, which consists mainly of the *nutrients protein, fat and carbohydrates*, as well as vital trace nutrients e.g., vitamins.

**Digestion** comprises all the processes by which nutrients are liberated from food, broken down into their chemical components by the actions of enzymes and absorbed by the body. Digestion is confined to the organs of the digestive system, the foregut and trunk section of the digestive system and their glands.

**Intermediary metabolism.** Liberation of energy from the nutrients or their components takes place mainly by oxidation outside the digestive system, in the tissues of the organs to which nutrients have passed via the blood circulation. These processes are called *intermediate metabolism*, part of which is the "internal respiration", which must be distinguished from the "external respiration", i.e., the movement of air to the alveoli via the respiratory organs. An essential prerequisite for intermediate metabolism is carefully regulated salt and water metabolism. Thus, several organ systems contribute to the intermediate metabolism: the digestive, respiratory and circulatory systems, and, in a coordinating capacity, the endocrine glands and the nervous system.

### Role of the Foregut in the Digestive System

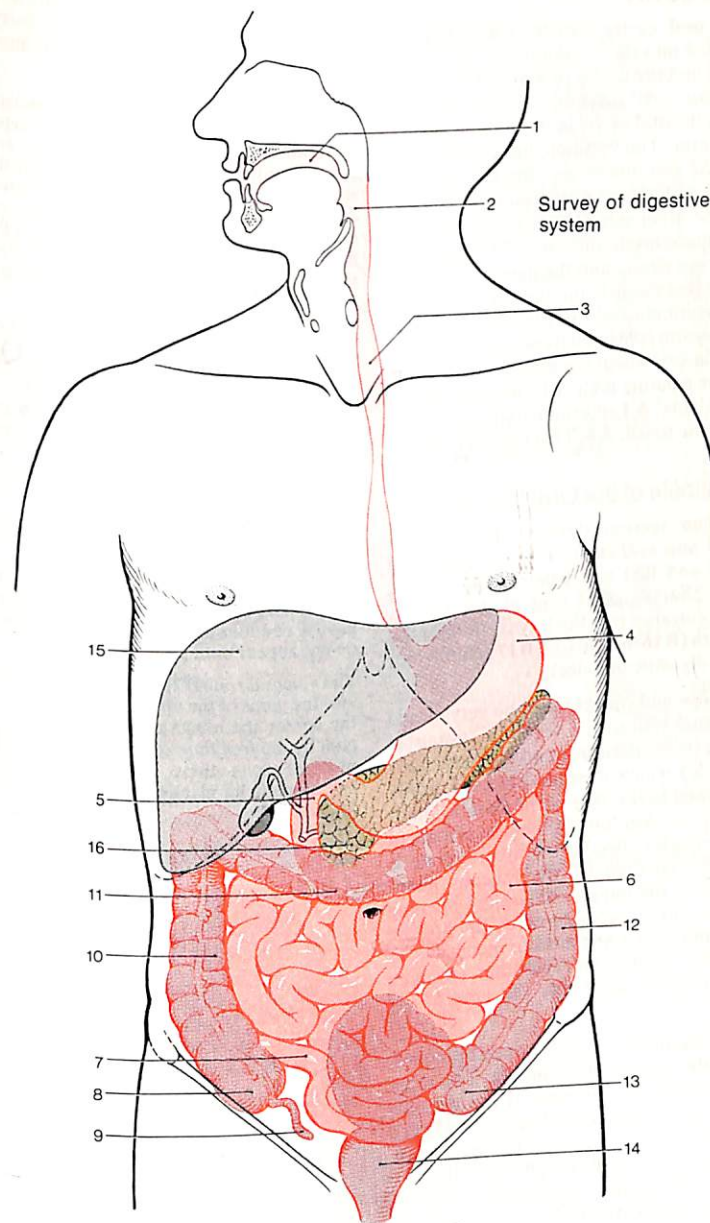
The digestive organs, like the organs of respiration, are situated partly within the head and neck, and partly within the trunk. The anterior part (*foregut*) of the digestive system comprises the oral cavity 1 with numerous small and 3 pairs of large salivary glands, and the middle and lower parts of the pharynx (throat) 2 to the beginning of the esophagus (gullet) 3. In the foregut the food is taken in by means

of the *lips, teeth and tongue*, chewed, lubricated with saliva and swallowed in single bits. The digestion of starch starts within the mouth, e.g., if soaked with saliva, bread tastes sweet. The *taste and olfactory organs* control the chemical composition of food. The *tonsils* serve for defense against infections.

### Trunk Section of the Digestive System

This section comprises the digestive tube (alimentary canal) from the beginning of the esophagus to the end of the gut (anus). It is divided into the *esophagus* 3, *stomach* 4, *small intestine* (duodenum, 5, jejunum 6 and ileum 7), *large intestine* (colon), consisting of the cecum 8, appendix 9, and ascending 10 and transverse 11 and descending 12 colon, the sigmoid colon 13 and the rectum 14.

The esophagus is only a tube for transport. The break-down of nutrients takes place partly within the stomach and is completed in the small intestine, where the separate constituents of the nutrients are absorbed. As in the foregut, there are a large number of small and the two large digestive glands, the *liver* 15 and the *pancreas* 16, which produce digestive juices and release them into the small intestine. The unabsorbed part of the food is thickened in the colon by water extraction and transformed into feces by fermentation and decomposition. The feces are then moved to the end of the intestine (anus).





## Oral Cavity

The **oral cavity** (*cavitas oris*) may be divided into the *vestibulum of the mouth* **AB1** and the cavity proper of the mouth (*cavitas oris propria*), which together form the oral cavity in the widest sense of the term. The vestibule lies between the cheeks and lips on the one side and the teeth and alveolar processes of the jaws on the other side. The true oral cavity is the space inside the rows of teeth. If the jaws are closed and the dentition is complete there is no communication between the vestibule and the true oral cavity. If the mouth is opened its posterior border, the *fauces*, which are formed by the posterior palatine arch **A2**, become visible. **A3** Uvula, **A4** anterior palatine arch, **A5** palatine tonsil, **A6**, **7** frenulum of the lip.

## Vestibule of the Oral Cavity

Median section through the *vestibule* **AB1** and *oral cavity* **B8**. **B9** Lips, **B10** hard and **B11** soft palate, **B12** tongue, **B13** pharynx, **B14** root of the tongue, **B15** entrance into the larynx, floor of the mouth (**B16** mylohyoid, **B17** geniohyoid, **B18** digastric muscles).

The *lips* and *cheeks* form the very elastic external wall of the vestibule, a muscle plate (orbicularis oris and the buccinator muscle) which in some places is firmly attached to the skin of the face. Mimetically, the skin follows the movements of the muscles. Inside, the muscle plate is loosely covered by the mucous membrane of the mouth. Where the opening of the mouth is bordered by the lips the skin of the face and mucous membrane of the oral cavity join each other across an intermediate zone, the red area of the lips.

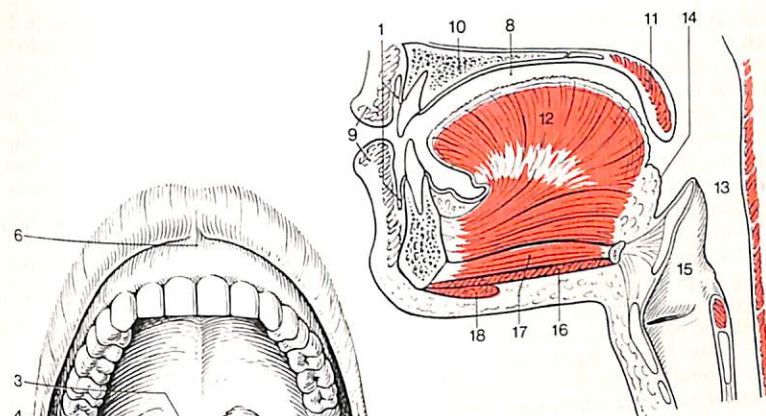
The *lips*, *labia oris*, are connected laterally at the corners of the mouth. The upper lip reaches to the base of the external nose and to the *nasolabial fold* **C19**, and the lower lip to the chin-lip groove (*mentolabial fold*) **C20**, which forms the border with the chin. The *philtrum* **C21** is the groove that extends downward from the

nose over the midline of the lip, and in its extension the upper lip possesses a berry-shaped prominence **C22**, which fits into a groove in the lower lip.

*Skin zone, red area of the lip and mucosal zone*: The *skin zone* of the lip **D23** is covered by epidermis with hairs, sebaceous and sweat glands (see p. 344). Its border with the *red area of the lip* **D24** projects as the *margin of the lip* **D25**, which is formed by the extroverted part **D26** of the sphincter of the mouth, the *orbicularis oris muscle* **D27**. This structure serves to curve the lip inwards and to aid its tight closure.

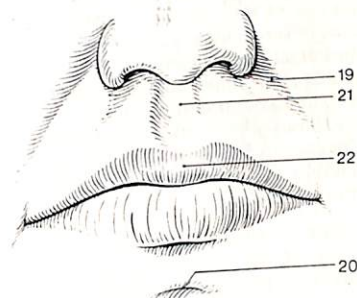
The red area of the lip is not sharply demarcated from the mucosal zone **D28**. In the red area of the lip **D24** cornification and pigmentation of the epithelium diminish and the skin dries easily. The red color of the blood shines through the epithelium because the capillaries of the high papillae of the connective tissue reach near to the surface of the epithelium. A dark discoloration of the blood in  $O_2$  deficiency, cyanosis, is apparent in this red area of the lips. The papillae of the connective tissue secure the interlocking of epithelium and connective tissue. At the border between the red area and the mucosa in 50% of adults are sebaceous glands which do not appear until puberty.

The *mucosal zone* **D28** continues as a pocket into the gums of the upper and lower jaw. In the center the mucosa is connected to the gum by the *frenulum of the lip* **A6**, **7**. In the mucosal zone there are pinhead sized, seromucous lip glands (*glandulae labiales*) **D29**.

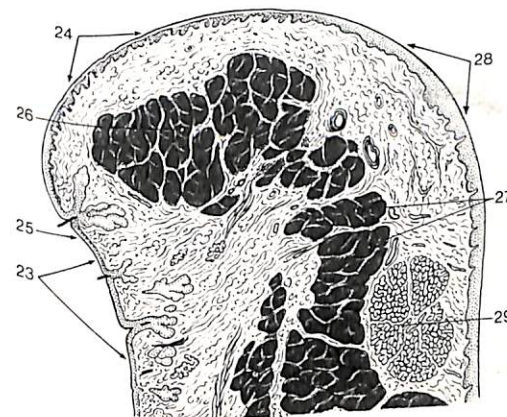
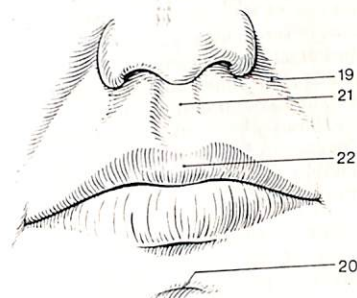


A Oral cavity

B Median sagittal section through oral cavity



C Lips and their grooves



D Sagittal section through lip



**Cheeks (buccae).** The *buccinator muscle* **AB1** forms the muscular basis of the cheek. It extends from the pterygomandibular raphe and the neighboring parts of the upper and lower jaw to the angle of the mouth. The muscle plays a part in sucking and chewing and can be formed into a cheek pouch. Outside the buccinator muscle, at the anterior margin of the masseter muscle, is the *adipose body of the cheek* (Bichat's fat plug). The fat plug helps to stiffen the cheek during suction. At the level of the 2nd upper molar tooth the buccinator muscle and the mucosa are obliquely perforated by the parotid duct the excretory duct of the *parotid gland* **B2** which opens into the vestibule **A3**. At the back, a vertical fold, an extension of the row of teeth, ascends to the soft palate. It is formed by soft tissue in front of the ramus of the mandible (lower jaw) and it can easily be seen and palpated in the open mouth. The mucosa of the cheek is movable. Two rows of seromucous glands of the cheek, the buccal glands, continue the line of the glands of the upper and lower lip laterally. They extend into the muscles. Small sebaceous glands are also present. **A4** Tongue, **A5** palate, **B6** pterygoideus lateralis, **B7** pterygoideus medialis, **B8** orbicularis oris.

**Gums (gingiva).** At the base of the vestibule of the mouth and on its lateral edges (at the cheeks and lips), the oral mucosa is loosely connected with the underlying structures. At the jawbone, the mucosa transforms into the part of the gums that is tightly connected to the bone, the *pars fixa gingivae*. A gingival border, the *pars libera gingivae*, extends beyond the alveolar bone by 1–2 mm. At this gingival border, a distinction is made between the external gingival epithelium (going towards the vestibule) and the internal border epithelium running from the gingival border to the tooth. The *gingival epithelium*, which is multilayered, up to 150  $\mu$ m thick, and often corneal of connective tissue. The thin, uncorneal *border epithelium*, which often

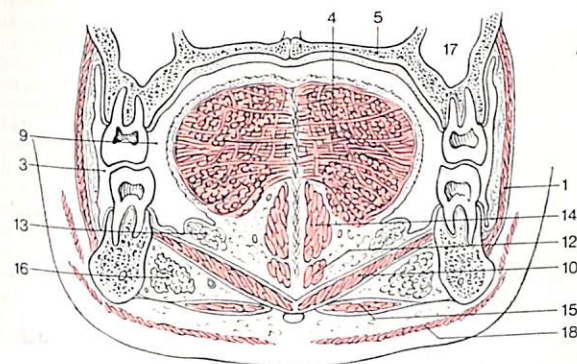
runs to the surface of the tooth in a shallow groove, the *gingival sulcus* (which can be up to 0.5 mm deep in healthy persons), smoothly covers the connective tissue of the periodontium. A distinction is made between a mitotically active *basal layer* (lying on the connective tissue of the gingival border) and a mitotically inactive *suprabasal layer* (lying close to the tooth). Cells that have become too old are discharged into the gingival sulcus.

### Oral Cavity Proper

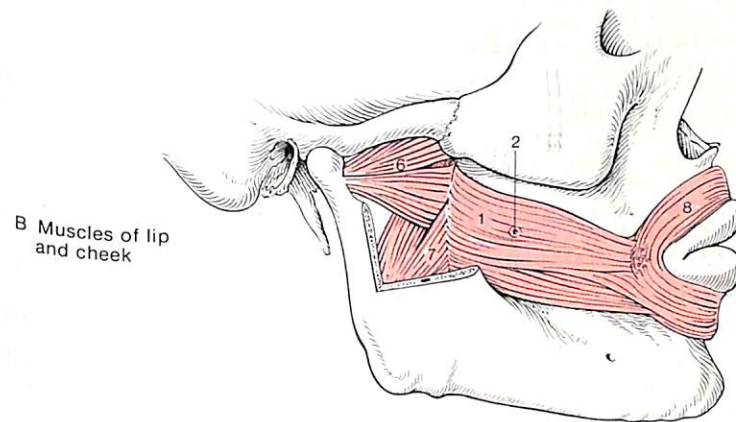
The *oral cavity* in the narrower sense **A9** lies behind the teeth and extends to the *isthmus of the fauces* in the region of the back of the tongue, see p. 176.

The muscular floor of the mouth is formed by the *mylohyoid muscles* **AC10**, which run from the mylohyoid line of the mandible to a medial raphe and to the hyoid bone **C11**. Above the floor of the mouth near the median plane lie the two *geniohyoid muscles* **AC12**. The *sublingual gland* **A13** lies on either side between these muscles and the mandible. The paired *genioglossus muscles* **AC14** arise above the floor of the mouth in the center of the inner side of the mandible. They constitute the bulk of the body of the tongue. The anterior belly of the *digastric muscle* extends below the floor of the mouth on both sides from the region of the lesser horn of the hyoid bone to the digastric fossa of the mandible. On either side the *submandibular gland* **A16** lies between the muscle and the mandible.

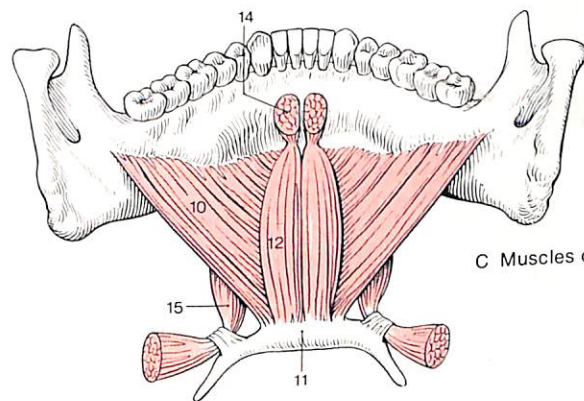
The *roof* of the oral cavity is formed by the hard and soft palate. The cavity is mainly filled by the tongue. **A17** Maxillary sinus, **A18** platysma.



A Frontal section of oral cavity



B Muscles of lip and cheek



C Muscles of floor of mouth



## Teeth

The **teeth** (*dentes*) from an arch which separates the vestibule from the oral cavity proper. Human teeth lie close together without spacing and are individually shaped according to their specialized functions. Chisel shaped incisors are for biting, long canine teeth which are firmly rooted in their anchorage, are for tearing and gripping, the premolars with their broader crowns are for grinding and crushing, while the molars do most of the chewing with the broad grinding surface of their crowns.

The nucleus of the **tooth** is made up of **dentin BD1**. Teeth consist of the following parts: the **crown A2** extends above the gingiva **BD3** and is covered by enamel **BD4**. The **root A5** is anchored in the alveolus of the jaw by connective tissue fibers, the periodontal ligament (*desmodontium*) **BD6**. The root is covered by **cement BD7**. The edge of the enamel meets the cement at the neck of the tooth, **collum A8**. The **root apex (apex radialis dentis) A9** is perforated by the root canal **B10**, which leads into the pulp cavity (*cavitas dentis*) **B11**, filled by the **pulp** of the tooth. The pulp of the crown with its horns is distinguished from the pulp of the root.

The **root canal (canalis radialis dentis)** before closure is a simple, wide tube. It can be subdivided into smaller canaliculi **C12** that perforate the apex of the root like a sieve, "apical ramification" **C13**. This may make root canal treatment very difficult.

**Fine structure.** *Dentin, enamel and cement*, the hard substances of the tooth are very much like bone. Comparative composition of bone, dentin and enamel:

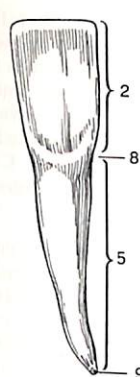
	Inorganic matter	Organic matter	Water
Bone (4 yrs)	48%	25%	27%
Bone (adult)	62%	25%	13%
Dentine	69.3%	17.5%	13.2%
Enamel	96%	1.7%	2.3%

**Dentin BD1** is produced by *odontoblasts* which lie adjacent to the inner surface of the

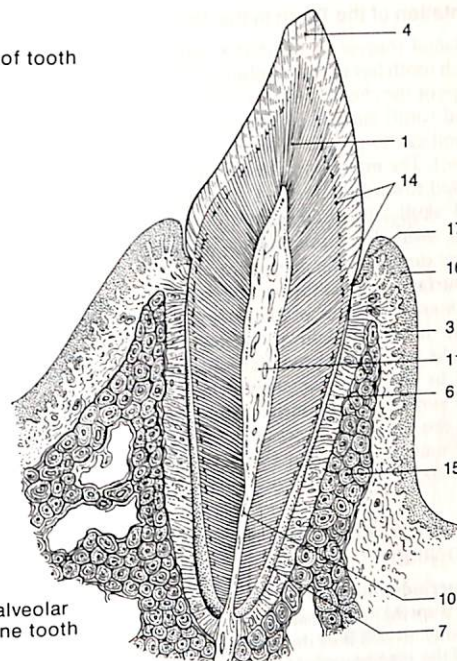
dentin, and their processes (Tomes' fibers) lie in the dentin canaliculi and extend as far as the enamel-dentin or the cement-dentin border. Dentin does not contain any blood vessels. In a section through a tooth near the border with the enamel, there are rhomboidal or serrated *interglobular spaces B14*, areas of deficient calcification of the ground substance. The dentin of the deciduous teeth (milk teeth) is thinner and less resistant than that of the permanent teeth. The **enamel BD4** is the hardest substance in the human body. It consists of small, convoluted, unilaterally furrowed columns, the *enamel prisms*, about 5  $\mu$ m in diameter. They are bound together by a sparsely calcified ground substance. The prisms are mainly arranged radially. The **cement BD7** is a network of bony substance with few cells and with collagen fibers linking it to the dentin and the alveolar wall **B15**, where the fibers of the periodontium (Sharpey's fibers) are anchored. The **pulp of the tooth:** the loose connective tissue of the pulp **B11** contains blood vessels, and myelinated and unmyelinated nerve fibers. New odontoblasts arise from the connective tissue of the pulp and they are responsible for the formation of *secondary dentin* later in life.

The **gums, gingiva D**, which join the bone on the oral side, extend beyond the alveolar border as "free gingiva." On the oral side, the gums are covered by the oral gingival epithelium **BD16**. The dental side of the epithelium, the *border epithelium BD17*, lies on the tooth's enamel-dentin border, and covers the *gingival sulcus D22*. **D18** dental cuticle, **D19** internal basal membrane, **D20** external basal membrane of the border epithelium, **D21** noncellular non-fibrillary cement, **D23** oral sulcus epithelium.

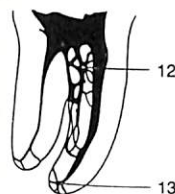
A Parts of tooth



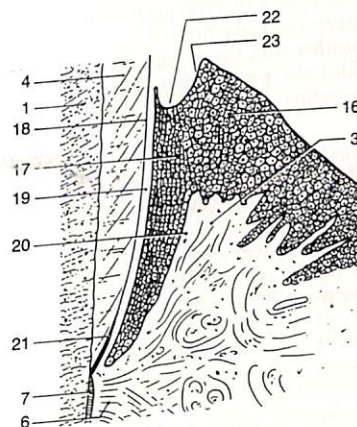
B Section through alveolar process with canine tooth (lower jaw)



C Variability of root canals (after Keller)



D Gums





### Orientation of the Teeth in the Jaw

The *labial* (buccal or vestibular) surface of each tooth lies at the vestibule (i. e., at the lips or the cheek), and the *lingual* and *palatal* (oral) surface is directed toward the oral cavity proper (i. e., toward the tongue). The *mesial* (proximal) surface is directed toward the median plane of the facial skull, its *distal* (lateral) surface points away from this plane; both are contact surfaces. The masticatory (chewing) surface is called the *occlusal surface*. The *mesial* surfaces of the incisor and canine teeth are known as the *facies medialis* and of the premolar and molar teeth as the *facies anterior*, whilst the *distal* surfaces of the incisor and canine teeth are called the *facies lateralis* and of the premolar and molar teeth the *facies posterior*.

### Structures Supporting the Teeth in Position

The **periodontium** (*desmodontium*) provides a springy suspension of the teeth in the bony alveoli **B** of the alveolar processes of the jaw, *gomphosis*. The periodontium, consists mainly of collagenous fibers (Sharpey's fibers), which extend between the periosteum of the alveolar wall **DE1** and the cement **DE2** to which they are attached. The periodontal membrane and the alveolar wall, form the structures which keep the teeth firmly in position and, together with the cement, they are also called the **parodontium**. They develop together during eruption of the teeth.

The course of the fibers in the periodontium **DE3**. Some of the fibrous ligaments radiate in a fan shape as *gingival ligaments* from the cement above the alveolar opening to the papillary bodies of the gingiva. Others run as *dentoalveolar ligaments* between the alveolar wall **DE1** and the root of the tooth, in various directions. Most run steeply downwards from the alveolar wall to the apex of the root, and are therefore subject strain from axial chewing pressures. Towards the alveolar edge, the course of the fibers

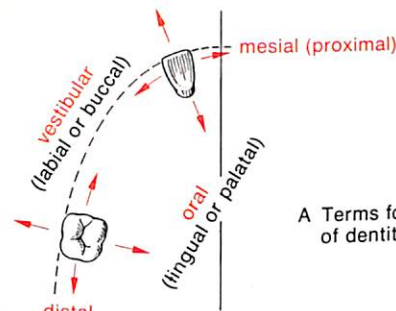
becomes more horizontal, and fibers that run from the alveolar edge up to the neck of the tooth come under strain when the tooth is pulled. The fibers travel in a more tangential than radial direction towards the tooth. Every mechanical influence produces resistance in the tooth, cf. **C**. In the interdental region, finally, *interdental fibers* connect neighboring teeth.

The separate functions of different parts of the masticatory system are reflected in the development and arrangement of the collagenous fibers of the periodontal membrane. Muscles producing vertical and central stress affect the fibers running down to the apex, and muscles producing horizontal stress effects affect the fibers that run horizontally. The bone responds to normal mastication by forming correspondingly directed spongy trabeculae, but to a misdirected mastication it responds by atrophy.

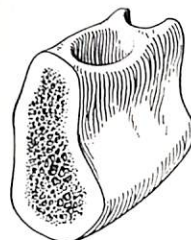
**Clinical Tip.** Abnormalities in masticatory movements result in faulty anchorage of a tooth. Excessive horizontal load on a tooth, for instance, leads to excessive pressure on the bottom of the alveolus on the loaded side and to pressure on the rim of the alveolus on the opposite side (tilting movement). Degeneration of the alveolar bone and loosening of the anchorage of the tooth may follow.

The periodontal membrane contains glomerular blood vessels, which act as hydraulic cushioning thought to curb axial masticatory pressure. Its pulsation is transmitted to the tooth. The periodontal membrane is supplied by tactile nerves (*pressure sensation*) and contains lymph vessels. The lymph flow is directed toward the tongue and cheeks into regional submandibular lymph nodes (from the maxilla via the lymph vessels of the cheek).

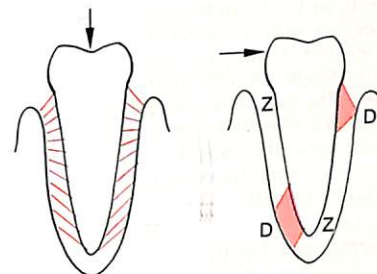
**DE4 Dentin, D5 pulp cavity.**



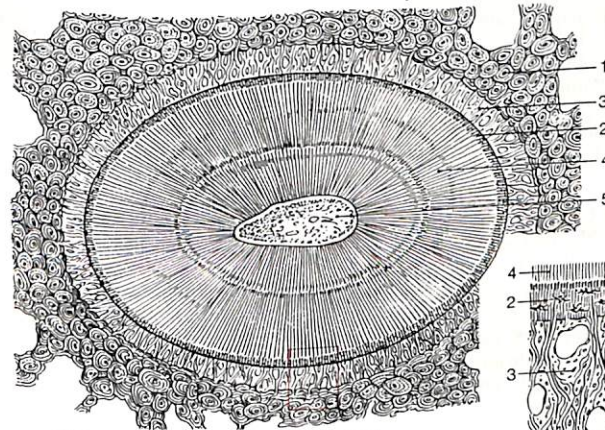
A Terms for position and direction of dentition



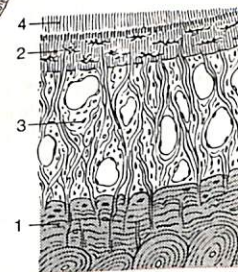
B Alveolar process from mandible



C Stresses on fibers of periodontal membrane: (left) vertical and (right) horizontal stress on tooth  
D = pressure, Z = traction  
(after Schröder)



D Horizontal section through root of incisor and supporting structures



E Periodontal membrane, section from D



**Dental arch.** The teeth in the upper and lower jaw each form a dental arch. The arch of the *upper jaw* (maxilla) is shaped like an *ellipse* and that of the *lower jaw* (mandible) like a *parabola*. Therefore, the teeth do not meet each other exactly. Their position corresponds to the different tasks of incisors, canines, premolars and molars. The incisors are also called *front teeth* and the premolars and molars *lateral (side) teeth*.

**Dental alveoli.** The teeth are fixed in the alveoli of the alveolar process (see p. 182) which, as the tooth-bearing part of the bone, sits on the surface of the upper and lower jaws. It atrophies after loss of the teeth (senile jaw with shortening of the face). The osseous alveoli are separated from each other by wedge-shaped *interalveolar septa B1*. In teeth with multiple roots the alveoli are subdivided by interradicular septa *B2*.

### Permanent Teeth

The **incisors CD3, 4** are for biting, they have a chisel shaped crown with a sharp horizontal *cutting edge*.

Through wear, because of their biting position, the upper incisors are ground down posteriorly, and the lower teeth anteriorly. On the oral surface is a tubercle (*tuberculum dentis*). The lateral surfaces of the crown are almost triangular. The root of an incisor is long, conical and slightly flattened at the side. The upper incisors **CD3** are broader than the lower ones **CD4**.

The **canine teeth CD5, 6** do the tearing and gripping. As the longest teeth they are secured against tilting by a long root, particularly the maxillary canines, embedded in the canine pillar of the facial skeleton. The crown has two cutting edges converging at an acute angle (*chewing point*). The root is single, strong, long and laterally flattened.

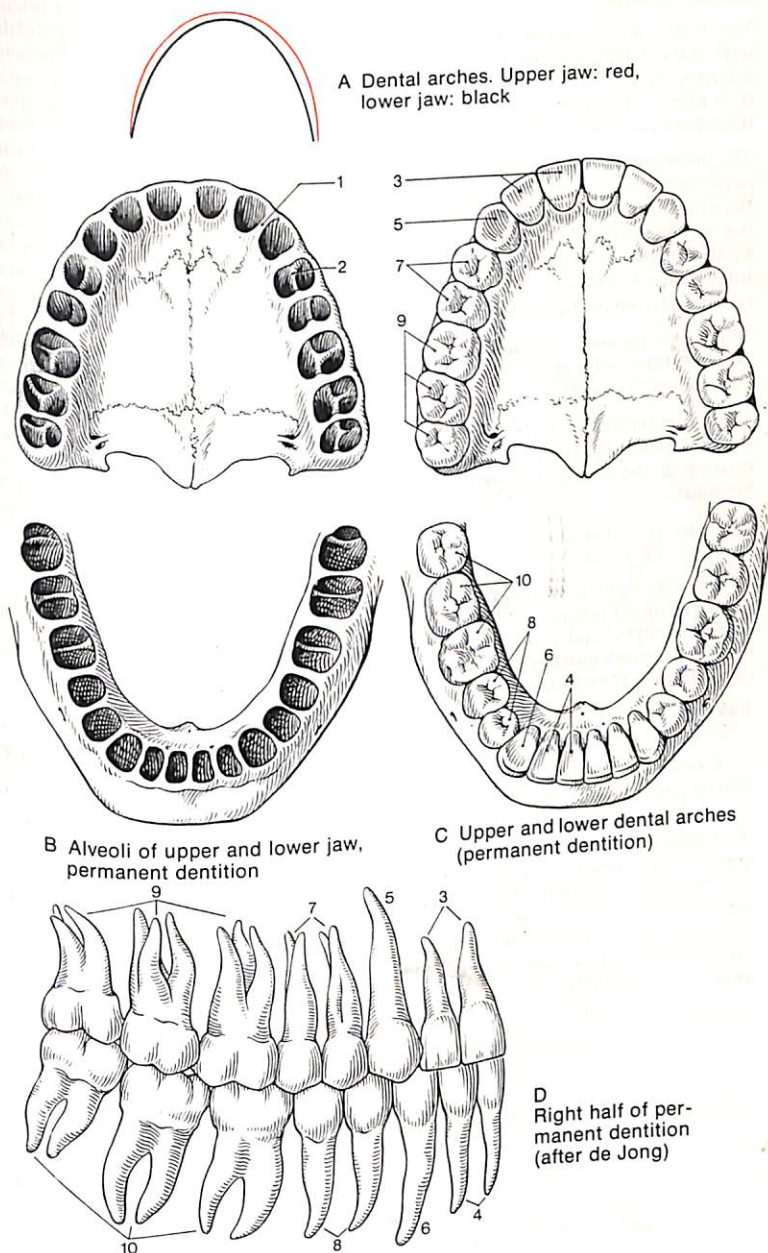
The **premolars CD7, 8** carry out chewing movements. They have a *masticatory (occlusal) surface* and a crown with two tubercles. The root is longitudinally fur-

rowed at its proximal surface and in the upper premolars often split into a vestibular and oral root. Where there is no such division there are still 2 root canals. The root of the lower premolars is undivided, see also **B**.

The **molars CD9, 10** perform the bulk of chewing (mastication). They lie in or near the direction of the masticatory muscles, which results in a strong chewing pressure, cushioned by the division of the roots and enlargement of the supporting structures. The *masticatory (occlusal) surface* of a molar has 4 tubercles. They are so arranged that when the teeth are occluded the tubercles of the upper molars fit into the grooves between the tubercles of the lower molars and vice versa. The first molar has the largest grinding surface. The upper molars have 2 vestibular roots and 1 oral root, the lower molars have one mesial (anterior) and one distal (posterior) root. The third molars (wisdom teeth) vary considerably in development of their crown and root.

### Milk Teeth

The **deciduous (milk) teeth** are bluish-white and translucent like porcelain. With the exception of the first molars they resemble the permanent teeth. The divergent course of the roots of the milk molars is of practical importance, since the permanent tooth germs develop between their roots.





## Dental Formula

The dentition is composed of 4 groups of teeth in the 2 dental arches, arranged like a mirror-image on each side of the median plane. They face each other in the masticatory (occlusal) plane.

The **permanent teeth** on both sides in the upper and lower jaw from the middle to the distal end of the row have the following arrangement: 2 incisors, 1 canine tooth, 2 premolars and 3 molars, i. e., a total of  $4 \times 8 = 32$  teeth. The teeth are numbered from medial to distal, see A.

With the passage of time, different methods have been used to characterise each individual tooth.

1. Characterization of the medial and occlusal planes by lines may indicate the quarter of the dentition to which each belongs.

Example:  $\frac{1}{3}$  = left upper 1  
               $\frac{3}{1}$  = right lower 3

2. Another method uses + for the middle of the upper jaw and - for the middle of the lower jaw, and puts the sign before or after the tooth number in each quarter of the jaw to characterize the position.

Example: + 1 = left upper 1  
              3- = right lower 3

3. A new method of showing tooth position on paper is to use the first number to indicate the quarter of the dentition (in the remaining jaw, right upper = 1, left upper = 2, left lower = 3, right lower = 4) and the second digit in the number to indicate the number of the tooth (from mesial to distal). In the milk dentition, the quadrants of the bite, taken in the same order use digits 5-8.

Example: 21 = left upper 1  
              43 = right lower 3

## Position of the Teeth Within the Dentition

**Neutral bite (scissors bite).** Normally (in **orthognathism**) the crowns of the upper teeth are slightly oblique toward the ves-

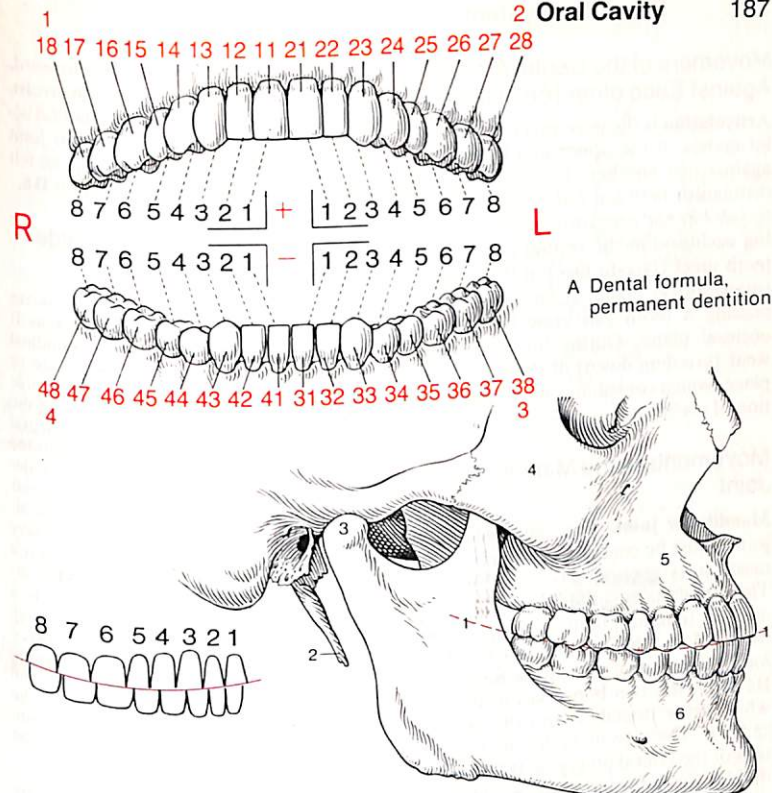
tibule and those of the lower teeth toward the tongue. Thus, the cutting edges of the upper and lower front teeth (incisors) bypass each other like the blades of a pair of scissors, so that the edges of the upper incisors lie in front of those of the lower jaw when the teeth occlude, see C. In the premolars and molars the outer chewing edge of the upper teeth overhangs that of the lower teeth, while the inner chewing edge of the lower teeth extends beyond that of the upper teeth, see D. The corresponding teeth of the upper and lower jaw are so displaced on each other, that each tooth articulates with two opposing teeth, with the principal antagonist (over a large contact area) and with an adjacent secondary antagonist, see B. Only the first lower incisor and the third upper molar have a single antagonist. The **occlusal plane** in the final biting position usually forms a slightly upward facing concave curve on each side - see curve of **Spee**, see B1.

**Edge to edge bite (forceps bite).** In rare cases (racial peculiarity) the cutting edge of the upper front teeth is not in front but lies on top of the edges of the lower teeth; the bite resembles that of a forceps. Such an edge-to-edge bite may also be pathological.

**Dysgnathism** (anomaly of the position of teeth and jaw) is due to faulty development of the chewing apparatus, i. e., all the organs and tissues involved in chewing may be affected by faulty development: teeth, periodontium, maxilla, mandible, joints of the jaws, masticatory muscles, mimetic muscles, tongue. In **prognathism (distal bite)** the upper jaw is displaced anteriorly. In **prognathism** (anterior displacement of the lower jaw) the chin is unusually prominent and there is a reversed front tooth overbite. It is usually an inherited abnormality and may be visible even during the milk dentition. Complete antero-occlusion (**overbite**) is usually also an inherited abnormality, in which the upper front teeth completely cover the lower ones in the final bite (**recession of the lower jaw, deep bite**). If the abnormality of the bite is very marked, swallowing, nasal breathing and speech may be affected.

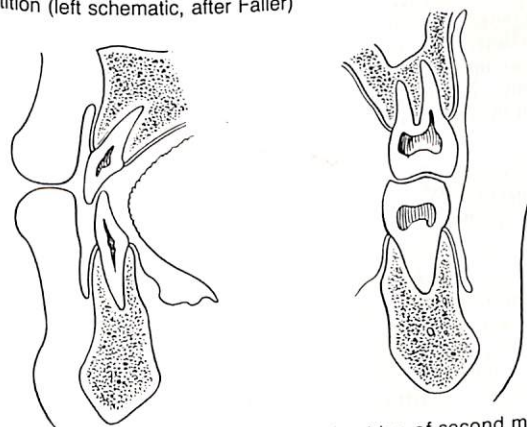
**B2** Styloid process, **B3** condyle of the mandible, **B4** zygomatic bone, **B5** maxilla, **B6** mandible.

## 2 Oral Cavity



A Dental formula, permanent dentition

B Biting position in orthognathism, right half of permanent dentition (left schematic, after Faller)



C Position of middle incisors (antagonists) in orthognathism (orthognathic dentition)

D Position of second molars (antagonists) in orthognathism



### Movement of the Dental Arches Against Each other (Articulation)

**Articulation** is the movement of the dental arches of the upper and lower jaws against one another. It is important to distinguish between *full occlusion*, *side-to-side bite* and *protrusive occlusion*. During occlusion in the resting position the teeth meet (face-to-face) in the occlusal (masticatory) plane. If an antagonist is missing a tooth can grow beyond the occlusal plane. During life physiologic wear (grinding down) of the teeth takes place, which contributes to the preservation of occlusion.

### Movements in the Mandibular Joint

**Mandibular joint.** The two mandibular joints must be considered as parts of the masticatory apparatus (see also Vol. I). The mandible (mandibular condyle **B1**) and the temporal bone (the mandibular fossa **B2** and the articular tubercle **B3** – joint socket) take part in its formation. Between the two bones lies a disk **B4**, which grows together with the articular capsule. The capsule is the site of insertion of the lateral pterygoid **B5**. The disk divides the joint into two, usually completely separate, chambers. In the median plane, the transverse axes of the two condyles form an angle of 150–160° which is open anteriorly. The articular capsule is wide and is reinforced by strong ligaments. It permits extensive movements during which the disk changes its position.

If the mouth is *passively open* (in sleep or after death) a rotating (hinge) movement takes place "in situ," the axis is not displaced.

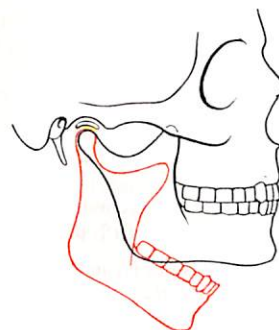
During *active opening of the mouth* (chewing, talking) an essentially rotatory (hinge) movement takes place in the lower chamber and a sliding movement in the upper chamber; the condyle moves forward on the articular tubercle **BD3**.

Thus the *axis of the hinge moves forward*. Grinding movements of the teeth involve alternating, predominantly unilateral active movements in the mandibular joint **E**. Movements of the condyle can be felt by the finger in the external meatus **D6**.

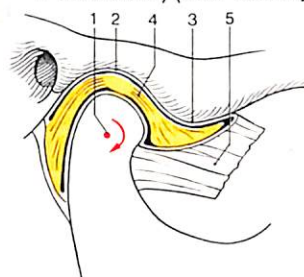
### Movements of the Tooth Inside the Alveolus

During the act of chewing the tooth moves slightly in various ways inside the alveolus. It is pressed into the alveolus in its longitudinal axis and is tilted against the vestibule or against the oral cavity around a transverse axis, which lies roughly in the center of the root and runs in the direction of the dental arch. Thus, the tooth acts as a two-armed lever and pressure and traction zones develop between the tooth and the alveolar wall. The tissue at the entrance of the alveolus may be exposed to very heavy pressure by the lever. In addition there is a slight lateral tilting movement, which is increased if the adjacent tooth is absent. In a full row of teeth each tooth is supported by its adjacent tooth via contact points. Loss of these contact points if a tooth is missing causes increased mobility of the tooth and damages the tissue at the entrance to the alveolus. Finally, even under normal conditions, a minimal rotatory movement can develop around the longitudinal axis.

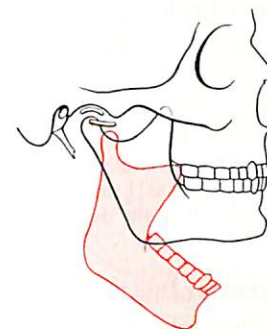
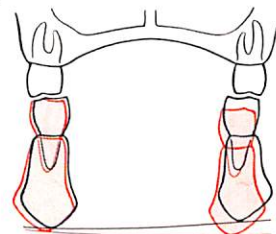
For anatomical reasons human teeth have the greatest resistance against axial masticatory pressure. If, because of deficient articulation (e.g., due to loss of teeth), unphysiologically strong horizontal pressures arise, the periodontium may be damaged and the dentition is at risk.



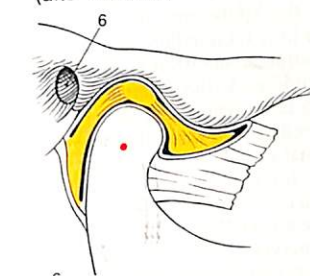
A Passive opening of mouth (in sleep, after death) (after Töndury)



B Mandibular joint in passive opening of mouth. Top: closed, bottom: opened



C Active opening of mouth (after Töndury)



D Mandibular joint in active opening of mouth. Top: closed, bottom: opened (after Braus)

E Grinding movement (oblique movement of lower against upper jaw; after Strasser)



## Milk Teeth (Deciduous Teeth)

In each quarter of the **deciduous dentition** there are 2 incisors, 1 canine and 2 milk molars, altogether 20 teeth **A**. For the deciduous dentition Roman numerals were often used **BC**. The "left upper 1" tooth of the milk dentition could therefore also be written as **I** or + I. Recently, the quadrants of the dentition have been numbered 5-8.

## Development of the Teeth 1

The deciduous and permanent teeth develop in two phases. In the 2nd fetal month the arched dental lamina grows from the epithelium of the upper and lower jaws **E1** into the connective tissue. From this lamina 10 epithelial tooth buds are produced, the **enamel organs D2**, which later assume the shape of a bell. The bell has two walls: the inner wall, the **internal enamel epithelium D3**, is like a mold for the shape of the subsequent crown of the tooth. The pulp **D4**, embryonic connective tissue with blood vessels and nerves, grows into this mold. The enamel bell and the pulp are surrounded by connective tissue which contains many cells, the **tooth follicle**. The first hard substances are formed in the fourth month. Dentin and cement are formed from the cells of the pulp, the internal enamel epithelium produces the enamel. These processes go on in almost the same fashion in both dentitions, but they take longer in the permanent dentition (cf. Development of the Teeth 2, p. 192). The anlagen of the permanent teeth develop in the 6th intrauterine month. They can be damaged in early life, e.g., during forceful extraction of milk teeth. **E5** Meckel's cartilage, **E6** tongue, **D7** epithelium of the oral cavity.

## Eruption of the Teeth 1

Shortly before eruption of a tooth the crown is fully developed, while the root is still growing. It is elongation of the latter that causes the tooth to erupt. The site of the gum where a tooth is going to erupt

becomes at first rather swollen and discolored bluish-red. Later, the white apex of the tooth appears beneath the epithelium which it soon perforates and the tissue over the crown degenerates.

Development of the tissues of the bony alveolar wall, the periodontal membrane and of the cement ends largely only after eruption of the second dentition (cf. Eruption of the Teeth 2, p. 192).

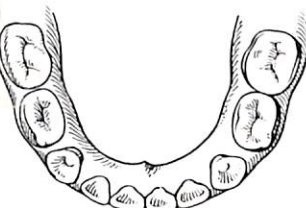
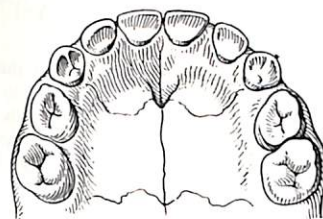
**1st dentition.** The order and time of eruption of the milk teeth are

Eruption of the teeth	Order
I 6th-8th month	1
II 8th-12th month	2
III 15th-20th month	4
IV 12th-16th month	3
V 20th-40th month	5

**2nd dentition.** The two milk molars are eventually joined by 3 further molars of the permanent dentition which do not erupt at the same time as the other teeth of that group. The incisors, canines and the "milk molars" are replaced by teeth of the 2nd dentition, see **E**.  
Order and time of eruption of the permanent teeth:

Eruption of the teeth	Order
1 6th-9th year	2
2 7th-10th year	3
3 9th-14th year	5
4 9th-13th year	4
5 11th-14th year	6
6 6th-8th year	1
7 10th-14th year	7
8 16th-30th year	8

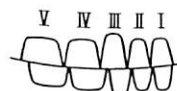
The times of eruption can vary considerably. During eruption of a permanent tooth the root of the milk tooth is absorbed, until eventually only the crown of the milk tooth still remains connected to the gum and it can then easily be removed.



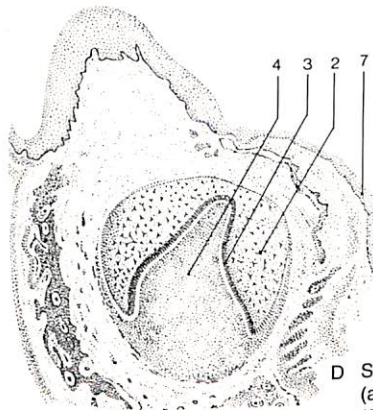
A Row of milk teeth in upper and lower jaw

V N III II I + I II III IV V  
V N III II I - I II III IV V

B Schematic representation of teeth in milk dentition



C Arrangement of the right half of the bite in the milk dentition



D Section through tooth anlage (after Rauber-Kopsch) (Section from E)



5 years



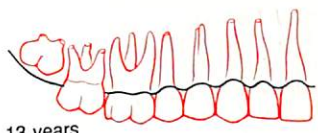
8 years



9 years

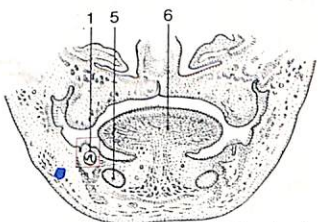


11 years



13 years

F Eruption of permanent teeth (2nd dentition) (after Korkhaus)



E Dental anlage (dental lamina): frontal section, 3 months fetus



## Development of the Teeth 2

Formation of the hard substances begins with the appearance of dentin at the end of the embryo's fourth month (cf. Development of the Teeth 1, p. 190). It is induced by the internal enamel epithelium, the cells of which have previously transformed into preameloblasts under inducement from the prospective odontoblasts.

**Dentin formation** begins with the creation of argyrophil fibers (*Korff fibers*) between the early odontoblasts, arising from the tropocollagen they secrete. These fibers are connected to the fibers of the dental papilla. Between these fibers, the now mature, ca 50 µm long *odontoblasts AF1* secrete *dentin matrix* (glycoproteins and glycosaminoglycans) which, together with the fibers, forms the *predentin A2* (the uncalcified precursor of dentin). As the density of the predentin increases, the odontoblasts emit an increasing number of radial processes, which produce short lateral extensions. These are walled in by the predentin, and radial dentin canaliculi *A3* arise, within which the odontoblast processes lie as *Tomes fibers*. The materials for producing predentin are transported to the odontoblasts via capillaries *A4* and secreted by them after being transformed into granules. A–F5 Dentin.

**Enamel formation** commences soon after the start of dentin formation. Basically beginning the formation of the enamel dome, the cells of the inner enamel epithelium mature into *ameloblasts A6*, which can no longer undergo mitosis — cells up to 70 µm tall with all the signs of protein formation and secretion. A long process is directed towards the odontoblasts and, with increasing enamel formation, becomes a *Tomes process*. Capillaries from the dental sac penetrate between the external enamel epithelia into the convexity of the enamel organ. Initially, each ameloblast secretes in granule form the components of the *enamel matrix* (proteins, glycoproteins and glycosaminoglycans), into which calcium and phosphates are deposited via the

ameloblasts' *Tomes processes*. A–F7 *enamel*.

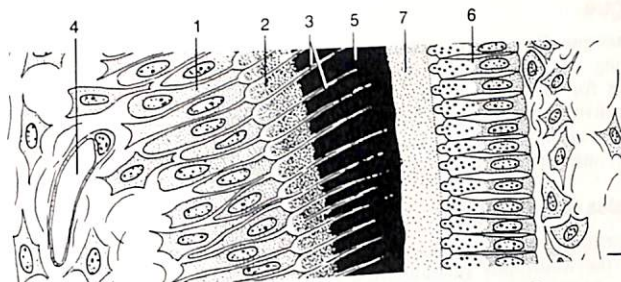
When enamel formation is complete, the *Tomes processes* disappear. The ameloblasts become inferior absorbent cells, which remove the remnants of the enamel matrix. In the fully differentiated tooth, they appear as *border cells DE8*.

The **root of the tooth** and the **cementum** arise later than the crown of the tooth, and their formation continues even into the period of the eruption of the teeth. The root dentin develops, like the dentin of the crown, in an epithelial "cast": after formation of the crown, the enveloping border from the internal to the external enamel epithelium begins to grow downwards as *Hertwig's sheath BCF9*, forming conical tubes corresponding to the appropriate number of roots. New odontoblasts are deposited on these from within, lengthening the dentin. The enamel epithelia then die off here.

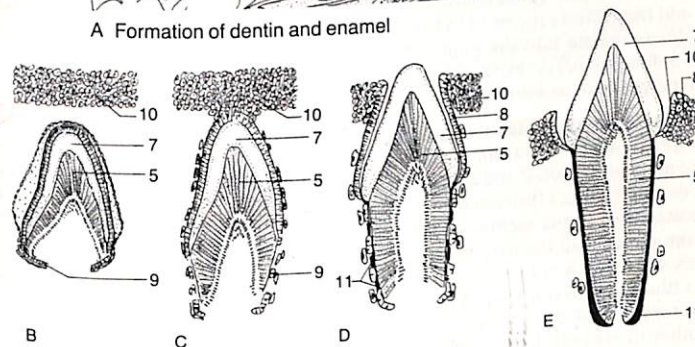
## Eruption of the Teeth 2

Eruption of the teeth is preceded by the *degeneration of the enamel organ*, the remnants of which are incorporated into the formation of the *border epithelium DE8*. The extension of the root leads to the eruption of the tooth. The tissue lying over the crown (enamel epithelium, connective tissue, epithelia of the oral cavity *B–F10*) partly die away during this process. The *cementum DEF11* and *alveolar wall F12*, including the root surface, together called the *parodontium*, mostly arise after the tooth has erupted.

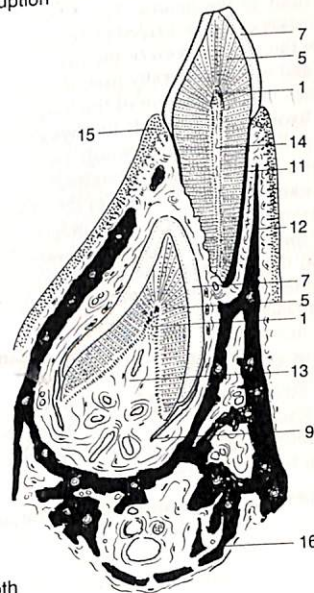
Up to about the sixth intrauterine month, the anlage of the *secondary tooth F13* lies together with that of the *deciduous tooth* as a tooth bud within a common alveolus. An alveolus for the secondary tooth then arises which is separate from that belonging to the milk tooth. Later (as in *F*), the osseous wall separating them is dismantled by osteoclasts, beginning the process of resorption of the root of the milk tooth. *F15* gingiva, *F16* mandible with mandibular canal. Finally, the ameloblasts produce an enamel surface film, the *dental cuticle*.



A Formation of dentin and enamel



B–E Stages of dental development and eruption



F Milk tooth and secondary tooth



## Tongue

The **tongue** (*lingua*), is instrumental in chewing and sucking and carries sense organs for taste and touch, as well as being involved in speech production. Its major regions are the *root*, *dorsum* (back) and the *apex* (tip).

## Muscles of the Tongue

The *extrinsic muscles of the tongue* arise from the lower jaw (mandible), hyoid bone and the styloid process of the skull. Their fibers radiate into the tongue and form a 3-dimensional network in its body, which merges into the *intrinsic muscles*.

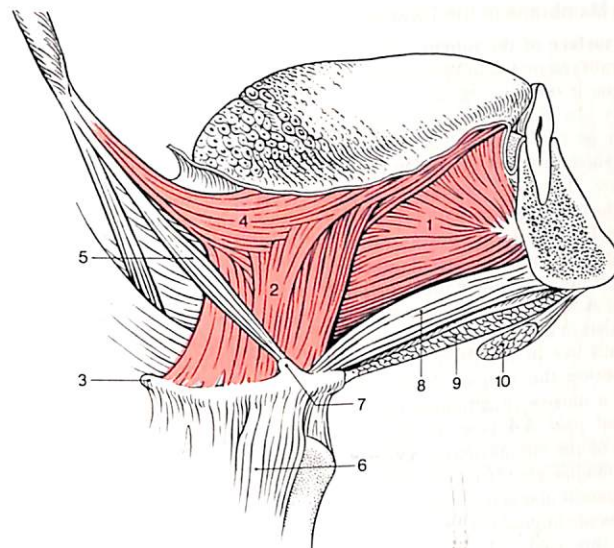
The **extrinsic muscles of the tongue**. The *genioglossus* **AB1**, the strongest of the tongue muscles, is paired and arises from the center of the inner (proximal) surface of the mandible (*spina mentalis*). It fans out from the apex of the tongue through its body and extends as far as the root. Its lowest fibers, which run toward the base of the tongue pull the tongue forward. The other fibers pull the tongue toward the floor of the mouth. The *hyoglossus* **A2** arises as a thin 4-sided plate (*lamina*) from the greater horn of the hyoid bone **A3** and reaches laterally from the *genioglossus* into the margin of the tongue. If the hyoid bone is fixed, the *hyoglossus* can pull the tongue backward. The *styloglossus* **A4** arises from the styloid process and extends along the side of the tongue anteriorly to its apex. This muscle can pull the tip of the tongue backward and move the whole tongue upward and toward the back. The muscles arising from the mandible and hyoid bone can transmit movements of these parts to the tongue (see Vol. 1).

**A5** Stylohyoideus, **A6** thyrohyoideus, **A7** lesser horn of the hyoid bone, **A8** geniohyoid, **AB9** mylohyoid, **AB10** anterior belly of digastric muscle.

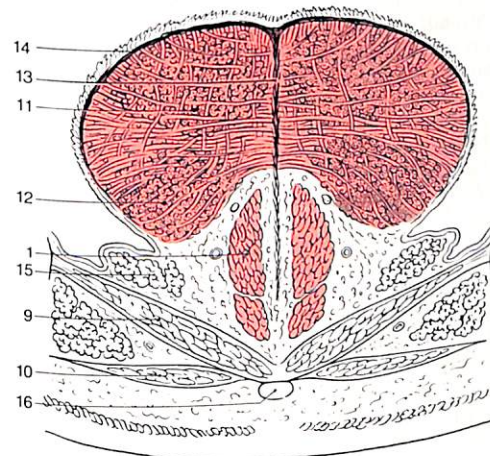
The **intrinsic (inner) muscles of the tongue** consist of the following muscle tracts on each side: the *longitudinales superior* **B11** and *inferior* **B12** *linguae* run as discrete fascicles from the apex to the root,

one close to the back of the tongue and other close to the floor of the mouth. The *transversus linguae* consists of a well developed system of diagonal fibers. They radiate partly into the septum **B13**, partly into the dorsal aponeurosis **B14** and into the lateral margin of the tongue. A few fibers also cross the septum completely. The *verticalis* muscle consists of fiber bundles running in the free part of the tongue from the upper to the lower surface of the tongue. **B15** Sublingual gland. **B16** Section through the body of the hyoid bone.

The main task of the *intrinsic muscles* is to change the shape of the body of the tongue. Usually one of the 3 muscles acts as antagonist to the other 2, contraction of the latter enforcing relaxation of the antagonist: thus, if the transversus and the verticalis contract, the longitudinalis relaxes and the tongue becomes slim and long; if the longitudinalis and transversus contract the verticalis relaxes and the tongue becomes short and thick; and, if the longitudinalis and verticalis contract the transverse fibers relax and the tongue is shortened, flattened and broadened. If, in a case of paralysis of half of the tongue (*hypoglossal paresis*), the tongue is protruded, then the transverse and vertical muscles of the healthy side push the ipsilateral longitudinalis muscle forward. Since the longitudinalis muscle of the contralateral, paralyzed side cannot be protruded similarly and does not offer any resistance, the healthy side is turned toward the diseased side, the apex of the tongue deviates toward the paralyzed side.



A Muscles of tongue



B Transverse section through muscles of tongue



### Mucous Membrane of the Tongue

**Inferior surface of the tongue.** The mucous membrane on the inferior surface of the tongue is only loosely connected to the body. In the center it forms the *frenulum of the tongue* **A1**, a narrow ribbon, which runs toward the gum of the lower jaw. The well developed *apical veins of the tongue* **A2** on both sides of the frenulum have a bluish appearance and shine through the transparent mucosa. More laterally is a fringed fold, the *plica fimbriata* **A3**, a rudiment of a sublingua which exists in some animals. The sublingual gland lies in the floor of the oral cavity beside the tongue. It is hidden beneath a narrow longitudinal fold, the *sublingual fold* **A4** (see p. 200). The opening of the submaxillary duct of the large sublingual gland (and usually also of the submandibular gland, see p. 200) is in the *caruncula lingualis* **A5** at the anterior end of this fold. The mucosa has a stratified squamous, non-keratinized epithelium.

**Dorsum (back) of the tongue.** The mucosa of the dorsum is immovably fixed to the tough *aponeurosis* of the tongue, the connective tissue layer of the mucosa being interlocked with the epithelium by means of tall papillae. Strands of the intrinsic muscle fibers of the tongue radiate like bristles into the mucosa, particularly into the fibrous tissue which forms the center of each papillae. These muscle fibers actively deform the aponeurosis linguae. A shallow medial groove divides the dorsum of the tongue into left and right halves; the V-shaped *terminal sulcus* **B6** separates the *dorsum* **B7** from the root of the tongue **B8**. At the apex of the V, directed towards the pharynx, lies the *foramen caecum*, a blind hole **B9**, the origin of the anlage for the thyroid gland. On the dorsum of the tongue there are numerous papillae.

**Filiform papillae.** The filiform papillae, also called *papillae conicae*, are distributed across the dorsum of the tongue. They are small elevations of the epithelium directed toward the pharynx that have become keratinized. The filiform papillae are not so

strongly developed in man as in many animals in which they give the tongue a rough surface. In humans they are mostly sensitive to touch. The connective tissue core contains numerous sensory nerve endings.

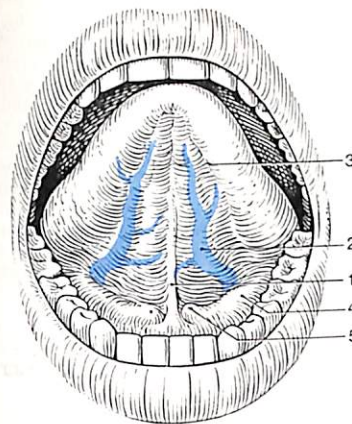
**Fungiform papillae.** The reddish fungiform papillae are 0.5–1.5 mm high and are mainly distributed around the margin and at the apex of the tongue. They are more numerous in the newborn than in adults. In the infant they carry a greater number of *taste buds*; gustatory glands (taste glands) are absent.

**Vallate papillae** are 6–12 wart-shaped gustatory papillae **B10** which project only a little above the surface of the tongue. They are 1–3 mm in diameter and are arranged in the form of a V in front of the root of the tongue and of the terminal sulcus. Each papilla is surrounded by a trench (vallum) **C11** which is lined by an epithelium containing 3–5 rows of *taste buds* **C12**, see Vol. 3. Serous gustatory glands **C13** (v. Ebner) lead into the bottom of the trench. Their secretion washes away flavors.

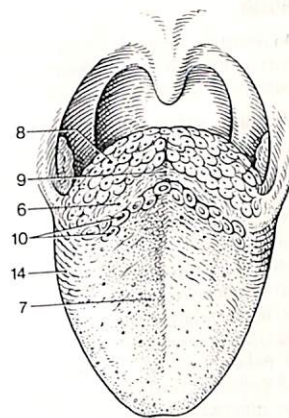
**Foliate papillae.** These are transverse mucosal folds **B14** at the posterior lateral margin of the tongue. They contain *taste buds* in the epithelium and serous gustatory glands, which open into the depth of the mucosal folds.

The 4 qualities of taste – sour, salty, bitter and sweet – are detected at different sites on the tongue. There are, however, no recognizable differences either by light or electron microscopy between the corresponding taste buds.

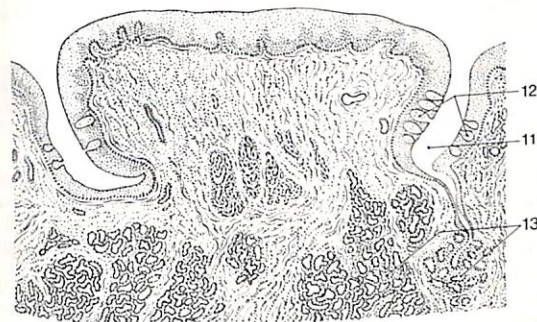
**The root of the tongue** shows the rugged surface of the *lingual follicles* (see *Lingual Tonsil*, p. 104). Numerous small mucous glands are found in the connective tissue and between the muscle fibers. Three mucosal folds stretch from the root of the tongue to the surface of the epiglottis, the *median glossoepiglottic fold* and, on each side of it, a *lateral glossoepiglottic fold*. These three folds form the boundaries of two depressions, the *valleculae epiglotticae*.



A Mucous membrane of tongue, seen from below



B Mucous membrane of tongue seen from above; papillae of tongue



C Vallate papillae



D Fungiform papillae



E Filiform papillae



## Palate

The anterior  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the roof of the oral cavity is formed by the *hard palate*, the posterior  $\frac{1}{3}$  by the *soft palate*.

The *hard palate* (*palatum durum*) is formed by the palatine process of the maxilla and by the horizontal plates of the palatine bones, see Vol. 1. The bone is covered by periosteum and a mucous membrane, which anteriorly is firmly fixed to the periosteum and which continues into the gingiva (gum). In the middle of the hard palate there is a longitudinal ridge, the *raphe palati* **C1**. It is fixed to the palatine suture by connective tissue and ends anteriorly in a small elevation. The mucosa on both sides of the raphe carries shallow transverse ridges **C2**, an area of small furrows, against which the food is pressed by the tongue. Further back, between the periosteum and the mucosa, is an area containing small mucous glands, the *palatine glands* **C3**. They produce mucus to lubricate food while it is being chewed.

The *soft palate* (*palatum molle*, also called *velum palatinum*) hangs down posteriorly from the hard palate like a sail. The *uvula* **A4** projects in the midline from the posterior border of the velum palatinum. If the velum palatinum is relaxed the uvula rests on the root of the tongue. Two folds on each side of the uvula (the *palatoglossal* and *palatopharyngeal* arches) diverge and run downward. In the groove between them lies the palatine tonsil. The anterior, the *palatoglossal arch*, extends to the lateral border of the tongue, and the posterior, the *palatopharyngeal arch*, to the all of the pharynx. They form the narrowing of the pharynx, the *isthmus of the fauces*, the entrance to the pharynx, which can be closed by muscle contraction (sphincter action). The mucosa and glands extend to the soft palate, where they lie on a tough aponeurosis. The velum palatinum plays an important part in deglutition (see p. 206), when combined with a bulging of the posterior wall of the pharynx, it shuts off the food passage from the upper airway.

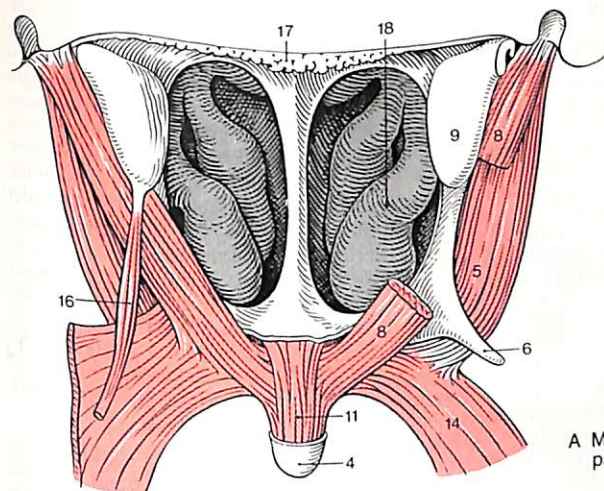
The *tensor veli palatini* **AB5** originates as a thin triangular plate (lamina) from the base of the skull between the spine of the sphenoid bone and the root of the pterygoid process and from the membranous part of the auditory tube. The muscle descends and ends in a tendon which turns around the pterygoid hamulus **AB6** and radiates horizontally into the palatine aponeurosis; it elevates and stretches the velum palatinum, up to the horizontal plane during deglutition **B7**. In this way it opens the entrance into the auditory tube as the muscle pulls at its origin. Thus, it is responsible for *passage of air into the middle ear on swallowing*.

The *levator veli palatini* **AB8** also arises from the base of the skull, but dorsal and medial to the tensor muscle (the region of the mouth of the carotid canal), and from the lower margin of the cartilage of the auditory tube **A9** ("levator bulge"). The rounded belly of the muscle runs obliquely downward and forward toward the midline. It has a broad insertion into the palatine aponeurosis. The muscle pulls the velum palatinum upward and backward **B10**.

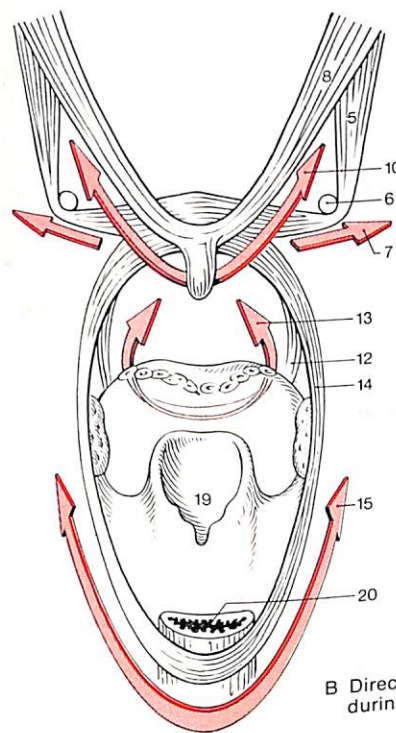
The paired *uvulae muscle* **A11** arises from the hard palate (posterior nasal spine) and the palatine aponeurosis. It extends behind the levator and radiates into the uvula which is shortened by its contraction.

The *palatoglossus muscle* **B12** arises at the palatine aponeurosis, lies in the *anterior* palatine arch, and at the lateral border of the tongue it radiates mainly into the transverse muscle of the tongue. Together with the latter the palatoglossus closes the isthmus of the fauces **B13**. The *palatopharyngeus* **AB14** is stronger than the former muscle and lies in the *posterior* palatine arch. It counts as one of the levator muscles of the pharynx **B15**.

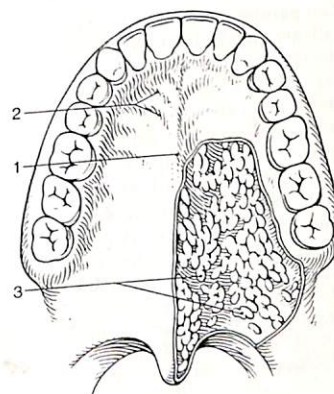
**A16** Salpingopharyngeus, **A17** pharyngeal tonsil, **A18** inferior nasal concha, **B19** entrance into the larynx, **B20** esophagus.



A Muscles of soft palate



B Directions of pull of muscle loops during deglutition (schematic)



C Palatine glands



## Salivary Glands

**Saliva.** During chewing food is mixed with saliva in the mouth. The saliva acts as a lubricant, it contains an enzyme (an amylase) for the conversion of starch and is bactericidal. The secretion of saliva is due to a reflex action prompted by stimulation of chemoreceptors in the mouth, by masticatory movements and by psychological stimulation. The daily production of saliva can be up to 1.5 liters. The *serous* glands, or the serous parts of the salivary glands, secrete an electrolyte and protein-rich saliva for diluting, while the *mucous* glands secrete a tough, stringy, mucoid saliva, which contains few electrolytes or protein and has a lubricating function.

**Small salivary glands.** There are numerous small salivary glands with short ducts in the mucosa of the lips, **A1**, of the cheeks **A2**, of the tongue and of the palate. The nearer they are to the pharynx the more *mucous* elements they contain. In contrast, the *gustatory* glands of the taste buds (see p. 196) are *serous* glands.

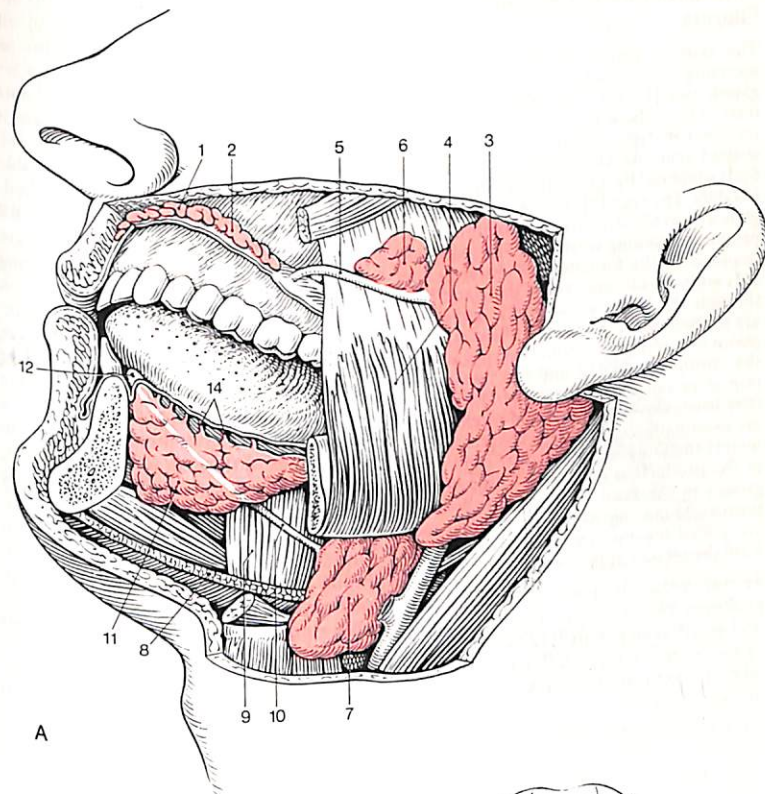
## Large Salivary Glands

The **parotid gland A3**, the largest of the salivary glands, lies in front of the ear on the ramus of the mandible and the masseter **A4** and has a process which penetrates deep around the posterior margin of the mandible. The gland extends only a little beyond the angle of the lower jaw and extends upward to the zygomatic arch. During movement of the mandible the interlobar fatty tissue allows the lobules of the gland to move against each other. The **parotid duct A5**, which is 3–4 mm thick and 5–6 cm long, emerges from the anterior surface of the parotid gland. It runs below the zygomatic arch, across the masseter and Bichet's fat pad (of the cheeks), pierces the buccinator in front of the masseter and opens eventually into the vestibule of the mouth at the **parotid papilla**, which lies at the level of the second upper molar tooth. Frequently a small **accessory gland A6** adjoins the duct. The parotid gland is covered by the fascia of the masseter, and the medial pterygoid.

The **submandibular gland A7** (the salivary gland of the lower jaw) lies in the niche between the mandible and the two bellies of the digastric. It extends right down to the mylohyoid **A8**, the hyoglossus **A9** and the styloglossus. The 5–6 cm long **submandibular duct A10**, accompanied by a hook-shaped process of the gland, passes around the posterior border of the mylohyoid **A8** to its upper surface. From there it runs forward medially to the **sublingual gland A11**, frequently combined with the main duct of the latter, and opens on the **sublingual caruncle AB12**, see p. 196. The gland is enveloped by its fascial capsule and is also covered by a superficial layer of the cervical fascia and the platysma.

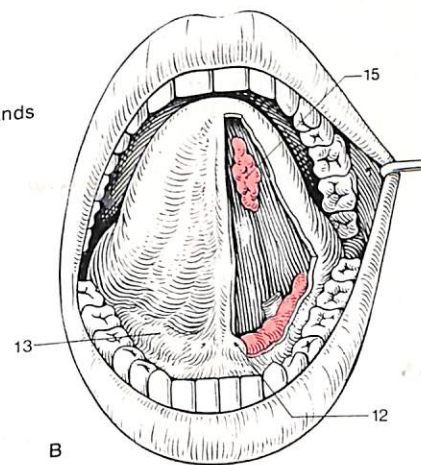
The **sublingual gland A11** is 3–4 cm long. It lies on the mylohyoid **A8** and forms the sublingual fold **B13**. The gland extends laterally to the mandible and medially to the genioglossus. It consists of numerous small mucous glands, the **minor sublingual glands A14**, and of the predominantly mucous-secreting main gland, the **major sublingual gland A11**. Transport of the viscid mucus is facilitated by the shortness of the numerous ducts. Some of the minor glands open along the **sublingual fold B13** directly into the oral cavity, others open into the main sublingual duct. The **main sublingual duct**, which comes from the major sublingual gland, runs with the submandibular duct to its orifice, the **sublingual caruncle AB12**.

The **gland at the apex of the tongue**, the **apical lingual gland B15**, an almost purely mucous gland, lies on both sides at the apex of the tongue.



A

Salivary glands



B



## Fine Structure of the Salivary Glands

The salivary glands are *exocrine* glands, secreting – in contrast to the endocrine glands (see p. 146) – through an excretory duct. The cells of the glands are exocrine (*eccrine*) in type (see p. 150). The berry-shaped acini are enveloped and their contents squeezed by the contractile *myoepithelial* cells. The ergastoplasm of the cells of the glands is involved in formation of the *serous*, protein-containing secretion. The materials required for its formation of the secretion **D1**, amino acids, etc., reach the gland cells through the blood vessels. The secretions are formed on the ribosomes of the ergastoplasm according to information specified by the chromosomes **D2** and are then transported to the *Golgi* apparatus **D3**, where they become concentrated and whence they are eventually excreted **D4**, see p. 150. It is mainly the *Golgi* apparatus that is involved in the production of *mucus*. Different cell groups in the acini of the glands produce serous and mucous secretions. Several acini are joined together by connective tissue to form the *lobules* of the glands **AB**.

**Serous acini.** The part of the gland that produces the secretion is berry-shaped and is called an *acinus* **BEFG5**. The cells of the glands **C6** are tall and cylindrical with central rounded nuclei. The lumen of the acinus is narrow, and contains intercellular spaces for passage of secretions. The production of protein-rich saliva is often associated with marked cytoplasmic basophilia, because of the large amount of ergastoplasm. The apices of the cells frequently contain precursors of the secretions, and therefore they often stain more deeply than the mucous cells.

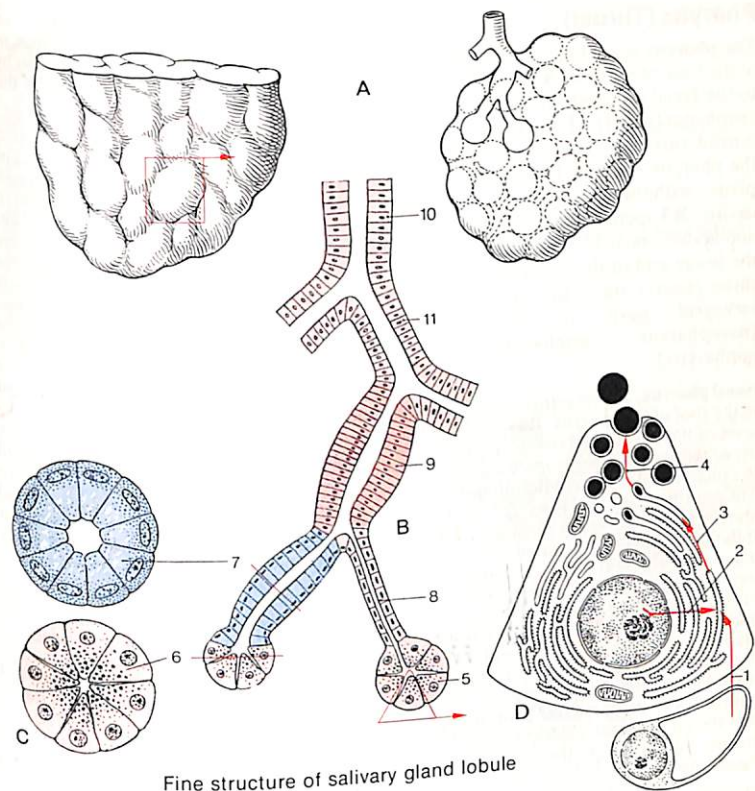
**Mucous acini.** The mucous secretion-producing part of the gland is tubular – the *tubulus* **CFG7**. The gland cells are low, their flat nuclei are pushed toward the base of the cell by the secretion and the lumen of the tubule is wide. A honey-combed structure seen in histological preparations is due to the dissolution of the secretory granules. The mucous areas of glands are only faintly stained by the majority of staining techniques.

**System of excretory ducts.** A system of secretory ducts is attached to the secre-

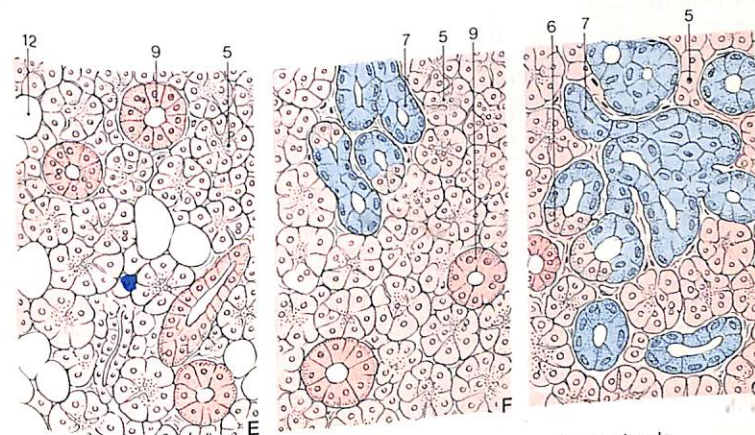
tory portion of the gland. If fully developed, which is not the case in all glands, the system is divided into an *intercalated* (connecting) duct **B8**, a *secretion tube* **BEF9** and an *excretory duct* **B10, 11**. The intercalated ducts have a flattened epithelium and therefore the smallest diameter. They are of variable length, and may be solitary or branched. In mixed glands the intercalated ducts **B8** are often full of mucus, i. e., they are transformed into mucus-producing tubules **CFG7**. Myoepithelial cells lie on the intercalated duct (and the acinus preceding it); they prevent secretions from becoming blocked. The following *striated section* (secretory tubule) still lies within the lobule. Secretory tubules have a larger diameter than the other intralobular sections of the excretory duct system, and their simple cuboidal epithelium may show basal striation (hence the alternative name of “striated section”), which is caused by folding of the basal cell membrane and by mitochondria. These appearances suggest that there is a considerable amount of fluid passing through this section. The excretory ducts run in the connective tissue between the lobules. They are characterized by a stratified polygonal columnar epithelium in one to two layers and a wide lumen.

*Plasma cells* in glandular connective tissue secrete an antibody (immunoglobulin **A**) that is released with the saliva and enables it to participate in the immune defense system.

The *parotid gland* **E** is an entirely serous gland **E5** with intercalated ducts and secretory tubules **E9**. The *submandibular gland* **F** is a mixed, predominantly serous gland **F5**, with intercalated ducts, some of which are transformed into mucus-producing tubules **F7**, and it also possesses secretory tubules **F9**. The serous acini sit like half moons (*Giannuzzi* or *Ebner half moons*) compare **G6** on the mucus-containing tubules. The *sublingual gland* **G** is a mixed, predominantly mucous gland **G7**. Intercalated ducts and secretory tubules are almost entirely absent. The *anterior lingual gland* is classified as an almost pure mucous gland. **E12** Fat cell.



Fine structure of salivary gland lobule



Histologic sections through various salivary glands



## Pharynx (Throat)

The **pharynx** is a tube, about 12 cm long, at the base of the skull **A1** and connected to the facial skull, which merges into the esophagus (gullet) **AB2** at the level of the cricoid cartilage. The posterior wall of the pharynx is flat and lies in the frontal plane without any gaps. The nasal cavities **B3** open into the pharynx in front and above, the oral cavity **B4** opens into the lower end of the pharynx. There are three general areas: the *nasal, oral and laryngeal parts of the pharynx* (nasopharynx, oropharynx, laryngopharynx).

**Nasal pharynx.** The *pharyngeal tonsil B6* lies in the roof of the pharynx. Bilaterally, at the level of the lower nasal concha, is the *opening of the auditory tube* from the middle ear, the *pharyngeal ostium of the auditory tube*. The cartilage of the tube **B7** protrudes above the ostium as the *torus tubarius B8*. Behind it there is a small groove, the *pharyngeal recess B9*. The *levator veli palatini B10* protrudes from below into the orifice of the tube (the torus of the levator muscles **B11**). The *oral pharynx* begins at the level of the *velum palatinum B12*. Both the *palatine tonsils B13* and the *lingual tonsils B14* are related to the oral portion. On both sides of the *laryngeal pharynx*, alongside the larynx is the *piriform recess B15*, a groove that leads to the entrance to the esophagus.

The **pharyngeal wall** has 3 layers: the *mucous membrane, the muscularis B16* and the *adventitia* which consists of connective tissue. The *tunica muscularis* is absent superiorly under the base of the skull and the wall there consists of a tough fibrous tissue membrane (*pharyngobasilar fascia AC17*) by which the pharynx is attached to the base of the skull over a wide area.

The **mucous membrane (tunica mucosa)** is loosely connected with the *tunica muscularis*. A tough, elastic, longitudinally directed membrane broadening downward makes possible the reversible extensibility of the pharynx. The nasal portion is covered by the nasal epithelium and the oral and laryngeal portions of the pharynx have the same epithelium as the oral cavity. Mucous glands, the *pharyngeal glands*, provide the lubricating mucus. In the laryngeal portion at the transition to the esophagus, the mu-

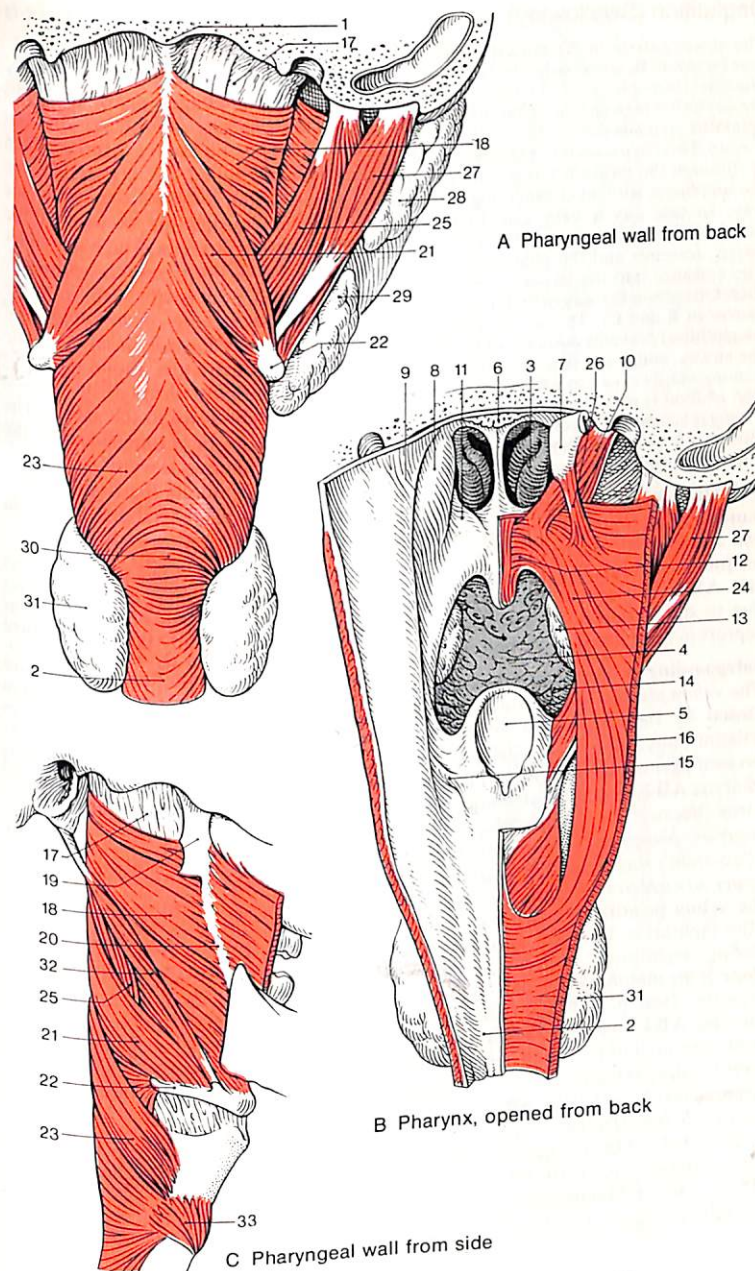
cosa of the anterior and posterior wall of the pharynx is separated from the skeleton of the larynx and the cervical spinal column by a venous plexus (upper narrowing of the esophagus).

The **tunica muscularis** consists of striated muscles, the *elevators* and the *constrictors* of the throat. The 3 *constrictores pharyngis* ascend posteriorly and are inserted in a tough fibrous band, the *pharyngeal raphe*, which is attached to the *pharyngeal tubercle A1 at the base of the skull. The muscles overlap in such a manner that the lower parts of the superior and middle constrictor muscles are always covered on the outside by the upper margin of the following muscle. **Origins:** The *superior pharyngeal constrictor AC18*: from the pterygoid process **C19** and the pterygomandibular raphe **C20**. The *medial pharyngeal constrictor AC21*: from the greater and lesser horns **AC22** of the hyoid bone. The *inferior pharyngeal constrictor AC23*: from the outer surface of the thyroid and the cricoid cartilage. The constrictor muscles can narrow the pharyngeal space and elevate the larynx and the hyoid bone.*

The *levatores pharyngis* are poorly developed. The *palatopharyngeus B24* in the posterior palatal arch originates from the pterygoid process and the aponeurosis of the palate and runs downward into the dorsal wall of the pharynx where the fibers partly cross those of the opposite side. The *stylopharyngeus AC25*, which originates from the styloid process, passes between the superior and middle constrictor muscles along their internal surface. It is inserted partly at the submucosa and partly at the cricoid cartilage. The *salpingopharyngeus B26* runs from the end of the cartilage of the auditory tube to the wall of the pharynx.

**Adventitial connective tissue.** The muscle tube of the pharynx is covered by a thin fascia. It may be moved against the vertebral column because of a connective tissue space, the *retropharyngeal space*. This extends laterally into the *parapharyngeal space*. Both spaces are continuous with the *mediastinum*.

**AB27** Digastric muscle, **A28** parotid gland, **A29** submandibular gland, **A30** border between the pharynx and esophagus, **AB31** thyroid gland, **C32** stylohyoid muscle, **C33** cricothyroid muscle.





## Deglutition (Swallowing)

The *airway* (arrow in **A**) and the *food passage* (arrow in **B**) cross each other in the *oral pharynx* (mesopharynx). In the newborn, the larynx lies high up in the pharynx and the epiglottis extends above the root of the tongue. Food bypasses the epiglottis laterally, through the piriform recess, and enters the esophagus without endangering the airway. In this way a baby can drink and breathe at the same time. Later in life the larynx descends and the pharynx ascends. The entrance into the larynx (arrow in **A**) therefore gets in the way of the food passage (arrow in **B** and **C**). The *act of swallowing* (deglutition) prevents entrance of food into the airway, and at the same time the airway is momentarily closed by a reflex and inhalation of food is prevented. The act of swallowing is actually a coordinated sequence of movements with one voluntary and two subsequent involuntary phases.

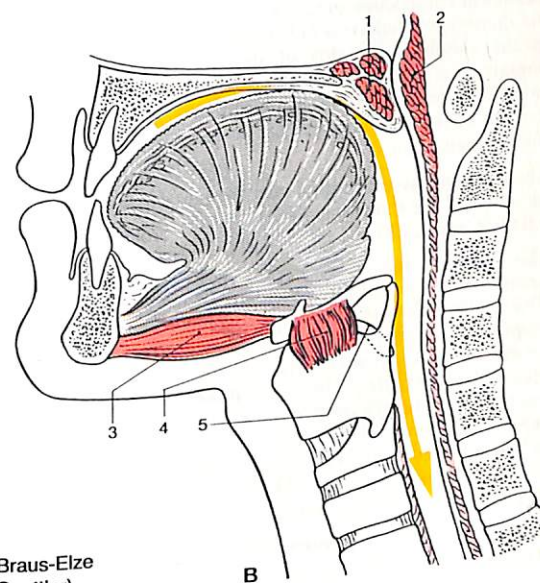
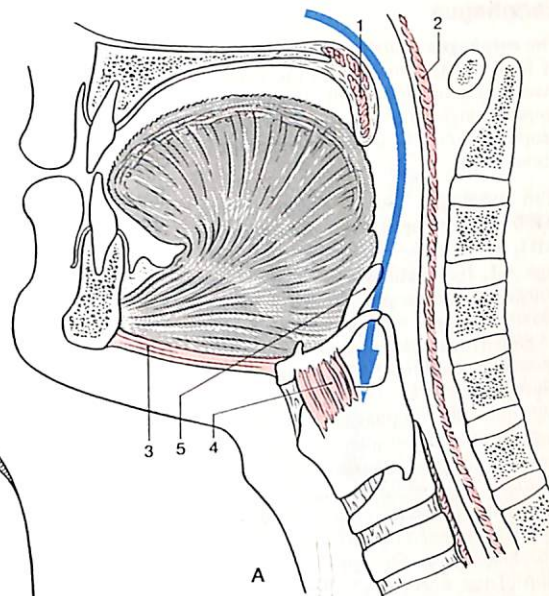
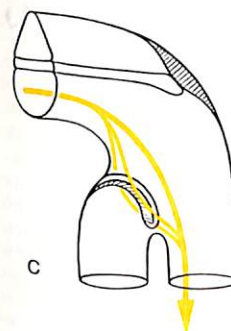
**Voluntary inception of swallowing.** The muscles of the *floor of the mouth* contract and the *tongue*, together with the bolus (of food), is pressed against the soft palate **AB1**. Subsequent movements are due to stimulation of sensory nerve receptors in the mucosa of the palate.

**Safeguarding the airway by reflex action.** The *velum palatinum* is elevated **B1** and tensed by the tensor and levator veli palatini muscles (see p. 204), and is pressed against the posterior wall of the pharynx **AB2**. The latter *protrudes* like a torus because of contraction of the *superior pharyngeal constrictor muscle* (Passavant's ring torus **B2**) separating the *upper airways from the food passage C*. If the velum palatinum is paralyzed, e.g., after diphtheria, food will enter the nose during deglutition. Contraction of the *floor of the mouth AB3* by the mylohyoid, digastric (see p. 178) and thyrohyoid muscles **AB4** assists in visible and palpable *elevation of the hyoid bone* and the *larynx*, while the entrance to the larynx approaches the *epiglottis AB5*. The *epiglottis is lowered* by the root of the tongue with the help of the aryepiglottic muscles **B5** and the entrance to the larynx (incompletely) closed. Simultaneously, the rima glottidis is closed and breathing stops.

Thus, the lower airways are completely separated from the food passage **C**.

**Transport of the bolus through the pharynx and esophagus (arrow in **B**).** The slit of the *pharynx unfolds* upward and forward when the larynx ascends. Then the *tongue* is pulled like a piston by the styloglossus and hyoglossus muscles (see p. 194) and pushes the bolus over the fauces into the pharynx. The bolus slides through the piriform recesses primarily (see p. 204) and partly also over the epiglottis. *Shortening of the pharyngeal wall* by its lower constrictor and contraction of the constrictors above the bolus can push the latter through the dilated esophagus right down to the cardia. The bolus can also be propelled into the stomach by continuous waves of contraction of circular muscle (*peristalsis*), even against gravity, if the subject adopts an appropriate posture.

*Liquids flow in a groove* like flattening of the tongue towards the pharynx. In the erect posture rapid *contraction of the floor of the mouth* propels them into the cardia assisted by the contraction of the *tongue*. Innervation: The swallowing reflex remains active even during sleep. The afferent and efferent nerve fibers run in several cranial nerves (see Vol. 3), which secures the reflex under most circumstances. Coordination of afferent and efferent stimuli takes place in the "deglutition center" in the medulla oblongata of the brain.



Deglutition (after Braus-Elze and Benninghoff-Goettler)



## Esophagus

The **esophagus** (*gullet*) conveys the bolus of food to the stomach. In the adult it measures about 25–30 cm. The distance from the incisors to the transition of the esophagus into the cardia in the adult is about 40 cm.

The esophagus has 3 narrow places **ABI–III**. The uppermost, the *sphincter ABI*, lies at the level of the cricoid cartilage **A1**. Its function is to close the entrance to the esophagus and it is the narrowest part with a width of only 14 mm. During deglutition the constriction is relaxed for 0.5–1 s. A thin-walled place in the posterior surface of the opening into the esophagus may become pushed out – a so-called *pressure diverticulum* or *pharyngoesophageal diverticulum*. The middle narrowing, the *aortic narrowing ABII*, is due to the esophagus being crossed by the aortic arch. The esophagus descends behind the bifurcation of the trachea **A2**. Scar formation due to inflammation of the hilar lymph glands may pull the esophageal wall towards the hilum – a *traction diverticulum*. The lower constriction of the esophagus, the *diaphragmatic narrowing ABII*, lies in the esophageal hiatus of the diaphragm. It is connected with the complicated closure mechanism of the lowest 2–5 cm of the esophagus, which relaxes during deglutition.

The **layers of the esophageal wall** resemble those of the remainder of the intestinal tract, see p. 220.

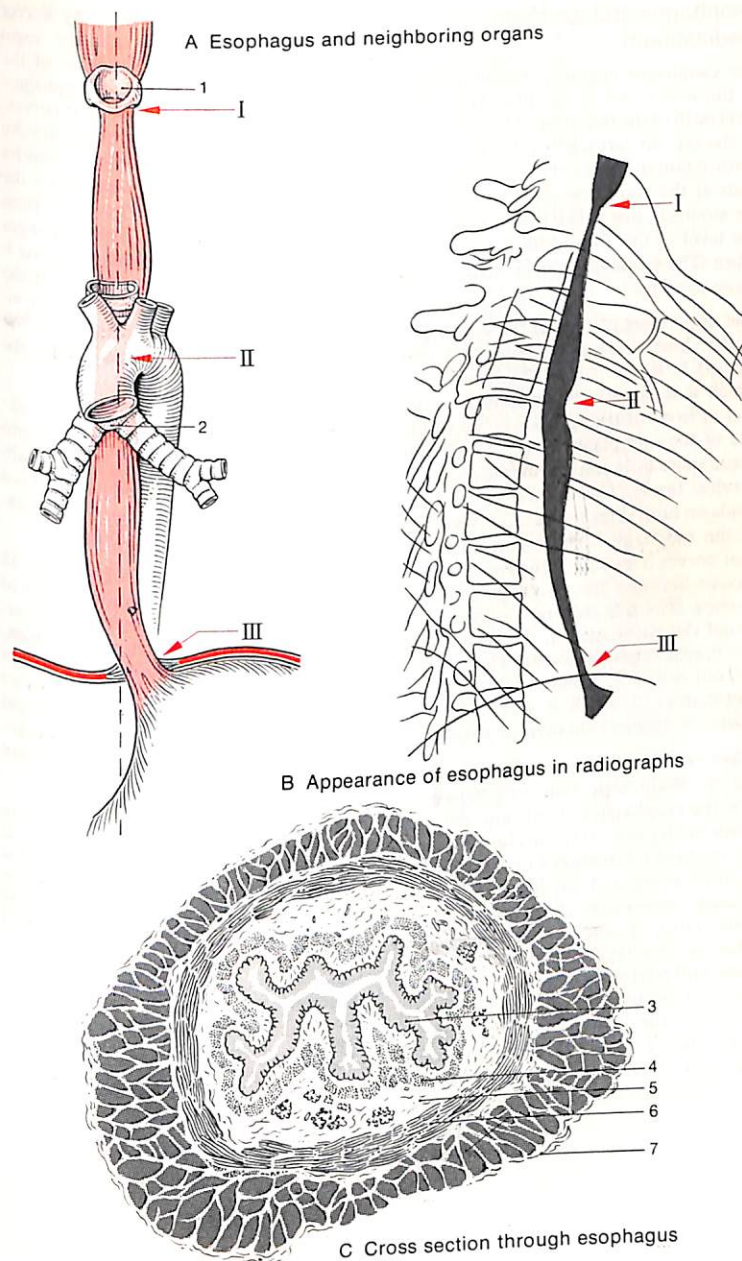
The **mucosa** has a stratified, non-keratinized, squamous epithelium **C3**. The small numbers of mucous glands, the *esophageal glands*, increase along the course of the esophagus. They are situated in the submucosa. The strong *muscle tracts* of the mucous membrane **C4** run spirally. These muscles pleat the mucosa in the undilated esophagus into longitudinal folds (“reserve folds”). The *submucosa* **C5** adapts to these changes.

The upper third of the **tunica muscularis** **C6** consists of striated but autonomically

innervated muscles, which are gradually replaced by smooth muscles in the middle and lower thirds of the esophagus. The muscle bundles are attached partly to the dorsal surface of the cricoid cartilage and are partly continuous with the inferior constrictor muscle of the pharynx.

The esophagus, like the trachea, is under *longitudinal tension*, and this helps to stabilize it and to facilitate the passage of food during deglutition. The tension also assists closure of the lower portion of the esophagus. The latter is twisted on its longitudinal axis at the level of transition into the cardia, and the longitudinal tension produces “stretch closure” (twisting closure). The latter assists the “functional sphincter of the cardia”, i.e., the sphincter effect of the intra-abdominal pressure on the abdominal part of the esophagus. The stretch effect is sustained by a connective tissue membrane which is suspended between the esophagus and the opening (hiatus) of the diaphragm. This is also the site where hernias (ruptures: *paraesophageal hernias*) into the chest cavity can form in disease. A submucous venous pad also contributes to closure of the esophagus. Since these vessels represent a portocaval link (between the portal vein and the superior vena cava), they can become swollen, varicose, and may bleed if the portal vein is obstructed (see p. 250).

The connective tissue of the **adventitia** **C7** contains smooth muscle fibers, which may run in bundles to the left main bronchus and into the left mediastinal pleura.





## Esophagus and the Posterior Mediastinum

The **esophagus** begins as a continuation of the lower end of the pharynx at the level both of the 6th cervical vertebra and of the cricoid cartilage; this is the *upper constriction sphincter of the esophagus*. It ends at the transition into the cardia of the stomach, just below the diaphragm at the level of the 10th–12th thoracic vertebra. The esophagus can be divided into three sections.

The uppermost section of the esophagus is the short **cervical portion** (*pars cervicalis*) **1**. It lies behind the trachea, to which it is bound by connective tissue, and in front of the spinal column to the left of the mid-plane, in the connective tissue space between the middle and deep cervical fascia. The thyroid gland **2** extends on both sides to the lateral borders of the esophagus. The recurrent laryngeal nerves **3** ascend to the larynx in the groove between the esophagus and the trachea. The left recurrent nerve winds round the aortic arch **4**, the right round the brachiocephalic trunk. The inferior thyroid artery **5**, situated lateral to the esophagus, to which it gives off some branches, reaches the thyroid gland **2**.

After entering the upper thoracic opening, the **thoracic portion** (*pars thoracica*) **6** of the esophagus extends into the posterior mediastinum. It runs first between the tracheal bifurcation **7** or the left principal bronchus and the descending aorta (*middle constriction of the esophagus* **6**), from which it also receives branches. Then the esophagus moves away from the spine and continues downward in a shallow arch toward the right, behind the left atrium of the heart (see radiograph, p. 209). Over a short stretch it approaches the right mediastinal pleura and then it passes through the esophageal hiatus, an opening in the diaphragm **8**, while the descending aorta is inserted between the esophagus anteriorly and the spinal column (closing with the esophagus). Where the esophagus passes through the diaphragm (*lower sphincter part of the*

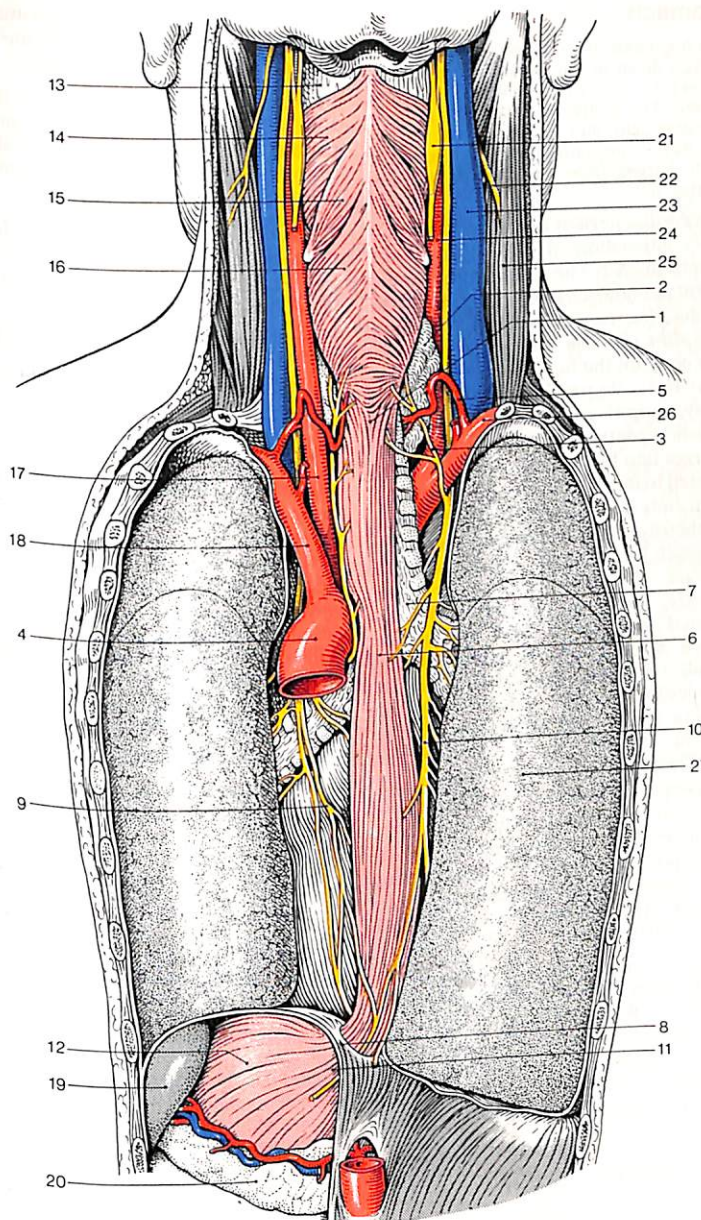
*esophagus*) it is accompanied by nerves ventrally **9** and dorsally **10**, the vagal trunks, which as a continuation of the pharyngeal plexus, form the esophageal plexus and give rise to the vagal nerves. The glossopharyngeal nerve supplies the superior and medial constrictor muscles of the pharynx. During inspiration the esophagus moves up to 7 cm away from the lower thoracic spine. The esophagus remains mobile longitudinally because it is fixed at the esophageal hiatus of the diaphragm by a circular elastic membrane. The thoracic portion of the esophagus exposed to traction by the lungs.

The **abdominal portion** (*pars abdominalis*) **11**, 1–3 cm long, merges into the cardia of the stomach **12**. The intraabdominal pressure effectively acts like a “functional cardiac sphincter” on the abdominal portion of the esophagus.

**13** Pharyngobasilar fascia, **14** superior, **15** middle, **16** inferior constrictor muscles of the pharynx, **17** left common carotid artery, **18** left subclavian artery, **19** spleen, **20** pancreas, **21** superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic system, **22** accessory nerve, **23** internal jugular vein, **24** right common carotid artery, **25** sternocleidomastoid muscle, **26** right subclavian artery, **27** right lung.

**Age changes.** The esophagus of the newborn is relatively longer than that of the adult. It begins at the level of the 3rd or 4th cervical vertebra, i. e., with the pharynx in its low position. The distance of the cardia from the incisors changes during growth (after Bischoff):

Age:	cm:
1 month	16.3
2 years	22.5
9 years	32.9
12 years	34.2
and in the adult = 40 cm.	



Dorsal view of esophagus in situ (after Rauber-Kopsch)



## Stomach

The fragments of food (boli) are chemically broken down in the **stomach** (ventriculus, gaster) by the gastric juice to produce chyme. The gastric juice contains protein-digesting enzymes (pepsinogen), hydrochloric acid and mucus or mucin. The chyme is discharged from the stomach intermittently.

The **cardiac portion A1** of the **stomach** is the continuation of the orifice of the esophagus **A2**. The cupola of the fundus **A3** of the stomach arises on the left of the cardia. The **cardiac notch A4** (forming the *plica cardiaca*, inside the stomach) lies between the fundus and the esophagus. The main part of the stomach is its **body, corpus gastricus pyloricum A5**, which is continuous with the fundus. It merges into the **pyloric part A6** which is dilated to form the **antrum pyloricum** and then ends as the **pylorus A7**, the opening of the stomach into the **duodenum**. The stomach has an anterior and a posterior surface. The upper (medial or inner) border, the **lesser curvature A8** is indented at its lower third: the **angular notch A9** (forming the *plica angularis* inside the stomach where it marks the borderline between the body and the pyloric region). The lower (outer) border of the stomach, the **greater curvature A10**, has its most prominent bulge **A11** just opposite the **angular notch**. The **basic shape** of the stomach as just described is influenced by several factors, such as body posture, stomach contents, its muscle tonus and the influence of nearby organs. The capacity of the stomach is about 1200–1600 ml.

The **mucosa** shows a few longitudinal folds along the lesser curvature ("**gastric pathway**" **B12**) and there are other folds running in an oblique or transverse direction ("**reserve folds**") which demarcate mucosal niches ("**digestive chambers**") where larger pieces of food may be held for a while.

## Peritoneum

A serous membrane covering the peritoneum (see p. 22), enables the organs in the peritoneal cavity to move

freely against each other. There is usually about 50 ml of fluid in the peritoneal cavity, which serves as a lubricant.

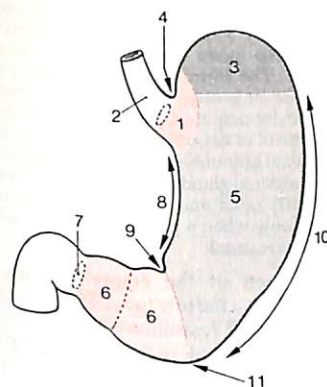
**Peritoneum.** It consists of a visceral layer **C13** which covers the viscera, and a parietal layer **C14** that lines the wall of the peritoneal cavity, *visceral and parietal peritoneum*.

The two layers are continuous and form the peritoneal sac which contains a capillary space. The connections between the visceral and parietal layers of the peritoneum, where organs are almost completely enveloped by the peritoneum (intraperitoneal position), are formed by thin peritoneal reduplications, i. e., tissue laminae which carry vessels and nerve to those particular organs.

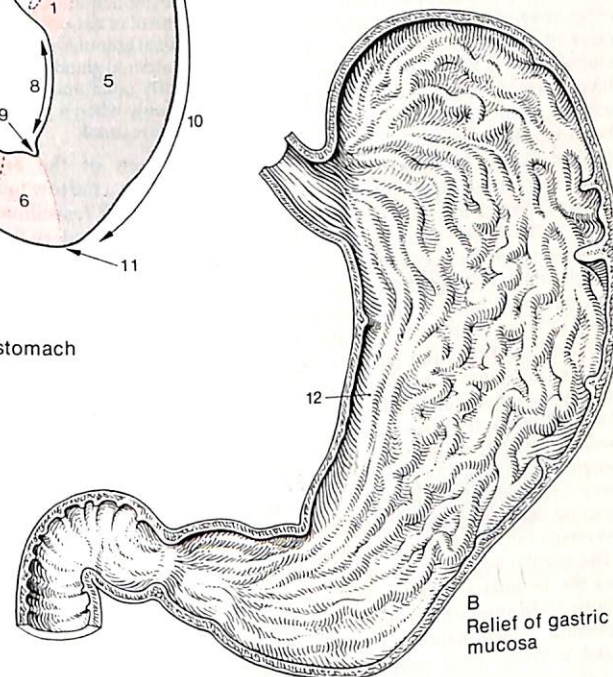
These reduplications to the stomach **C15** are called ligaments. From the greater curvature, the **gastrocolic ligament C16** runs to the transverse colon, while its continuation on the left, the **gastrosplenic ligament C16** passes to the spleen **C17**; and its continuation to the wall of the trunk is called the **phrenicosplenic ligament C18**. From the lesser curvature to the liver **C20** extends the **hepatogastric ligament C19**, which continues downward as the **hepatoduodenal ligament**, see p. 238.

**Fine structure.** The peritoneal epithelium (mesothelium because of its origin from the embryonic mesoderm) consists of flat, simple, cuboidal cells with a border of microvilli, a sign of considerable absorptive activity. The subserous connective tissue is partly a loose, mobile layer, as in the mesenteries, and partly a firm connection between the serosa and the adjacent organs, as in the parietal peritoneum above the liver. Only the parietal peritoneum has a sensory innervation. Fluids, small particles, such as India ink particles (during experiments) and toxins from pathogens reach the lymph channels of the subserous connective tissue within a few minutes. The peritoneum reacts violently in inflammations and exudes a protein-rich fluid, so that adhesions may result.

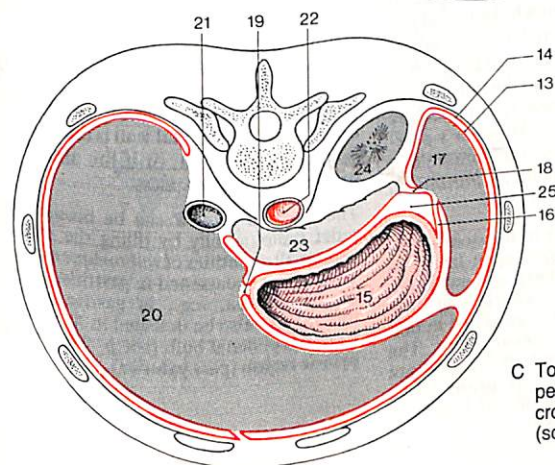
**C21** Inferior vena cava, **C22** abdominal aorta, **C23** pancreas, **C24** kidney, **C25** omental bursa, a loose peritoneal reduplication which permits the stomach some freedom of movement.



A Parts of stomach



B Relief of gastric mucosa



C Topography of peritoneum in cross-section (schematic)



## Muscle Layer of the Stomach

The **muscle layer**, *tunica muscularis*, is the motor of the stomach and consists of bundles of smooth muscle fibers. Like that of the intestine it is divided into an **inner layer of circular A1** and an **outer layer of longitudinal A2, 3, fibers**. The stomach has in addition, a 3rd innermost layer formed by **oblique fibers B4**, that extend from the cardiac notch to the boundary **B5** between the body and the pyloric region. The latter, as well as the lesser curvature, does not contain any oblique fibers. The strong circular muscle layer of the **pyloric region**, which consists of two circular loops connected above by longitudinal muscle fiber tracts, forms the pyloric sphincter. The longitudinal muscle layer controls the length of the stomach; its fibers run partly along the greater curvature **A3** from the cardia to the pylorus. Some end at the lesser curvature **A2** and at the posterior and anterior walls of the stomach at the level of the angular notch **AB5**. Beyond the notch new longitudinal muscle fiber tracts **B6** extend across the pyloric portion of the stomach into the wall of the duodenum. The angular notch, therefore, is regarded as the boundary between the two portions of the stomach: an upper (proximal) portion, which mainly serves digestion, and a lower distal portion, concerned with emptying the stomach. Between the circular and longitudinal muscle layers lies the *myenteric-plexus* (of Auerbach) a vegetative nerve supply to the muscles. In contrast, the submucosa is supplied by the *submucosal plexus* (*Meissner's plexus*) which innervates the muscularis mucosae and the glands ("*intramural nervous system*", see Vol. 3).

**Movements and motility of the stomach G.** As the stomach fills layer upon layer, its contents are accommodated without an increase in tension in the gastric wall. The pressure inside the stomach is equal to that in the rest of the peritoneal cavity. The layers of chyme adjacent to the mucosa are pushed away by contraction in the upper part of the stomach and deeper layers are brought into contact with the mucosa – *mixing movements* of the stomach. If the

stomach is filled, peristaltic waves occur about every 3 minutes and take about 20 seconds to move from the fundus to the pylorus. The stomach is *emptied* under the influence of pressure conditions between it and the duodenum. Gastric motility is under the control of *tissue hormones* from the cells with basal granules (see p. 216) in the gastric and duodenal glands. In general the pylorus is slightly open and it becomes completely closed only when a peristaltic wave reaches the pyloric canal.

The lumen of the **empty stomach** is shaped like a narrow tube. The "*stomach bubble*" **CDE7**, swallowed air which can be demonstrated radiologically, lies in the slightly expanded fundus under the diaphragm.

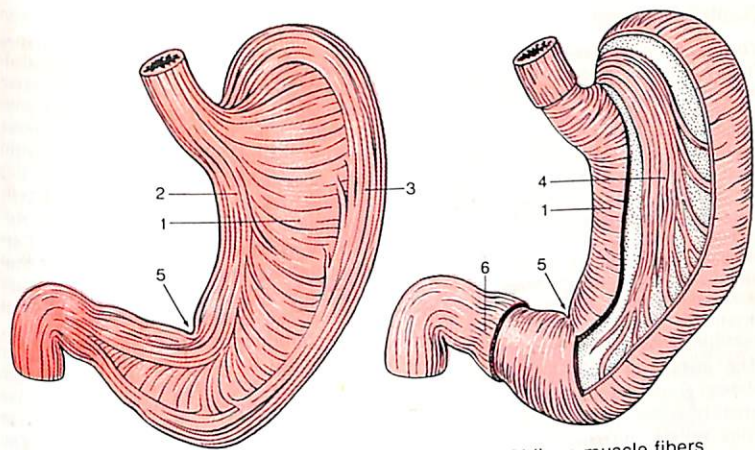
Three main types of stomach configuration occur:

The **J-shaped stomach C** is the commonest. The two curvatures are almost parallel and run first downward and then upward and to the right. The J-form is usually found when patients are examined in the erect position.

The **elongated stomach D** is atonic and is also J-shaped. It is more common in females than males. The angular notch forms an acute angle and extends down to the level of the 4th lumbar vertebra or even lower.

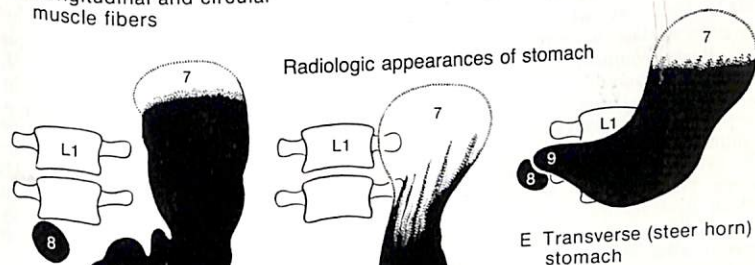
The **transverse type E** (steer horn) has no angular notch. The greater curvature is directed ventrally and has a high position, reaching the level of the 2nd lumbar vertebra. The transverse form often arises if the abdominal wall is tense, in the recumbent position, or if the abdominal organs need more space.

The *mucosal folds F* can be brought into relief radiologically by filling the stomach with small quantities of *radiopaque medium*. They appear coarsened in gastritis. Defects of the mucosa, e.g., in gastric ulcer or tumors, can also be detected in X-ray films. **CDE8** Duodenal bulb (see p. 218), **CDE9** pyloric region (pars pylorica).



A Longitudinal and circular muscle fibers

B Oblique muscle fibers

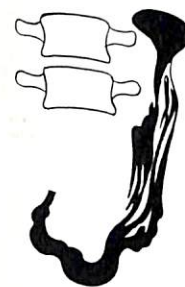


Radiologic appearances of stomach

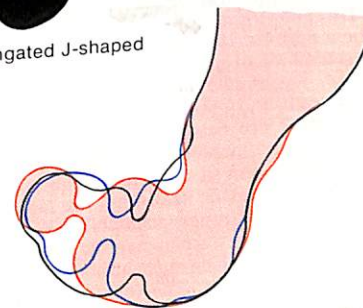
C J-shaped stomach

D Atonic, elongated J-shaped stomach

E Transverse (steer horn) stomach



F Mucosal relief



G Stomach movements (after Braus-Elze)



## Gastric Mucosa

The **mucous membrane of the stomach A 1** (tunica mucosa) produces the protein-splitting enzyme pepsinogen, which is activated by the hydrochloric acid (HCl) of the stomach at a pH of 1.5–2 into **pepsin**. By its actions the connective tissue structures of food are destroyed and fat and muscle fibers are freed for further digestion in the small intestine. Other physiologically active substances originate in the mucosa of the stomach. In part, they regulate the secretory and in part the motor functions of the stomach. Another product of the gastric mucosa is “intrinsic factor” which makes possible the absorption of vitamin B<sub>12</sub>.

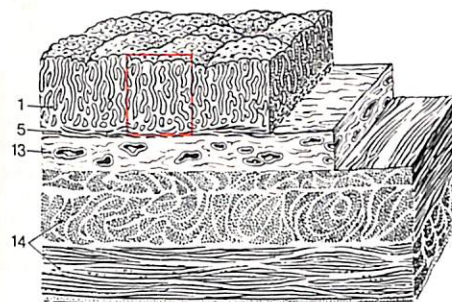
The **surface of the mucous membrane** shows gross **mucosal folds**, numerous areas of millimeter size, the **gastric areas** (fine relief) and small point or slitlike little gastric pits, the **foveolae gastricae BD 2**, which are only visible under a magnifying glass. In each pit several gastric glands (**glandulae gastricae B 3**) are open. The mucosa and the foveolae are covered by a single layer of columnar epithelium **D 4**, which stands out sharply against the pale esophageal epithelium at the cardia, when seen through a gastroscope. The epithelial cells liberate mucus which protects the epithelium against autodigestion. The protection does not persist after death when the mucosa undergoes digestion. The connective tissue of the mucosa is studded with tubular glands which reach as far as the **muscularis mucosae A 5**.

The **glands in the fundus and the body of the stomach** are elongated, densely arranged and contain 3 types of cells. In the neck of the gland are mainly **mucoic cells BD 6**. They form neutral mucus and may show mitoses. It is from there that the regeneration of the epithelial cells takes place. The middle part of the gland has chief cells and parietal cells. The **chief cells BD 7** are basophil (ergastoplasm) and produce pepsinogen. The **parietal cells BD 8** often sit upon the tubuli and produce the gastric acid. They are large and relatively strongly acidophile, showing how rich they are in membranes and mitochondria, which make up about 40% of the cell volume. The cells contain a “tubulovesicular system,” a membrane reserve that is incorporated into the previously deeply folded plasma membrane, during the formation of acid salts. Mi-

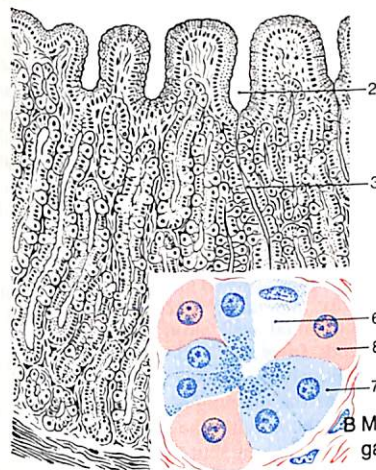
crovilli arise during this process. Using up large amounts of energy, parietal cells release H<sup>+</sup> ions (and also Cl<sup>-</sup> ions) apically to produce gastric acids. At the same time, they also release bicarbonate ions basally. The laterobasal plasmalemma carries receptors for histamine, gastrin and acetylcholine, which stimulate this release process. In addition, parietal cells produce the “intrinsic factor” for resorption of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> into the ileum. **Cardiac glands:** These glands, which are situated in the 1 cm wide cardiac region, are the same shape as the fundal cells, but they contain only mucus-producing cells. They help to form an alkaline barrier zone between the stomach and the esophagus. **Pyloric glands:** The foveolae **C 9** of the pyloric region are deeper than those of the rest of the stomach. The glands **C 10** are very convoluted, lie further apart than in the mucosa of the fundus, and most of their cells produce mucus **C 11**. Cells with “basal granules” **C 12**, endocrine cells, can be demonstrated by special staining techniques (compare p. 146). Lymph follicles are common in the connective tissue of the mucosa. The body and antrum have a different pH; with the help of color indicators it is possible to demonstrate their surgically important boundary and to recognize it through a gastroscope.

**Secretion of gastric juice.** Two distinct phases in gastric secretion can be determined. **Nervous secretion** depending on impulses transmitted by the vagus nerve, is stimulated by sensory impressions, such as taste, smell and sight. This phase can occur even if the stomach is empty, but ceases after the vagus nerve has been cut. **Gastric (digestive) phase secretion**, which is stimulated by the ingestion of food, starts as soon as food enters the stomach. It is triggered off by an endocrine stimulus. The **endocrine cells** of the mucous membrane of the stomach, making up about 1.2% of all epithelia, consist of up to 30% of histamine-forming **ECL cells** and 22% somatostatinergic **D cells**. The serotonin-forming **EC cells** and gastrin-forming **G cells** make up a smaller proportion of the total volume.

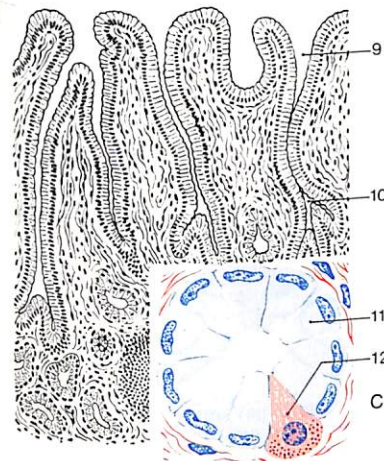
The **muscularis mucosa A 5** may influence the circulation in the mucosa by obstruction of the blood vessels. The larger blood and lymph vessels and the nerves of the mucosa (**submucous plexus**) run in the **submucosa A 13**. **A 14** Tunica muscularis of the stomach.



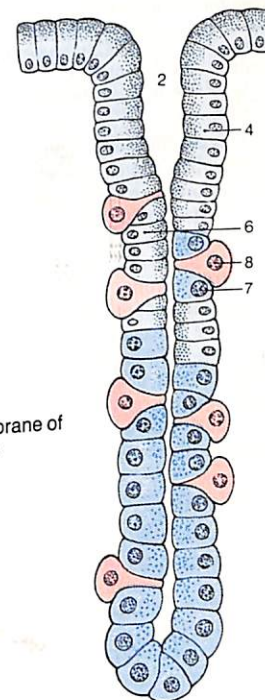
A  
Layers of stomach wall



B Mucous membrane of gastric fundus



C Mucous membrane of pyloric region



D Fundal gland



## Small Intestine

*Digestion and absorption of food* takes place in the small intestine (gut). Digestion is the enzymatic breakdown of nutrients into absorbable components, i. e., of carbohydrates into monosaccharides, of proteins into amino acids and of fat into fatty acids and glycerol. The most important source of the enzymes responsible is the pancreas. To be digested fat must first be emulsified by bile. The chyme is carried along through the intestine by mixing and transporting movements of the intestinal wall. The intestinal mucosa contains various types of epithelial cells specialized for different functions, e.g., some for absorption and mucus formation, and endocrine cells that stimulate pancreatic secretion and produce peristalsis of the gall bladder and the intestine. The connective tissue of the mucosa contains many lymph follicles.

The **small intestine** (gut) follows the stomach. Its length varies between 3 and 4 m, according to the degree of contraction of its longitudinal muscle layer. It consists of the **duodenum A1**, **jejunum A2** and **ileum A3**, which are not clearly delimited from one another. The duodenum lies secondarily almost entirely in the retroperitoneal space on the posterior abdominal wall. In contrast the jejunum and ileum form a mobile intraperitoneal *convolute (coils)* of small intestine inside a space framed by the large intestine (the colon).

## Duodenum

The **duodenum** is C-shaped and winds around the head of the pancreas. It lies mainly to the right of the vertebral column. We distinguish the **superior part B4** at the level of the 12th thoracic – 1st lumbar vertebra, the **descending part B5** at the level of the 3rd–4th lumbar vertebra, and the **horizontal and ascending part B6**, which climbs across the midline to the **duodenojejunal flexure BC7** at the level of the 1st–2nd lumbar vertebra; the levels of the planes apply to the recumbent position during expiration. The beginning of the superior part is dilated – the **duodenal bulb**. It still lies intraperitoneally (hepatoduodenal liga-

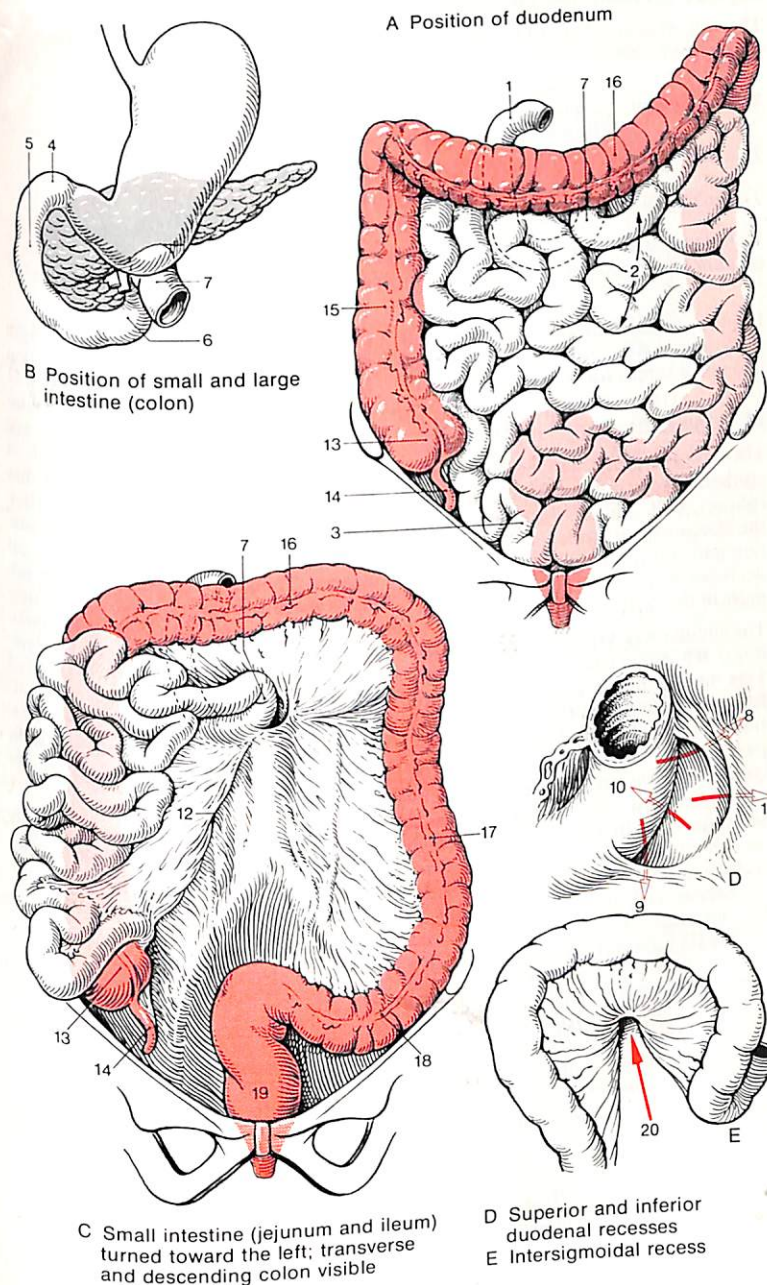
ment, see p. 238). The bile duct and the pancreatic duct, open into the middle of the duodenum. At the transition from the duodenum into the jejunum is the **duodenojejunal flexure ABC7**, where the small intestine turns into the peritoneal cavity. At this site niches may be present in the peritoneum: the **superior D8** and **inferior duodenal recess D9**, the **retroduodenal D10** and **paraduodenal recess D11** into which the intestinal loops may stray in disease and form internal herniae.

## Jejunum and Ileum

The upper  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the intraperitoneal section of the small intestine are called the **jejunum A2**, and its lower  $\frac{1}{3}$  the **ileum A3**. They merge into each other without any definite border. If the abdominal cavity is opened the convoluted small intestine, which is movable at the mesentery, can be pushed aside, compare **A** and **C**.

The **mesentery** is fixed at its root, the **radix mesenterii C12**, to the posterior abdominal wall along a line which extends from the duodenojejunal flexure obliquely downward and to the right as far as the opening of the small intestine into the colon. The radix mesenterii is 15–18 cm long, but the total length of the mesenteric attachment to the small intestine may exceed 4 m. With shortening of the intestine by contraction the mesentery becomes correspondingly folded.

*Sections of the large intestine:* cecum **AC13** with the vermiform process (appendix) **AC14**, the ascending **A15**, transverse **AC16**, descending **C17** and sigmoid colon **C18**, the rectum **C19**. Below the upturned sigmoid is the intersigmoidal recess **E20**.





### Layers of the Wall of the Small Intestine

The wall of the small intestine, like that of the rest of the intestinal tract (compare esophagus p. 208 and stomach, p. 214), consists of the following layers:

*Tunica mucosa* { *Lamina epithelialis* **A 1** (epithelial mucosal layer)  
*Lamina propria* **A 2** (connective tissue mucosal layer)  
*Muscularis mucosae* **A (C-F) 3** (muscular epithelial layer)

*Tela submucosa* **A (C-F) 4** (connective tissue mobile layer)

*Tunica muscularis* { *Stratum circulare* **A (C-F) 5**  
*Stratum longitudinale* **A (A-F) 6**

*Tunica serosa* **A 7** with *tela subserosa* (peritoneum)

or: *tunica adventitia* (in retro- and extraperitoneal position; connective tissue layer)

In the intraperitoneal position, the mesentery **AB 8** carries the blood vessel and nerve supply for the intestine.

### Mucosa of the Small Intestine

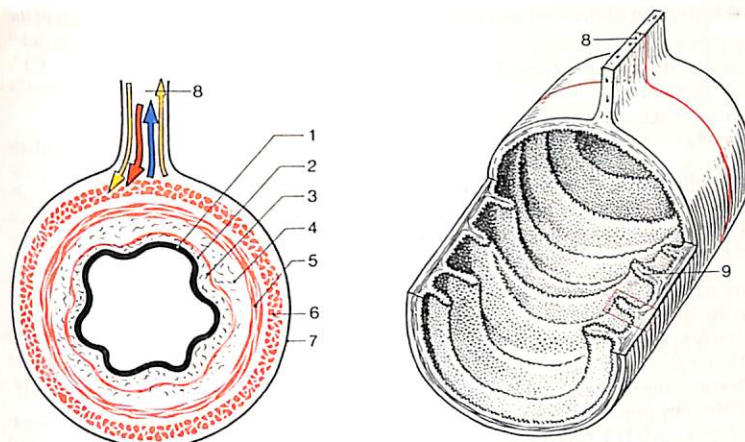
The considerable enlargement of the epithelial surface through mucosal folds (plicae), villi, and the microvilli seen in the electron microscope, facilitates digestion and absorption. The plicae and villi decrease in numbers and size in the lower parts of the small intestine.

The circular **Kerckring folds** (*plicae circulares*) **B 9** project in a semicircle about 1 cm into the lumen of the gut. They are formed by folding of the *mucosa* and *submucosa* and do not completely disappear if the intestine is stretched. They enlarge the surface of the intestine by about one-third. The villi of the small intestine **CDE 10** are 0.5–1.2 mm high and about 0.1 mm in diameter. They are leaflike or finger-shaped processes of the *epithelium* and the *lamina propria* of the *mucosa*. The *muscularis mucosae* **ACDEF 3** does not take part in the formation of the villi. There may be as many as 40 villi per mm<sup>2</sup>, which gives a velvety appearance to the mucosa and increases its surface area 5–6 times. In between the villi lie the 0.2–0.4 mm deep crypts of **Lieberkühn**, intestinal glands **CDF 11**, which reach as far down as the *muscularis mucosae*.

The 3 regions of the small intestine are characterized by the following peculiarities: the **duodenum C** has

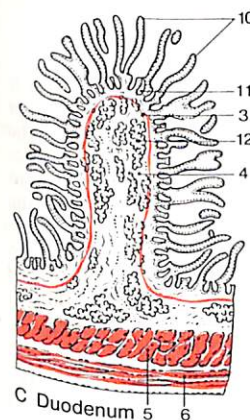
numerous high folds which start 3–5 cm distal to the pylorus. It has high, often leaf-shaped villi **C 10** and its crypts **C 11** are shallow. Only the duodenum contains **Brunner's glands**, **C 12**, which are branching, clustered groups of glands in the *submucosa. The **jejunum D** has numerous high folds and villi **D 10**. They diminish in number and height towards the ileum, while the crypts **D 11** get deeper. Thousands of isolated lymph follicles are distributed over the entire intestine. While the folds and villi **E 10** gradually disappear in the **ileum E**, the lymphoid tissue increases. It is concentrated on the side opposite the mesenteric attachment, mostly as 20 to 30 clusters, each of about 20 lymph follicles **E 13**; these aggregated lymphoid follicles are known as **Peyer's patches**.*

The **colon F**, in contrast, has no villi, its crypts **F 11** are deep and lymph follicles **F 13** are present, particularly in the appendix (see p. 104).

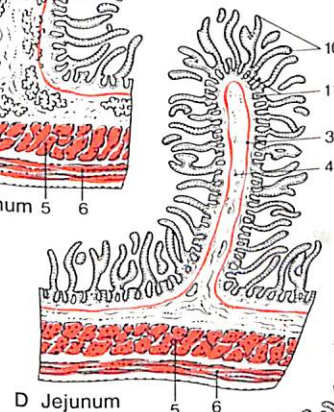


A Cross-section through B: layers of intestinal wall (schematic)

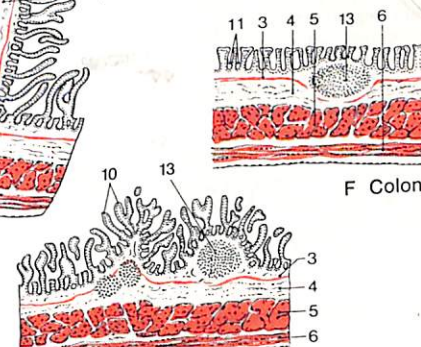
B Upper part of small intestine (jejunum), partly cut away.



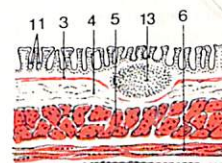
C Duodenum



D Jejunum



E Ileum



F Colon

Survey of layers of wall in various parts of small intestine



### Fine Structure of the Villi and Crypts

The villi **A1** and crypts **A2** appear round or oval in **transverse section B**. In transverse sections the villi are covered by **epithelium** and the crypts have an **epithelial lining** (compare **C, D**).

The **epithelium of the mucous membrane** is one layer thick and consists of tall polygonal cells. We distinguish **secretory** and **absorptive** epithelial cells.

Various types of **secretory epithelial cells** can be distinguished: mucus producing **goblet cells CD3** which are quite common in the crypts as well as the villi: the mucus lubricates the contents of the intestine and thereby protects the mucosa; **granular Paneth cells D4**, which appear in small groups in the fundi of the crypts: they contain apical, acidophilic granules which contain lysozyme, an enzyme that dissolves bacterial walls; "basally granulated cells" **D5** are hormoneproducing cells (gastrointestinal endocrine cells, see p. 172) which may be observed immunohistochemically and produce peptide hormones and/or monoamines which control the motility and secretion of the digestive system.

The **absorptive epithelia CD6** cover mainly the villi. They have a **brush border**, due to a layer of microvilli (**brush border cells**) which are concerned with their absorptive capacity.

The intestinal epithelial cells are only short-lived and are sensitive to injury. They **regenerate** from the epithelium of the crypts where cells undergo mitosis **D7**, and the daughter cells so produced are constantly shifted towards the summit of the villus from where old epithelial cells are shed into the intestinal contents. The migration of a cell from the crypt to the summit of a villus takes about 36 h. Every 2–4 days, the whole intestinal tract epithelium is replaced. It can be assumed that the enzymes of the shed epithelia play an active part in digestion.

The **connective tissue of the mucosa** is mainly reticular connective tissue con-

taining lymphocytes and other cells of the **immunologic system**, as well as arterioles **C8**, capillaries **C9**, venules **C10**, lymphatics **C11** and terminal branches of the submucous venous plexus.

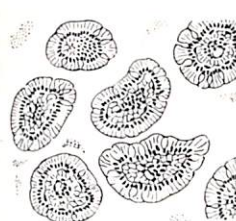
Muscle fibers from the **muscularis mucosae** radiate into the connective tissue of the villi and extend into the basement membrane of the epithelium. When the muscle fibers contract, which they do every 10–15 seconds, the villi become shortened, their surface is folded and venous blood and lymph are squeezed into the vessels of the submucosa; "**villous pump**." As soon as the vessels are refilled the villi become erect once more.

The **submucosa A13** carries the **submucous nerve plexus** as well as widemeshed networks of major blood and lymph vessels.

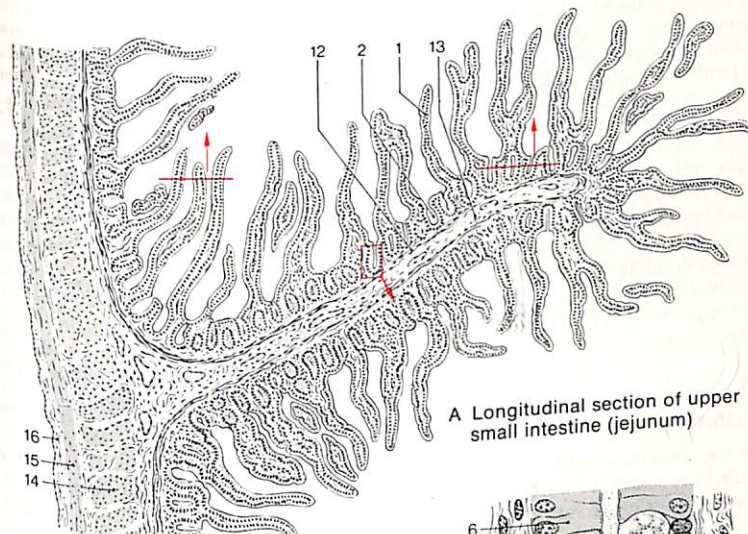
### Muscle Layer of the Small Intestine

The **inner circular muscle layer A14** is more strongly developed than the **outer layer of longitudinal muscle A15**. The layers act as antagonists so that contraction of the longitudinal muscle shortens and dilates the relevant portion of the gut, and contraction of the circular muscle narrows and elongates that part of the intestine. Between the two muscle layers lies the **myenteric plexus** (of **Auerbach**) consisting of nerve fibers and nerve cells. **A16** Peritoneal covering.

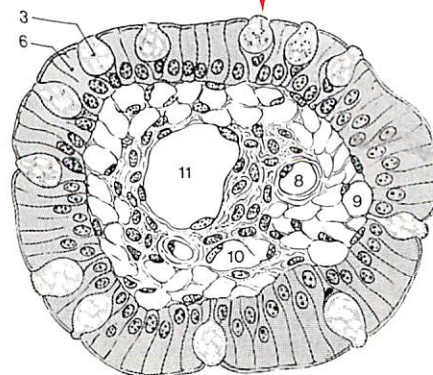
**Movements of the small intestine.** The contents of the intestine are mixed and moved by both **pendulum** and **segmentation movements**. Transportation takes place by **peristaltic waves**, i. e., orderly shifting zones of contraction. Peristaltic waves are **rolling movements** which pass quickly over large sections of the small intestine.



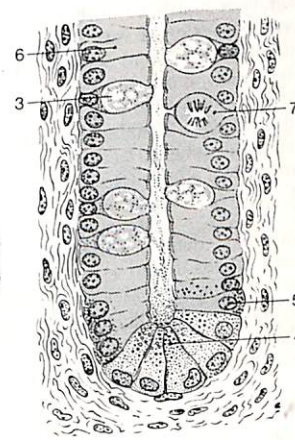
B Cross-section – left, through villi; right, through crypts



A Longitudinal section of upper small intestine (jejunum)



C Cross-section through villus, section from A



D Longitudinal section through crypt, section from A



### Blood and Lymph Vessels of the Villi

In the connective tissue of the villi a network of *capillaries* lies below the epithelium. It is supplied by one or more *arteries* which run undivided to the summit of the villus. A central *vein* returns the blood to the portal system; and there are *arteriovenous shunts* at the summit of the villus. The bulk of the material absorbed by the epithelium, namely amino acids, sugar, free fatty acids and glycerol, is carried in the blood via the portal vein into the liver. The *endothelium B1* of the blood capillaries is *fenestrated*. Inside the vascular coat is a lymph vessel (yellow), the "*central lacteal*", which contains chyle – the lymph drained from the intestine. Fatty acids are resynthesized in the mucosa into triglycerides and are carried with the lymph stream via the thoracic duct into the blood. During the process of emulsification of fats in the intestine, whole droplets smaller than  $0.5\mu\text{m}$  are formed, which can also penetrate through the epithelium into the lymphatics.

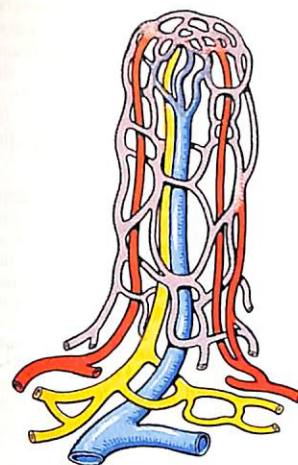
### Fine Structure of the Absorptive Epithelia

In the absorptive epithelium the **border cells** have a striated border  $1.2\text{--}1.5\mu\text{m}$  long, consisting of very densely packed **microvilli B2** (about 3000 of them on a single cell, about 200 million per  $\text{mm}^2$  surface). They enlarge the surface area of the epithelium 30 times and thereby help to create a total surface area of the small intestine of some  $100\text{m}^2$ . The microvilli are covered in a layer of glycoprotein (the *glycocalyx*), which forms highly branched, densely arranged filaments and contains digestive enzymes, so that the active surface area is increased and becomes a "resorption agent". The *glycocalyx* mainly contains disaccharidases (which break up disaccharides into resorbable monosaccharides) and peptidases (which break up peptides into amino acids). The fatty acids and monoglycerides that arise in the small intestine during the breakdown of nutri-

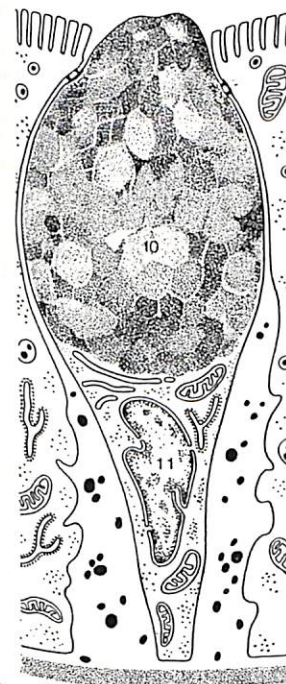
tional fats are taken up into the agranular endoplasmic reticulum, resynthesized into triglycerides (producing droplets of fat), transformed into chylomicrons (glycolipoproteins, with a covering of hydrophilic protein from the granular endoplasmic reticulum) in the Golgi apparatus, secreted as droplets through the lateral plasmalemma, and transported beyond the basal lamina in the lymph vessels. The absorption of material from the intestine takes place mainly by *active transport* against the concentration gradient. Specific types of facilitated diffusion also play a part. Absorption by *membrane vesiculation B3* (*pinocytosis*) can be demonstrated with the electron microscope. Small vesicles of plasmalemma containing material are detached from the plasma membrane of the cell. In the reverse process (*crinocytosis*) material (here chylomicrons) is extruded into the intercellular space after the membrane of the vesicle has fused with the plasmalemma **B4** on the inner side of the cell. The intercellular space is completely shut off from the lumen of the gut by specialized cell contacts: *zonulae adherentes B6* and *occludentes B5*. Eventually material that has been absorbed penetrates the basement membrane **B7** and enters a blood capillary, or (when fat is being digested, producing chylomicrons) a lymph capillary. **B8** Golgi apparatus, **B9** mitochondrion.

### Fine Structure of the Mucus-Producing Epithelia

The part of a **goblet cell** pointing toward the lumen of the intestine is filled with *mucus particles C10*, which are surrounded by a membrane from the Golgi apparatus (compare **B8**). With increasing intracellular pressure the cell membrane bursts and the mucus enters the intestine. The cytoplasm and the nucleus **C11** are displaced toward the base of the cell. The cytoplasm surrounds the mucus particles like a goblet.



A Blood vessels and lymphatics of villus (after Spanner)



C Electron-microscopic appearance of mucus-producing intestinal epithelial cell (schematic)



B Electron-microscopic appearance of absorptive epithelial cell of intestinal mucosa (after W. Schmidt and Zetterquist) (schematic)



## Large Intestine

Digestion and absorption are completed in the small intestine and the large intestine (colon) contains the indigestible residues of the foodstuffs which are being decomposed by bacteria (fermentation and putrefaction). The main task of the colon is the vital reabsorption of water and electrolytes which have entered the intestines with the digestive juices.

The **large intestine** is 1.5–1.8 m long. It begins with the ileocecal (colic) valve (see p. 228). The **appendix** (vermiform appendix; see p. 230) **A2** hangs from the **cecum** **A1** as a dilated intestinal pouch. The cecum is followed by the colon, which frames the convolutions of the small intestine. The **ascending colon** **A3** runs close to the anterior abdominal wall on the right side under the liver; at the **right** is the **colic flexure** **B4**. As the **transverse colon** **A5** it runs in an arch along the anterior abdominal wall to the left upper corner of the abdominal cavity. At the **left colic flexure** **B6**, at the level of the lower pole of the spleen, it turns at right angles into the **descending colon** **A7** which, covered by the convolutions of the small intestine, passes downward and posteriorly along the left lateral abdominal wall. The attachment of the left flexure, the **phrenicocolic ligament**, forms the floor of the splenic niche. The bend of the colon at the left flexure represents an obstacle for the passage of the intestinal contents and increased peristalsis is required to overcome it. The **sigmoid colon** **AB8** lies in the left iliac fossa and enters the lesser pelvis in an S-shaped loop. The **rectum** **A9** starts in front of the 2nd–3rd sacral vertebra and ends at the **anus**. **A10** Duodenojejunal flexure, **A11** root of the mesentery, **A12** ileum.

**B** The full colon effectively “floats” on the abdominal viscera and its position is higher than when empty.

**Features of the large intestine.** The external longitudinal muscles are compressed into three 1 cm wide longitudinal bands, the **teniae coli**. The **tenia libera** **D13** is seen anteriorly, the **tenia mesocolica** **D14** lies medial to the ascending and descending colon, and on the transverse colon it is related to the origin of the mesocolon **A15**. The **tenia omentalis** **D16** lies pos-

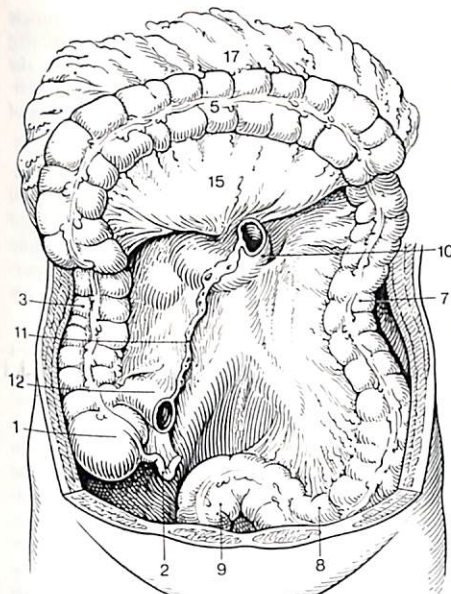
teriorly and medially at the transverse colon below the origin of the great omentum **A17**. The colon is sacculated (**haustra**) and has folds which protrude into the lumen, the **semilunar folds** **D18**. There are small projecting appendages of fat from the subserosa of the colon, the **appendices epiploicae** **D19**.

**Peritoneum.** The ascending and descending colon lie behind the peritoneum, i. e., only in front are they covered by peritoneum **D20**. Their posterior wall is fixed to the posterior wall of the trunk. The cecum may be fixed to the posterior wall of the trunk or it may be mobile by means of a short mesocolon. The vermiform appendix and the transverse and sigmoid colon lie within the peritoneum and have a **transverse** and **sigmoid mesocolon**. The rectum is initially covered anteriorly by the peritoneum, but later lies outside the peritoneum.

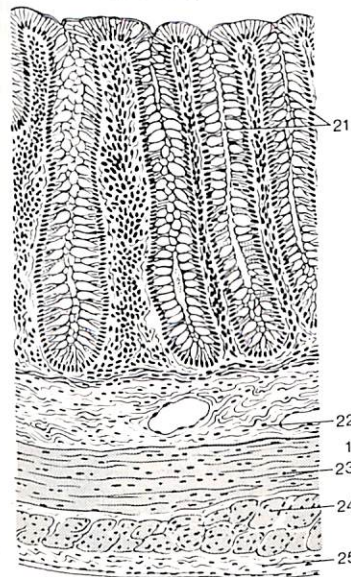
**Mucosa.** There are no villi in the large intestine. The **crypts** **C21** are very deep (about 0.5 mm) and lie very close together. The epithelium of the crypts consists almost entirely, and that of the surface for the most part, of **goblet cells**, which produce lubricating mucus. The remaining epithelia have a **ciliated border** of microvilli, an expression of their great water-absorptive function. There are solitary lymphoid nodules. **C22** Submucosa, **C23** internal circular muscles, **C24** tenia, **C25** subserosa.

**Water reabsorption.** The water and sodium ions released by the small intestine undergo continuous reabsorption. The sodium that is actively transported through the lateral cell membrane of the intestinal epithelia into the intercellular spaces produces a gradient that draws water (and chloride ions) out of the intestinal lumen through the epithelium and into the capillaries. The absorption of water and electrolytes is continued by the superficial epithelial cells in the large intestine (1 l of liquid per day enters the large intestine from the small intestine, but less than 100 ml is excreted).

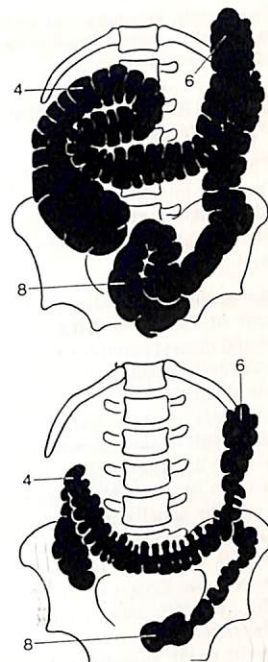
**Movements of the large intestine.** The intestinal contents are moved along in the colon as they thicken by slow peristalsis and antiperistalsis. By means of a few transport movements, the intestinal contents are moved into the distal part of the colon.



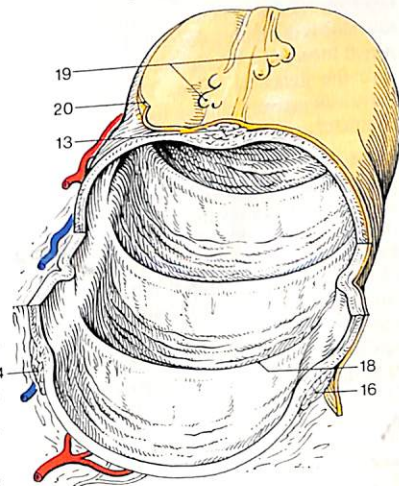
A Position of large intestine



C Section through intestinal wall



B Radiograph of large intestine: top filled; below after colon evacuation (after Töndury)



D Ascending colon, partly cut away



The cecum, appendix and rectum will be described in greater detail because of their medical importance.

### Cecum and the Ileocecal Valve (Colic Valve)

The **cecum**, the pouchlike, widest part of the large intestine, is 6–8 cm long. It lies on the right upper part of the ilium (right iliac fossa) near the anterior abdominal wall.

**Ileocecal (colic) valve BC1.** The distal part of the ileum **AB2** protrudes as a round or oval papilliform projection (the colic or ileocecal valve) into the cecum. It pushes aside and forces apart the circular muscle layer of the cecum which, in turn, surrounds the lower end of the ileum like a muscular clamp. The ileum, together with its mucosa, forms an upper and a lower lip, which end in a posterior and an anterior frenulum in which the circular muscle fibers of the cecum are again united. The ileocecal valve lies in front of the mesocolic band (tenia mesocolica), the muscle fibers of which are inserted partly in the muscular valve of the circular muscle fibers of the cecum and which can open the end of the ileum. Some of them radiate into the longitudinal muscle layer of the lower ileum. Their contraction assists in dilating the end of the ileum which forms an ampulla immediately before the ileocecal valve. The ileocecal valve can actively change its shape like a sphincter.

Shortening of the longitudinal muscle layer of the invaginated end of the ileum and of the tenia results in shortening of the papilla and dilatation of its ostium. Contraction of the circular muscle layer of the ileum and cecum results in extension of the papilla and closure of the ostium. The sphincter opens periodically and allows the contents of the small intestine, i. e., of the ileum, to pass into the large intestine, the cecum, and hinders reflux. Furthermore, if the cecum is tightly filled, a mechanical valvular mechanism can come into operation to prevent reflux, as the lips of the valve become

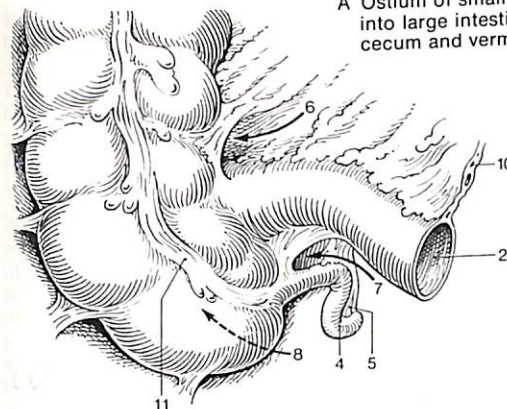
tightly pressed against each other. Contraction of the arched circular muscle fibers produces elevation and shortening of the cecum and so helps to empty the funnel-shaped outlet **BC3** of the appendix **A4**. The red line in **B** marks the line of the section in **C**.

**Peritoneum.** While the ileum lies intraperitoneally the cecum is often fused with the posterior abdominal wall: fixed cecum (*cecum fixum*). However, quite often there is a “mesocecum” which permits the cecum to become mobile, *cecum mobile*.

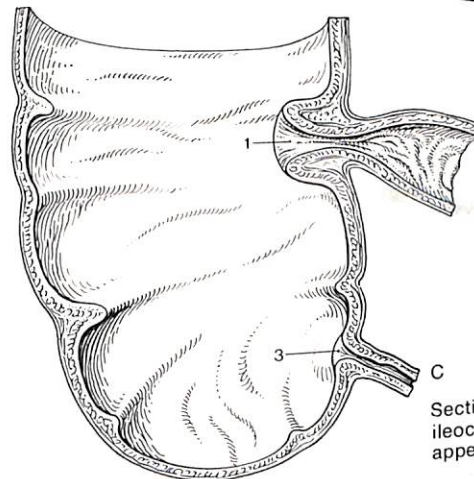
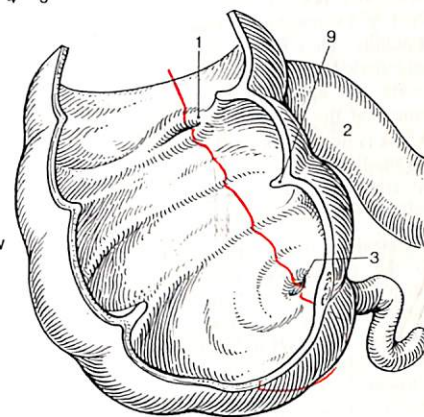
The **vermiform appendix A4** has a **mesoappendix A5** and this can account, at least in part, for the considerable variability of its position (see p. 230). Above and below the opening of the ileum into the cecum there is a peritoneal fold the **ileocecal fold** directed toward the appendix, behind which there are two peritoneal pockets, the **superior A6** and **inferior A7 ileocecal recesses**. Frequently on the right side behind the cecum or the ascending colon there is a further peritoneal space, the **retrocecal recess A8**. The cecum already contains **semilunar folds B9**. **A10** Mesentery, **A11** tenia libera.

Fine structure of the vermiform appendix, p. 230.

A Ostium of small intestine (ileum) into large intestine (colon): cecum and vermiform appendix



B Anterior wall of A resected: view of ileocecal valve (ostium of ileum)



C Section through B (along red line): ileocecal valve and origin of appendix cut longitudinally



## Vermiform Appendix

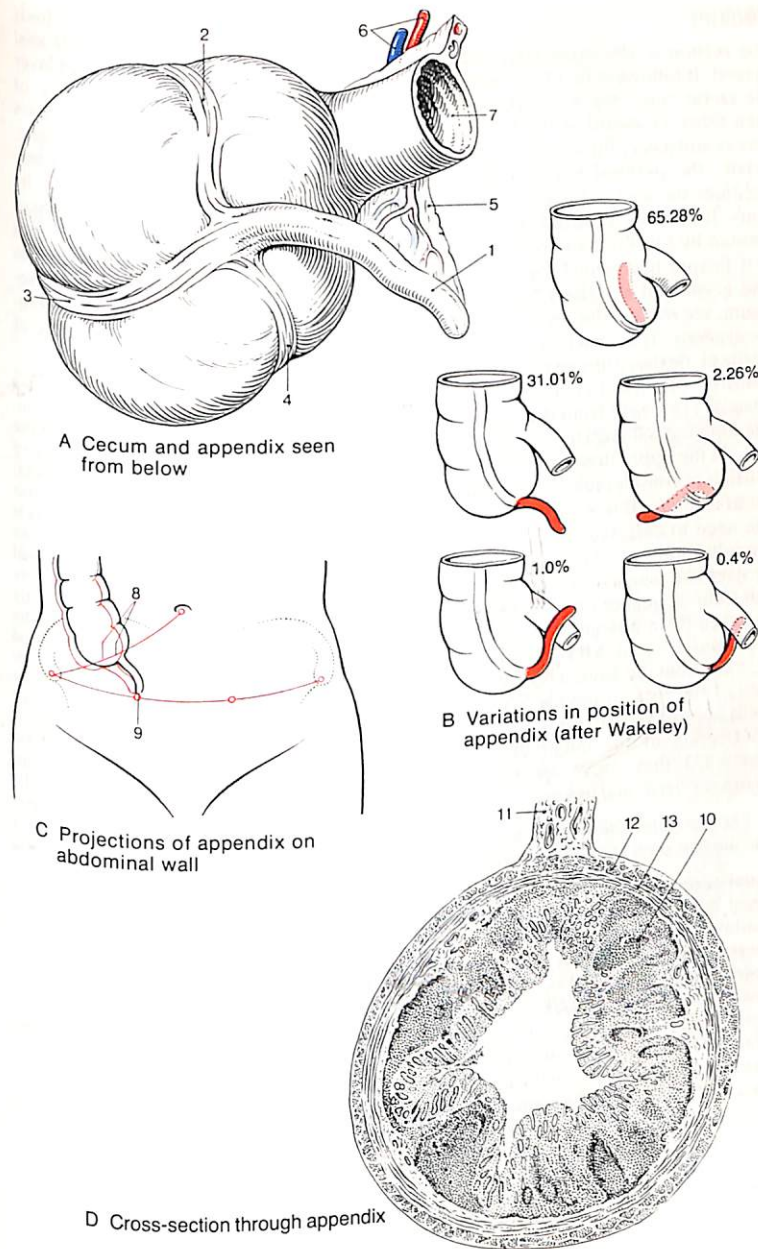
The **appendix A1**, part of the large intestine, arises like a funnel from the end of the cecum during fetal development, or sometimes in childhood, but only rarely in an adult. As a rule the appendix in an adult has a narrow exit on the medial wall of the cecum, but it is still possible for some of the contents of the intestine to pass into the appendix. The *mouth of the appendix* may be surrounded by a small, semilunar fold of mucosa. The appendix is about 8 cm (2–20 cm) long and 0.5–1 cm thick. The 3 tenia of the colon, the *tenia libera A2*, *omentalis A3* and *mesocolica A4* run across the cecum to meet in a star-shape at the origin of the appendix. They form a closed longitudinal muscle layer in its wall. A surgeon can locate the appendix by following the course of the tenia. The *mesoappendix A5*, a continuation of the mesentery of the small intestine, carries the appendicular artery and vein **A6** to the appendix behind the end of the ileum **A7**.

The **position** of the appendix in relation to the pelvis, the intestine and the peritoneum varies so greatly that it is hardly possible to indicate its “normal” position. In about 65% of cases the appendix is turned up behind the cecum, the *retrocecal position*; in 31% it hangs across the linea terminalis into the lesser pelvis, the *descending type*; in more than 2% it lies horizontally behind the cecum, the *paracolic position*; and in 1% in front of and in less than 1% behind the end of the ileum.

**Projection of the appendix on the abdominal wall.** It is important for the diagnosis of appendicitis to know the position of the appendix in relation to the abdominal wall (pain on pressure and muscular tension of the abdominal wall). In the normal position of the cecum the *origin* of the appendix is projected on the center of a line between the right anterior superior iliac spine and the umbilicus (*McBurney's point C8*). *McBurney's point* is very often referred to as the point at the lateral third of this line (red line in

C). The differences in these descriptions reflect the variability of the position of the cecum and are of no great clinical significance. In the *descending type* the *tip of the appendix* is projected roughly towards the border between the right and the middle third of a line connecting the two anterior superior iliac spines (*Lanz's point C9*).

**Fine structure.** The mucous membrane of the appendix, like that of the rest of the large intestine, has crypts and no villi. But the appendix in man does not serve either for digestion or absorption of food; it is part of the *immunologic system* (see p. 105). It is sometimes called the “*tonsil of the intestine*”. The mucosa is full of lymph follicles (*aggregated follicles D10*) which also penetrate into the submucosa. As an organ of the defense mechanisms against infection, the appendix sometimes reacts in a violent and hyperactive manner with a danger of suppuration and of perforation of its wall into the abdominal cavity. In about 25% of the population the lumen is partly and 8% completely obliterated. Narrowing of the lumen is due to hypertrophy of the lymph follicles. Cell debris and residues of the intestinal contents are common in the lumen of the appendix. **D11** Mesoappendix, **D12** external longitudinal muscle layer, **D13** internal circular muscle layer.





## Rectum

The **rectum** is 15–20 cm long and is S-shaped. It follows at first the convexity of the sacral bone, the *sacral flexure*, and then turns backward at the level of the coccyx and passes through the floor of the pelvis, the *perineal flexure*. Finally, it becomes the *anal canal* and ends at the anus. It also has a projection to the left formed by the Kohlrausch fold. The sacral flexure lies behind the peritoneum and is covered anteriorly by the peritoneum, see *rectouterine* and *rectovesicular excavations* (pouches) (p. 314). The perineal flexure runs extraperitoneally. Haustra (sacculations) and teniae (bands) are absent from the rectum, and the longitudinal muscle layer is continuous. In the upper third of the rectum is a portion of considerable extensibility, the *rectal ampulla*. If it is filled the feeling of the need to defecate occurs. Below the ampulla three constant transverse folds project like wings into the lumen of the intestine: 2 smaller ones on the left and between them a larger one on the right, *Kohlrausch's fold AB1*, at a distance of 5–8 cm from the anus. Through contraction of the circular muscle fibers **C2** the folds approximate to each other; and on contraction of the longitudinal muscle fibers **C3** they move apart from one another ("*rectoanal pylorus*").

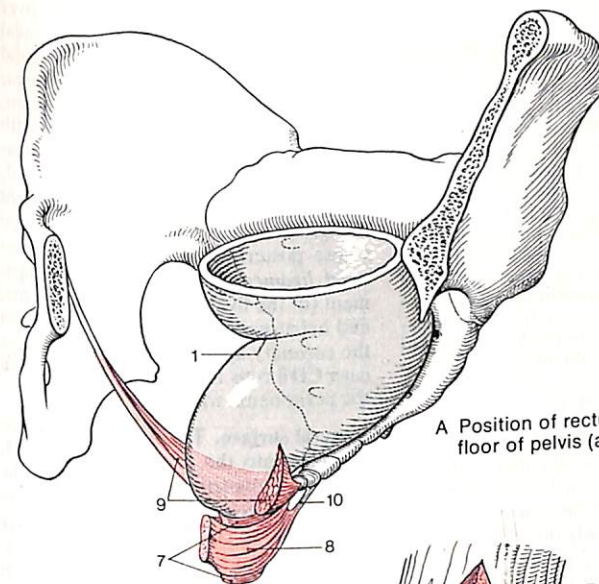
**B** On the right: the transverse folds and the anus as seen through a *rectoscope*.

**Anal canal.** In its lower two-thirds it is lined by a thin, lightly keratinized skin containing sensory innervation, which merges into the external skin. The latter reaches into the end of the anal canal. It has a cornifying, pigmented epidermis, hairs with sebaceous glands and sweat glands. The mucosa of the colon reaches the upper third of the anal canal. In this zone 6–10 roll-shaped longitudinal folds, the *anal columns B4* arch into the lumen. They are thrown up by knots of vessels and are covered by several layers of non-keratinized squamous epithelium. At their lower ends the anal columns are joined together by transverse folds. The

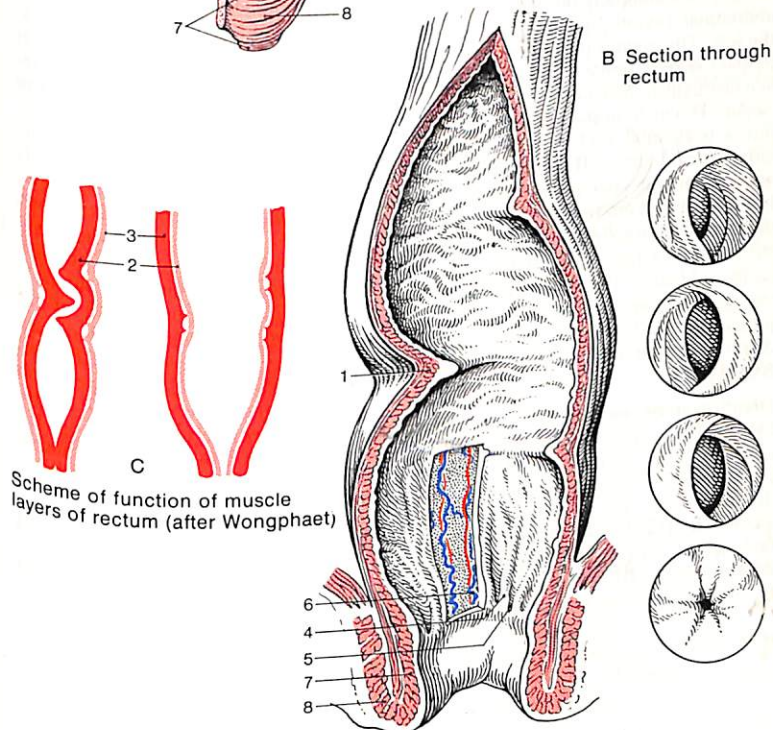
grooves between the longitudinal folds end in shallow pockets **B5** at their anal ends. They are covered with a single layer of columnar epithelium. The region of the anal column, which is about 1 cm long, is called the *hemorrhoidal zone*. Branches of the *superior rectal artery* descend in the anal columns. They lie beneath the mucosa and form the bases of *internal hemorrhoids* (piles). The arteries are connected by nodular arteriovenous anastomoses **B6** with the anorectal venous plexus. The columns form a cavernous body which contributes to closure of the anus.

**Closure of the anus.** The anal canal is actively closed by smooth muscle fibers (the continuation of the circular muscle layer of the intestine), the *internal sphincter muscle of the anus AB7* and by striated muscle fibers, the *external sphincter muscle of the anus AB8*. The internal sphincter of the anus is about 2 cm high, and its hard lower edge can be palpated in the patient. The longitudinal muscle layer of the intestine radiates partly into the internal sphincter muscle and partly into the perianal skin which it draws into the anus. Above the external and the internal sphincter muscles lies the *puborectal muscle A9*. This is the most important muscle of the sphincter, it closes the anus and forms part of the *levator ani muscles* (see p. 308). It pulls the perineal flexure forward in a loop (closure). If the muscle relaxes the anus moves backward (opening). Damage to the puborectal muscle has a more serious effect on rectal incontinence than a lesion of any of the other sphincter muscles. Part of the *pubococcygeal muscle* also takes part in anal closure. The muscles are under permanent tension except during the act of defecation. **A10** Anococcygeal ligament.

**Defecation.** Defecation is preceded by transport of feces into the rectum. The increasing tension of the rectal wall acts as a stimulus to defecation. The involuntary sphincter muscles are relaxed by reflex action and the other intestinal muscles contract. The external sphincter and the levator ani muscles are relaxed voluntarily and pressure is applied by the abdominal muscles.



A Position of rectum in relation to floor of pelvis (after Stelzner)



B Section through rectum

C Scheme of function of muscle layers of rectum (after Wongphaet)



## Liver

The liver and the pancreas are the large intestinal glands. The liver acts as an *exocrine gland* in respect of production of bile. The bile acids emulsify fat in the intestine. The bile pigments are end products of the hemoglobin catabolism. Bile accumulates in the gall bladder and is discharged into the duodenum as needed. The most important action of the liver is its role as the largest organ involved in carbohydrate, protein and fat metabolism. These functions consume about 12% of the total oxygen content of the blood. The temperature of the blood in the liver veins reaches about 40°C. Compression or contusions can produce dangerous tears in the soft hepatic tissue. The liver is held together by a tense connective tissue capsule – *Glisson's capsule*.

**Liver.** The lower edge of the liver runs laterally along the costal arch. From the point where the medioclavicular line crosses the line of the 8th rib the liver margin runs obliquely through the upper abdominal region (the epigastrium) to the left. The greater part of the liver lies below the right dome of the diaphragm. We distinguish the convex *diaphragmatic surface D* which, in the upright position, has a horizontal surface and a curved anterolateral surface *B* that points downward from the *visceral surface C*. The latter ascends from the sharp lower edge obliquely backward and abuts posteriorly with a blunt edge on the diaphragmatic surface. Most of the liver is covered by the *peritoneum*, but posteriorly it is joined to the tendinous center of the diaphragm (the *area nuda* or bare area *BCD1*).

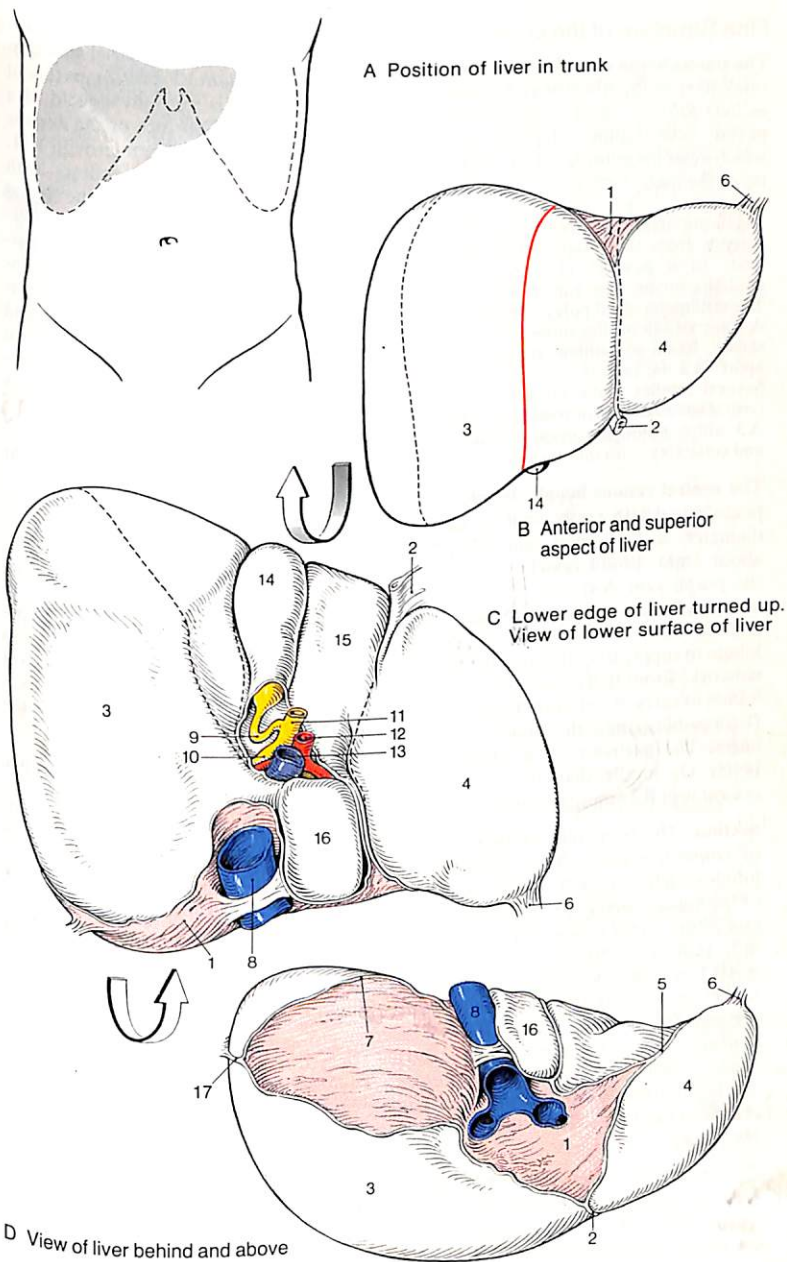
**Diaphragmatic surface D.** The reflect folds between the visceral and parietal peritoneum of the liver and the parietal peritoneum form band-like structures on the diaphragm. The *hepatic falciform ligament BCD2* divides the anterior surface of the liver superficially into right *BCD3* and left *BCD4* lobes of the liver. It is attached to the inner surface of the abdominal wall and its lower margin takes up the *ligamentum teres hepatis* and extends toward the umbilicus. The falciform ligament forms the *triangular liga-*

*ments* on the superior surface of the liver beneath the diaphragm. This peritoneal reflection which connects the liver and the diaphragm, delimits the *bare area*, which is not covered by peritoneum. There, the liver is in direct contact with the diaphragm. The *left triangular ligament D5* runs in a connective tissue cord, the *fibrous appendix BCD6*. The *right triangular ligament* forms a blunt angle whose posterior fold forms the *hepatorenal ligament D7*. The falciform ligament (of the liver), triangular ligaments, and hepatorenal ligament together form the *coronary ligament*. The *inferior vena cava CD8* runs to the diaphragm behind the peritoneum within the bare area.

**Visceral surface.** The *porta hepatis*, the entrance into the liver *C9, 10, 11–13*, forms a cross-connection between the sagittal grooves which together are shaped like an H. The *left sagittal groove* accommodates the remnants of fetal vessels; anteriorly the *ligamentum teres hepatis* in *BC2*, a remnant of the umbilical vein, posteriorly the *venous ligament* of the liver, a remnant of the venous duct. The *right sagittal groove* contains the *gall bladder BC14* anteriorly, and posteriorly the *inferior vena cava CD8*. The *quadrate lobe C15* bulges out in front of the porta hepatis, the *caudate lobe CD16* behind it. The lower surface of the left hepatic lobe *BCD4* bears the imprint of the stomach, that of the right lobe *BCD3* of the superior duodenal flexure, kidney, adrenal gland and of the right colic flexure. The *hepatoduodenal ligament* opens over the porta hepatis like a tent and affords space for the vessels passing through the porta to divide into two main branches (margin of the areas supplied: red line in *B*).

*C9* Cystic duct, *C10* hepatic duct, *C11* choledochal duct, *C12* proper hepatic artery, *C13* portal vein, *D17* right triangular ligament.

**Segmental structure.** The liver is divided into variable segments which follow the divisions of the portal vein. Most of the segments reach the liver surface (broken lines in *B* and *C*). The roots of the hepatic veins run within the segmental borders.





## Fine Structure of the Liver

The parenchyma and blood vessels form small *liver units*, which may be regarded as *liver lobules* (central vein lobules) or portal vein lobules depending upon which vessel is considered to be the center of the unit.

A delicate, sponge-like *connective tissue web* extends from the tough *capsule* into the liver. In it pass blood vessels and the epithelia of the liver run in its interstices. The millimeter-sized polygonal *liver lobules* **A1** are visible on the surface. The section shows blood-containing points 2–3 mm apart: **A2** the *central veins* of the lobules. Several lobules make up a *lobe* **A**. The *central veins* **A2** lead into intermediate veins **A3** which ultimately drain via sublobular and collecting veins into the hepatic veins.

The *central venous hepatic lobule* **A1** is pear-shaped with a polygonal surface. Its diameter is 1–1.5 mm and its length about 2 mm. **Blood vessels**, branches of the *portal vein* **A4**, and of the *hepatic artery* **A5**, as well as *interlobular veins* and *arteries*, reach the thicker end of the lobule to supply the surrounding vascular network. From there branches enter the lobule to carry blood from the portal vein (*vasa publica*) into the sinusoidal capillaries. The periphery of a lobule has a better  $O_2$  supply than its center. The *central vein* **B2** emerges from the base.

**Section.** The triangular *periportal areas* of *connective tissue* **BD6** between the lobules each contain 3 vessels: branches of the *hepatic artery* **A5**, *hepatica propria* and of the *portal vein* **A4** and a *bile duct* **A7** (*Glisson's triad*). Isolated veins **ABD3** are *intermediate, sublobular or collecting veins*. In the center is the *central vein* (intralobular vein) **ABD2**. The *epithelia* form *cribrate laminae*, 1–2 cells thick, which radiate from the center of the lobule into the periphery. Between them run the 350–500  $\mu$ m long *sinusoidal capillaries*.

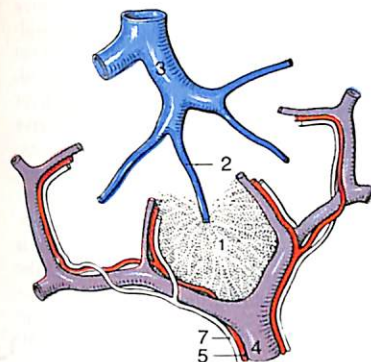
Between the vessel wall **EF8** of the sinusoid capillaries **EF9** and the surface of the liver cell is a space, *Disse's space* **EF10**, in which fat storage cells (Ito cells)

lie, which preferentially accumulate exogenous vitamin A. The vessel wall consists of *endothelium* **EF8** with gaps (about 100 nm) which is virtually devoid of a basal lamina. The surface of the hepatic epithelium **E11** contains microvilli **F11**. These come into direct contact with material which enters from the blood **EF9** through the capillary gaps into *Disse's space* **EF10**. There are also the *stellate Kupffer cells* **E12** within the endothelium. They are phagocytic, protecting the liver cells among other things, and are probably involved in the breakdown of hemoglobin. The exchange of materials involved in metabolic processes takes place on the blood vessel side of the liver cell. The substances involved in the production of bile, however, pass right through the cells.

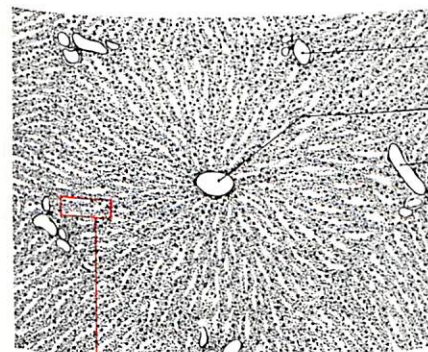
The *portal vein hepatic lobule* (triangle in **B** and **C**) is grouped around a *Glisson's triad*, i. e., with respect to a bile duct around the *excretory passage* of an "acinus" of the "liver gland". The three branches of the portal vein from *Glisson's triad* form the axis of an *acinus of the liver* **C**. Many observations based on liver pathology regard the liver acinus as the liver unit.

The *bile canaliculi* (capillaries) **EF13** are tubelike spaces without walls of their own between the hepatic epithelial cells. Bile flows from the center toward the periphery of the lobule in the interlobular bile ducts **A7**, which have an epithelial lining. **F14** Cells nucleus, **F15** Golgi apparatus.

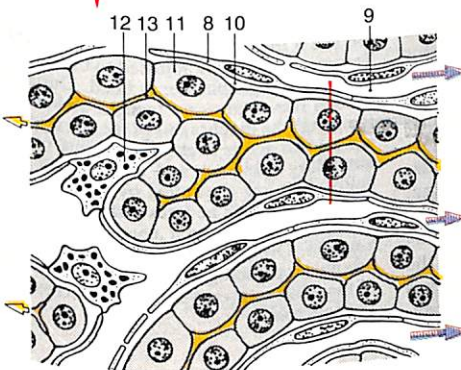
**Spatial course of functions in the central venous hepatic lobule:** In the *external zone*, the metabolism is highly active, and less so in the *internal zone*. After a meal, glycogen quickly increases in the external zone, and is later stored in the internal zone. Sugar is released first from the internal zone, then from the external zone. Anoxic fat formation (a disturbance resulting from  $O_2$  deficiency) affects the internal zone (reduced  $O_2$  supply). Animals show *circadian rhythms* more clearly. Similar spatial differences are also seen in the three zones of the *hepatic acinus* (important in pathology).



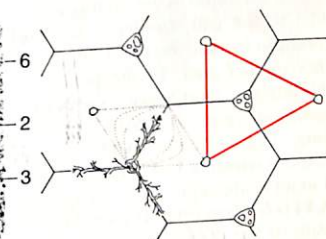
A Part of collecting lobule (after Pfuhl)



B Section through the liver seen through a magnifying glass

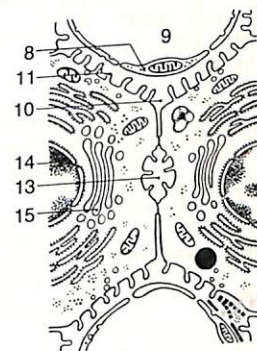


E Liver cells and capillaries, section from C



C Portal vein hepatic lobule (red) and acinus (dotted)

D Section through hepatic lobule from B



F Electron micrograph of hepatic cells and capillaries



The *vessels and nerves* which enter the *porta hepatis* run in the **hepatoduodenal ligament**. The hepatic artery **A1** gives off branches to the gall bladder **A2**. Bile (hepatic) duct **A3** and in the depths the portal vein **A4**. **A5** Arrow in the epiploic foramen, **A6** common hepatic artery, **A7** celiac artery, **A8** left gastric artery, **A9** splenic artery, **A10** superior mesenteric vein, **A11** inferior mesenteric vein, **A12** splenic vein.

### Bile Ducts and Gall Bladder

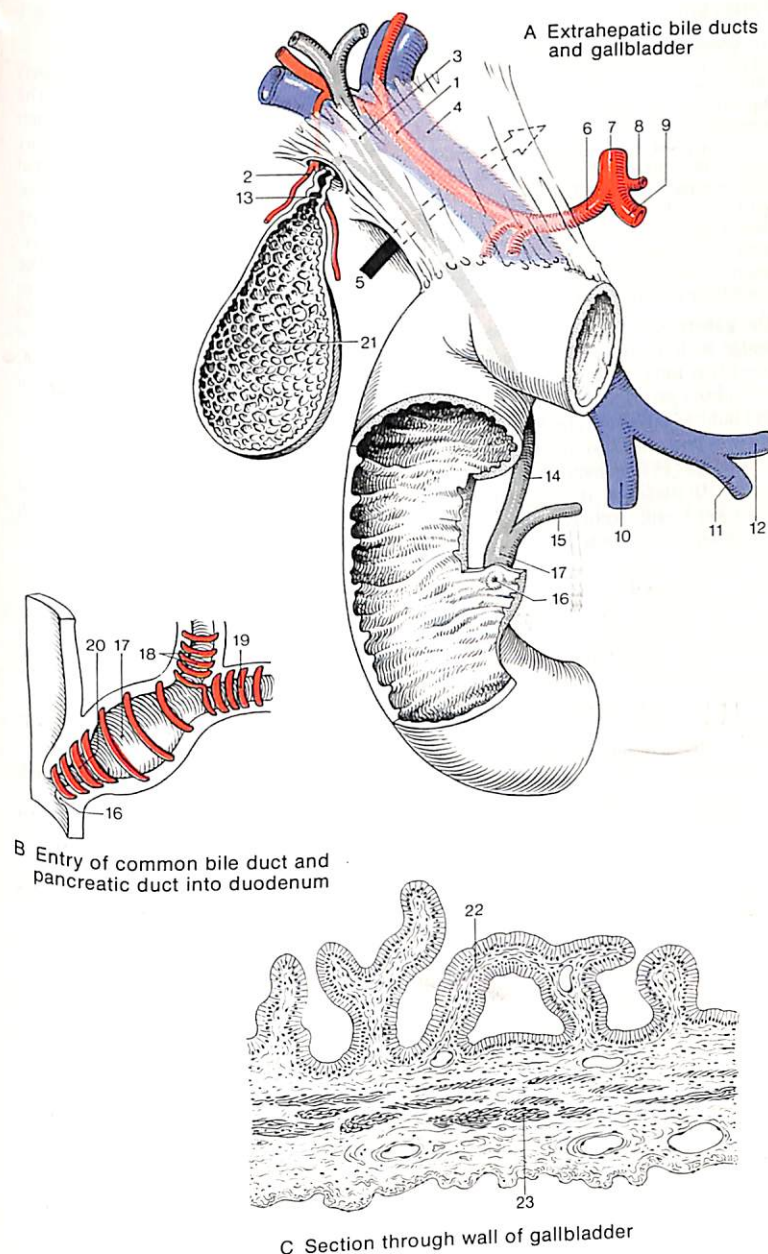
The bile reaches the duodenum via the *large bile ducts*. The nearby *gall bladder* collects and concentrates the bile.

The *large bile duct* has the diameter of a pencil. Proximal to the origin of the cystic duct to the gall bladder it is called the *common hepatic duct* and distal to it the *choledochal duct*. In the *porta hepatis*, the left and right hepatic ducts form the *common hepatic duct A3* which is 4–6 cm long. The *cystic duct A13* from the gall bladder which is 3–4 cm long, opens into it at an acute angle. The *choledochal duct A14* is 6–8 cm long. It passes behind the bulb of the duodenum to the posterior, medial side of the descending duodenum where, in 77% of cases, it penetrates the duodenal wall to open into the *major duodenal papilla AB16* with the *pancreatic duct A15*. In over 50% of cases, the ducts form a common *hepatopancreatic ampulla AB17*. Radiological studies have shown that it is more common for the ducts to open separately. Before its entry into the ampulla, each duct has a sphincter muscle **B18, 19**. The ampulla may itself be closed by its own sphincter muscle, the *musculus sphincter ampullae hepatopancreaticae* (sphincter ampullae, Oddi's muscle) **B20**. The mucosa of the ampulla has folds which restrict the reflux of bile and pancreatic secretion into the ducts. The thin wall of the bile ducts is made up of tall epithelial cells, a prominent elastic network, and a thin muscle layer. Mucus ducts open into the bile ducts.

The *gallbladder (vesica fellea, vesica biliaris) A21* is a pear-shaped, thin-walled bag, some 8–12 cm long  $\times$  4–5 cm wide, which holds up to 30–50 ml fluid. The gallbladder lies in a fossa in the liver to which it is attached by connective tissue. The fundus of the gallbladder extends beyond the lower margin of the liver. Its neck points upward and backward and lies above the duodenal bulb. The lower surface of the gallbladder is covered by peritoneum. The lumen of the neck of the gallbladder and of its connections with the cystic duct **A13** is incompletely subdivided by spiral diaphragmatic folds of mucosa, known as the *spiral fold (Heister's valve)*.

**Fine structure.** The mucosa forms reserve folds that outline polygonal areas, which in histologic sections often appear as "mucosal bridges" **C22**. The simple columnar epithelium contains absorptive cells with microvilli as well as other cells which contain secretion granules. Mucus-producing goblet cells are also present and their number is increased in chronic inflammation, e.g., in patients with gallstones. The remainder of the wall consists of loose (alveolar) connective tissue and a thin muscle layer **C23**.

**Bile flow.** The course taken by the bile can be demonstrated on a radiograph by contrast media which are excreted by the liver after oral administration and absorption. The gallbladder becomes filled by reflux of the bile if the ampullary sphincter is closed. Tension in its wall is adjusted to the degree to which the gallbladder is filled. During a sudden rise of pressure (cough, abdominal straining) the diaphragms of the spiral valve are said to act as shutters. Opening of the ampullary sphincter and emptying of the gallbladder are controlled by hormones or by the autonomic nervous system. There is no reflux of intestinal contents into the ampulla. Overflow of bile into the pancreatic duct is pathologic and leads to activation of the pancreatic enzymes and to necrosis of the pancreas.





## Pancreas

The **pancreas** is the most important intestinal gland (for the islet cell apparatus see p. 168). The composition of pancreatic juice depends of the food ingested. Like gastric secretion, pancreatic secretion is activated and controlled by a nervous stimulation, then by the stimulus provided by the filling of the stomach and finally by the action of a hormone released from the duodenum. During the third phase partly digested proteins cause liberation of hormones from the mucous membrane of the duodenum, which reach the pancreas via the blood stream.

The **pancreas** is shaped like a horizontal wedge with its thin end on the left. It is 14–18 cm long, weighs 65–75 g and lies behind the peritoneum at the level of the 2nd lumbar vertebra. The **head AB1**, the thickest part, fits into the duodenal loop to the right of the spine. Posteriorly and below its **uncinate process AB2** hangs downward and embraces the **superior mesenteric artery AB3** and **vein AB4**, which are situated in the **pancreatic notch**. The horizontal **body B5** bulges with the **omental tuber A6** into the omental bursa towards the lesser omentum. It then bends around the spine toward the hilus of the spleen, which it reaches by its **tail AB7** in the splenorenal ligament. The pancreas is covered by connective tissue and is divided into lobules. It is only loosely connected to the posterior wall of the trunk and it moves with respiration. The transverse mesocolon runs over the head of the pancreas along the anterior head of the pancreas. Thus, the anterior surface of the gland is divided into an upper part which lies in the posterior wall of the omental bursa, and an inferior part which faces the free abdominal cavity.

Its **excretory duct**, the **pancreatic duct A8**, is 2 mm in diameter and runs right through the length of the gland. It receives short, vertical tributaries from the lobules. In about 77% of cases (in anatomical preparations) the pancreatic duct ends together with the **common bile duct** on the **major duodenal papilla**, in the remainder (more common according to radiological studies) it ends nearby. If present, the **accessory pancreatic duct A9** ends above the bile duct. It is absent in 3% and present as a side branch in 33%,

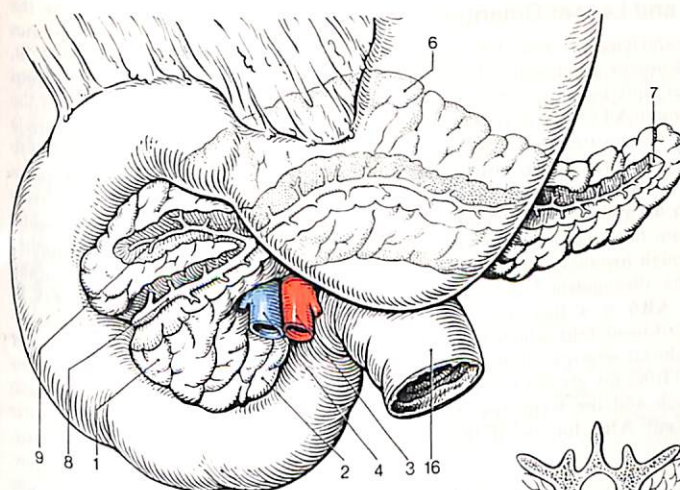
but it can also be the main duct in 5–8% of cases.

**Fine structure.** The pancreas is a *purely serous gland* which ends in **acini C10**. The epithelial cells of the gland show at their apex (in the Golgi area) **prosecretory granules D11** (**zymogen granules**) and at their base widespread **basophilic ergastoplasm D12**. In contrast to the salivary glands, there are no **myoepithelia** (secretion results from fluid pressure). The system of excretory ducts is confined to long intercalated parts which lead into major excretory ducts. At the origin of the ducts they are said to be **invaginated into the acini**, so that in cross-section an acinus will show “**centroacinar cells**” **D13**.

The **pancreatic secretion** is stimulated hormonally by endocrine cells of the duodenal mucosa, through **secretin** (a secretion with high bicarbonate levels) and **cholecystokinin** (a secretion high in enzymes), both of which also stimulate bile secretion, and by cells of the gastric mucosa through **gastrin** (a secretion with high enzyme levels). The pancreatic secretion contains **lipases** to break down fat, **amylases** to break down carbohydrates, and **inactive proteases** (trypsinogen, chymotrypsinogen, etc.) to break down proteins. These enzymes are activated in the small intestine by **enterokinase**.

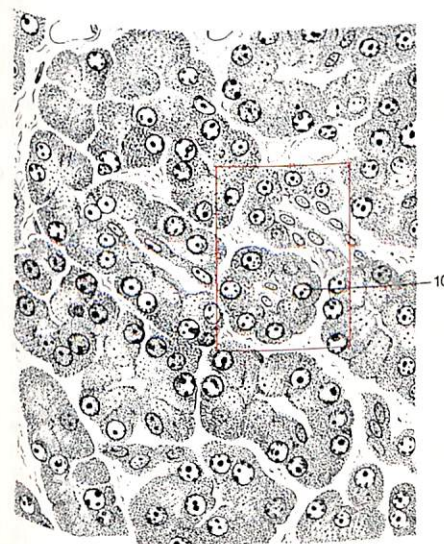
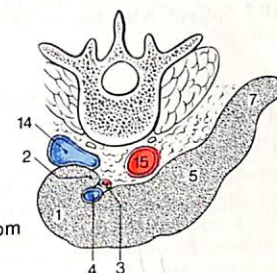
**Position.** The pancreas and the duodenum are situated in the middle of the upper abdomen. Along the upper margin of the pancreas runs the **splenic artery**. The **splenic vein** runs parallel to it a little lower down. It joins the **inferior mesenteric vein** behind the body of the pancreas and together they pass behind the head of the pancreas with the **superior mesenteric vein AB4** into the portal vein. The **superior mesenteric artery AB3** takes its origin from the aorta, runs behind the head of the pancreas and downward for several centimeters, then through the **pancreatic notch** on the **uncinate process AB2**, over the upper border of the horizontal part of the duodenum and into the root of the mesentery. The head of the pancreas lies in front of the **inferior vena cava B14** and the **aorta B15** and reaches upward to the **celiac artery**.

The root of the **transverse mesocolon** is fixed to the anterior edge of the pancreas and divides the abdominal cavity into the **upper** and **lower abdomen**. **A16** Duodenojejunal flexure.

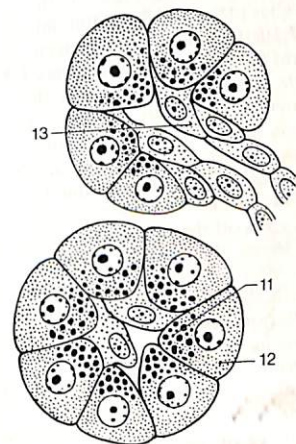


A Pancreas; pancreatic duct dissected

B Position of pancreas seen from above



C Section through pancreas



D Acini of pancreas, higher magnification (section from C)



### Greater and Lesser Omentum

The blood and lymph vessels of the upper abdominal organs are mostly situated in the greater and lesser omentum. The *lesser omentum A1* (which develops from the *ventral mesogastrium*) is a peritoneal fold that is stretched between the lesser curvature of the stomach **A2**, the upper duodenum **A3** and the porta hepatis **A4**. The delicate *hepatogastric ligament A1* and the tough *hepatoduodenal ligament A5* can be distinguished. The *greater omentum AB6* is a flap-like, fat-rich double peritoneal fold which develops from the dorsal mesogastrium. It hangs downward from the greater curvature of the stomach and the transverse colon. **AB7** Spleen, **AB8** fundus of the gall bladder.

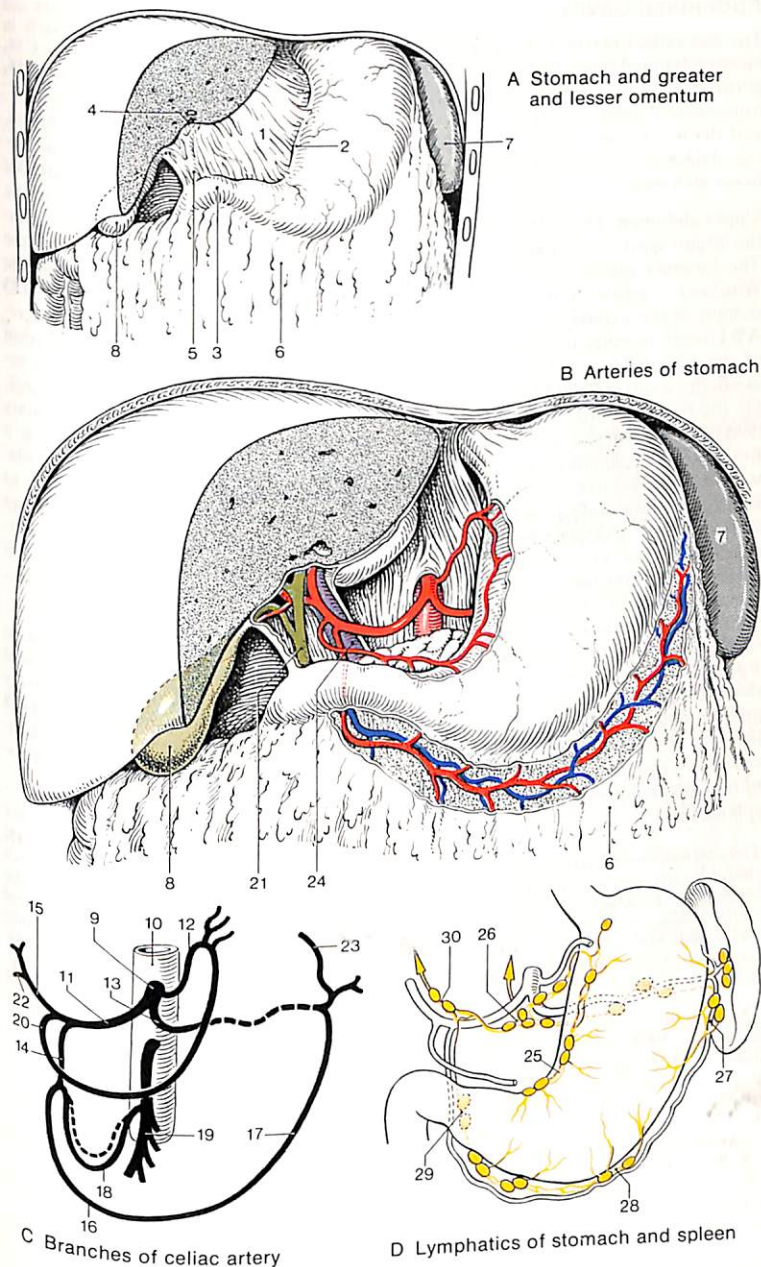
### Blood Vessels and Lymphatics of the Upper Abdominal Organs

**Arteries.** The *celiac trunk (axis) C9* usually supplies the entire stomach, liver, spleen and part of the duodenum and pancreas. Its origin from the aorta **C10** lies in the aortic hiatus of the diaphragm. The origin is covered by the ganglia (celiac plexus) of the autonomic nervous plexus (see Vol. 3). The trunk divides into the *common hepatic artery C11*, the *left gastric artery C12* and the *splenic artery C13* (Haller's tripod). The *common hepatic artery C11* divides into the *gastrooduodenal artery C14* and the *hepatic artery C15*. The *gastrooduodenal artery C14* descends behind the duodenal bulb. It gives off the *right gastroepiploic artery C16* to the greater curvature of the stomach, which forms an anastomosis with the *left gastro-omental artery (left inferior gastric artery) C17* from the *splenic artery C13* (arterial arch of the greater curvature). It ends in the (anterior and posterior) *superior pancreaticoduodenal arteries C18* which supply the duodenum and the head of the pancreas. They are connected with the *superior mesenteric artery C19* via an anterior and posterior arterial loop on the inner arch of the duodenum, running over and bey-

ond the head of the pancreas, via the *inferior pancreaticoduodenal arteries* (see p. 246). The *right gastric artery C20*, a branch of the *hepatic artery C15*, runs back toward the lesser curvature of the stomach. The hepatic artery passes inside the *hepatoduodenal ligament*, medial to the *common bile duct B21* to the *porta hepatis* where it divides into two branches. The *cystic artery C22* usually arises from the right branch and supplies the anterior and posterior surfaces of the gallbladder. The *left gastric artery C12* runs within a peritoneal pouch (the *gastropancreatic fold*) to the cardia. After giving off *esophageal branches*, it runs along the lesser curvature of the stomach and anastomoses with the *right gastric artery (arterial arch of the lesser curvature)*. The *splenic artery C13*, which generally follows a tortuous course, runs along the upper margin of the body and tail of the pancreas, and finally passes in the *spleno-renal ligament* to the spleen. It gives off *pancreatic branches* to the pancreas, and within the *spleno-renal ligament*, the *left gastro-omental (inferior gastric) artery C17* to the greater curvature of the stomach (arterial arch of the greater curvature), as well as the *short gastric arteries C23* to the fundus of the stomach.

**Veins.** Venous blood from the upper abdominal organs drains via the *portal vein B24* into the liver (see p. 250).

**Lymphatics and lymph nodes.** The lymph vessels and nodes follow the course of the arteries. The *right and left gastric lymph nodes D25* lie alongside the lesser curvature; they drain into the *celiac lymph nodes D26*. Lymph from parts of the gastric fundus and the upper portion of the body of the stomach in the neighborhood of the greater curvature also drains into the *celiac lymph nodes D27*. The *left gastroepiploic lymph nodes D27*. Lymph from the lower portion of the corpus and the pyloric portion of the stomach drains via the *right gastroepiploic lymph nodes D28* and the *pyloric lymph nodes D29* partly to the *celiac lymph nodes D26*, and they are partly connected with lymphatics of the liver via the *hepatic lymph nodes D30*. This makes it possible for lymph to drain through the diaphragm into the *anterior mediastinal lymph nodes*.





## Abdominal Cavity

The **abdominal cavity** is that part of the intra-abdominal space that is lined by the peritoneum. Behind it lies the **retroperitoneal space**. The transverse colon and the transverse mesocolon subdivide the abdominal cavity into the **upper** and **lower abdomen**.

**Upper abdomen.** The **omental bursa A** is the largest space in the abdominal cavity. The **foramen epiploicum (omental) (of Winslow)** – arrow in **B** – at the lower margin of the hepatoduodenal ligament **AB1** forms the entrance into the **vestibule** of the omental bursa. It is situated beneath the caudate lobe **AC2** of the liver. On the right, the inferior vena cava borders on the vestibule, and on the left lies the aorta. The **superior recess** points upward under the liver, between the inferior vena cava and the esophagus. The **inferior recess** extends downwards between the stomach and the transverse colon to the attachment of the greater omentum **ABC3**. The gastrocolic ligament **C4** connects the transverse colon with the greater curvature of the stomach. **A5** attachment of the greater omentum to the transverse colon. The greater omentum becomes adherent to the left abdominal wall across the left colonic flexure and forms the **phrenicocolic ligament**, the floor of the splenic fossa.

The **omental bursa C6** is a space in which the stomach can move. Its anterior wall is formed by the lesser omentum **C7** and the stomach **C8**. After their removal the posterior wall and the extent of the omental bursa are demonstrated in **A**. **A9** Cardia, **A10** spleen, **A11** duodenum.

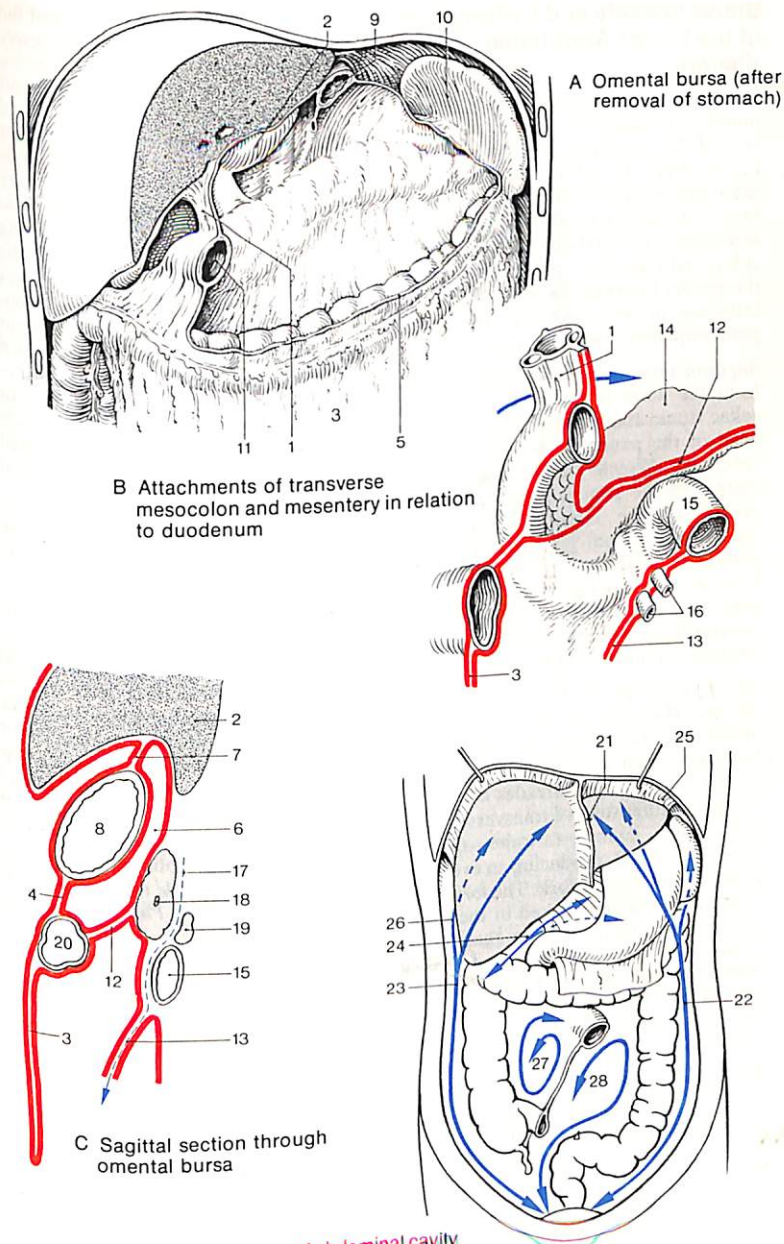
**Attachment (root) of the transverse mesocolon BC12** (at the level of the second lumbar vertebra) and of the **mesentery BC13** to the posterior abdominal wall. The **root of the mesentery** extends from the duodenojejunal flexure (left from the 2nd lumbar vertebra) to the opening of the ileum into the cecum. The mesentery is continuous with the mesoappendix of the appendix. **B14** Omental tuber at the posterior wall of the omental bursa. **BC15** duodenojejunal

flexure, **B16** superior mesenteric artery and vein, **C17** course of the blood vessels in relation to the head of the pancreas **C18**, uncinate process **C19** and duodenum **C15**, **C20** transverse colon.

**Drainage space in the upper abdomen,** the **subphrenic recesses**, are found beneath the diaphragm along the anterior surface of the liver, on both sides of the falciform ligament **D21**. Between the ascending and descending colon and the lateral abdominal walls on either side lie the **left D22** and the **right D23** **parietocolic recesses**. The **subhepatic recess D24** extends over the transverse colon, stomach and lesser omentum beneath the liver. It leads into a **left posterior subphrenic recess**. **D25** Coronary ligament. On the right side there is a narrow posterior passage below the diaphragm, through the wide base area to the **hepatorenal recess D26**. The drainage spaces (demarcation spaces) are important in the flow of peritoneal fluid and in the spread and encapsulation of infections.

The **lower abdomen** below the transverse mesocolon is divided into 2 peritoneal pouches: above the root of the mesentery the **right D27** and below it the **left D28** **mesenterocolic recesses**. They are connected to each other above the duodenojejunal flexure **BC15**.

The **recesses in the lower abdomen** are formed where the retro- and intraperitoneal portions of the intestine merge into each other (see p. 218). The lateral groove of the ascending colon and the medial and lateral grooves of the descending colon lead into the peritoneal recesses of the lesser pelvis: **rectovesical** and **rectouterine pouches**, see p. 314. Folds in the lateral grooves of the descending colon form the **paracolic sulci**.





### Blood Vessels and Lymphatics of the Lower Abdominal Viscera

Of the lower abdominal viscera the jejunum, the ileum and the colon are wholly, and the duodenum and pancreas are partly, supplied by the *superior* and *inferior mesenteric arteries*. The border between the supply areas of these two arteries lies in the left half of the transverse colon and coincides approximately with the border between the areas under the influence of the vagus and the sacral parasympathetic nerves (see Vol. 3).

**Superior mesenteric artery B1.** It arises from the aorta immediately below the celiac trunk, runs downward behind the head of the pancreas (see p. 240) and enters the *mesentery* between the lower margin of the pancreas and the upper margin of the inferior part of the duodenum, about 3 cm below the duodenojejunal flexure. In rare cases traction of the vessel's trunk can produce closure of the duodenum. The artery is enveloped by a dense nervous network, the *superior mesenteric plexus*.

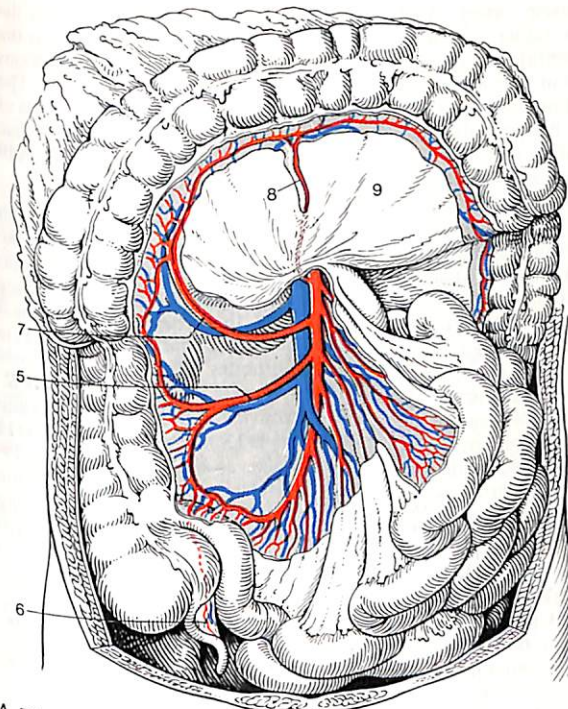
On the left side 10–16 *jejunal and ileal arteries B2* arise from the superior mesenteric artery. Each divides into two branches which are connected with the neighboring arteries (arcades of the 1st order). Further rows of transverse cross-connections follow (arcades of the 2nd–4th orders), producing an ever narrower vascular meshwork. The *formation of arcades* is more marked in the lower part of the small intestine than in its upper part. The parallel blood vessels which run from the outer arcades to the intestine are end arteries and their blockage will result in a local lesion of the intestine.

The *inferior pancreaticoduodenal arteries B3* are the first to arise behind the head of the pancreas from the right side of the mesenteric artery. They are connected with the arch formed by the *superior duodenal arteries B4* (see p. 242). They then give off 3 arteries to the large intestine.

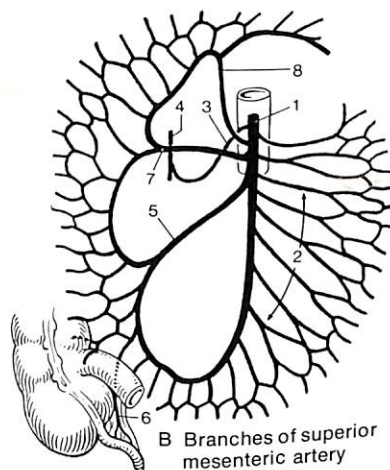
Following on the supply area of the ileal arteries is that of the *ileocolic artery AB5*, the terminal branch of the superior mesenteric artery. This artery gives off branches to the cecum (the *anterior* and *posterior cecal arteries*) and to the lower part of the ascending colon (the *colic branch*), and the *appendicular artery AB6* to the appendix. Next is the *right colic artery AB7* with branches reaching the right colic flexure, and finally the *middle colic artery AB8*, which supplies about two-thirds of the transverse colon. It anastomoses with the adjacent branches of the left colic artery, which arises from the inferior mesenteric artery (see p. 248). The arcades of the arteries of the large intestine form a row of wide meshes. As a rule they are not connected with the arteries of the retroperitoneal space. **A9** Transverse mesocolon.

The **veins** from the area, supplied by the superior mesenteric artery, drain into the **portal vein** (see p. 250).

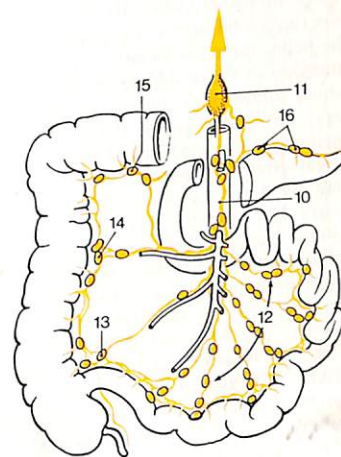
**Lymphatics and lymph nodes.** Lymphatics from the area of the superior mesenteric artery run with the arteries and reach the left *lumbar trunk* or the *cisterna chyli C11*, usually via one *intestinal trunk C10*. Along their course there are 100 or more small *superior mesenteric lymph nodes C12* – ileocolic **C13**, right **C14** and middle **C15** colic lymph nodes. Some of these are situated near the intestine as *juxtamedullary lymph nodes*, others further along toward the root of the mesentery. **C16** *Pancreaticosplenic lymph nodes*.



A Blood supply of jejunum, ileum, ascending and transverse colon: superior mesenteric artery and vein



B Branches of superior mesenteric artery



C Lymphatics in area supplied by superior mesenteric artery

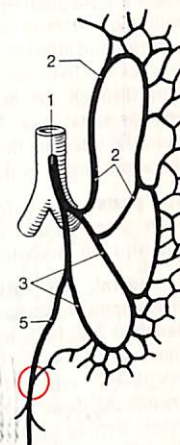
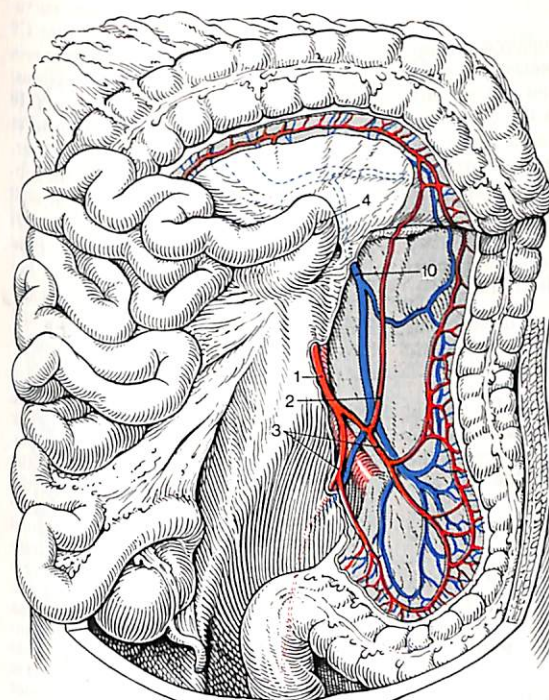


The **inferior mesenteric artery AB1** arises ventrally at a rather low level (3rd–4th lumbar vertebra) from the aorta, turns to the left and runs across the psoas muscle and the linea terminalis into the lesser pelvis. Its first part often lies below the horizontal part of the duodenum. This artery is covered by a dense network of autonomic nerve fibers. The **left colic artery AB2** arises either directly from the inferior mesenteric artery or, together with the **sigmoid artery AB3**, from the short common stem of the inferior mesenteric artery. The left colic artery divides into an **ascending branch**, which continues the supply to the intestine from the middle colic artery (a branch of the superior mesenteric artery), and into a **descending branch**. This supply area is often followed by the **sigmoid artery** or arteries which reach the sigmoid colon in the pelvic mesocolon. **A4** Duodenojejunal flexure.

**Arteries of the rectum.** The last branch of the inferior mesenteric artery is the **superior rectal artery BC5**. It runs across the internal iliac artery into the lesser pelvis behind the rectum and supplies the latter down to the internal sphincter muscle of the anus. This artery may be divided into two branches. Branches of the superior rectal artery are joined above the pelvic floor **C6** on either side by the branches of the **middle rectal artery C7**, which comes from the internal iliac artery. Below the pelvic floor, which is pierced by the branches of the superior rectal artery, these are joined on each side by branches of the **inferior rectal artery C8** from the internal, pudendal artery. However, the anastomoses of the middle and lower rectal arteries with the superior rectal artery are inadequate as a substitute for the superior rectal artery. As the superior rectal artery has only a single communication with the sigmoid artery, the **sigmoidea ima artery**, the former vessel **C5** must not be ligated below this junction (circle in **B**). **C9** Edge of the cut peritoneum.

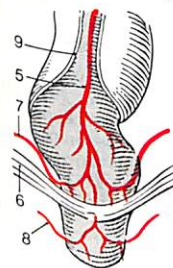
The **veins** from the area supplied by the inferior mesenteric artery drain into the **portal vein** (see p. 250), as do the veins from the upper parts of the rectum. The veins from the middle and lower parts of the rectum drain via the internal iliac veins into the **inferior vena cava**. **A10** Inferior mesenteric vein.

**Lymphatics and lymph nodes.** Lymph from the lower anal region (below the anal valves) flows subcutaneously into the **superficial inguinal lymph nodes** (see p. 78), and that from the upper anal region (above the anal valves) reaches via the lymph nodes of the ischioanal fossa **D11** the **internal iliac lymph nodes D12**. Lymph from the upper rectum drains into the **sacral D13** and **common iliac D14** lymph nodes, as well as into the **inferior mesenteric lymph nodes D15** via the mesosigmoid fold. From the descending colon lymph flows via the **inferior mesenteric and left colic D16** lymph nodes into the intestinal trunk **D17** and from there ultimately into the **cisterna chyli**.

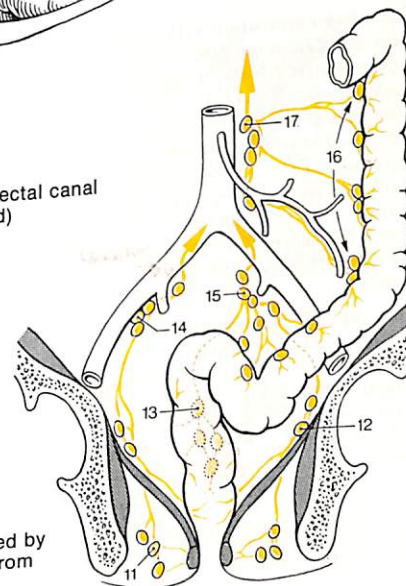


**B** Sequence of branching of internal mesenteric artery

**A** Blood supply of transverse and descending colon – inferior mesenteric artery and vein



**C** Arteries of rectal canal (from behind)



**D** Lymph drainage of area supplied by inferior mesenteric artery and from anus



## Portal Vein

Venous blood from the unpaired abdominal viscera (the gastrointestinal tract, gallbladder, pancreas and the spleen), which are supplied by the three unpaired abdominal arteries (the celiac trunk and superior and inferior mesenteric arteries) reaches the liver via the portal vein and runs through the hepatic veins to the inferior vena cava. Nutrients absorbed from the intestine thus reach the central metabolic organ by the shortest route.

The **portal vein** is formed from 3 root veins, the splenic, inferior mesenteric and superior mesenteric veins.

The **splenic vein ABC1**, like the splenic artery, runs along the upper margin of the pancreas **A2**. In its course it receives the short gastric veins **BC3**, the **left gastroepiploic vein BC4** and the **pancreaticoduodenal veins and duodenal veins**. Behind the body of the pancreas, the **inferior mesenteric vein ABC5** joins it, and behind the head of the pancreas **A2** it unites with the **superior mesenteric vein ABC6** to form the **portal vein ABC7**.

The **inferior mesenteric vein ABC5** contains blood from the descending and sigmoid colon and from the upper rectum (**superior rectal vein**). Its course differs from that of the inferior mesenteric artery. Both vessels run together until the departure of the left colic artery. From there the vein follows that particular branch and then runs in a peritoneal recess, the **superior duodenal fold**, across the duodenojejunal flexure behind the pancreas.

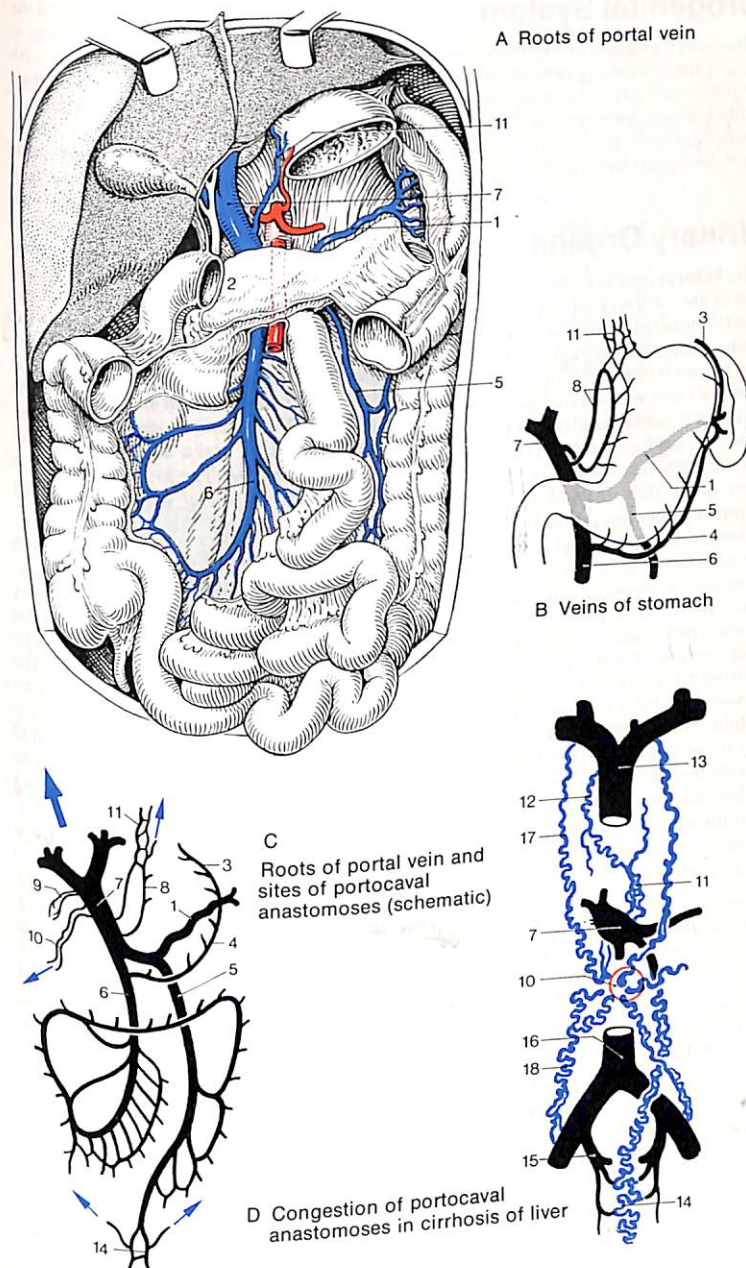
The **superior mesenteric vein** carries blood from the small intestine, the cecum and the ascending and transverse colon, accompanied by the superior mesenteric artery behind the head of the pancreas **A2**, and it receives the **pancreaticoduodenal and right gastroepiploic veins** during its course.

The following veins end directly in the trunk of the portal vein: the right and left

**gastric veins BC8** from the lesser curvature of the stomach, the **cystic vein C9** from the gallbladder, the **prepyloric vein** from the anterior surface of the pylorus, and lastly the **paraumbilical veins C10** which accompany the ligamentum teres in the falciform ligament of the liver. They form anastomoses between the subcutaneous veins of the abdominal wall and the portal vein and open into the left main branch of the portal vein. Blue arrows in **C** represent connections between the afferents in the portal vein and the areas that drain into the superior and inferior vena cava: e.g., **D** congestion of the portocaval anastomoses.

**Portocaval anastomoses.** The drainage area of the portal vein borders on that of the superior and inferior vena cava at the following sites: **esophagus** (blood from the esophageal veins **ABCD11** flows through the azygos vein **D12** and the hemiazygos vein to the superior vena cava **D13**), **rectum** (blood from the middle and lower rectal veins **CD14** drains through the internal iliac vein **D15** to the inferior vena cava **D16**), **abdominal wall** (connected with the superior vena cava **D13** by the thoracoepigastric veins **D17** and to the inferior vena cava **D16** via the superficial epigastric veins **D18**). It is in those regions that portocaval anastomoses occur, i. e., *connections between the areas drained by the portal vein D17 and the superior vena cava D13 or the inferior vena cava D16*. Additional portocaval anastomoses may be present between the mesenteric veins and the retroperitoneal veins.

**Clinical Tip.** In a case of portal vein congestion, e.g., in cirrhosis of the liver, part of the portal venous blood flow will bypass the liver via these portocaval anastomoses, and they become prominent as varicose veins, namely **esophageal varices D11**, **external hemorrhoids (piles) D14** and congestion of the subcutaneous abdominal veins **D10** ("caput Medusae").





## Urogenital System

The excretory ducts of the urinary system and of the genital organs – the urogenital organs – are closely connected by their embryologic development as well as by their function. It is convenient, therefore, to discuss them together.

## Urinary Organs

The kidneys produce urine by eliminating water and various harmful metabolic products, most of which arise in other organs. Thus the internal environment of the tissues is regulated, the equilibrium of minerals and water is maintained and the hydrogen ion concentration (pH) of the body is kept constant. The process of elimination takes place in 2 phases: at first an ultrafiltrate of blood plasma, the *primary urine*, is produced. This contains substances dissolved in blood in the same concentration as in the blood, except for proteins. Following this various materials, particularly glucose and water, are reabsorbed from the primary urine, the daily output of which is about 150 liters. During this process the amount of urine is reduced to 1% of its original volume to produce the greatly concentrated *secondary urine*. The urine then leaves the body via the *urinary tract organs*, i. e., the renal pelvis, ureters **AB1**, urinary bladder **A2** and the urethra. In addition, the kidneys have endocrine effects on blood pressure and hemopoiesis.

In addition, the kidney produces *active substances*. Renin, an enzyme, leads via intermediate steps in the blood to *angiotensin II*, which contracts the arterioles and thus increases blood pressure. *Erythropoietin* encourages blood formation. The enzyme *kalikrein* causes vascular expansion (via other active substances). The kidney produces large quantities of *prostaglandins*.

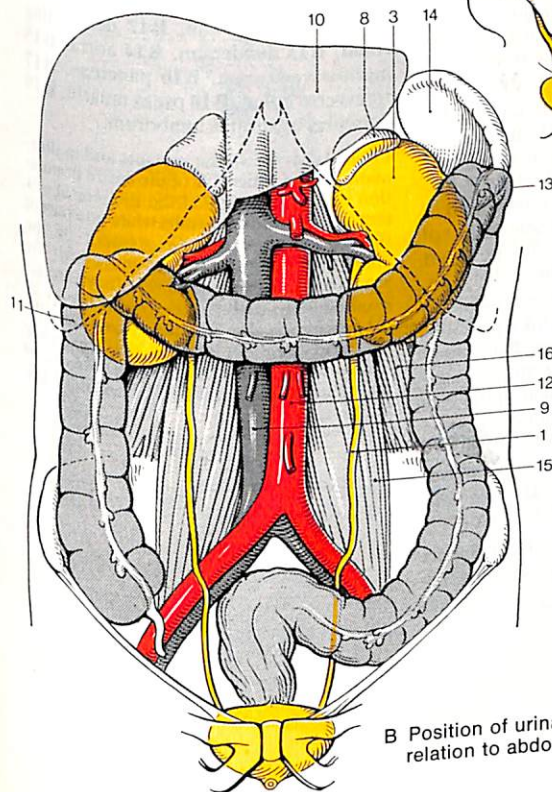
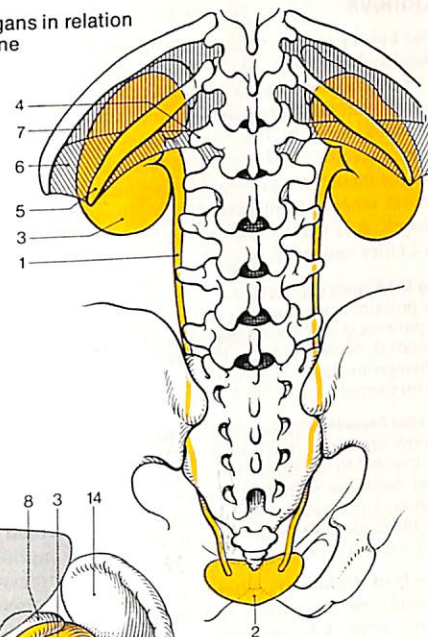
**Position.** The kidneys **AB3** are bean-shaped and their longitudinal axes correspond approximately to that of the body. They converge upward toward the back. The kidneys are situated in a connective tissue space behind the peritoneal cavity

in the lumbar region on either side of the spine. Their *upper poles* extend about as far as the upper margin of the 12th thoracic vertebra and in the adult their *lower poles* reach down to the 3rd lumbar vertebra. The *hilum* (renal porta, see p. 254) lies at the level of the first lumbar vertebra **A4**. The 12th rib **A5** crosses the kidney obliquely at the border between its upper and middle thirds. Together with the 12th rib, part of the lumbar portion of the diaphragm **A6** and the costodiaphragmatic recess **A7** of the pleura lie across the upper third of the kidney. In 65% of cases the right kidney lies about half a segment lower than the left. In deep inspiration and in the upright position the kidneys descend by about 3 cm. Rotation and a dipping movement are also possible. The kidneys are kept in position by a *fascial sheath* and a *faty capsule*.

The suprarenal (adrenal) gland **B8** which is embedded in the kidney's fat capsule, sits upon the upper pole of each kidney like a cap. The inferior vena cava **B9** and the descending part of the duodenum lie near the hilum of the *right kidney*. The anterior surface of the right kidney touches the liver **B10** and the right colic flexure **B11**. The abdominal aorta **B12** runs near the hilum of the *left kidney*. The anterior surface of the left kidney touches the stomach, pancreas and left colic flexure **B13**, and with its lateral border it touches the spleen **B14**. Posteriorly both kidneys border on the diaphragm above, medially on the psoas major muscle **B15**, laterally on the quadratus lumborum muscle **B16** and the transverse abdominal muscle. The kidney is crossed posteriorly by the subcostal, iliohypogastric and ilioinguinal nerves parallel to the course of the 12th rib.

The kidneys in *children* are lower than in adults, and the lower pole may reach the iliac crest. The kidneys of children are relatively larger than those of adults.

A Position of urinary organs in relation to diaphragm and spine



B Position of urinary organs in relation to abdominal viscera



## Kidneys

The kidney (*ren* or *nephros*) in the adult weighs 120–300 g, is 10–12 cm long, 5–6 cm broad and about 4 cm thick. The convex lateral margin has a more pronounced curve at the poles, which appear, therefore, to be rolled in medially. On the medial margin lies the *renal hilum* (*porta renalis*) through which the blood vessels **A1**, nerves and the renal pelvis **A2** enter and leave.

As the kidney excretes urea, a waste product of protein metabolism, it enlarges following a pure meat diet – work hypertrophy. After removal of one kidney, the other kidney enlarges to almost double its size – compensatory hypertrophy.

**Renal capsule.** The kidney is enveloped by a *tough capsule of collagenous fibers* which is connected to the kidney by areolar tissue. It can easily be stripped off right up to the hilum. The capsule at the hilum is connected to the connective tissue of the vessels which enter into a central recess, the renal sinus.

**Body of the kidney.** After removal of the vessels, nerves, pelvis and fat from the *renal sinus* **A3**, the body of the kidney appears as a thick-walled, slightly flattened pouch. Its entrance is narrowed to a slit by an anterior and posterior lip of the body. The anterior and posterior walls of the body of the kidney are formed of several parts, the renal lobes (*renculi*) each of which forms a pyramid, *renal papilla* **A4**, 5–11 pyramids stand out from the inner superior surface of the renal pouch. The subdivision of the kidney into renal lobes does not correspond with its division into *vascular segments*, as each renal lobe is supplied by several branches of the renal artery, and each branch supplies more than one lobe.

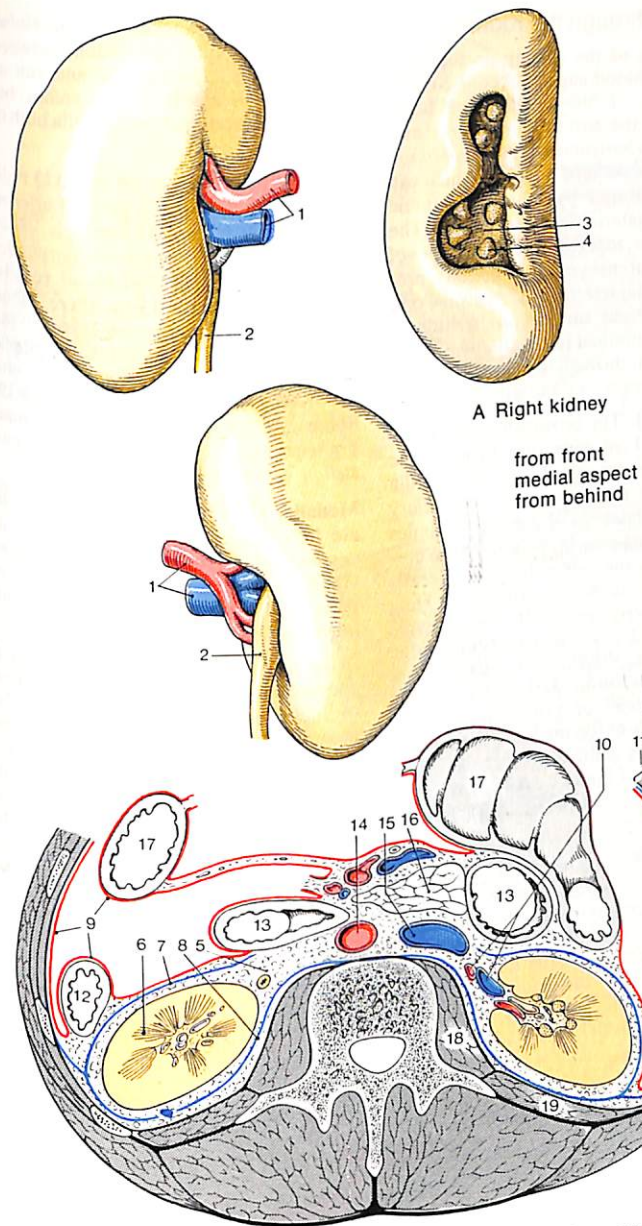
There are usually five vascular segments to the kidney, a superior, antero-superior, antero-inferior, inferior and posterior segment.

The kidney of the *newborn*, like that of certain animals, shows the clear demarcation of the original renal lobes (*renculi*), but in the course of the next 4–6 years this *renculi-marking* disappears.

The kidney **B6** is fixed in position by the *renal fascial envelope*, a fibrous tissue sheath, and a *fatty capsule* (*capsula adiposa*) **B5**. The fascial envelope is part of the *subperitoneal fascia*. In the fascial envelope, a distinction is made between the anterior layer, the *fascia prerenalis* **B7**, and the posterior layer, the *fascia retrorenalis* **B8**, which join laterally. Most of the anterior layer (leaf) is covered by peritoneum **B9**. The fascial envelope of the kidney is open medially and at the lower end where the vessels **B10** and nerves from the prevertebral space enter the renal hilum. Both laminae of the fascia extend to the diaphragm. The fatty capsule consists of depot fat and it therefore shrinks on any form of malnutrition, thereby increasing the motility of the kidney.

**B11** Abdominal wall, **B12** descending colon, **B13** duodenum, **B14** aorta, **B15** inferior vena cava, **B16** pancreas, **B17** transverse colon, **B18** psoas muscle, **B19** musculus quadratus lumborum.

**Clinical tips:** Of all the variants and malformations with which 2% of the entire population is born, 30% affect the urogenital system. A *cystic kidney* results when one part of the embryonic cortex (a segment of the embryonic plate) fails to connect with the renal pelvis. *Supernumerary kidneys* are accounted for by early splitting of the ureter. A more common abnormality is *fused kidneys*; the most frequent type is the *horseshoe kidney* which lies in the midline in front of the spine. Congenital *displacement* of the kidney also occurs.



B Horizontal section through trunk at level of 3rd lumbar vertebra



## Section Through the Kidney

Functioning of the kidney presupposes and ample blood supply. About 20% of the volume of blood which the heart pumps into the aorta flows into the kidneys. The arborization of the renal blood vessels has a peculiar pattern, which can be demonstrated by injecting suitable (colored) material into the vessels. The vascular tree, together with the tubules of the renal parenchyma (see p. 260), produces the characteristic macroscopic pattern on the cut surface of the kidney. Both a longitudinal (frontal) and a transverse section through the kidney show its division into a *cortex* and a *medulla*.

**Cortex AB1.** The brownish-colored *cortex*, about 1 cm wide, lies beneath the fibrous renal capsule. From the medulla (base of the renal pyramids), *medullary rays AB2* (fascicles of extended tubules and collecting vessels) penetrate the cortex, forming the *pars radiata* of the cortical lobules. The parts of the cortex lying between there are, as the microscopic illustration shows, the *partes convolutae* of the cortex. Within the lobules there is an accumulation of dark red spots, the *renal corpuscles* or *glomeruli*. Between the pyramids of the medulla, the cortical substance lies in the form of *renal columns* ("Bertini's columns" A3) extending down to the renal pelvis. AB4 Fibrous capsule.

**Medulla A5.** The medulla consists of several large *pyramids*. Their apices (the *papillae*) B6 point toward the renal pelvis AB7. The pyramids show striations which converge towards the apex. It is also possible to distinguish in them a reddish *external zone* (with *internal* and *external striations*) and a pale *internal zone*.

## Blood Vessels of the Kidney

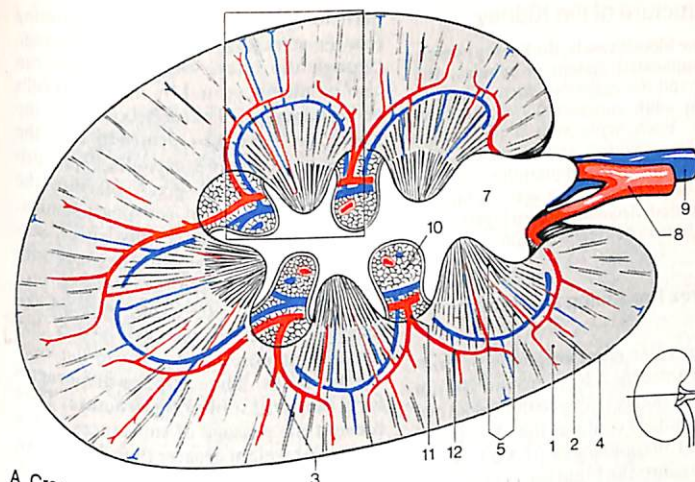
The *renal artery A8* and *vein A9* in the hilum enter the loose, fatty connective tissue AB10 that lies between the renal parenchyma and the renal pelvis, except for the *papillae*. The artery divides into

the following branches: the *interlobar arteries AB11* enter the medulla between the pyramids. They divide and run as *arcuate arteries AB12* like arches between the cortex and the medulla both of which they supply.

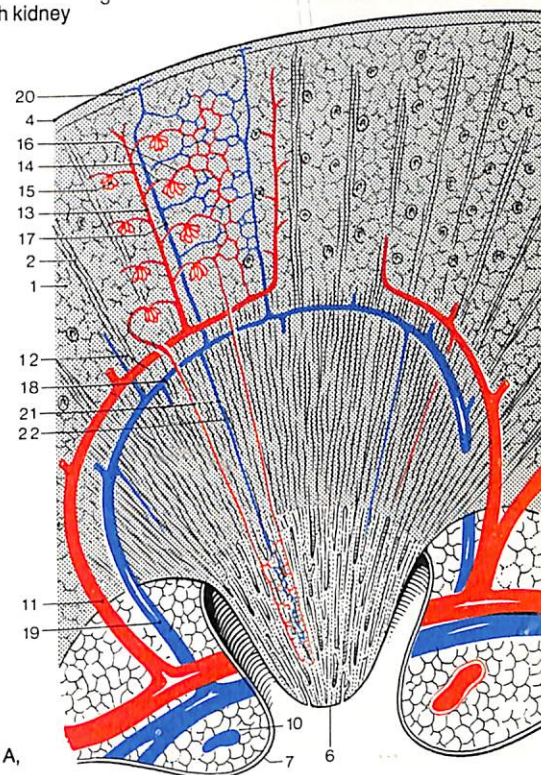
**Cortex.** The *interlobar arteries B13* radiate into the cortex and give off *afferent vessels B14* at regular intervals. They carry the blood to the renal corpuscles where they form tufts of blood vessels, the *glomeruli B15*. From there blood flows via the *efferent vessels B16* into the capillary net of the cortex. It finally drains via the *interlobar veins B17* into the *arcuate B18* and *interlobar veins B19*. Some interlobar arteries send *capsular branches* and some interlobar veins send *stellate venules B20* to the capsule.

**Medulla.** The *straight arterioles B21* radiate into the medulla from the efferent vessels of *glomeruli B12*. The blood flows via the capillaries into the *venulae rectae B22*, and thence into the *arcuate B18* and *interlobar B19* veins.

In the *cortex* are the *glomeruli* in the renal corpuscles, which serve for ultrafiltration of fluid from the blood (see p. 258). The *medulla* contains the straight vessels, the *arteriolarae* and *venulae rectae*, which are mainly concerned with *reabsorption* of fluids and of dissolved matter from the primary urine excreted in the *glomeruli*. The *tubules* of the renal parenchyma (see p. 262) play a dominant part in these functions.



A Cross-section through kidney



B Magnified section of A, schematic



## Fine Structure of the Kidney

Besides the blood vessels, the kidney possesses a complicated system of tubules, the *nephrons* and the *collecting ducts*. The kidney of an adult contains 0.9–1.6 million nephrons. Each *nephron* is a unit which consists of a *corpuscle* and its *tubule*. The *corpuscle* contains the glomerulus—a *filter* through which the *primary urine* is filtered from the blood. *Secondary urine* is produced by processes of reabsorption into the tubules.

## Structures Producing the Primary Urine

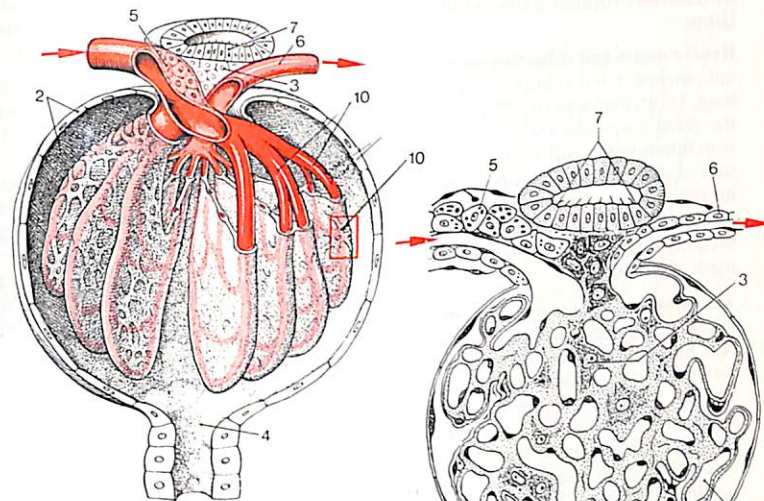
The glomerular **renal corpuscle** or *Malpighian corpuscle AB*, is around 200  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter and is visible to the naked eye as a red spot. It contains the glomerulus with about 30 *capillary loops AB1*, which invaginate into the blind sac, the head of the tubular system at the *vascular pole*. In this way a double-walled capsule, *Bowman's capsule AB2*, is formed, the inner wall sitting on the glomerular capillaries in the form of podocytes.

Connective tissue cells at the vascular pole form the *mesangium AB3*. The space between the two walls of Bowman's capsule receives the primary urine and allows it to pass through its *open end AB4* into the tubular system. *AB5 Vas afferens*, *AB6 vas efferens*, *AB7 macula densa*.

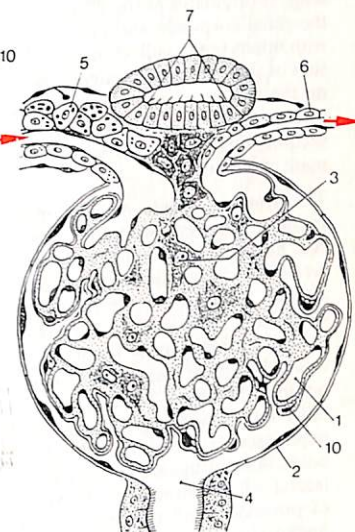
The **urinary filter** is around 1  $\text{m}^2$  in the adult and comprises three structures contiguous with one another, endothelium, basal lamina and podocytes. *Endothelium CD8*: the endothelial wall, which is covered by the basal lamina, is thin and has regular, open pores 70–90 nm in diameter. The endothelial pores prevent the passage of large corpuscular elements. The *basal lamina CD9* is 0.1–0.15  $\mu\text{m}$  thick. Its lamina densa consists of a layer of collagen (type IV) embedded in glycoproteins, and functions as a mechanical filter (size selectivity). Its inner and outer lamina rara function electrostatically by means of strongly negatively-charged heparan sulfate, and prevent positively-charged

particles (plasma proteins) from entering (charge selection). During slow passage through the filter, macromolecules can also be phagocytosed by mesangial cells and podocytes. The cell bodies of the *podocytes ABCD10* protrude into the lumen of Bowman's capsule. Their primary processes are given off into the superficial surface of the basal lamina. They give rise to numerous, short, secondary processes, which alternate with neighboring podocyte processes to produce slit pores of 40–50 nm. A band-like diaphragm (arrow in **D**) which has rectangular pores of  $4 \times 14 \text{ nm}$  lies over the slit pores. The slit pore diaphragms form the densest filtering structure. They prevent the passage of substances with a molecular weight greater than 70,000. An adequate blood pressure (more than 50 mmHg) is required for the urine filtration mechanism to work (filtration pressure prerequisite).

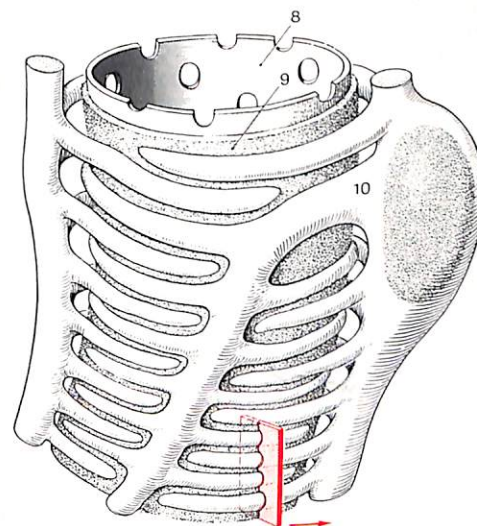
The **juxtaglomerular apparatus** consists of the *macula densa AB7*, the *granulated juxtaglomerular cells of the pole cushion* (arising from the media of the *vas afferens*) *AB5* and a group of *extraglomerular mesangial cells* (Goormaghtigh cells) lying between the macula densa and the *vas afferens-vas efferens* angle and continuing in the *intraglomerular mesangium AB3*. This is involved in the regulation of blood pressure. Granules in the cells of the pole cushion contains *renin*, a proteolytic enzyme. This splits off *angiotensin I* from the polypeptide *angiotensinogen*, which is found in the blood plasma. Further enzymatic breakdown produces the highly active vasoconstrictor (elevator of blood pressure) *angiotensin II*. The macula densa is thought to be a *chemosensitive area*, able to measure the sodium chloride content of the urine in the tubule and to cause the release of renin from the pole cushion cells. The juxtaglomerular apparatus regulates perfusion of the glomeruli by blood. The cells of the juxtaglomerular apparatus receive *adrenergic innervation*.



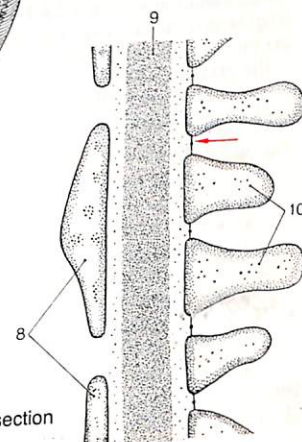
A Renal corpuscle



B Section through a renal corpuscle



C Capillary of a renal corpuscle with podocytes, section from A



D Electron-microscopic appearance of section through C



### Structures Producing the Secondary Urine

**Renal tubules and collecting ducts.** Each unbranched renal tubule is about 5 cm long. It originates at the urinary pole of the renal corpuscle and opens together with others into a collecting tube. It consists of the following segments (A shows on the left the electron-microscopic appearance of cells in consecutive cross-sections through the corresponding segment of a tubule).

The **proximal tubule A1** is convoluted (*tubulus contortus*) near the glomerulus **A2**, and then becomes straight (*tubulus rectus*) and runs as the descending limb of Henle's loop toward the medulla. It is 40–60  $\mu\text{m}$  thick and is lined by tall, dense, epithelial cells (high microvilli, folded basement membranes and numerous mitochondria). The free surface contains enzymes for glucose resorption, peptidases, etc., and has resorption vacuoles. Some drugs are secreted here. The lateral cell membrane has a large number of processes, and neighboring cells are linked via a simple (permeable) zonula occludens.

The **intermediate tubule AB3** (Henle's loop) penetrates the medulla in a hairpin shape with its *descending* and *ascending* limbs. This segment has a flat epithelium and a relatively wide lumen. The arterioles and venulae recti **AB4** run parallel to it into the medulla. The intermediate tubule varies in length, but is longest at the juxtamedullary nephrons near the medulla. The intercellular zonula occludens is one-layered and permeable.

The **distal tubule AB5** of Henle's loop returns to the cortex as the straight tubule. It forms the distal convoluted tubule, which includes the macula densa, near the glomerulus from which it originated. The thick segment of the ascending limb of Henle's loop is about 45  $\mu\text{m}$  and is lined by tall, clear columnar cells. The distal tubule forms fewer microvilli, and shorter ones, than the proximal tubule. It is characterized by several very dense zonulae occludentes. In the macula

densa of the juxtaglomerular apparatus, it becomes the distal tubulus contortus, which has fewer zonulae occludentes.

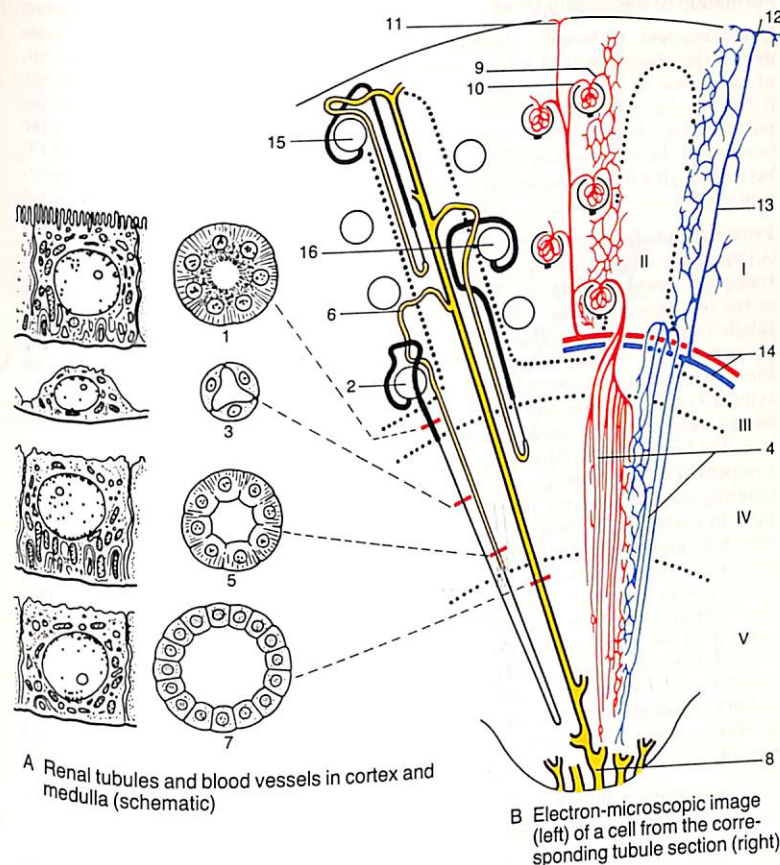
The **junctional tubule A6** leads into the **collecting duct AB7**, which merges with others into larger **papillary ducts** to end as the apex of the renal papillae **A8**. There are about 20–80 papillary ducts, which form a sieve-like plate, the area cribrosa. The collecting ducts and the papillary ducts are 200–300  $\mu\text{m}$  thick. Two-thirds of the epithelial cells appear light in color (*main cells*), and one-third appears dark, due to a wealth of cell organelles (*interpolated cells*). Interpolated between the main cells, these can penetrate towards the lumen to varying degrees.

**A9** Vas efferens, **A10** vas afferens, **A11** capsular branches, **A12** stellate venules, **A13** interlobar vein, **A14** arcuate artery and vein.

The **architecture of blood vessels and tubules** determines the macroscopic appearance of the cut surface of the kidney (see p. 256).

**Cortex.** The glomeruli and tubuli contorti of the proximal and distal tubules lie in the *cortical zone* (I = pars convoluta of the cortical lobule). Each of the *medullary rays* of the cortex (II = pars radialis of the cortical lobule) carries 4–8 collecting ducts and tubuli recti. In the renal **medulla**, the proximal tubulus rectus ends in the *outer striation* of the *external zone* (III = zona externa, outer striation), while the distal tubulus rectus reaches as far as the *inner striation* of the *external zone* (IV = zona interna, inner striation). Some 14% of the intermediate tubuli and the papillary ducts reach as far as the *internal zone* (V = zona interna).

The **renal corpuscles** and their associated convoluted tubules are arranged in *rows*. There are **juxtamedullary A2** and **subcapsular A15** glomeruli and **intermediate glomeruli A16** between them. The **subcapsular nephrons** have *short loops* which extend only a short distance into the outer zone of the medulla. The **juxtamedullary nephrons** extend into the inner region of the medulla with *very long loops*.



### Terminology of the renal tubules

Nomina Histologia, 5 <sup>th</sup> ed. (1989)	Term used in physiology	Term used in microscopic anatomy (older term in brackets)
Tubulus contortus proximalis	Proximal convoluted tubule	Proximal tubule (main segment)
Tubulus rectus proximalis	Henle's Loop	Intermediate tubule (connecting segment)
Tubulus attenuatus		
Tubulus rectus distalis		
Tubulus contortus distalis	Distal convoluted tubule	Distal tubule (middle segment)
Tubulus renalis colligans	Connecting segment	Connecting segment



### Formation of Secondary Urine

**Countercurrent exchange – bundle of ducts.** The almost parallel arrangement of the loops of the renal tubules, the collecting ducts and arterioles and venules rectae, together form numerous bundles of ducts in the renal medullary rays, through which the secondary urine is produced.

**Proximal tubule 1.** Sodium-potassium ATPase, the enzyme involved in active transport—becomes highly concentrated at the basolateral cell membrane of the tubule's cells, indicating active transport processes.  $\text{Na}^+$  ions are pumped out of the tubule cell into the interstitium (intercellular space).  $\text{Cl}^-$  ions and osmotically bound water from the tubule lumen follow. The loss of  $\text{Na}^+$  ions from the cells is compensated for by uptake of  $\text{Na}^+$  ions entering the cells from the tubule lumen (and in exchange for this,  $\text{H}^+$  ions are secreted from metabolic processes into the tubule lumen). There is a constant process of  $\text{Na}^+$  and water extraction, with  $\text{Na}^+$  cotransport of glucose and amino acids from the primary urine. The *capillaries 2*, carrying blood from the *efferent arterioles 3* of the subcapsular and mediocortical glomeruli 4, are involved in this process of water extraction from the interstitium.

The **intermediate tubule 5** is extremely permeable to water. In the thin segment of Henle's loop, water is removed from the urine, which becomes increasingly hypertonic towards the apex of the papilla. The reason for this is the high osmolarity of the interstitium, caused by the activity of the distal tubulus rectus. The *venulae rectae 6*, which carry blood from the vasa efferentia are involved in removing the water from the interstitium.

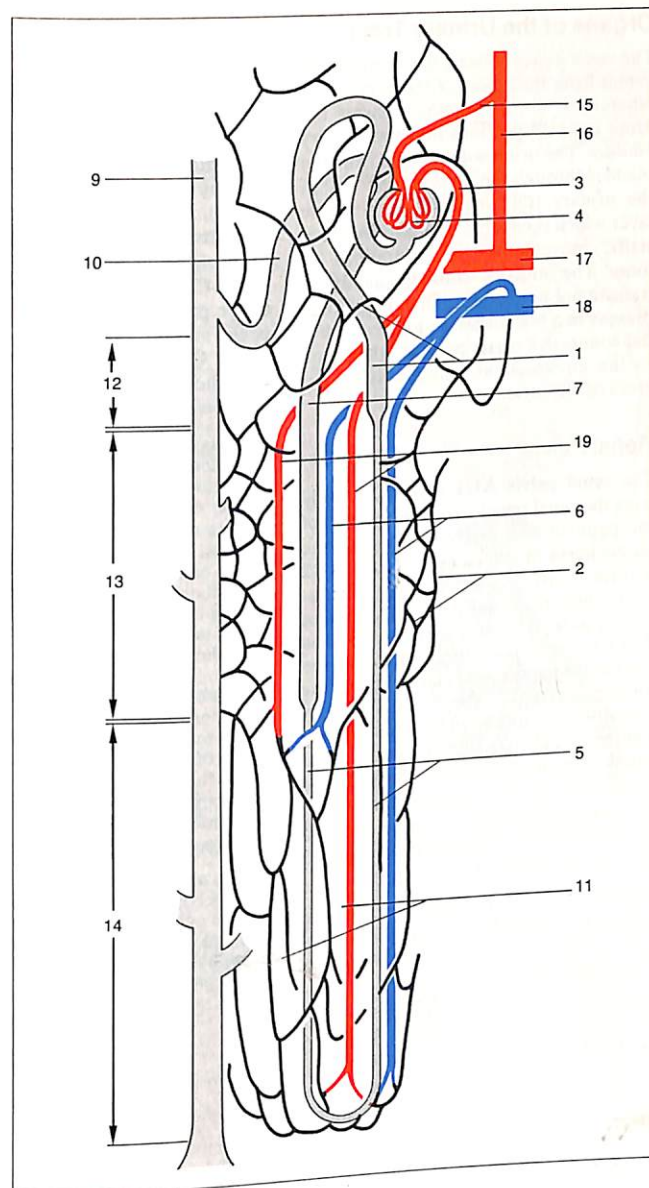
In the **distal tubule**, the *distal tubulus rectus 7* is extremely impermeable to water. Here, too,  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  ions are actively transported from the urine into the interstitium. In the distal tubulus rectus, due to its impermeability water from the urine cannot continue into the interstitium here, following the ion flow,

so that the osmolarity in the interstitium is powerfully increased. At the same time, in the thin segment of Henle's loop, the urine, which has become strongly hypertonic due to water loss, now becomes hypotonic after flowing into the distal tubulus rectus. (The  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  ions that are excreted into the interstitium have previously made the urine hypertonic in the waterpermeable thin segment of Henle's loop, by removing water from it.) The *distal tubulus contortus 8* is water-permeable again. Water outflow is once more associated with the release of  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  ions into the interstitium. The sodium released into the interstitium is replaced here by  $\text{K}^+$  and  $\text{H}^+$  ions, or other cations.

The **collecting duct 9** mediates further water reabsorption, which determines the ultimate concentration of the secondary urine. Reabsorption is effected by the antidiuretic hormone vasopressin, which makes the collecting duct (and the connecting segment 10) water-permeable. Under vasopressin, water is actively transported from the urine into the interstitium, and the urine becomes hypertonic. (Vasopressin release is regulated by osmoreceptors in the hypothalamus.) At the end of the collecting duct, around 99.5% of the water filtered in the glomerulus is reabsorbed with the  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  ions.

The **interstitium 11**, the intercellular space is narrow in the renal cortex and outer striation 12, wider in the inner striation 13, and highly expanded in the internal zone 14. The internal zone contains special lipid-containing *interstitial cells*, arranged one behind another and stretched in a transverse direction between the tubules and the vessels, which impede longitudinal diffusion processes and thus provide support for an increasing rise in osmolarity.

**15** Afferent arteriole, **16** interlobular artery, **17** arcuate artery, **18** arcuate vein, **19** arteriolae rectae.





## Organs of the Urinary Tract

The **renal pelvis** collects the urine which comes from the apices of the papillae. It tapers into the **ureter** which passes the urine in small portions into the **urinary bladder**. The urine is discharged from the bladder through the **urethra**. The wall of the urinary tract organs has a muscle layer which is capable of producing peristaltic movements and alterations of tone. The mucosa consists mainly of transitional epithelium. Glands are only present in a few places. A loose adventitial connective tissue permits adaptation to the environment under varying degrees of distension.

### Renal Pelvis

The **renal pelvis AC1 (pyelon)** loosely lines the renal pouch. Only in the area of the papillae is it firmly attached to the parenchyma of the kidney. A **calix AC2** is formed around each papilla as it protrudes into the renal pelvis. The calices have a stalk of varying length **AC3**. The 7–14 **minor renal calices** surround the apex of the papilla, and before joining the unbranched part of the renal pelvis, they combine to form 2–3 **major renal calices**. The renal pelvis is surrounded by loose connective and fatty tissue which fills the space between the kidney and that part of the renal pelvis which is not adherent to the parenchyma. Vessels and nerves run through this space. **A4 Ureter**.

**Clinical Tip.** As the papillae and the calices are often affected together in diseases, clinicians speak of the “**pyelorenal border region**”.

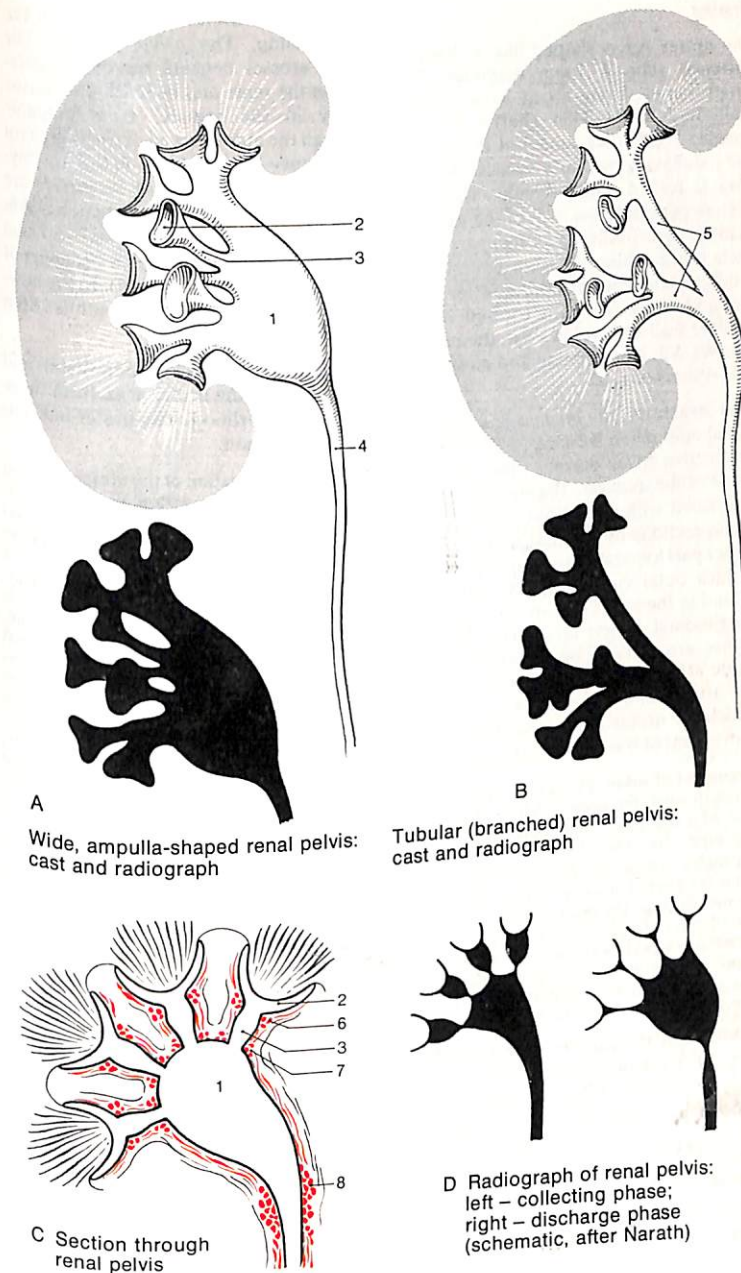
The **shape** of the renal pelvis shows individual and functional differences. It is usually possible to distinguish between an upper and a lower main branch. The pelvis can be uniform in shape, an ampulla-like bag (**pelvis renalis ampullaris**) **A1**, or it can consist of several funnel shaped tubes **B5 (pelvis renalis ramificatus)**. Transitional forms are common. The formation of a particularly large ampulla-shaped pelvis may be due either to de-

velopmental processes or to disease (hydronephrosis). The average capacity of the renal pelvis is 3–8 ml.

**Fine structure.** The renal pelvis is thin-walled and is lined by a **transitional epithelium** (see p. 270), but over the papillae it is lined by polygonal columnar epithelium. The wall of the renal pelvis contains a network of muscles, which forms a sphincter-like structure in the fornix **C2** of each calix and near the apex of the papilla at the border between the pelvis and the calix: the **sphincter of the fornix C6** and the **sphincter of the calix C7**. There is also a **pelvic sphincter C8** at the transition of the pelvis into the ureter.

Urine is first collected in the calix while the sphincter of the calix is contracted. Then the muscles in the calix wall, the sphincter of the fornix, contract at the same time as the sphincter of the calices relaxes. Urine is then expelled into the renal pelvis. Not all the calices contract simultaneously. Any which are pathologically dilated are rigid and play no part in the emptying process. The expulsion of urine from the pelvis takes place only after the latter has been filled to a certain degree. The urine is quickly discharged by alternate closure of the pelvic and caliceal sphincters. An elastic network in the meshes of the muscle fibers facilitates antagonistic action of the corresponding muscle groups. These functions can be observed radiologically after administration of a contrast medium which is excreted by the kidneys, or by retrograde pyelography.

**Vessels and nerves.** The blood vessels of the renal pelvis are branches of the renal vessels, but the pelvic circulation is essentially independent of the renal circulation. The renal pelvis has sensory innervation and its distension is painful.





## Ureter

The **ureter A1** is shaped like a slightly flattened tube 4–7 mm diameter. Its length varies, being about 30 cm in the male and about 1 cm shorter in the female. The slitlike lumen of the ureter has a stellate appearance because its mucosa is folded longitudinally. The two ureters penetrate the wall of the urinary bladder at its fundus, 4–5 cm apart from each other, obliquely from lateral, behind and above toward the anterior, medial and below. They run for 2 cm in the bladder wall and end in a slit, the *ostium ureteris A2*. For opening and closure of the ostium see p. 270.

**Fine structure.** The *mucosa* has a transitional epithelium **B3** (see p. 270) and its connective tissue permits limited movement of the mucosa. The *muscle layer* is interlaced with connective tissue fibers. Cross-sections of the ureter show in its upper part a sparse inner longitudinal and a thick outer circular muscle layer **B4**, joined in the lower part by an outermost longitudinal muscle layer. The different layers are formed by variation in the angle at which the spiral muscle bundles are arranged. The *loose areolar tissue* in which the ureter is situated allows some movement of it within its surroundings.

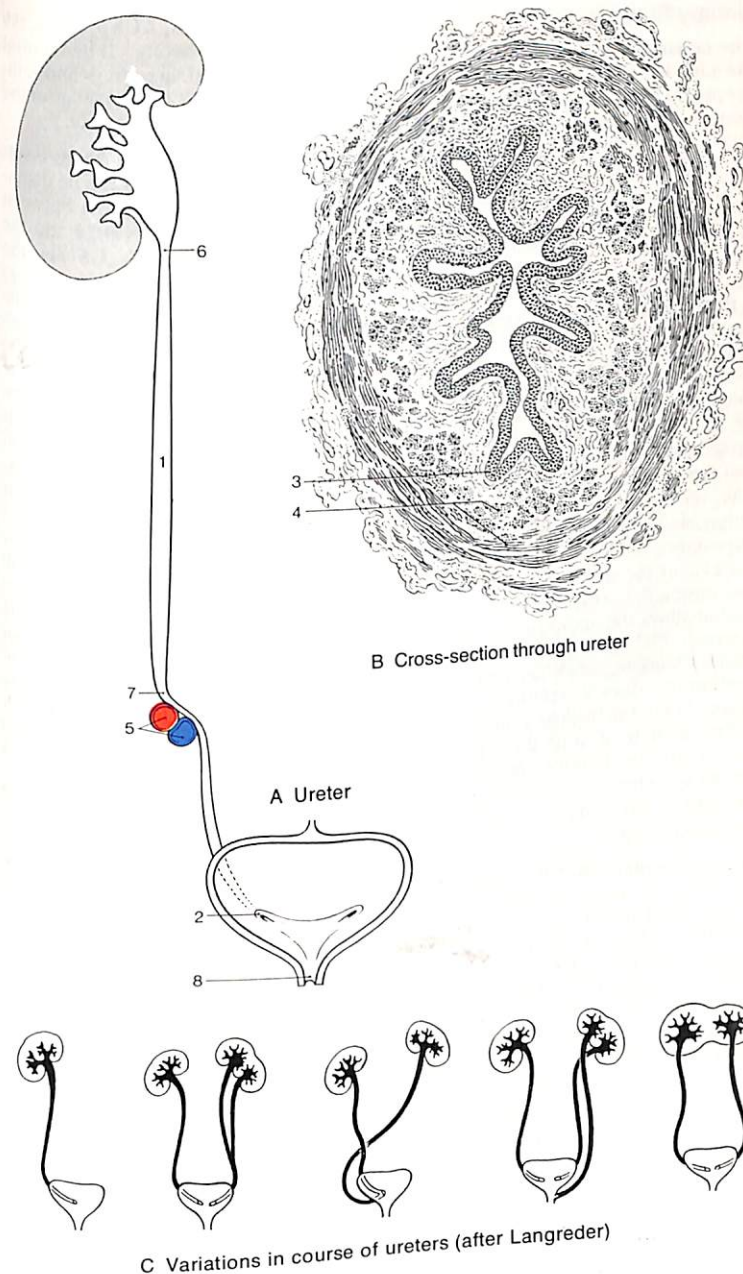
**Transport of urine.** *Peristaltic waves* propel urine through the ureter. After administration of a dye (e.g., methylene blue) that is excreted by the kidneys, observation through a cystoscope shows that the colored urine is squirted in jets about 1 to 4 times per minute through the ostium of the ureter into the bladder. Impacted calculi in the ureter cause increased peristalsis. If the flow of urine is impeded the ureter muscles above the obstacle quickly hypertrophy. During pregnancy the ureter dilates and elongates.

**Position of the ureters.** The *abdominal portion* of the ureter passes almost vertically downward along the fascia of the psoas muscle (see p. 252) and is covered by the peritoneum. The ureter crosses underneath the testicular or ovarian blood vessels. At the entrance into the lesser pelvis it crosses over the point where the common iliac vessels divide

**A5.** The left ureter passes beneath the pelvic colon. The *pelvic portion*: The ureter crosses beneath the ductus deferens in the male and beneath the uterine artery in the female. It is palpable through the anterior wall of the vagina (of importance in ureteric calculi). Physiological *constrictions of the ureter* are found where it leaves the renal pelvis **A6**, where it crosses the iliac vessels **A7** and where it enters the bladder **A2** (danger of impaction of ureteric calculi). In the newborn and in babies the ureter is often tortuous. **A8** Urethra.

**Nerves and vessels.** The blood vessels and lymphatics of the ureter arise from those in its neighborhood. The ureter has sensory innervation.

**Variants:** Duplication of the ureter occurs in about 2% of the population, partial duplication being 3 times more frequent than total duplication. Total duplication, i. e., *ureter duplex (double ureter)*, is the result of a primary duplication of the primitive precursor, and partial duplication, *split ureter*, is due to early division of the ureteric anlage. In a case of double ureter, the ureter that arises at the higher level in the pelvis enters the bladder at a lower level (dystopic opening) than one that arises lower in the pelvis (*Mayer-Weigert rule*). The following displacements of the ureteric orifices may be found: in the male – in the urethra, seminal vesicles, ejaculatory duct, ductus deferens and in the prostatic utricle; in the female – in the urethra, vestibule of the vagina, vagina, uterus or in Gartner's duct. In a case of "*megaureter*" the entire ureter is usually dilated, thick walled and tortuous.





## Urinary Bladder

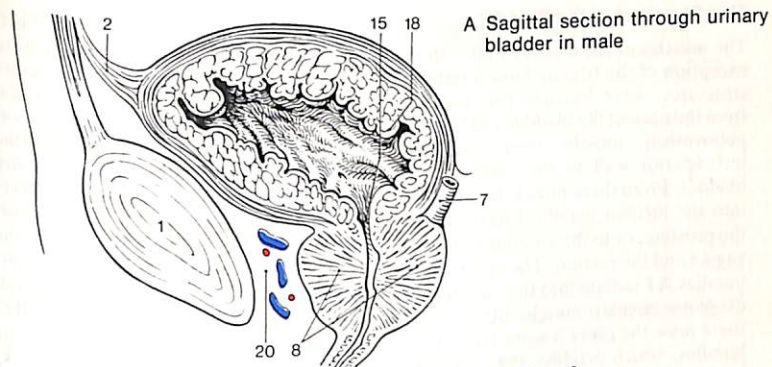
The **urinary bladder** (*vesica urinaria*) in the adult lies in the lesser pelvis beneath the peritoneum, in the subperitoneal connective tissue space behind the pubic bones **A1**. In the newborn the bladder lies higher than the pubic bones. The **body** (*corpus vesicae*) of the bladder tapers upward toward the front into its vertex, the **apex** of the bladder; the **fundus vesicae** (*base*) of the bladder lies posteriorly. The **median umbilical ligament ABC2** ascends from the vertex to the umbilicus; it is the remnant of the embryonic urachus; the **lateral umbilical ligaments B3**, the remnants of the obliterated umbilical arteries, ascend from the body of the bladder to the umbilicus. Both ureters **BC4** enter the bladder at its base and the urethra leaves it from there **C5**. The vertex and the upper wall of an empty bladder collapse giving it a cuplike appearance. When the bladder is full the vertex and the upper wall are elevated and form a flat oval cushion, which may extend above the upper rim of the pubic symphysis. Only during contraction of the bladder muscles, when it is emptied by micturition, does it assume a globular shape. When the bladder contains about 350 ml or more of urine the urge to urinate is felt, but 700 ml or more of urine can be voluntarily retained. In a case of paralysis of the bladder its capacity may be much greater.

The **peritoneum** covers the bladder from the vertex to about the line where the ureters enter the bladder. It is movable over the bladder and forms a transverse reserve fold **B6** which straightens out when the bladder is filled. If filled to capacity the vertex of the bladder ascends between the abdominal wall and the peritoneum. In this position the bladder can be punctured through the abdominal wall without injuring the peritoneum. In front and laterally the bladder is surrounded by loose connective tissue, the **paracystium** (see p. 315) which contains vessels and nerves.

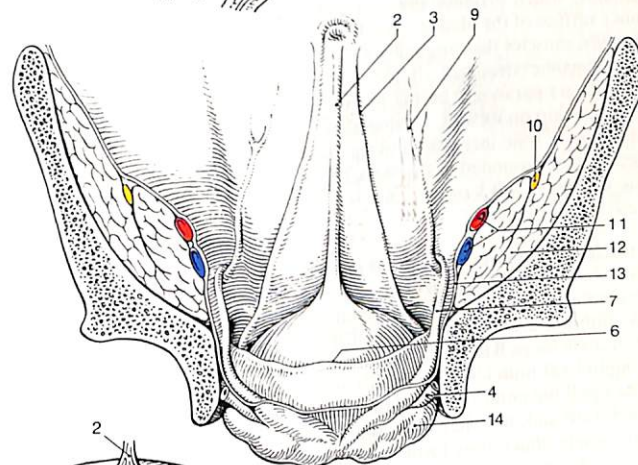
**AB7** Ductus deferens, **AC8** prostate, **B9** inferior epigastric artery, **B10** femoral nerve, **B11** external iliac artery and vein, **B12** iliopsoas muscle, **B13** cut edge of the peritoneum, **B14** seminal vesicle.

**Internal surface.** The mucosa in life is soft and reddish, and two areas can be distinguished. At the base (fundus) between the orifices of the ureters **BC4** and the exit of the urethra **A15**, **C5** lies the **trigone of the bladder** (*trigonum vesicae*) **C16**. The **transverse ureteral ridge**, the **interureteric fold C17**, connects both openings of the ureters. The lower, thicker angle of the triangle protrudes as the **uvula vesicae C5** from behind into the inner mouth of the urethra, which is narrowed by a surrounding ring, the **internal ostium of the urethra**. Venous plexuses here form a compressible pad for closure of the opening. The trigone of the bladder has no folds and is marked by blood vessels. The rest of the interior wall has folds which protrude into the lumen of the contracted bladder **A18**. If the urethra is narrowed, e.g., hypertrophy of the prostate with advancing years (see p. 284), these folds project like trabeculae because of hypertrophy of the bladder muscles due to overwork (*trabeculated bladder*). **C19** Colliculus seminalis.

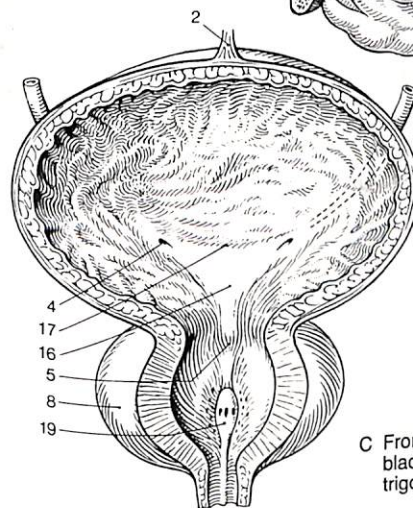
**Blood vessels.** The arteries are described on p. 70. The superior vesical artery originates from the umbilical artery, the distal part of which becomes obliterated after birth and forms the lateral umbilical ligament. The veins form a prominent network **A20** under the bladder. The lymphatics run to lymph nodes alongside the umbilical artery and in the prevesical connective tissue. The nerves are described in Vol. 3. For the **female urethra** see p. 306, for the **male urethra** see p. 288.



A Sagittal section through urinary bladder in male



B Urinary bladder and anterior abdominal wall



C Frontal section through urinary bladder in male showing trigone of the bladder



## Fine Structure of the Bladder

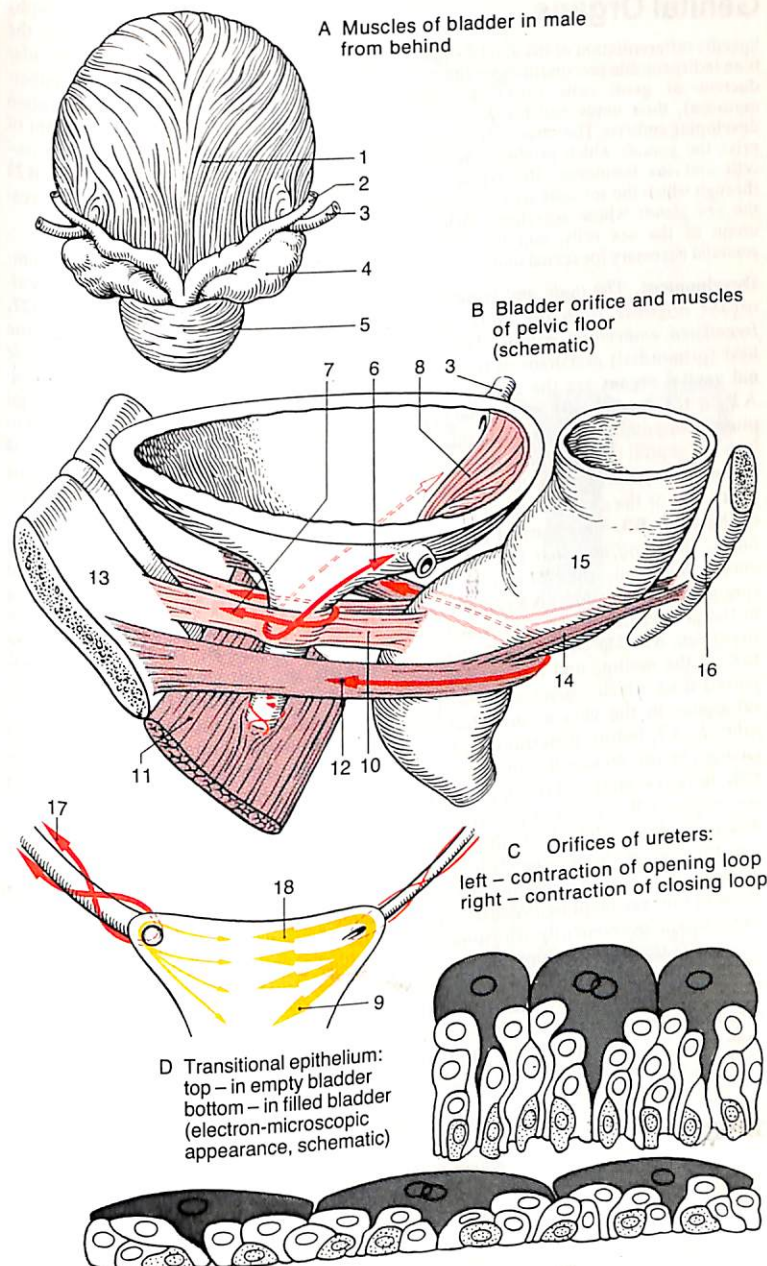
The **muscles of the bladder wall** with the exception of the trigone have a reticular structure, outer bundles run ventrally from the neck of the bladder and from the pubovesical muscle over the posterosuperior wall to the vertex of the bladder. From there muscle bundles pass into the median umbilical ligament and the prostate, or to the anterior wall of the vagina and the rectum. The outer muscle bundles **A1** radiate into the middle layer of more circular muscle fibers. From there arise the inner longitudinal muscle bundles, which produce the corrugated inner surface of the bladder. As the *bladder fills*, muscles that originally had little tone become stretched; if the bladder muscles are paralyzed, hernia-like bulges may develop on its wall. During *micturition* muscle tone increases and the bladder becomes rounded in shape. **A2** Ductus deferens, **AB3** ureter, **A4** seminal vesicle, **A5** prostate.

**Muscles of the internal urethral meatus, the internal urethral opening. Closure:** The anterior part of the circumference of the internal urethral meatus is encircled by muscle loops **B6**, which arise from the longitudinal muscles **A1** of the bladder. They pull the anterior wall of the urethra backward and, together with other circular muscle fibers, they form the *involuntary sphincter muscle* of the bladder outlet. Muscle fibers from the pubovesical muscle **B7**, which run around the posterior circumference of the opening of the urethra, are also involved in the closure. Muscles **B8** that are situated in the uvula (see p. 268) and the veins of the mucosa also contribute to closure of the urethra. **Opening:** The following muscle bundles participate in the active, involuntary opening of the urethra: muscle bundles **C9** from the loops of the closure mechanism of the urethral orifices radiate into the involuntary sphincter of the bladder. When they contract they form a groove at the floor of the bladder, thus contributing to opening of the outflow tract. Contraction of the muscle bundle in the uvula **B8**

can draw it backward. In addition, fascicles of the pubovesical muscle, which are inserted in the anterior wall of the urethra as well as the fascicles of the retrovesical muscle **B10**, which radiates into the posterior wall, also participate in opening the outlet of the bladder. The *voluntary sphincter muscle* consists of muscle fibers that have separated from the *deep transverse perineal muscle B11*, and as the *muscle of the urethral sphincter* they surround the urethra with ascending, spiraling slings. The levator ani muscle **B12** may also take part in closure of the urethra. **B13** Pubic bone, **B14** pubococcygeal muscle, **B15** rectum, **B16** coccyx.

**Muscles of the trigone and the opening of the ureter.** Along its lower third, the ureter is accompanied by an outer muscle layer **C17**, the ureteric sheath, which forms a loop surrounding the mouth of the ureter. If the muscle bundles are shortened, e.g., by a stretch stimulus due to accumulated urine, the orifice is elevated and opened – *opening loop*. Muscular slings **C18** run between the 2 ureteric orifices and pull them downward to close them – *closure loop*.

The **mucosa** is lined by pseudo-stratified *transitional epithelium D*, which can rapidly be transformed from high cylindrical cells into low cells by movement of cells and folding of cell membranes during a change in the volume of the bladder. The uppermost layer of cells has a special outer layer as a protection against urine. There are mucous glands at the inner opening of the urethra. The mucosa over the trigone is firmly adherent to the muscle layer but elsewhere it is only loosely attached to the muscles.





## Genital Organs

Specific differentiation of the genital organs is an indispensable precondition for the production of germ cells (ova and spermatozoa), their union and for care of the developing embryo. The *genital organs* comprise the *gonads* which produce the *germ cells* and sex hormones, the *genital tract* through which the sex cells are transported, the *sex glands* whose secretions facilitate union of the sex cells, and the *external genitalia* necessary for sexual union.

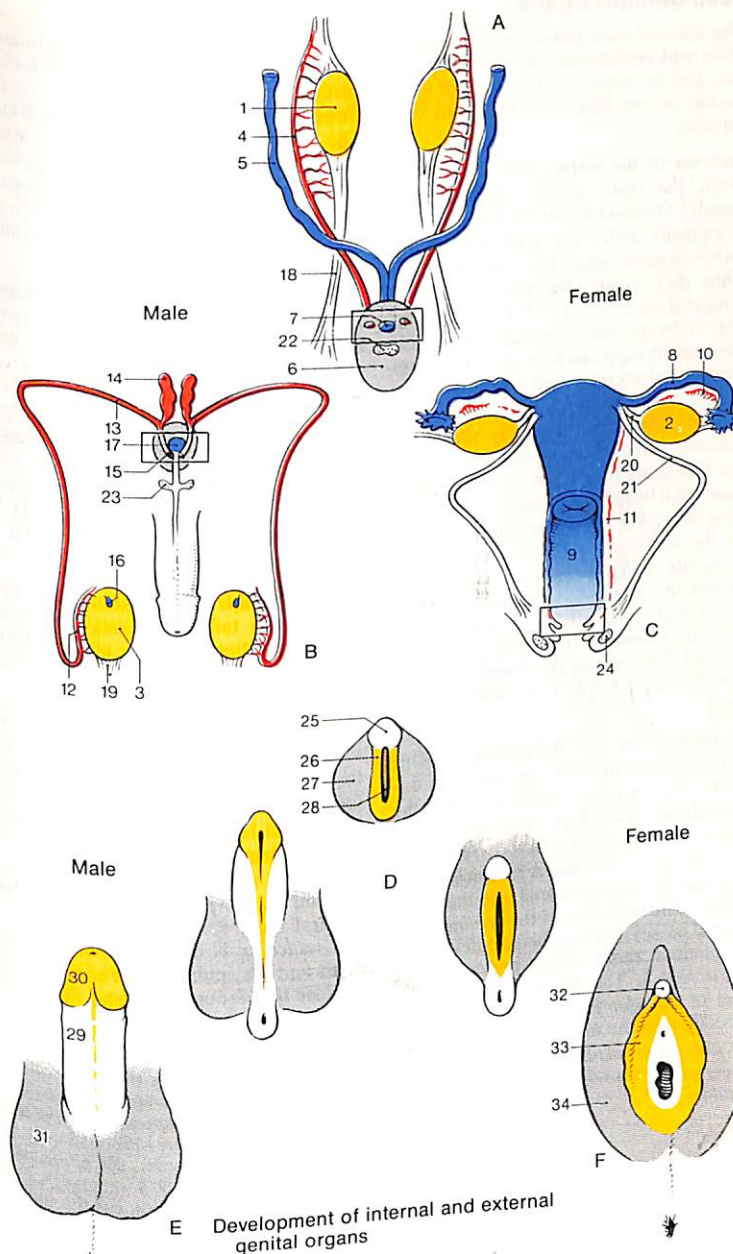
**Development.** The male and female sex organs originate from the same undifferentiated embryonal anlage. The earliest (primordial) precursor of the *internal genital organs* are the *genital ridges* A1 on the medial side of the mesonephros. Early embryonic germ cells migrate into the genital ridges, where they multiply in the cortical zone in the case of the ovary C2, or the central area in the case of the testis B3. Two pairs of excretory ducts, the *Wolffian duct* (mesonephric duct) A4 and the *Müllerian duct* (paramesonephric duct) A5 run laterally in the genital ridges and downward into the cloaca A6. The *Müllerian ducts* cross toward the midline and fuse into an unpaired duct which causes a dorsal protuberance in the cloaca, the *Müllerian tubercle* A7, before penetrating into the cloaca. In the *female* the uterine tubes C8, uterus (womb) and the upper part of the vagina C9 are developed from the *Müllerian ducts*, while the *Wolffian ducts* and the rest of the mesonephric anlage atrophy and form the epoophoron C10. Parts of the mesonephric (Wolffian) duct can remain permanently for some distance as *Gartner's duct* (longitudinal duct of the epoophoron) C11. In the *male* the *Wolffian ducts* and a remnant of the mesonephros develop into the epididymis B12, the ductus deferens B13, the seminal vesicles B14 and the ejaculatory

duct B15. The *Müllerian ducts* atrophy into the appendix testis B16 and the prostatic utricle B17. The *gubernacular cord* A18 develops into the gubernaculum testis B19, or into the ovarian ligament C20 and the round ligament of the uterus C21. The anlage A22 of *Cowper's glands* (bulbourethral glands) B23 and of *Bartholin's glands* (glandula vestibularis major) C24.

The *anlage of the external genitalia* comprises the *genital tubercle* D25, two *genital folds* D26 and two *genital ridges* D27, and also the *urogenital sinus* D28 (the anterior part of the cloaca). In the *male* the corpora cavernosa penis E29 develop from the genital tubercle, and the genital folds close over the urogenital sinus to form the corpus spongiosum (corpus cavernosum urethrae) and the glans penis E30. Shortly before birth the testicles descend into the scrotum E31 which has been formed by fusion of the 2 genital swellings. The orifice of the combined *Müllerian ducts* is hidden in the urethra (rectangle around in B; see colliculus seminalis p. 284). In the *female*, the clitoris and the glans clitoridis F32 develop from the genital tubercle. The labia minora F33 and the bulbus vestibuli develop from the genital folds which remain separated. The labia majora F34 develop from the genital ridges. The aperture of the combined *Müllerian ducts* lies in the vagina (rectangle at the bottom of C).

**Gonad formation.** In both sexes, two types of cells meet in the gonadal anlage in the three-week-old embryo to form the gonads: the primordial germ cells (*ganocytes*) and epithelial cells of the body cavity (coelom epithelia). The two types collaborate throughout life; in the *ovary*, they function as the cells of oogenesis and as follicular epithelial cells, and in the *testis* as cells of spermatogenesis and as supporting cells (Sertoli cells).

Male	Undifferentiated Anlage	Female
testis		ovary
seminal ducts	anlage of the gonads	(Gartner's duct)
prostatic utricle	mesonephric (Wolffian) duct	uterine tubes, vagina,
	Müllerian duct	uterus
corpus cavernosum penis	genital tubercle	clitoris, glans clitoridis
scrotum	genital ridges	labia majora



E Development of internal and external genital organs



## Male Genital Organs

The *internal male genital organs* are the testis and epididymis, the ductus deferens, and the prostate. The *external male genital organs* consist of the penis and scrotum.

**Descent of the testis.** The *testes* (testicles), the male gonads (reproductive glands), descend at the end of fetal development under the guidance of the *gubernaculum testis* into the *scrotum*.

Thus they escape the intra-abdominal temperature which is 2–5°C higher than that in the scrotum. The higher temperature would suppress formation of sperm (spermatozoa), although it would not interfere with the production of the hormones. The testes normally reach the external (subcutaneous) inguinal ring at the beginning of the 8th month of pregnancy and lie in the scrotum by the beginning of the 9th month (maturation times of the newborn). *Descent of the testis* proceeds along the posterior wall, the *processus vaginalis peritonei*, of a peritoneal evagination which reaches into the *scrotum* and forms a cavity around the testicle. Its connection with the abdominal cavity is normally obliterated.

**Overview.** The *testis* **A1** produces sperm and sex hormones. The spermatozoa migrate via narrow channels into the *epididymis* **A2** where they are stored. They are ejaculated into the *urethra* **A4** via the *ductus deferens* **A3**, which passes through the inguinal canal into the lesser pelvis. The secretion of the *seminal vesicle* **A5** passes into the ductus deferens, an *ejaculatory canal* which perforates the *prostate* **A6**. The ducts of the prostate and of the *glands of Cowper* **A7** open directly into the urethra. **A8** Ureter, **A9** *corpus cavernosum penis*, **A10** *corpus cavernosum urethrae*, **A11** *urinary bladder*.

## Testis and Epididymis

Both testes are suspended in the scrotum by a fibrovascular stalk, the *spermatic cord*, which leaves the inguinal canal through the external inguinal ring **B12**. The left testicle often hangs lower than the right. The scrotum serves to regulate the temperature of the testes. Its origin from the 2 genital ridges is indicated by a midline seam, the *raphe of the scrotum* **B13**.

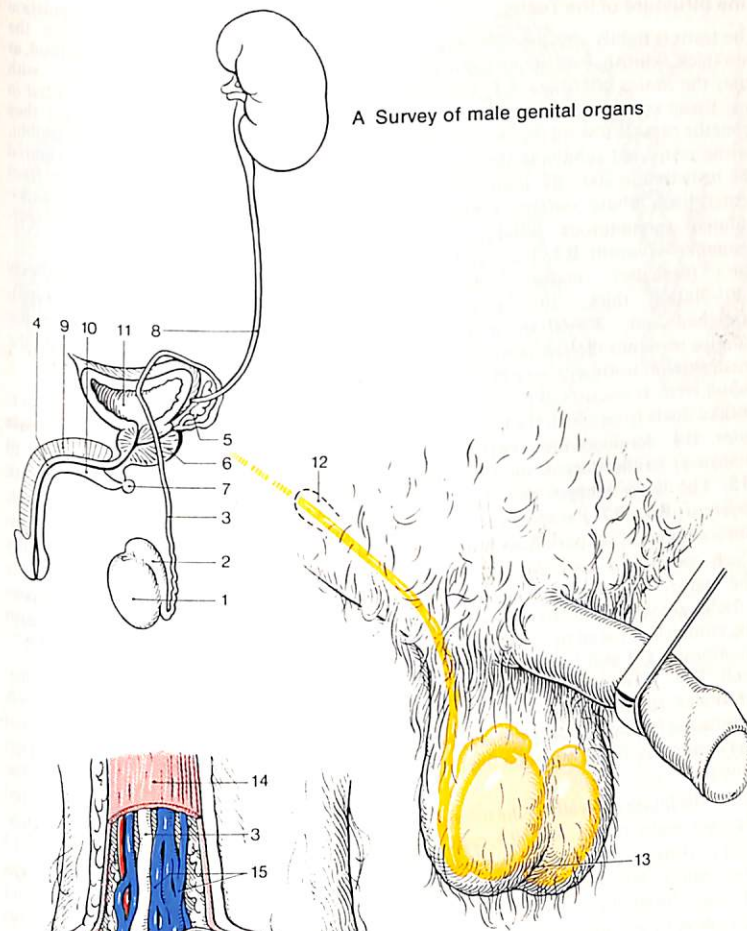
The mature *testis* is approximately plum-shaped, 4–5.5 cm long. It is of firm consistency and in its usual position in the scrotum, a broad margin points toward the back and a narrower one points forward. In the testis we distinguish an upper and lower pole and medial and lateral surfaces. At the posterior border, the *mediastinum* of the *testis*, blood vessels **C15**, nerves and the *ductus deferens* **C3** enter and leave the epididymis with the *spermatic cord* **C14** (see p. 282).

The *epididymis* **AC2** is attached to the testis like a tail. It consists of a head (*caput*) that lies above the upper pole of the testicle, of a *body (corpus)* and a tail, the *cauda epididymis*.

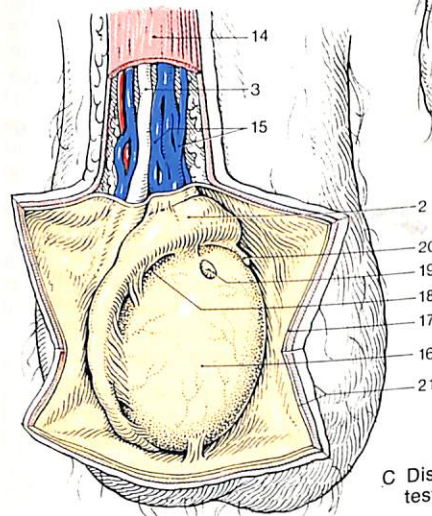
The serous membrane covering the testis, the *tunica vaginalis testis*, is a remnant of the fetal *processus vaginalis peritonei*, and covers the testis and epididymis with its visceral layer (the *epiorchium* **C16**). This is reflected at the mediastinum of the testis and at the epididymis onto the parietal layer (*periorchium*) **C17**. The visceral layer forms a groove laterally, the *testicular bursa* **C18**, between the testis and the epididymis. The two layers enclose the serous scrotal sac, the *cavum scroti*.

At the head of the epididymis and at the upper pole of the testis there are often 2 small vesicles, the *hydatids*. The hydatid of the testis, called the *appendix of the testis* **C19**, is a remnant of the Müllerian duct; the hydatid of the epididymis, the *appendix of the epididymis* **C20**, is a remnant of the mesonephros. **C21** Section cut through the coats of the testis.

A Survey of male genital organs



B Position of right testis within scrotum



C Dissection of coats of testis and seminal cord



## Fine Structure of the Testis

The testis is tightly enveloped by a ca. 1-mm thick, whitish, connective tissue capsule, the *tunica albuginea* **A1**. Connective tissue septae (*septula testis*) radiate from the capsule toward the mediastinum of the testis and subdivide the tissue of the testicle into 200–300 lobules (*lobuli testis*). Each lobule contains several convoluted seminiferous tubules (*tubuli seminiferi contorti*) **B2**. Each tubule in the (sexually) mature testis is 140–300  $\mu\text{m}$  thick, and if it were stretched out, 30–60 cm long. The tubules lead into the *rete testis* **B3** in the mediastinum testis with straight endings, *tubuli recti*. It consists of interconnected slitlike ducts from which the *efferent ductules* **B4** conduct the sperm (spermatozoa) to the *duct of the epididymis* **B5**. The latter merges into the *ductus deferens* **B6**. **B7** Paradidymis, **B8** an aberrant duct. Compare **A** with **B**.

Each *convoluted seminiferous tubule* in the mature testis contains a lumen. The tubules are separated from the surrounding connective tissue by a (hyaline) basal membrane **C9** and have a multilayered wall. The “germinal epithelium” in them produces *spermatozoa*. The hormone-producing interstitial cells are situated in the *connective tissue* between the tubules (see p. 278).

The *cells lining the walls of the tubules* are of two main types. *Sertoli's cells* **D10** (supporting cells) are recognizable by their nuclei, which contain little chromatin and a large nucleolus.

Sertoli cells are up to 50  $\mu\text{m}$  long. They secrete the seminal fluid into the lumina of the *tubuli seminiferi* and produce the lactate and pyruvate required for spermatogenesis. Over half their height they are joined by occluding intercellular contacts, tight junctions, which separate two compartments. From the basal blood compartment, the spermatogonia take up the materials for mitoses. In the apical compartment, the primary spermatocytes develop antigenic characteristics but are protected from the blood stream (= blood-testis-barrier) within the meshes of which the *spermatozoa* mature.

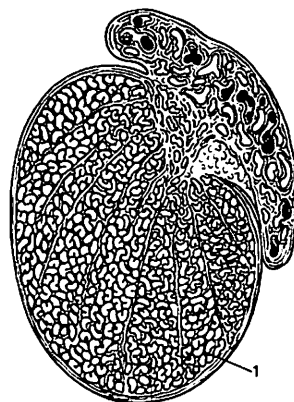
The *Sertoli cells* are central to the regulation of spermatogenesis. They produce the blood–testis barrier and the seminal fluid, as well as “androgen-binding protein,” with which they bring testosterone produced in the interstitia into the compartment they have created. Finally, they produce inhibin, which arrests the processes to the required degree. Inhibin inhibits FSH release from the adenohypophysis and thus plays an essential part in the regulation of spermatogenesis.

Spermatogenesis commences at puberty and proceeds in 3 periods (or steps), during which the cells migrate from the periphery toward the center of the tubule.

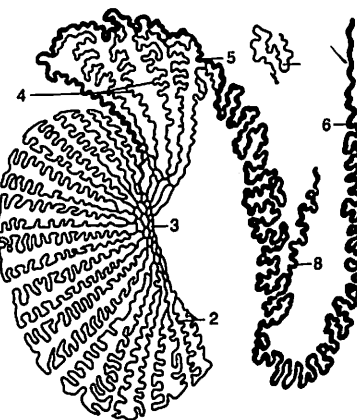
1. The *multiplication period* spermatogonia **D11**. *Type A spermatogonia* are stem cells, which either rest or form more stem cells by mitosis. These are distinct from *type B spermatogonia*, which are more developed (several nucleoli) and continue to divide mitotically and produce *spermatocytes I* (primary spermatocytes). These and all subsequent cells remain linked by cytoplasmic bridges.

2. *Period of maturation*. The *spermatocyte I* **D12**, after duplication of its DNA (=  $4n$  DNA), enters the various stages of the *prophase of the first meiotic division* (meiosis, see p. 318), which lasts some three weeks (largest cells of the germinal epithelium). During the first meiotic division, two smaller *spermatocytes II* **D13** (secondary spermatocytes,  $2n$  DNA each) arise. At the end of the second meiotic division, and without previous DNA duplication, mitosis quickly produces four (haploid) *spermatids* **D14** ( $1n$  DNA each) from these. These are small, dense cells, two of which contain an X chromosome, while the other two contain a Y chromosome. They lie in clusters at the tips of the Sertoli cells.

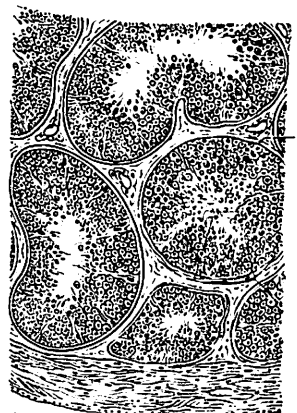
The steps of spermatogenesis follow the course of the testicular tubules, with a temporal arrangement so that stages of equal maturity are arranged in a spiral fashion around the walls of the tubules. **D15** Spermatocyte. Maturation divisions see p. 318.



A Section through testis and epididymis



B System of tubules of testis and epididymis (after Rauber-Kopsch)



C Section from A showing seminiferous tubules



D Higher magnification of section from C; sector of seminiferous tubule



3. *Period of differentiation* ("spermiogenesis") (multiplication and maturation period, see p. 276). The spermatids lose their intercellular cytoplasmic bridges and are transformed into *spermatozoa* (sperm), which are a transportable form of sperm cells able to reach the ovum and to penetrate it. The most important structural changes are the *formation of the acrosome* (a modified Golgi apparatus with lysosomes) *condensation of the cell nucleus* and *formation of the tail*. The sperm tails stand out in the lumen of the seminiferous tubule. The spermatozoa that are released finally pass through the rete testis, the first part of the efferent pathway in the testis, into the epididymis. Residual bodies **B1**, the cytoplasm which the spermatozoa no longer require, remain in the Sertoli cells.

A sexually mature testis contains about 1000 million spermatogonia and can produce about 200 million spermatozoa per day.

**Sperm (spermatozoon).** The spermatozoon is about 60  $\mu\text{m}$  long and consists of the following parts. 1. The *head* **BC2** contains the haploid cell nucleus. It is 3–5  $\mu\text{m}$  long and appears oval in a frontal view, and pear-shaped from the side. Its pointed part carries a cap, the acrosome **C3**. 2. The *neck* **BC4** is a short connection between the head and the middle section and the following parts are joined flexibly to the head. The fibrils of the tail originate in the neck. 3. The relatively thick *middle section* **BC5** is about 6  $\mu\text{m}$  long and contains the cilium around which the "spiral thread" is wound. 4. The following *main section* **BC6**, the longest part of the tail, is thinner than the middle section. 5. The *terminal part* is the thinnest part of the tail.

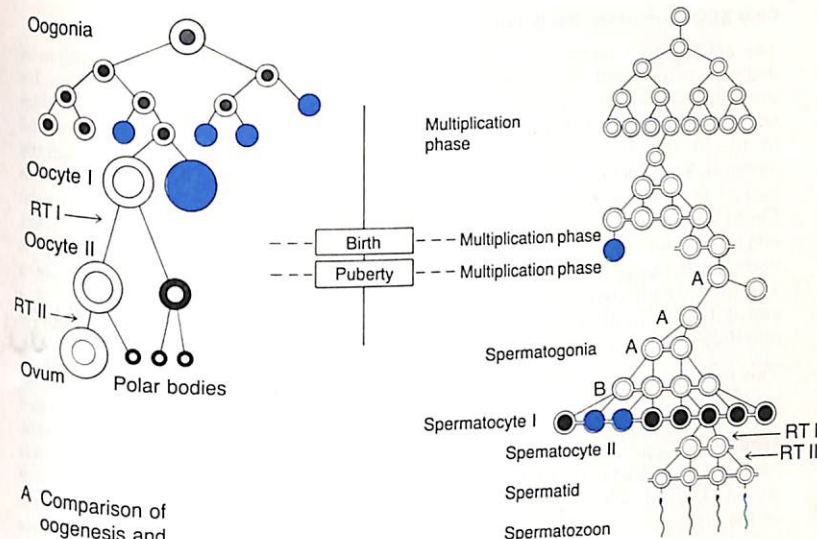
The entire spermatozoon is surrounded by a plasmalemma. The *acrosome* is formed from the lamellae of the Golgi apparatus and contains, amongst other things, hyaluronidase with which to penetrate the membrane of the ovum. The *neck* is connected to the cell nucleus by a "basal plate" and contains the *proximal centriole*, which is ready to form the division spindle after penetration of the sperm into the ovum. The axis of the *middle section* is formed from a "9 $\times$ 2+2"

structure of tubules like a cilium which arises from the *distal centriole*. Externally, the tubules are surrounded by 9 thicker and wider, so-called "external fibrils" around which the *mitochondria* are densely packed ("spiral fibrils"). In the *main section*, the cilium is surrounded by a "fiber sheath" – two longitudinal "bands", which are bound together by "circular fibers". The *terminal part* only contains cilia.

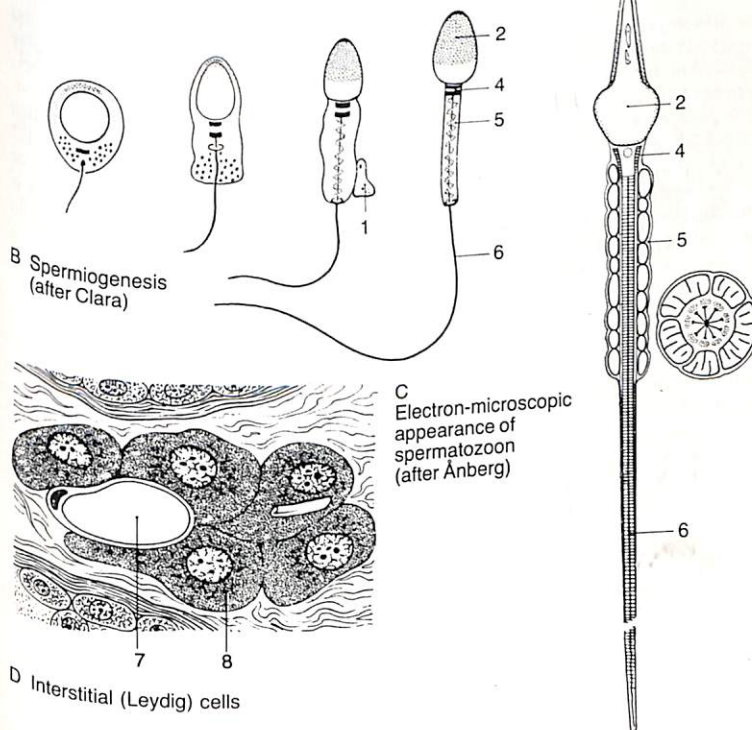
**Interstitial cells (Leydig's interstitial cells)** lie as hormone producers around the blood vessels **D7** in groups **D8** between the seminiferous tubules. LH and FSH (ICSH) from the adenohypophysis stimulate the formation of gonadal hormones and sperm cells. LH causes the Leydig cells to produce the androgens (testosterone) that stimulate sperm-cell formation (estrogens are also produced in small amounts). FSH stimulates the Sertoli cells to secrete the "androgen-binding protein", which brings about androgen transport into the seminal fluid and thus leads to the differentiation of spermatids, favorably influenced by the diffuse distribution of the Leydig cell groups. At the same time, FSH triggers LH receptors on Leydig cells (counterregulation by *inhibin*, see p. 276). Under the influence of the androgens, the primary and secondary sexual characteristics also mature.

**Age differences.** The testis grows throughout childhood and it only reaches full development between the age of 20 and 30 years. It shrinks again with advancing years. The testis of the newborn is under the influence of placental hormones for a short time and contains strongly developed interstitial cells. However, they disappear quickly and do not reappear until puberty. During childhood the "seminiferous tubules" of the testis are represented by cords of epithelial cells without a lumen. They contain Sertoli cells and stem cells of spermatogonia. Spermatogenesis commences at puberty and usually continues into old age. Both the seminiferous epithelium and the interstitial cells can be reduced by malnutrition, disease and advancing age.

**A:** RT I = 1st maturation division  
RT II = 2nd maturation division  
(see p. 318).



**A** Comparison of oogenesis and spermatogenesis (blue: dead cells)



**D** Interstitial (Leydig) cells



## Fine Structure of the Epididymis

The **epididymis** consists of a system of ductules surrounded by connective tissue. The spermatozoa arrive there via the **rete testis** **Ab**, which still lies in the testis, in 10–20 **efferent ductules** (*ductuli efferentes*) **Ac**, which make up the greater part of the head of the epididymis **A1**. Each efferent ductule is about 20 cm long and is convoluted to form a small conical body, the lobule of the epididymis, some 2 cm high. Its apex begins at the rete testis and at its base the efferent ductule opens into the **duct of the epididymis** **Ad**.

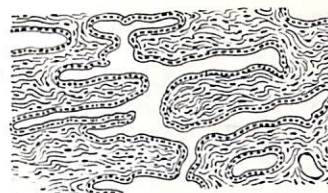
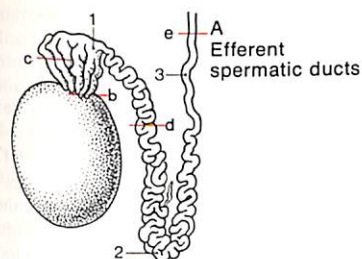
This duct is about 5 m long and is also very tortuous. Its lumen widens from 150  $\mu$ m to 400  $\mu$ m. It extends from the head to the tail of the epididymis (**cauda epididymis**) **A2** where spermatozoa are stored. The cauda epididymis continues as the **ductus deferens** **Ae**. Spermatozoa are immobile while still in the testicle and they reach the epididymis in a stream of fluid.

**Fine structure.** The position of the sections **B–D** through the system of ducts is indicated in **A** by the red lines **b–d**. The spermatozoa reach full maturity in the epididymis where they are surrounded by a colloidal secretion that protects them against an acid environment. The pH in the epididymis is 6.48–6.61 which immobilizes the spermatozoa. The **rete testis** **B** is a system of slits in the mediastinum of the testis and is lined by squamous epithelium. The **efferent ductules** **C** are thin-walled. Their epithelium consists of alternating patches of stratified ciliated columnar epithelium and of simple squamous epithelium. The lumen is stellate in cross-section. The high ciliated columnar epithelia cells produce fluid and the low squamous epithelia can absorb fluid. The wall of the **ductus epididymidis** **D** contains only sparse muscle fibers and is lined by a double-layered columnar epithelium with “*stereocilia*”, hair-tuftlike processes which are a sign of secretion.

## Ductus Deferens

The **ductus deferens** is a continuation of the ductus epididymidis and serves for transport of spermatozoa. It is 50–60 cm long and runs with blood vessels and nerves in the spermatic cord through the inguinal canal (see p. 282). It dilates towards its spindle-shaped end into the **ampulla of the ductus deferens** which takes in the ostium of the seminal vesicle. It continues into the ejaculatory duct which pierces the prostate (see p. 284).

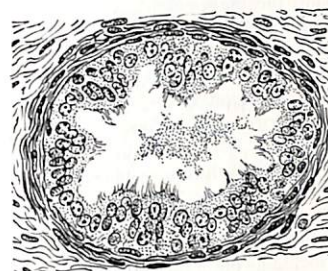
**Fine structure.** Although the outer diameter of the ductus deferens is 3.0–3.5 mm, its actual lumen is only 0.5 mm wide. It has a **strong muscle wall** and feels as hard as cartilage. The muscle fibers run in spirals which follow either left of righthand turns. Their angle of gradient changes but is more longitudinal in the external muscle layer **E4**, more circular in the middle layer **E5**, and again more longitudinal in the internal layer **E6**. A cross-section, therefore, shows a triple-layered muscle wall. Suction and pressure mechanisms are assumed to play a part in the quick passage of the spermatozoa. The thin **mucosa** has 3–5 longitudinal folds. It is covered by a high columnar, double-layered epithelium **E7** which still carries “*stereocilia*” near its origin. A connective-tissue adventitia is formed. The muscle layer in the ampulla becomes thinner, the mucosa forms a reticular pattern of small folds and little niches appear.



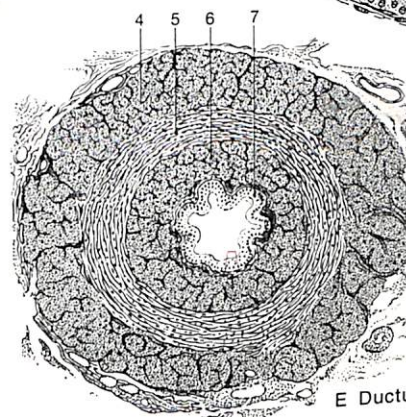
B Rete testis



C Efferent ductules



D Ductus epididymidis



E Ductus deferens



### Spermatic Cord, Scrotum and the Coverings of the Testis

**Spermatic cord, vessels and nerves of the testis.** As the testis descends through the inguinal canal into the scrotum it draws all the structures of the spermatic cord behind it. The *testicular arteries* **A1** originate from the aorta **A2** below the renal arteries; the *right testicular vein* **A3** drains into the inferior vena cava **A4**, and the left into the *left renal vein* **A5**. The testicular veins form a very marked, extended venous plexus, the *pampiniform plexus*. Congestion of the plexus may result in varicose dilatations. The *lymphatics* of the testis drain into lumbar lymph nodes on the inferior vena cava and the abdominal aorta. Vegetative *nerves* come from the celiac plexus (see Vol. 3). The bundle containing all these structures, including the cremaster muscle and its connective tissue, surrounds the *ductus deferens* **A-D6** and is called the *spermatic trunk*. **A7** Inguinal ligament, **A8** internal inguinal ring, **A9** external inguinal ring.

**Scrotum and coverings of the testes.** The layers of the abdominal wall take part in the formation of the *scrotum* and the coverings of the testis. Each *testicular (scrotal) layer* is related to and merges into a layer of the abdominal wall.

**Inner layer (peritoneum).** The *tunica vaginalis testis* **C10** (epiorchium, periorchium, see p. 274) is derived from the peritoneum **B11** and surrounds the serous cavity of the *scrotum* **B12**. A band-like remnant **B13**, the *vestigium processus vaginalis*, sometimes indicates its original connection with the peritoneal cavity. If, exceptionally, this connection, the *vaginal process of the peritoneum*, remains open, loops of the small intestine may enter the scrotum = *congenital inguinal hernia* (indirect). The cavity of the scrotum may be filled by a pathologic serous effusion causing marked enlargement of the scrotum - *hydrocele*.

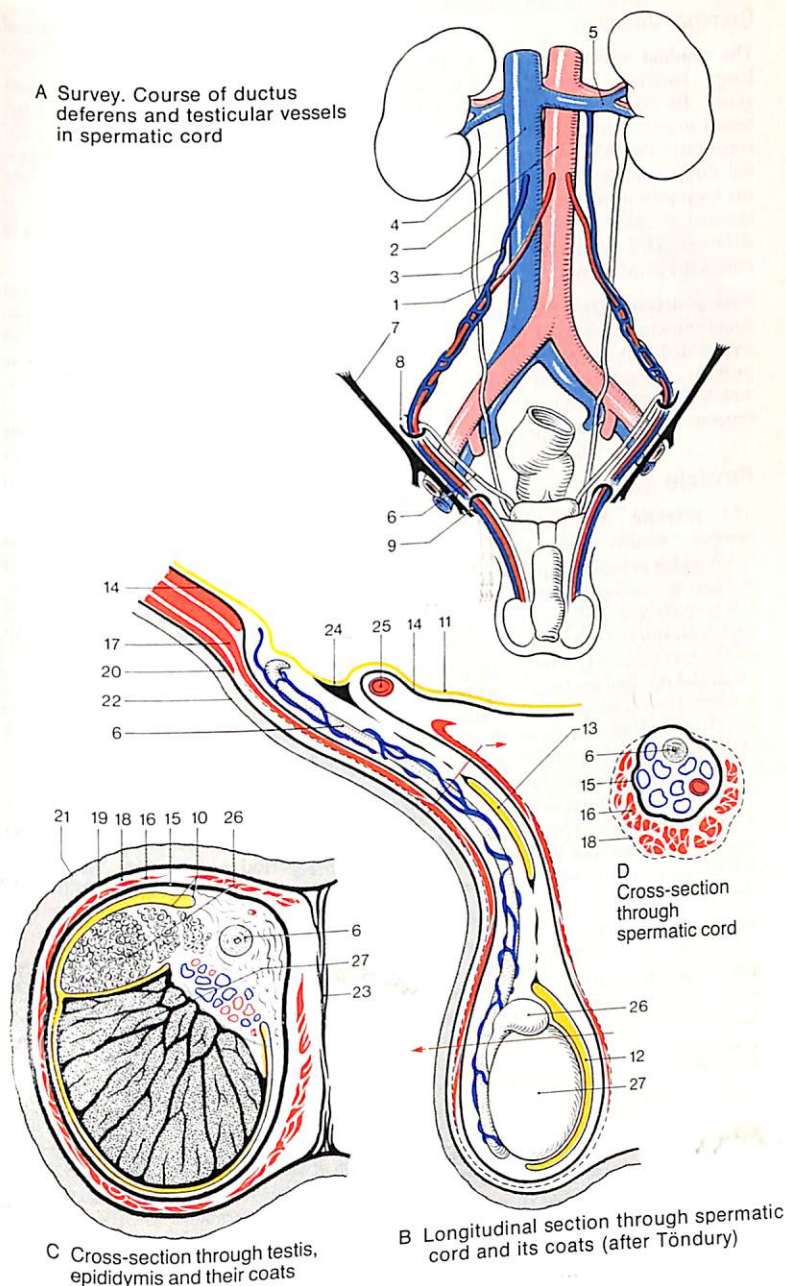
**Middle layer (muscles and fascia of the abdominal wall).** The *internal spermatic*

*fascia* **CD15**, an evagination of the transverse fascia **B14** of the abdominal wall, lies on top of the *tunica vaginalis testis*. The fascia is covered by the *cremaster muscle* **CD16** a thin, striated muscle, that arises from the internal oblique and oblique transverse abdominal muscles **B17**. The cremaster, which suspends the testicle like a sling, can elevate it either voluntarily or by reflex action during ejaculation. The cremaster is enveloped by the *cremasteric fascia* **CD18** and is covered by the *external spermatic fascia* **C19**, which is connected to the aponeurosis of the external, oblique abdominal muscle **B20**.

**BC Outer layer (skin of the abdomen).** The *skin of the scrotum* **C21** is a continuation of the skin of the abdomen **B22**. It is thin, pigmented and contains sebaceous glands and hairs with follicles that form small elevations. Instead of fat, the subcutaneous connective tissue contains a layer of smooth muscle cells, the *tunica dartos*. This is connected by elastic fibers to the adventitia of the subcutaneous blood vessels. During reflex contraction of the dartos, the skin of the scrotum becomes wrinkled, its surface area diminishes and the blood vessels get closer together. Loss of heat is thus diminished. On the other hand, if the dartos is relaxed more heat is given off. The scrotal skin and the dartos form the scrotum. It is divided by a fibrous partition, the *scrotal septum* **C23**, into 2 compartments, one for each testis.

**B24** Site of the internal inguinal ring, **B25** inferior epigastric artery, **BC26** epididymis, **BC27** testis.

A Survey. Course of ductus deferens and testicular vessels in spermatic cord





## Seminal Vesicles

The **seminal vesicle A1** is a 5–10 cm long, baglike, convoluted S-shaped gland. Its alkaline secretion (pH 7.29) which together with the prostatic fluid, constitutes the bulk of the semen (seminal fluid) contains fructose from which the spermatozoa derive their energy. The seminal vesicle opens into the ductus deferens **AE2** shortly before the latter enters the prostate **A3**.

**Fine structure.** The thin wall contains some muscle fibers, and the mucosa is subdivided into chambers and niches by primary, secondary, and tertiary folds, which in section produce a picture of mucous membrane bridges.

## Prostate

The **prostate A3** produces a thin, opaque, weakly acidic secretion (pH 6.45) which contains among other materials proteases (liquefaction of the ejaculate), citric acid (buffer effect), spermine and spermidine (influencing the fertility of the spermatozoa), and prostaglandins (stimulating the uterus). The prostate resembles a chestnut in shape and size. It lies between the base of the bladder **ACE4** and the deep transverse perineal muscle **CE5**, 1–1.5 cm behind the pubic symphysis and in front of the rectum from which it is palpable. The prostate is perforated by the **prostatic part of the urethra CDE6** and by the two **ejaculatory ducts ACD7**.

**Fine structure.** The prostate consists of about 40 discrete tubuloalveolar glands **F8** which end, partly jointly, in about 15 little openings into the urethra around the **seminal colliculus**. The **dorsal part** of the prostate **E9** comprises a **right and a left lobe**. The **anterior part** of the prostate **DE10**, in front of the urethra, is an isthmus with only a few glands. From a functional and histogenetic point of view, three concentric zones surrounding the urethra can be described (marked in red in **C, D**, and **E**): the **periurethral zone** is part of the urethral mucosa. The next,

**internal zone** is submucosa. The **external zone**, the real body of the gland, follows.

The depth of the **pseudostratified columnar epithelium** reflects secretory activity, which, like growth, is stimulated by testosterone. The cause of **prostatic hypertrophy** in the elderly (enlargement of the periurethral zone and internal zone) is now thought to be a decreasing ability to break down superfluous androgens.

In the lumen one commonly finds 1-mm size "prostatic" calculi **F11**, i. e., inspissated glandular secretion. Strong smooth muscle bundles run between the separate glands as well as around the entire organ. The surface of the prostate is enveloped by connective tissue and is covered by visceral fascia. Between the two coats lies a strongly developed **periprostatic venous plexus**.

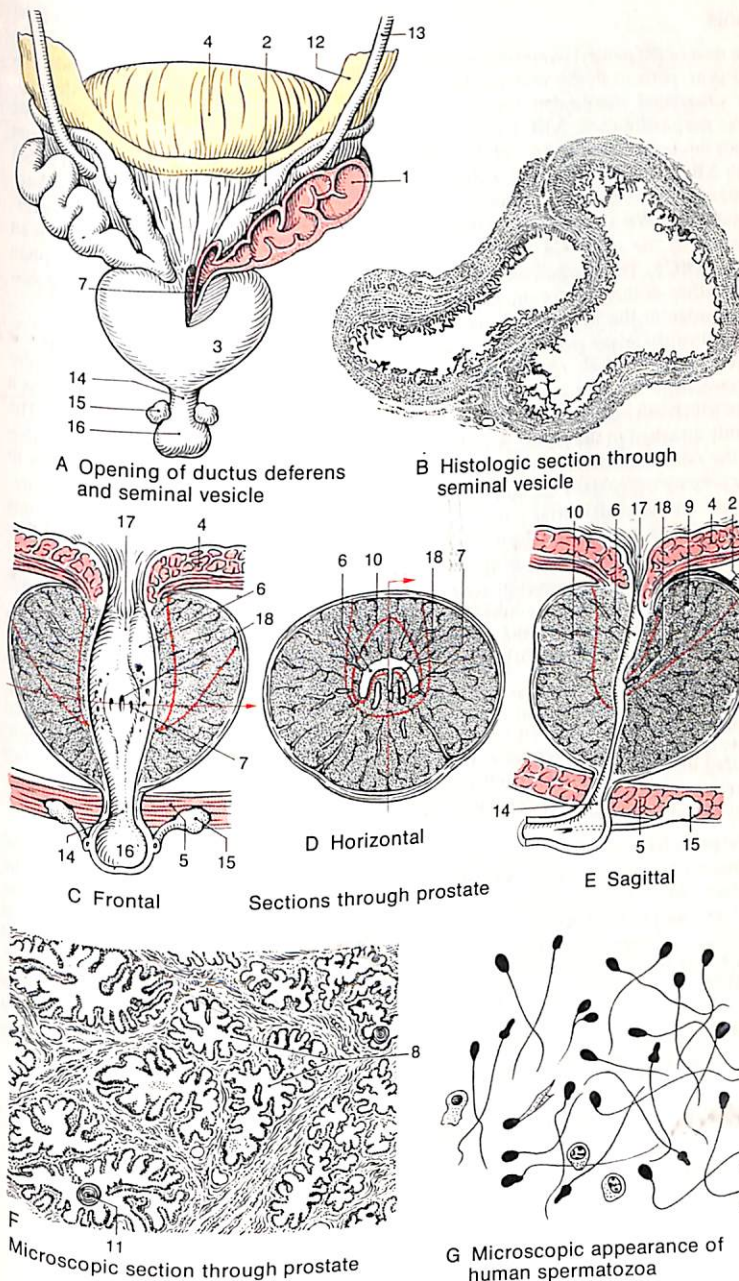
**A12** Peritoneum, **A13** ureter, **ACE14** membranous part of the urethra, **ACE15** bulbourethral gland, **AC16** cavernous portion of the urethra, **CE17** internal opening of the urethra, **CDE18** prostatic utricle.

## Semen

**Semen** has a pH of about 7.19. It consists mainly of the secretions of the prostate (initial fraction), of the epididymis with spermatozoa (principal fraction), and of the seminal vesicle (final fraction). The volume of the ejaculate after a five-day waiting period is about 5 ml, with a spermatozoa content of about 40 million per milliliter, of which about 30% are non-motile (**normospermia**).

The alkaline milieu of the fluid protects the spermatozoa from the acidity (about pH 4) of the vagina. The cervical mucus and the upper region of the female genital tract are alkaline. The spermatozoa reach the ampulla of the uterine tubes within 1–3 hours.

A severe deficiency in spermatozoa is present at levels of less than 20 million spermatozoa/ml. **Azoospermia** is the complete absence of spermatozoa. After repeated ejaculations the number of spermatozoa quickly drops. 10–20% of the spermatozoa **G** are always underdeveloped, over-aged or deformed.





## Penis

The *root of the penis*, covered by muscles and skin, is fixed to the undersurface of the urogenital diaphragm (deep transverse perineal muscle **ABC1** with its inferior fascias) and to the sides of the pubic arch **AB2**. The movable *shaft of the penis* protrudes from beneath the pubic symphysis **C3**. We distinguish further the *dorsum of the penis* **C4** and the *glans penis* **ABC5**. The urethra ends in a slit-like orifice at the apex of the glans. The blunt edge at the base of the glans, the *corona of the glans penis* **AB6**, is separated from the shaft of the penis by a groove. The penis is covered by a thin skin which can slide across the shaft but is firmly attached to the glans. A reflection of the skin of the shaft (a "reserve fold"), the *prepuce or foreskin* **C7**, folds over the glans. At its undersurface it is tightly connected to the glans by the *frenulum of the prepuce* **A8**. The sebum of the prepuce, the *smegma*, consists of cells shed from the stratified, nonkeratinized squamous epithelium of the glans and from the inner leaf of the foreskin.

Fusion between the foreskin and the glans is normal in the newborn, and in 20% of 2 year-olds the foreskin cannot be retracted. This conglutination disappears naturally during infancy. Abnormal tightness of the foreskin, *phimosis*, may need surgical intervention (circumcision).

The *penis* has 2 erectile bodies, the upper *corpus cavernosum penis* **ABC9** which serves only for erection, and the *corpus spongiosum penis* **ABC10** on the undersurface, through which the urethra **C11** runs and which ends in the *glans penis* **ABC5**. Each erectile body is enveloped by a tough, slightly elastic, 1–3 mm thick *tunica albuginea*, and together the *corpora cavernosa* are covered by the *fascia penis*.

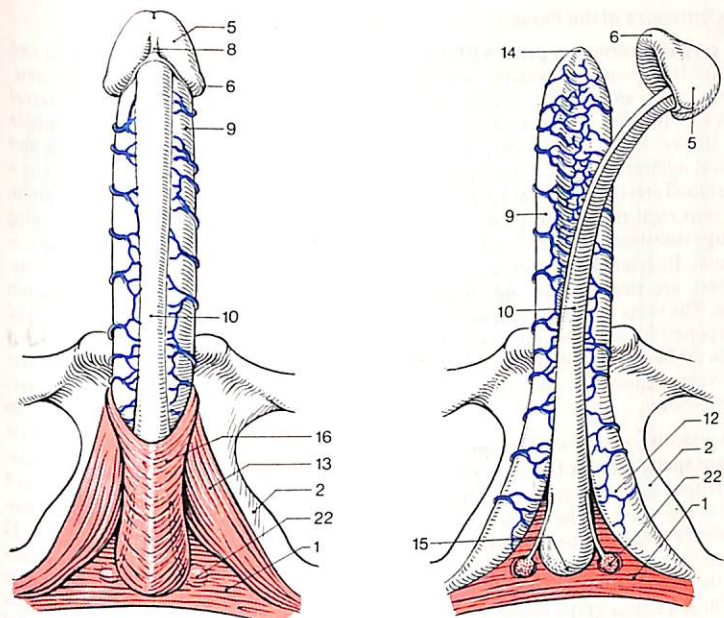
The *corpus cavernosum penis* arises as two pointed *crura* **B12** from the descending rami of the pubic arch **AB2**. Each crus is covered by a thin striated muscle, the *ischio-cavernous muscle* **A13** which, either by reflex or voluntarily, can direct

blood from the crus into the shaft of the penis. The two crura unite beneath the symphysis into one unpaired body. Its pointed end **B14** extends under the cap-like corona of the glans penis. Along the undersurface of the corpus cavernosum penis runs a longitudinal groove in which the corpus spongiosum penis is embedded. In the midline of the corpus cavernosum penis along its entire length is an incomplete fibrous partition, the *septum penis* **C9**. Subfascial and epifascial vessels and nerves, see p. 288.

The *corpus spongiosum penis* is 12–15 cm long and commences deep to the deep transverse perineal muscle as a swelling, the *urethral bulb* **BC15**. The urethral bulb is covered by the *bulbospongiosus muscle* **A16**, which helps to squeeze out the contents of the urethra. The *pars spongiosa of the urethra* enters the bulb about 1 cm from its end. The urethra throughout its course is enclosed by the corpus spongiosum penis (*corpus cavernosum urethrae*).

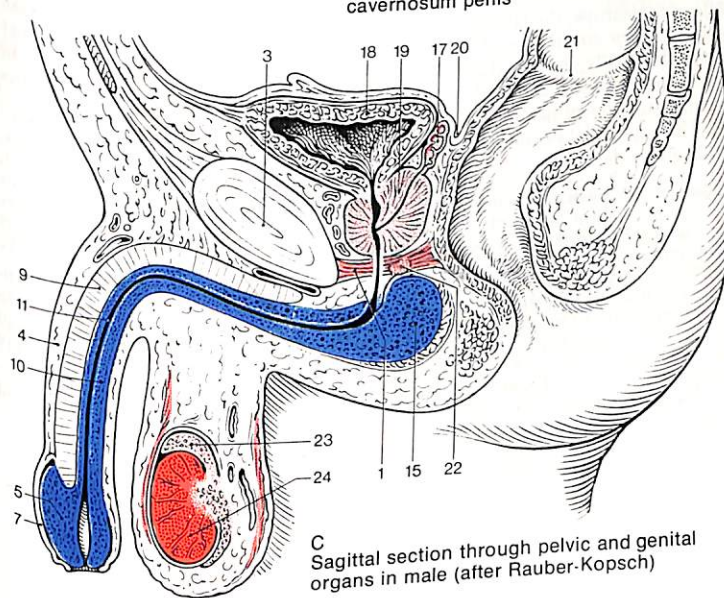
**Bulbourethral glands (Cowper's glands).** These two pea-sized glands lie in the deep transversus perinei muscle, and flow with a centimeter-long duct, into the initial segment of the *pars spongiosa urethra*. The branching tubuloalveolar mucous glands produce a stringy, weakly alkaline secretion.

The *seminal vesicle* **C17** is attached to the back of the urinary bladder **C18**, the *prostate* **C19** lies over the deep transverse perineal muscle **ABC1**. The rectovesical fossa **C20** usually extends below the level of the *transverse fold of the rectum* (*Kohlrausch's fold*) **C21**. Each *bulbourethral gland* (Cowper's glands) **ABC22** has a long excretory duct that opens into the urethra. **C23** Epididymis, **C24** testis.



A Erectile bodies of penis and muscles at root of penis

B Erectile bodies of penis with corpus spongiosum partly detached from corpus cavernosum penis



C Sagittal section through pelvic and genital organs in male (after Rauber-Kopsch)



## Fine Structure of the Penis

The **corpus cavernosum penis ABC1** is a porous framework of collagenous and elastic fibers and smooth muscle lined with endothelium. The *cavities* within it are slitlike when empty, they become several millimeters wide when engorged with blood and the *deep artery of the penis A2* runs right through the center of the spongy substance at each side of the septum. Its arterial branches, the *helicine arteries*, are closed at the end by intima pads. The veins from the cavernous margins penetrate the *tunica albuginea A3* to drain the blood into subfascial and epifascial veins. There are also arteriovenous anastomoses.

The vascular spaces in the bulb of the **corpus spongiosum A4** resemble those in the corpus cavernosum penis. In the shaft and in the glans of the penis are *venous networks* which, when engorged with blood, produce a swelling soft enough to let the semen pass through the urethra **AC5**. **A6** Fascia of the penis, **A7** skin of the penis, **A8** septum of the penis.

*Vessels and nerves of the penis.* In the middle of the narrow, dorsal longitudinal groove the *deep dorsal vein of the penis A9* lies subfascially, the dorsal arteries of the penis on each side, and further laterally runs each *dorsal nerve of the penis A10*. The superficial dorsal penile veins **A11** lie above the fascia.

**Erection of the penis.** *Erection*, which is under neural control (see Vol. 3) occurs when the helicine arteries in the corpus cavernosum are opened and blood rushes in to fill the caverna and the tunica albuginea becomes tightened; the veins which penetrate through it are compressed. Simultaneously the trabecular muscles relax and the paths for short-circuiting, the arteriovenous anastomoses, are shut. Therefore, there is an *influx of blood while the outflow is restricted*, compare **E**. The venous network in the corpus spongiosum is also dilated. The penis becomes *flaccid* again when the helicine arteries contract.

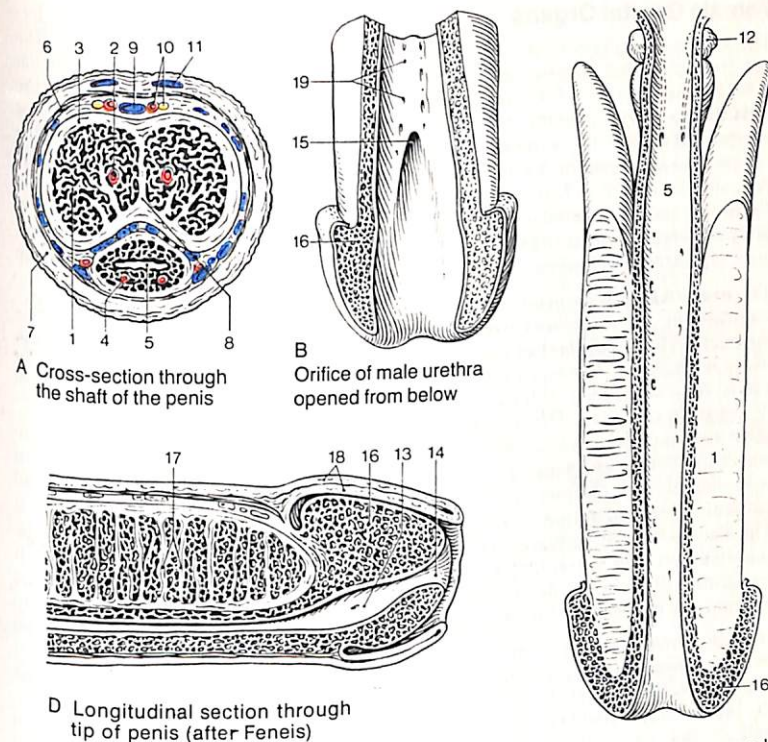
## Male Urethra

The **male urethra** is 20–25 cm long and has alternate *narrowings* and *dilatations*. The narrow first part with the internal opening of the urethra lies entirely within the bladder wall. The wide *prostatic part* (see p. 284) is 3–5 cm long and has a diameter of about 1 cm. The fusiform seminal colliculus, 2 cm long, containing the openings of the ejaculatory ducts, is the continuation of the uvula vesicae. There are grooves on each side into which open the glands of the prostate. The narrowest part (*pars membranacea*) is surrounded by the deep, transverse perineal muscle (a voluntary sphincter) about 2 cm from the pubic angle. Its circumference is normally 1.2–1.5 cm but it can be passively dilated. The *spongy part C5* begins below the muscle as a dilatation into which the pea-sized *bulbourethral gland (Cowper's gland) C12* opens on both sides. This gland produces a stringy, alkaline secretion. The glans penis contains the wide, 2 cm long *fossa navicularis D13*, which narrows toward the *external orifice of the urethra D14*.

There is often a fold **B15** in the roof of the fossa navicularis under which a catheter may become trapped. **BCD16** Glans penis, **D17** septum, **D18** prepuce (foreskin) of the penis.

During *catheterization* of the flaccid penis, its S-shaped curvature may be abolished. The curve beneath the symphysis disappears when the penis is lifted, and the curve below the urogenital diaphragm almost disappears when the penis is pushed backward, see **E**.

**Fine structure.** The mucosa has longitudinal folds (reserve folds) which help to close off the urethra. Recesses of the wall (*lacunae urethrales*) (*Morgagni*) **B19** open anteriorly. There are tubular *urethral glandules (of Littré)* in the whole of the *pars spongiosa*.



D Longitudinal section through tip of penis (after Feneis)

C Male urethra opened from above

E Curvature and mobility of male urethra (after Testut)



## Female Genital Organs

The female genitalia consist of the **internal** female genital organs: the **ovaries ABC1**, the **uterine (Fallopian) tubes ABC2**, the **uterus (womb) ABC3**, the **vagina AB4**, and the **external** genital organs: the **labia majora A5** and **minora A6**, and the **clitoris A7**, the **vestibule of the vagina** and the **vestibular glands**. The internal female genital organs are situated within the lesser pelvis.

The **ovary ABC1** is suspended from the **mesovarium**, the **suspensory ligament of the ovary ABC8** and the **ligament of the ovary AC9**. At the entrance to the lesser pelvis it is suspended obliquely when descensus is complete. The ovarian ligament has smooth muscle tracts through which the ovary can change its position with lateral and rotatory movements, particularly around the time of ovulation. The Fallopian tube embraces the ovary superlaterally and anteriorly. It lies intraperitoneally in a groove between the internal and external iliac arteries.

In exceptional cases, the extent of the ovarian descensus can equal that of testicular descent, so that the ovary enters the labium majus (the homologue of one half of the scrotum) via the inguinal canal.

The **Fallopian tube ABC2** runs intraperitoneally on both sides from the upper border of the lesser pelvis in a medial direction to the "tubal angle" of the uterus. The tube is mobile and is fixed over the **mesosalpinx** (duplication of the peritoneum). The abdominal end of the tube approaches the surface of the ovary.

The **uterus ABC3** is anchored between the urinary bladder **ABC10** and the rectum **BC11** by a muscular-connective tissue **retinaculum** (see p. 298), in the subperitoneal connective tissue space (see p. 314). This includes the **rectouterine muscle** which forms a peritoneal fold on each side, the **rectouterine fold C12**.

The uterus is also fixed by its **round ligaments ABC13** (**ligamentum teres**

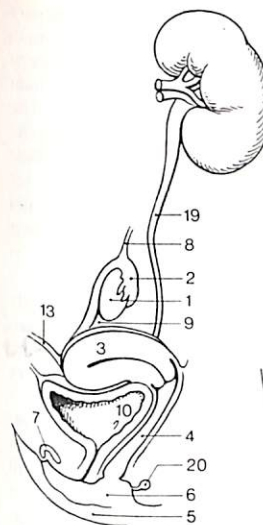
**uteri**) which keeps the uterus bent forward – *anteversion of the uterus*. The round ligament of the uterus originates at the tubal angle and runs beneath the peritoneum to the inner inguinal ring **C14**, through the inguinal canal into the labia majora and to the **mons pubis C15**, where it is anchored. The floor of the pelvis supports the uterus and keeps it in place (see p. 308). The body of the uterus is covered by peritoneum in front, on top and behind.

Because of the considerable mobility of the internal genital organs, it is better to speak of typical basic position and normal range of mobility, rather than a "normal position" of the organs.

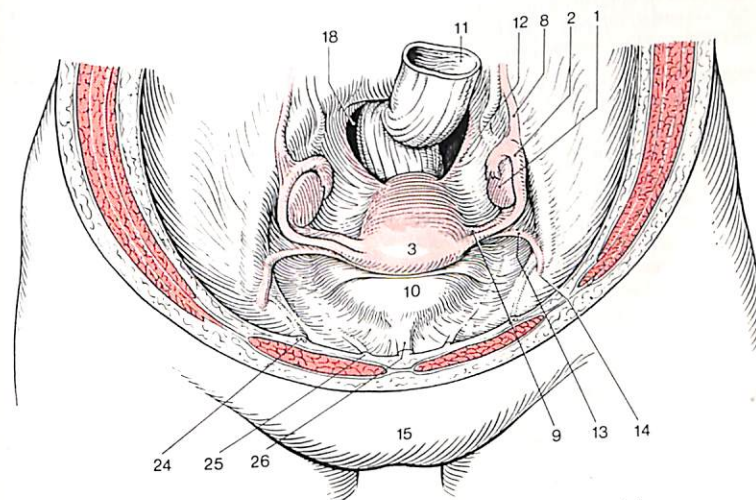
**Broad ligament of the uterus** (**ligamentum latum uteri**) is the sheet of peritoneum lifted up by the uterus and the Fallopian tubes (cut edge **B16**). It passes from the lateral margin of the uterus to the lateral wall of the pelvis. It lies frontally and with the uterus is bent forward a little. It merges anteriorly into the peritoneal roof of the bladder and posteriorly into the anterior surface of the rectum. The **mesosalpinx** and the **mesovarium** are folds of the broad ligament. The latter divides the peritoneal space of the pelvis into an anterior and a posterior peritoneal pouch, the **vesicouterine B17** and the **rectouterine pouches** (of **Douglas**) **BC18**. The rectouterine pouch is the lowest point of the peritoneal cavity.

**AB19** Ureter, **A20** greater vestibular glands (of **Bartholin**), **B21** pubic symphysis, **B22** deep transverse perineal muscle, **B23** external anal sphincter, **C24** inferior epigastric artery, **C25** medial umbilical ligament, **C26** median umbilical ligament.

A General view of female urogenital organs



B Position of female genital organs in relation to peritoneum (after Rauber-Kopsch)



C Position of internal female genital organs in lesser pelvis



## Ovary

The **ovary A1** is almond-shaped and is 2.5–5 cm long and 0.5–1.0 cm thick. It is fixed by the **mesovarium A2**, a fold of the broad ligament of the uterus **A3**, and is joined to the lateral pelvic wall by the suspensory ligament of the ovary **A4** and to the uterus **A6** by the ovarian ligament **A5**. **A7** Ureter, **A8** rectouterine fold, **A9** cut edge of the peritoneum, **A10** uterine tube. The *infantile* ovary is smooth and small, whereas the surface of the *functional* ovary is lumpy, because of the protruding follicles **AB11** and fissures of the corpora lutea, as well as puckered scars. The small, *senile* ovary is covered with scars.

**Fine structure.** The ovary may be divided into a *cortex* and a *medulla*. The major blood vessels **B12** enter the center of the ovary from the mesovarium and run through the medulla. The surface is covered by a simple cuboidal epithelium **B13**. The outer layers of the fully developed ovary are an epithelium and a subepithelial fibrous layer – the *tunica albuginea* **B14**, deep to which is a highly cellular cortical layer. There are the *Graafian follicles* in all their different stages of development. Among them are large *vesicular follicles* **AB11**, *corpora lutea* **B15** and their scarred remnants.

**Oogenesis.** As in spermatogenesis, during the ripening of the follicle (oogenesis) multiplication and maturation periods may be distinguished, but there is no period of differentiation. 1. The *period of multiplication* is completed during fetal development. At birth the *oogonia*, which develop from the primary germ cells, have reached their final number of about 1 million and have entered the prophase of the first maturation division as *primary oocytes*. 2. *Period of maturation.* After puberty the first maturation division has been completed and the second has begun (formation of the *secondary oocyte* and “polar body”).

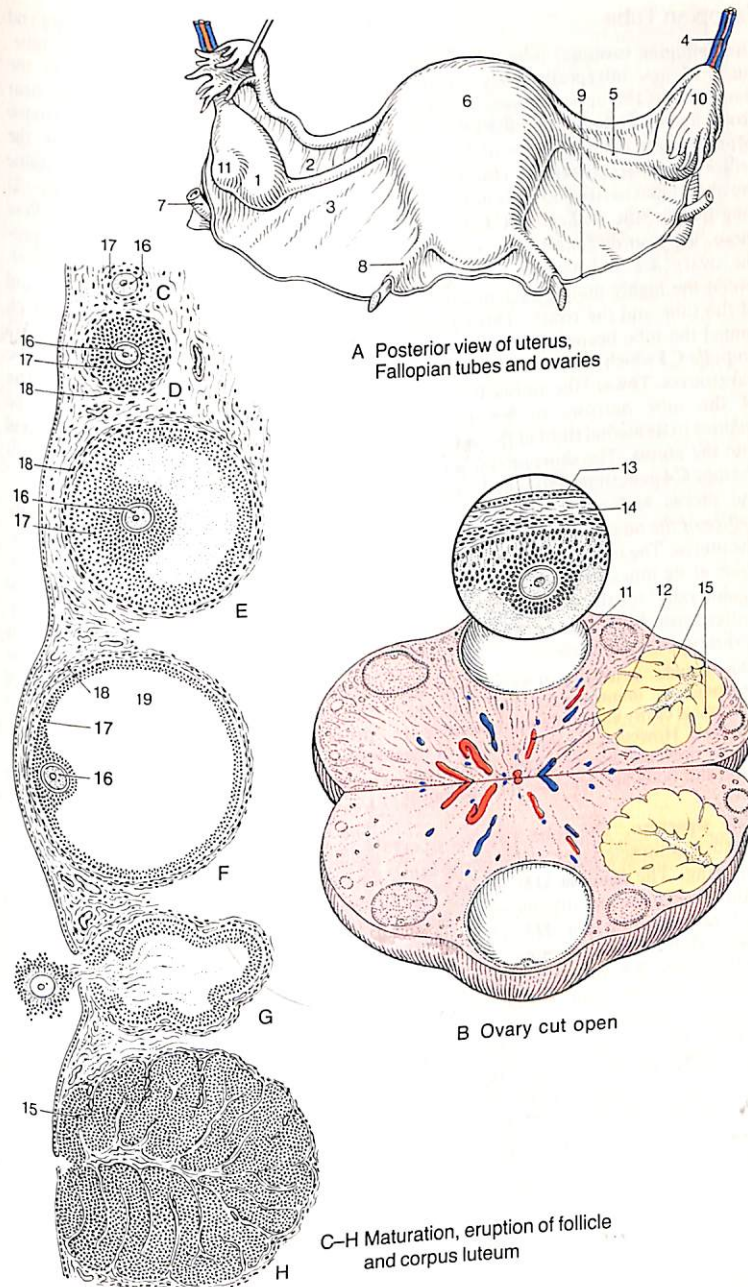
**Maturation of the follicles.** The *primary follicle C*: the *primary oocyte C16* is surrounded by a corona of a single layer of simple, follicular epithelial cells **C17**.

In the *secondary follicle D*, the *primary oocyte D16* lies in a *multilayered corona* of follicular epithelial cells **D17**. Between the ovum and the follicular epithelium lies the homogenous *zona pellucida*. The surrounding connective tissue forms the *follicular theca D18*. The *tertiary follicle (vesicular follicle) E* reaches a diameter of 0.5–1 cm, by formation of a space, the *follicular antrum* in the follicular epithelium **E17**. The wall of the antrum is lined by follicular cells, “granulosa cells”. The *primary oocyte E16* lies eccentrically in the *cumulus oophorus*, and the *follicular theca E18* is very obvious. *Graafian follicle F*. In each cycle, one tertiary follicle enlarges over a few days to form a *Graafian follicle* (diameter 1.5–2 cm, diameter of ovum 0.11–0.14 mm) and its cavity is filled with the *liquor folliculi F19*. The *theca interna D–F18* grows during follicular maturation into the endocrine *theca organ*. Under the influence of FSH, the cells produce female sexual hormones (follicular hormones, estrogens). FSH also leads to the formation of *inhibin* in the follicular epithelial cells, inhibiting FSH synthesis in the hypophysis (feedback), but not LH synthesis.

**Ovulation G:** During ovulation (on the 15th day in a 28-day cycle) the ovum is released from the Graafian follicle. It is surrounded by a corona of follicular epithelial cells, the *corona radiata*, and enters the open end of the Fallopian tube, which is waiting to receive it. Compare *oogenesis and spermatogenesis* (see p. 279). Hormonal regulation s. p. 153.

The *corpus luteum H* arises after ovulation as a dense-walled organ **H15** from the follicular epithelium and the *theca interna D–F18*. Its cells, granulosa-lutein cells and theca-lutein cells, produce *progesterone* and *estrogens* when stimulated by *LH (ICSH)* from the hypophysis.

**Atresia of the follicle.** Only about 400 follicles reach the stage of ovulation, the rest perish beforehand – atresia of the follicles. However a functional hormone-producing theca interna does occur around them for a short while.



A Posterior view of uterus, Fallopian tubes and ovaries

B Ovary cut open

C-H Maturation, eruption of follicle and corpus luteum



## Fallopian Tube

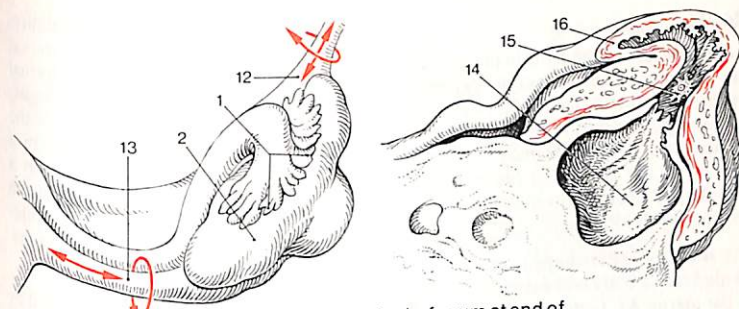
The **Fallopian (uterine) tube** is 8–20 cm long. It lies intraperitoneally in the *mesosalpinx*, the upper extension of the broad ligament. Its abdominal end, the *infundibulum*, opens with the *abdominal orifice of the uterine tube* like a funnel into the abdominal cavity and ends in 1–2 cm long fringes, the *fimbriae* **A1**. One of these, the *ovarian fimbria* lies on top of the ovary **A2** and ensures contact between the highly mobile abdominal end of the tube and the ovary. Through the funnel the tube becomes dilated into an *ampulla* **C3** which is divided by longitudinal grooves. Toward the uterus the lumen of the tube narrows to become the *isthmus* in its medial third at the entrance into the uterus. The short *uterine part of the tube* **C4** penetrates through the wall of the uterus and ends with the *uterine orifice of the uterine tube* in the lumen of the uterus. The tube **C** shows *longitudinal folds* at its inner surface. They serve as “guide rails” for the ovum. The folds get flatter towards the isthmus and eventually disappear completely.

The female genital pathways have an anatomically uninterrupted link with the peritoneal cavity via the abdominal orifice of the tube. However, the mucous plug of the uterus prevents disease agents penetrating from the body surface into the peritoneal cavity.

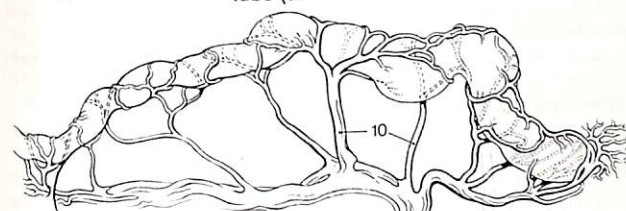
**Fine structure.** The tube consists of a mucosa, a muscle layer and a peritoneal covering. The **mucosa D5**: a cross-section through the ampulla shows the guide rails as branching *folds* **D5**. The mucosa has a simple high columnar epithelium with *ciliated* **E6** and *glandular* **E7** cells. During the first half of the menstrual cycle ciliated cells predominate, and during the second half after ovulation glandular cells are in the majority. Toward the end of the cycle epithelial cells are also shed **E8**. The tubular fluid consists of absorbed peritoneal fluid and secretion from the glandular cells. Among other purposes it is believed to provide nutrient for the fertilized ovum. The cilia produce a current of fluid which is mainly directed toward the uterus and which plays a part in the migration and distribution of spermatozoa. The **muscle layer**

**D9** serves for movement of the egg and sperm, and the secretions of the tube. The muscle layers consist of: 1) the dense, spiral *intrinsic muscle layer* near the mucosa, which can initiate peristaltic movement toward the uterus for the transport of fluid, and an antiperistaltic wave for transport of spermatozoa, 2) *muscle bundles—accompanying the blood vessels* **B10** contraction of which produces the constricting grooves of the ampulla and flexion of the entire tube; and 3) a *subperitoneal muscle layer*, which forms lattice-like strands and a longitudinal band along the upper edge of the tube from the uterus to its funnel end. The muscle strands provide mobility for the tube and the fimbriae. The **peritoneal covering D11** enables the tube to shift against its environment.

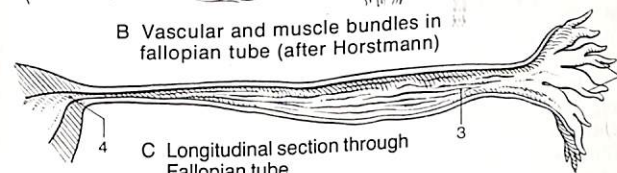
**Capture and transport of the ovum.** Observations made during abdominal operations have revealed that during ovulation the fimbriae **A1** perform rhythmical movements. The ovary **A2** is moved upward and downward and is turned into its longitudinal axis by the muscles of the suspensory ligament **A12** and those of the ovarian ligament **A13**. During this process the ovarian fimbria reach the place where the follicle is ready to erupt, a process probably controlled by active locally produced substances (? enzymes). The ovum **A15** newly released from the follicle **A14**, reaches the funnel **A16** via the ovarian fimbria within 3–6 min. This movement is accomplished with the help of the current of fluid created by the cilia, and by suction exerted by rhythmical contraction of the tube. The ovum takes 4–5 days to reach the uterus but it can only be fertilized at the latest during the first 6–12 hours, while it is still within the ampulla of the fallopian tube. Pendulum movements of the tube help to mix the ovum with the spermatozoa and the secretions of the tube. Pushing and suction propel the egg in pendulum movements, step by step, through the chambers of the ampulla. The fertilized egg arrives at the uterus on the 4th–5th day. Its implantation in the mucosa of the uterus starts on the 6th day and is completed on the 12th day after eruption of the follicle.



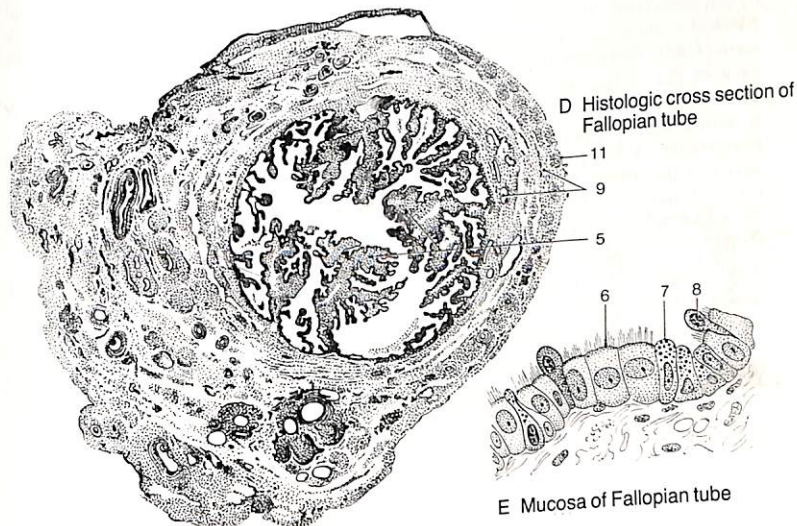
A Capture (reception) of ovum at end of tube (after Martius-Droysen)



B Vascular and muscle bundles in fallopian tube (after Horstmann)



C Longitudinal section through Fallopian tube



E Mucosa of Fallopian tube



## Uterus

The *uterus* carries the *fetus* in pregnancy. The *mucosa of the uterus* is cyclically prepared for the implantation of the embryo and plays a part in the formation of the placenta. The *uterine muscles* become adapted to the growth of the fetus and provide the  *motive power* for its expulsion during childbirth.

The **uterus** is pear-shaped and may be divided into a body and a neck. The *body of the uterus* **AC1**, the thick (and transversely enlarged) part of the "pear" is directed upward and has an antero-inferior and a postero-superior surface. The *fundus of the uterus* **AC2** in a mature woman rises above the "tubal angle" **A3** as the cupola. The *neck of the uterus, cervix* **C4**, the narrower part of the "pear" in the non-pregnant uterus comprises the lower  $\frac{1}{3}$  of its total length. It is rounded and is directed downward and posteriorly into the vaginal vault. The *vaginal portion of the neck of the womb* **C5**, which is known by gynecologists as the "portio" is that part of the cervix, about 1 cm long, that protrudes into the vagina **C6**, and is covered by vaginal epithelium. The *supravaginal part* **C7** of the neck of the womb is largely enclosed by subperitoneal connective tissue into which it is anchored. The *isthmus of the uterus* **C8** lies between the body and the neck of the uterus. The isthmus of the uterus, which loses its folds in pregnancy, is called the "lower segment" by the obstetrician. **C9** Urinary bladder. The cavity of the uterus **A10** within the fundus and uterine body forms a triangular slit with a downward pointing apex in the frontal plane.

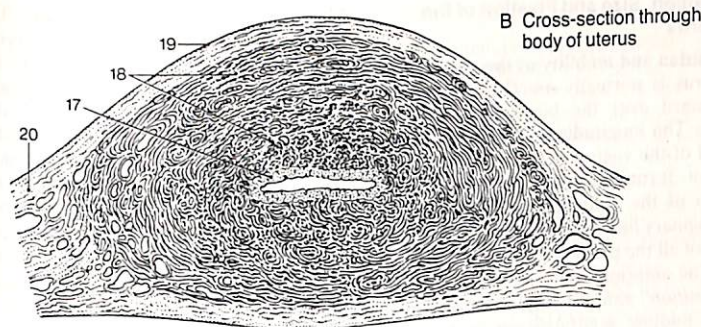
The Fallopian tubes **A3** open into the two upper "angles." The lower "angle" leads into the canal of the isthmus **A11**, the "internal mouth of the uterus", ("os uteri") of the gynecologist. The *cervical canal* **A12**, which follows downwards, is fusiform and dilated. It is filled by a *mucous plug*, which protects the uterus from ascending infective agents, and facilitates the passage of sperm toward

the lumen of the uterus by its alkalinity. The cervical canal opens at the *external orifice, ostium uteri* **A13**, the "external mouth of the uterus" of the gynecologist, at the level of the vaginal portion of the cervix in the vault of the vagina. In a nulliparous woman, this orifice is only a small, round depression **D14**. It has an *anterior* and a *posterior lip*. After childbirth the ostium uteri presents as a transverse fissure **D15**.

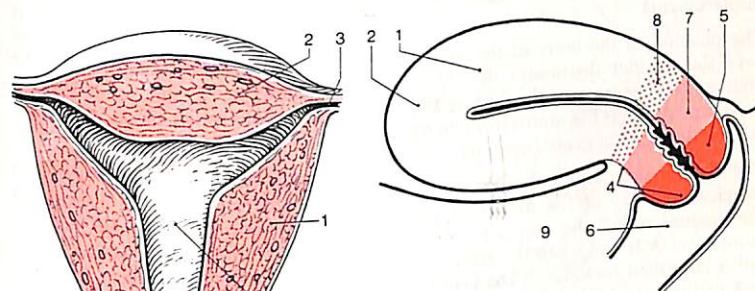
The vaginal part of the cervix is covered by several layers of non-keratinized squamous vaginal epithelium and therefore appears smooth and light pink at colposcopy. Purple sharply defined spots "pseudoeosinosis" (ectropia) are produced by islands of single-layered prismatic epithelium which has migrated from the cervix. **A16** Vaginal wall.

The *wall of the uterus* is formed by endometrium (mucous membrane), myometrium (muscular wall) and perimetrium (peritoneum, tunica serosa). The *endometrium* **B17** is 2–8 mm thick. In the uterine cavity it is smooth and soft, and has broad, shallow plaques. In the cervical canal the mucosa is tougher **A12** and has palmate folds (*plicae palmatae*) and the *cervical glands* produce the mucous plug in the external orifice of the uterus. Menstrual cycle, see p. 302. The *myometrium* **B18** of the non-gravid uterus feels firm. It is about 2 cm thick and shows an ill-defined triple layer. The middle layer contains many blood vessels. Uterine muscle (see p. 300). The *perimetrium* (peritoneum) **B19** is firmly adherent to the myometrium. It merges into the broad *uterine ligament* **B20** at the lateral margin of the uterus. Most of the supravaginal part of the cervix **C7** is extraperitoneal.

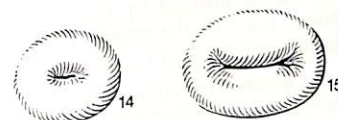
**Variations** in the structure of the uterus **E** arise from defective symmetry or an asymmetrical junction of the 2 Müllerian ducts. All stages are possible from a double uterus with a double vagina (*uterus duplex separatus vagina duplex*) via a *bicornuate uterus*, to the *arcuate uterus* with an incomplete septum.



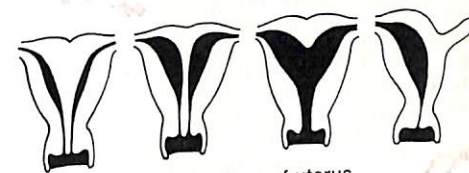
B Cross-section through body of uterus



C Longitudinal section through uterus in situ



D External orifice of cervix



E Malformations of uterus

A Longitudinal section through uterus and vagina



### Position, Size and Fixation of the Uterus

**Position and mobility of the uterus.** The uterus is normally *anteflexed* and bent forward over the bladder (*anteverted*) **A1**. The longitudinal axis of the uterus and of the vagina is concave toward the front. It runs approximately in the direction of the guideline of the pelvis, an imaginary line that runs through the center of all the planes of the pelvis, parallel to the anterior concavity of the sacrum. "Position" refers to the relationship to the midline sagittal plane (right – left displacement).

The position of the body of the uterus over the bladder distributes the intra-abdominal pressure over the floor of the pelvis and protects the uterus from being pushed through the genital opening.

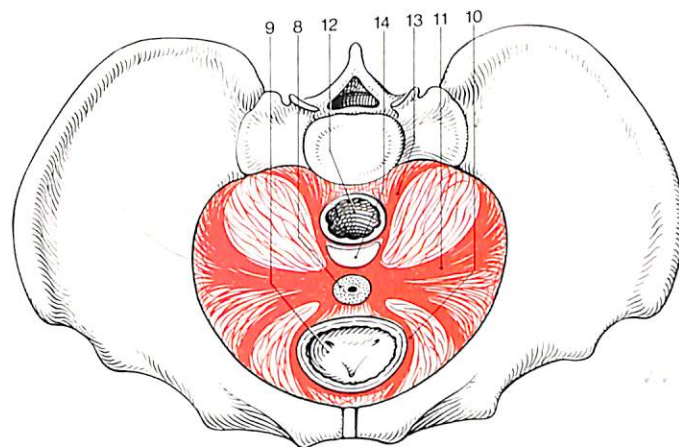
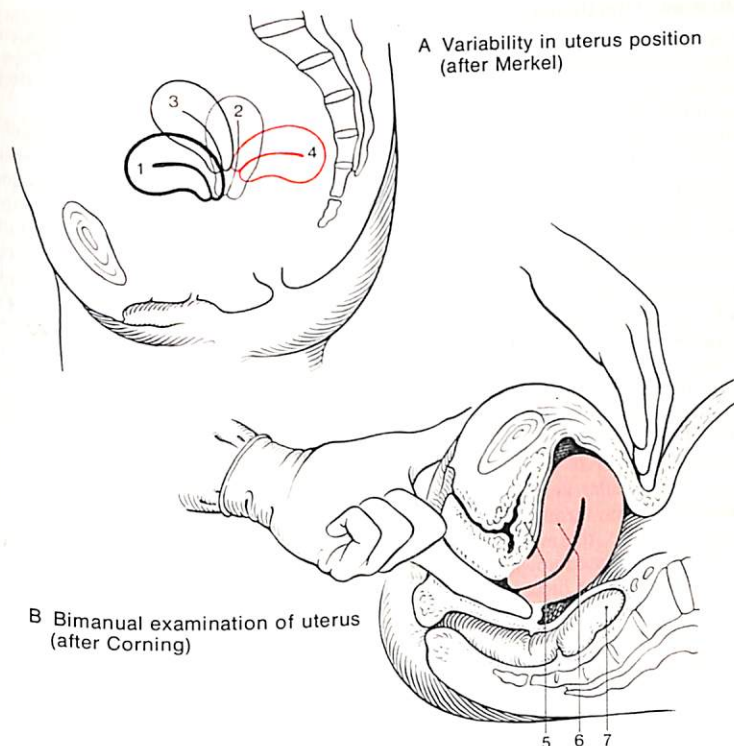
The fixation mechanism permits physiological mobility of the uterus. When the bladder is full the uterus becomes more erect **A2**; and when the rectum is full it is pushed forward. If the bladder and rectum are both full the uterus is elevated **A3**. *Retroflexion* and *retroversion* of the uterus **A4** are usually pathological conditions. A physiological condition can be restored by surgical intervention, e.g., by shortening both round ligaments of the uterus.

**Size of the uterus.** Numerous different methods are used to determine the size and position of the uterus, but bimanual examination is commonly undertaken **B**. In the newborn, the uterus is 3.5 cm long and cylindrical in shape. In childhood the neck of the uterus remains longer than the body and the fundus does not protrude forward. After puberty, the uterus develops its typical shape, is 6–7.5 cm long and weighs 80–120 g. From the external orifice to the fundus, the uterine lumen is about 5.5 cm long. In old age the uterus atrophies, though the body remains relatively large whilst the cervix shrinks markedly. **B5** Urinary bladder, **B6** uterus, **B7** rectum.

**Fixation mechanism of the uterus.** The uterus is mainly anchored in the cervical region **C8** by collagenous and elastic tissue strands, which also contain smooth muscle fibers (retinacula). They enable the position of the uterus to be adjusted actively and passively, and the tension of these strands on the vessel walls keeps the blood vessels open whatever the position of the uterus. The muscle strands extend upward into the broad ligament of the uterus where they are joined by muscle bundles from the myometrium. This fibrous apparatus (retinacula) keeps the uterus suspended in a position which is secured by the muscles and ligaments of the floor of the pelvis; it is situated in the parametrium, i.e., the subperitoneal periuterine connective tissue space (see p. 314).

**Retinacula:** The *pubovesical ligament C10* runs anteriorly past the bladder **C9** to the pubic bone. It counteracts prolapse of the bladder and of the anterior wall of the vagina. A fibrous layer in the parametrium, generally known as the *cardinal ligament C11*, fans out toward the lateral wall of the lesser pelvis. The *rectouterine muscle C13*, which lies in the rectouterine fold, runs past the rectum **C12** to the sacrum. Between the two rectouterine folds the *rectouterine pouch C14*, a peritoneal pocket extends downward. The *round ligament of the uterus* see p. 290.

**Clinical Tip.** When the fixation of the uterus slackens (e.g. after several births, or as a result of a connective tissue weakness, perhaps in old age), the uterus may drop lower (*descensus uteri*) and project into the vaginal wall. In prolapse of the uterus, the *portio vaginalis (cervix)* projects out of the vagina.



C Fixation of uterus by connective tissue structures in lesser pelvis



### Muscles of the Uterus

The **myometrium**, the *muscle wall* of the uterus consists of smooth muscle cells, vessels and connective tissue. Muscle tissue forms about 28% of the volume of the body of the uterus; it is less well developed in the isthmus and the cervix. In the *body* and *fundus* of the uterus there is a thicker *middle* layer and thinner *inner* and *outer* layers of myometrium which are not clearly demarcated.

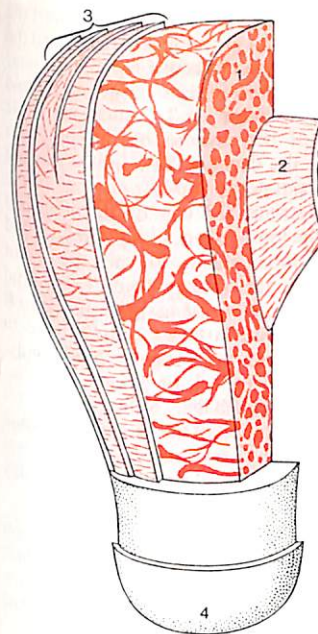
The *middle* and by far the thickest layer **A1** is particularly well vascularized (*stratum vasculosum A1*). Its muscle strands form a three-dimensional network in the body, which mainly extends parallel to the surface of the uterus and is anchored onto the blood vessels. In the isthmus and cervix there are gradually ascending circular muscle bundles. In a cesarean section through the isthmus region, therefore, the muscle bundles can be widely separated upwards and downwards a transverse incision. The middle layer provides the principle expulsive power during parturition.

The thin *inner layer* beneath the mucosa has many circular muscle bands (*stratum subvasculosum A2*). It is said to assist contraction of the open blood vessels in the detachment of the placenta after parturition. The *outer layer*, which is also thin, consists of 4 lamellae containing muscle strands running alternately in a longitudinal and a circular direction (*stratum supravasculosum A3*). Probably they help to stabilize the surface of the growing uterus during pregnancy.

In **pregnancy** the uterus grows rapidly by *hypertrophy* of individual smooth muscle cells, which increase to 7 to 10 times their original size. Fluid, which penetrates the connective tissue, permits displacement of the inner structures of the wall of the uterus. The isthmus is markedly elongated and becomes part of the "womb". It feels soft in contrast to the cervix on bimanual examination (*Hegar's sign of pregnancy*). **A4** Vaginal portion of the cervix.

Growth of the uterus during pregnancy is stimulated by estrogens and progesterone and by stretching of the wall. In the non-gravid uterus the hormones prevent atrophy due to inactivity.

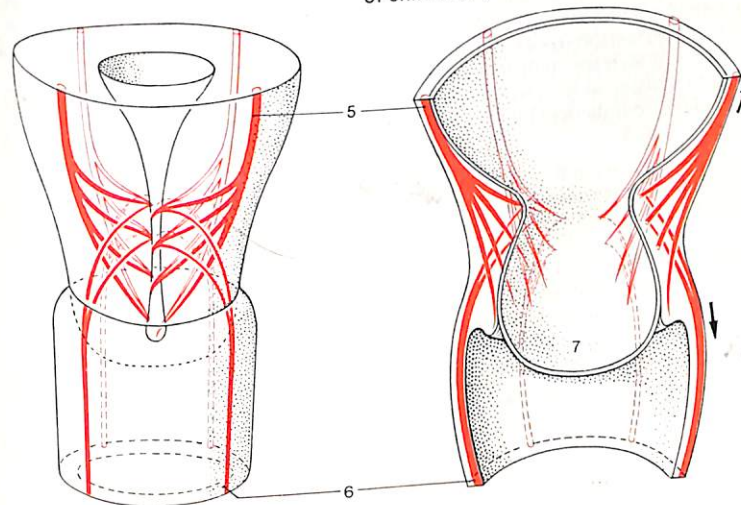
**Cervix of the uterus.** The structures of the neck or cervix of the uterus merit special consideration. The cervix remains closed for the duration of pregnancy, but during *parturition* it must quickly dilate to the width of the baby's head. There are active and passive mechanisms involved in this process: *passive enlargement* has already been prepared for by the increased fluid content of the cervix. The fluid is displaced during parturition to make room for the baby's head, and permeates into the connective tissue, the venous plexus dilates and the cervical glands become enlarged (see p. 314). An *active opening mechanism* is provided by restructuring of the muscle strands and the fibers of the connective tissue. In the non-pregnant uterus structures near the mucosa are arranged in a more circular pattern. By the 7th month of pregnancy these structures run a steeper course than in the cervix of the non-pregnant uterus. They merge partly into the longitudinal muscle bundles of the uterus (the "descending" strands to the cervix **B5**) and partly into those of the vagina ("ascending" strands **B6**). The pull from these longitudinal muscle bundles during parturition helps to produce opening of the internal and external orifices of the cervix. **B7** Amniotic sac (opening phase of childbirth).



**A** Model of arrangement of muscles in body and isthmus of uterus (after Wetzstein and Meinel)

**B** Longitudinal muscle strands in cervix of pregnant uterus

Left – closed cervix  
Right – cervix in opening phase of childbirth (after Lierse)





## Endometrium

The *mucosa of the uterus (endometrium)* lies directly on the muscle **D1**. It has a simple, high columnar epithelium and some ciliated cells, and contains tubular glands, the *uterine glands*. The connective tissue of the mucosa has many cells but few fibers. A *basal layer D2* about 1 mm high, which is not shed during menstruation, can be distinguished from a *functional layer D3, D4*, up to 8 mm high.

During the period of sexual maturity, the ovarian hormones (see p. 170) cause *menstrual cycles* in the endometrium. They begin with the *menarche* from the 10th–15th years, with cycles that are at first still incomplete. They end with the *climacteric (menopause)* at about the 45th year. Higher hormonal regulation (see p. 153).

The **menstrual cycle** is divided into *phases*. In the following description the most common 28 day cycle has been taken as a basis. Counting starts with the first day of the period, compare **B**.

**Phase of desquamation and regeneration A**, the 1st to 4th day. This is mainly controlled by disappearance of progesterone and increase in estrogens. The superficial portion of the endometrium is shed while certain enzymes and thrombocytes counteract clotting of the menstrual blood. Eventually the epithelium and the connective tissue of the functional layer regenerate from the basal layer and the wound is closed.

**Phase of proliferation B C**. The 5th–15th day comprises the ovulation period. This phase is mainly controlled by estrogens and is therefore called the "*estrogen phase*". The functional layer grows, the glands get larger and spiral arteries are formed. The body temperature rises after ovulation by 0.5–1°C (*premenstrual hyperthermia*).

**Phase of secretion D E**, the 15th–28th day ("*gestation phase*"). This is mainly controlled by progesterone. The glands coil and produce a mucous secretion. The

blood vessels increase in number and the spiral arteries grow longer **D**. Toward the 28th day the connective tissue cells near the surface change to large epitheloid "*pseudodecidua*" cells which resemble those of the mucosa of the pregnant uterus, the decidua. Because of this the superficial dense zone (*compacta*) of the endometrium **D3** can be distinguished from the loose, deep, *spongiosa layer D4* with its many glands. Toward the end of the cycle the spongy layer loses fluid (*premenstrual shrinkage of the mucosa*) **E** and the spiral arteries contract due to drying up of the progesterone supply. This results in lack of blood (*ischemia*) and tissue damage. Subsequently renewed dilatation of the blood vessels due to increased estrogen supply causes bleeding and *desquamation* of the spongy layer.

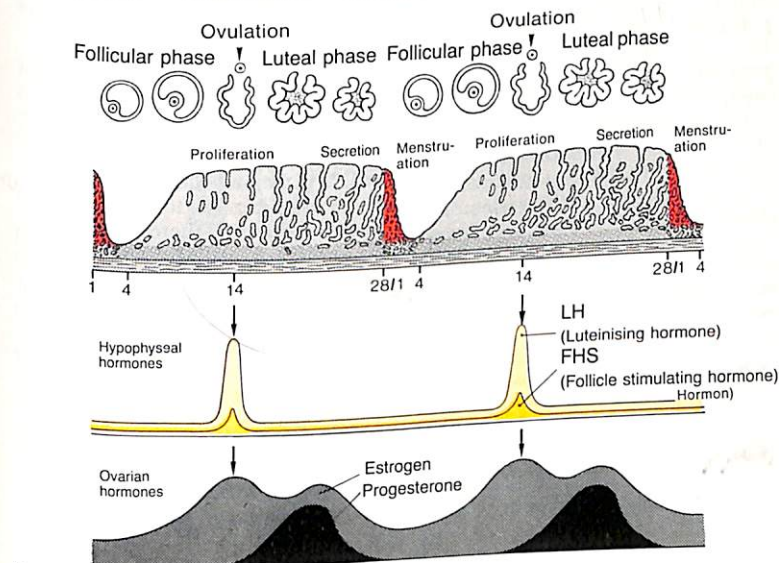
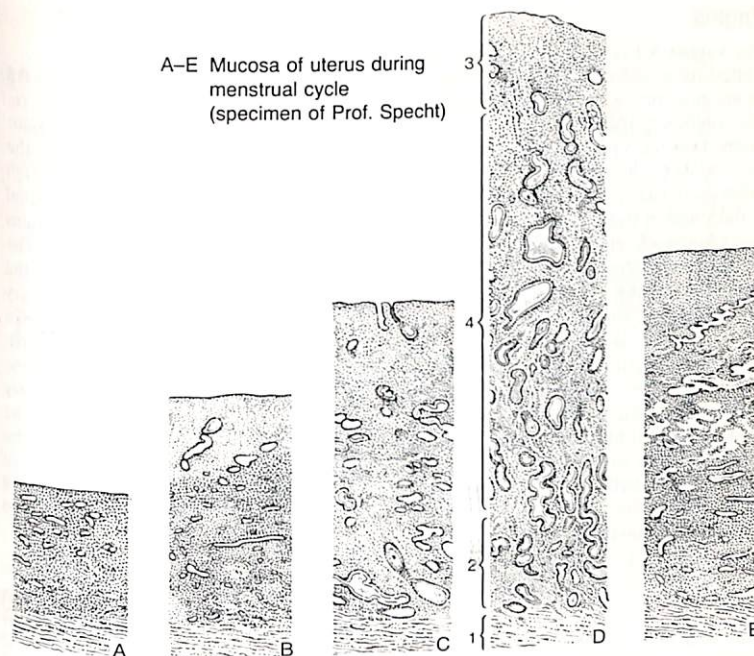
Even in cycles with intervals other than 28 days, ovulation usually takes place 13–14 days before the first day of the new menstrual period (*constant length of the gestation phase*).

In **pregnancy** the trophoblast (the nutritional shell of the fetus, see p. 322) produces *chorionic gonadotrophin hormones* which ensure the maintenance of the corpus luteum. The corpus luteum of menstruation becomes the *corpus luteum of pregnancy* and menstruation is suppressed.

The *mucosa of the portio vaginalis uteri* (the region of the external cervix) is a glistening white in the child, and when sexual maturity is reached often takes on a circular red coloring due to the *eversion of the glandular field* of the cervical canal (making access for spermatozoa easier). In later years, the glandular field is once again covered with whitish squamous epithelium. The glands of the cervical canal produce an alkaline secretion, the viscosity of which varies in the course of the menstrual cycle.

**Menopause**. The menstrual cycles gradually disappear with the onset of the *climacteric (menopause)*. The mucosa and the muscle of the uterus atrophy and the vaginal portion of the cervix becomes smaller.

A–E Mucosa of uterus during menstrual cycle (specimen of Prof. Specht)



F Above: ovarian cycle (after Starck); Middle: cyclical changes in endometrium Bottom: blood level of hypophyseal hormones (yellow) and of ovarian hormones (gray and black) (after Taubert)



## Vagina

The **vagina A1** is an 8–10 cm long, thin-walled tube, consisting of mucous membrane and muscle. At the top it embraces the vaginal portion of the cervix and opens into the vestibule of the vagina at the *orifice of the vagina*. The vagina lies more or less along the axis of the pelvis. It is flattened in front and the anterior and posterior walls are in loose contact and enclose an H-shaped slit, which can be opened without producing much tension. For the orifice of the vagina see p. 306. The *fornix of the vagina* forms a ring around the vaginal portion of the cervix, the shallow **anterior A2** and deep **posterior A3 vaginal recesses**. The latter borders on the rectouterine pouch (of Douglas) **A4**. It is a site of danger of perforation during manipulation with instruments. Both the anterior and posterior walls have transverse folds, which protrude as longitudinal bulges in the central part of the wall. *Urethral carina of the vagina* (see p. 306).

**Fine structure.** The *mucosa* has a many-layered, non-keratinized squamous epithelium, which is rich in glycogen. There are almost no glands. The epithelium and the vaginal secretions undergo *cyclical changes*, which may be studied in smear preparations. The *muscle layer* is thin and is composed of a lattice work. The venous plexuses are involved in closure of the vagina. The adventitial connective tissue, the *paracolpium*, provides the connection with neighboring organs – a firm connection with the urinary bladder **A5** and a loose connection with the rectal wall **A6**.

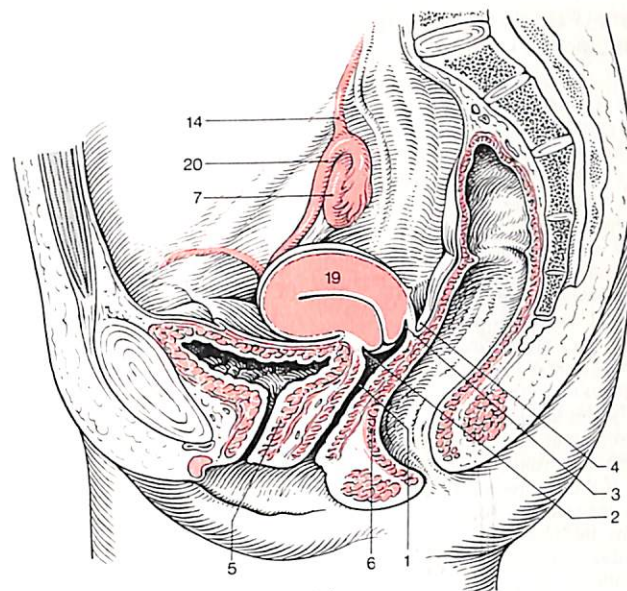
The **vaginal secretion** is formed by the glands of the cervix, from a transudate of the vaginal wall and from desquamate epithelial cells. It contains 0.5% lactic acid which is produced by lactic acid bacteria from the glycogen of desquamated cells. The acidic milieu (pH 4–4.5) of the vagina protects it against ascending infective agents.

## Blood Vessels of the Internal Genitalia in the Female

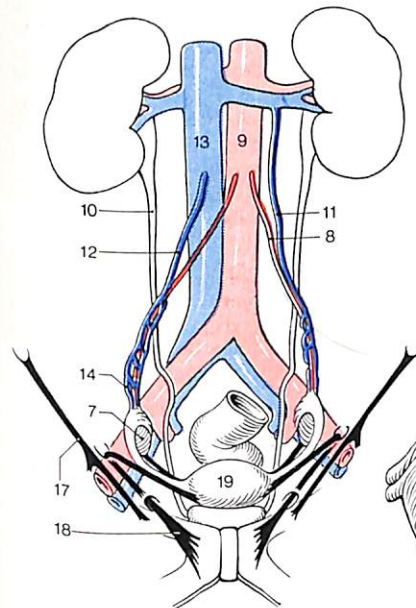
The **ovary AB7**. The *ovarian arteries B8* arise from the aorta **B9**. They run retroperitoneally over the psoas major muscle, in front of the ureter **B10** to the suspensory ligament of the ovary. The *left ovarian vein B11* drains into the left renal vein, and the *right ovarian vein* drains into the inferior vena cava **B13**. The vessels run in the connective tissue of the suspensory ligament of the ovary **ABC14**. The *uterine artery* also gives off a branch to the ovary **C15**, which contributes to its blood supply. **C16** Uterine vein. After the age of 45 years, the ovary is mainly supplied via the branch from the uterine artery. The *lymphatics* run to the *lumbar lymph nodes*. For the *nerves* see Vol. 3. **B17** Inguinal ligament, **B18** round ligament of the uterus. **AB19** uterus.

**Fallopian tube A20**. Its arteries arise from the uterine artery (*tubar branch C21*) and the *ovarian artery BC14* (*tubar branch*). They send 6–9 branches to the tube, which form arcades and loops around it.

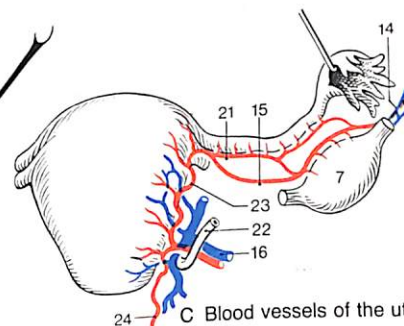
**Uterus, vagina.** The *uterine artery* is the largest visceral branch of the internal iliac artery, see p. 70. It runs in the subperitoneal connective tissue over the ureter **C22** to the base of the broad ligament, within which it passes to the uterus at the level of the cervix. There, it divides into the tortuous ascending *main branch C23* and the descending *vaginal branch C24* to the wall of the vagina. The coiling of the blood vessels allows for the mobility of the uterus. The *veins* form large *plexuses* around the body and the cervix of the uterus, and around the vagina, see p. 316. The *lymphatics* drain into the lymph nodes alongside the common iliac artery, as well as into the *inguinal lymph nodes* and the nodes on the walls of the pelvis. *Nerves* see Vol. 3.



A Sagittal section through a female pelvis



B Blood vessels of the ovary



C Blood vessels of the uterus



### External Female Genitalia (the Vulva) and the Urethra

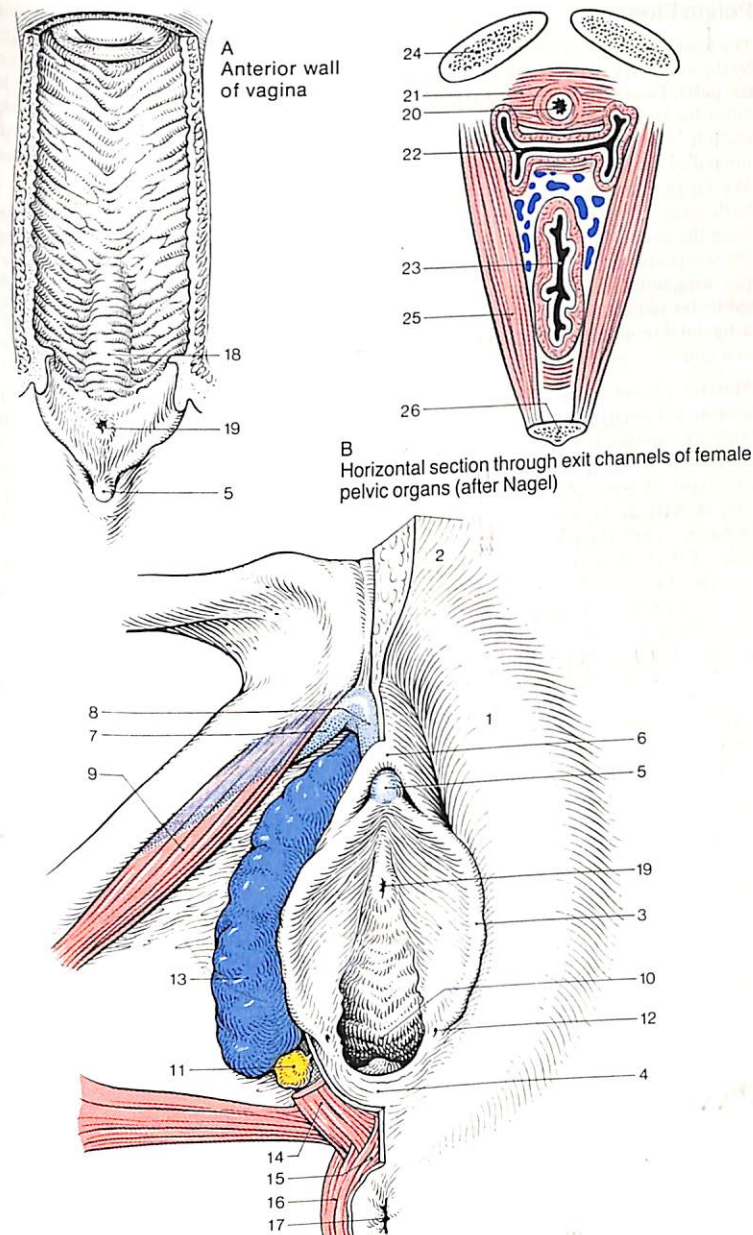
The left and right **labia majora pudendi C1** are skin folds which form the borders of the pudendal cleft, the *rima pudendi*. Together with the *mons pubis C2* they form a triangle. Their hair cover merges at the mons pubis with the triangular *pubic hair*. The mons pubis and the labia majora contain fat, sebaceous glands, sweat and scent glands. The left and right **labia minora pudendi C3** are thin skin folds that surround the *vestibule of the vagina*. They are connected at the back by a band of skin, the *frenulum C4*, which disappears during the first childbirth. Anteriorly the labia minora divide into 2 folds on either side, the two inner folds forming a cordlike connection to the glans of the clitoris **AC5**, while the two outer ones meet in front of the glans to become the *prepuce of the clitoris C6*. The labia minora contain connective tissue without fat and sebaceous glands. The *clitoris* originates as two limbs, the *crura of the clitoris C7*, from the lower rami of the pubic bone. Beneath the pubic symphysis the crura form the 3–4 cm long shaft, the *body of the clitoris C8*, which turns backward and ends in the *glans clitoridis AC5*. The *body of the clitoris* is enveloped by a fascia and is fixed to the symphysis. Each crus of the clitoris is covered by one *ischiocavernosus muscle C9*. The clitoris contains the *corpora cavernosa* (compare with the *corpora cavernosa* of the penis, p. 288) and is amply supplied with sensory nerves. The *orifice of the vagina C10* may be partly closed by the vaginal flap, the *hymen*. The latter is torn at the first coitus and after childbirth is scarred remnants turn into verrucose *hymenal caruncles* (*carunculæ hymenales*). In rare cases *Gartner's ducts* may end on either side of the vaginal orifice (see p. 272). *Small vestibular glands* lie between the urethra and the orifice of the vagina. The duct of the *greater vestibular gland (of Bartholin) C11* ends on either side of the orifice of the vagina **C12**. The pea-sized gland itself lies behind the vaginal orifice, medial to

the *bulbospongiosus* muscle behind the vestibular bulb and beneath the deep transverse perineal muscle. Its duct is about 1.5–2 cm long. The *lesser vestibular glands*, *tubuloalveolar glandulae vestibulares minores*, form groups, especially in the region of the clitoris and urethral orifice. The *corpora cavernosa* of the vestibule (*bulbi vestibuli vaginae C13*) consist of venous plexuses which are covered by the *bulbospongiosus muscles C14*. **C15** Centrum tendineum of the perineum, **C16** external sphincter muscle of the anus, **C17** anus.

The **female urethra** is 2.5–4 cm long and runs in a curve, concave toward the front, between the symphysis and the anterior wall of the vagina. It projects into the latter as the *carina of the urethra A18*. The urethra begins below the *trigone of the bladder (trigonum vesicae)*: *internal urethral orifice* and ends as a slit or star shape 2–3 cm behind the glans of the clitoris: *external urethral orifice AC19*. The 1–2 cm long *paraurethral ducts (Skene's ducts)* also end in that area. The lumen **B20** is narrowed by longitudinal folds which contain venous plexuses, the *tunica spongiosa* (between the mucosa and the muscle of the urethral tube); the veins ensure closure of the urethra. The lumen can be widened to 7–8 mm. The *muscle wall*, a continuation of the bladder muscle, is enveloped by fibers from the *deep transverse perineal muscle B21*, the voluntary sphincter muscle.

**Cross-section of the urethra B20**, vagina **B22** and rectum **B23** at the level of the floor of the pelvis, see p. 302. **B24** Lower ramus of the pubic bone, **B25** levator ani muscle, **B26** tip of the coccyx.

For the vessels and nerves see p. 304.



C External genitalia in female. Right side dissected



## Pelvic Floor

The lower aperture of the pelvis is closed by the voluntary muscles and the fascia of the **pelvic floor**. There are openings in the latter for the urogenital tract and for the rectum. The muscles and fascia are arranged in three layers, partly in a wing-like fashion, and are much the same in both sexes. From above downward (i. e., from the deepest to the most superficial) the layers are: 1. the **pelvic diaphragm**, 2. the **urogenital diaphragm**, and 3. the **sphincter muscles of the rectum and the urogenital tract**. Each diaphragm consists of a muscle layer strengthened by a fascia.

**Muscles of the pelvic diaphragm.** The **levator ani muscle A1** originates as two wing-like plates from each side of the inner wall of the lesser pelvis. The tendon of origin of each plate, the **arcus tendineus ABC2**, extends from the pubic bone lateral to the symphysis across the fascia **C3** of the obturator internus muscle **ABC4** to the ischial spine **ABC5**. The entrance to the obturator canal **AB6** lies above the tendon. Each of the two muscle plates consists of the following parts. The **puborectal muscle C7** originates from the pubic bone bilaterally and with its partner from the other side forms the puborectal sling. Their medial portions, the **crura of the levator ani muscle**, surround the **genital hiatus C8**, which is about 3 cm wide at the pubic symphysis. Some muscle bundles **C9** cross in front of the rectum **C10** (see levator muscle of the prostate and pubovaginal muscle, p. 312). Behind it the puborectal muscle follows the **iliococcygeal muscle C11**, it stretches as far as the coccyx and the **anococcygeal ligament AC12**. A third muscle, the **pubococcygeal muscle C13**, extends even further over and across the other two parts and runs from the pubic bone to the coccyx.

The **coccygeal muscle AC14** is attached posteriorly to the levator ani muscle. It arises from the ischial spine **ABC5** and fans out into the side of the lower sacrum and the coccyx. The muscle lies above the **sacrospinal ligament B15** with which it fuses. The muscle may be replaced by

connective tissue. Between the levator ani and coccygeal muscles is a triangle which contains no muscle because of the reduction of the iliococcygeal muscle. It is only closed by the fascia of the pelvic floor. Abscesses from the ischioanal fossa can reach the retroperitoneal space through this triangular gap.

The **piriformis muscle ABC16** together with the sacrum forms the **posterior wall** of the space above the pelvic floor. **AB17** Suprapiriform foramen, **AB18** infrapiriform foramen, **B19** lesser ischiadic (sciatic) foramen, **B20** sacrotuberous ligament, **C21** tendinous arch of the pelvic fascia, **C22** greater ischiadic (sciatic) foramen.

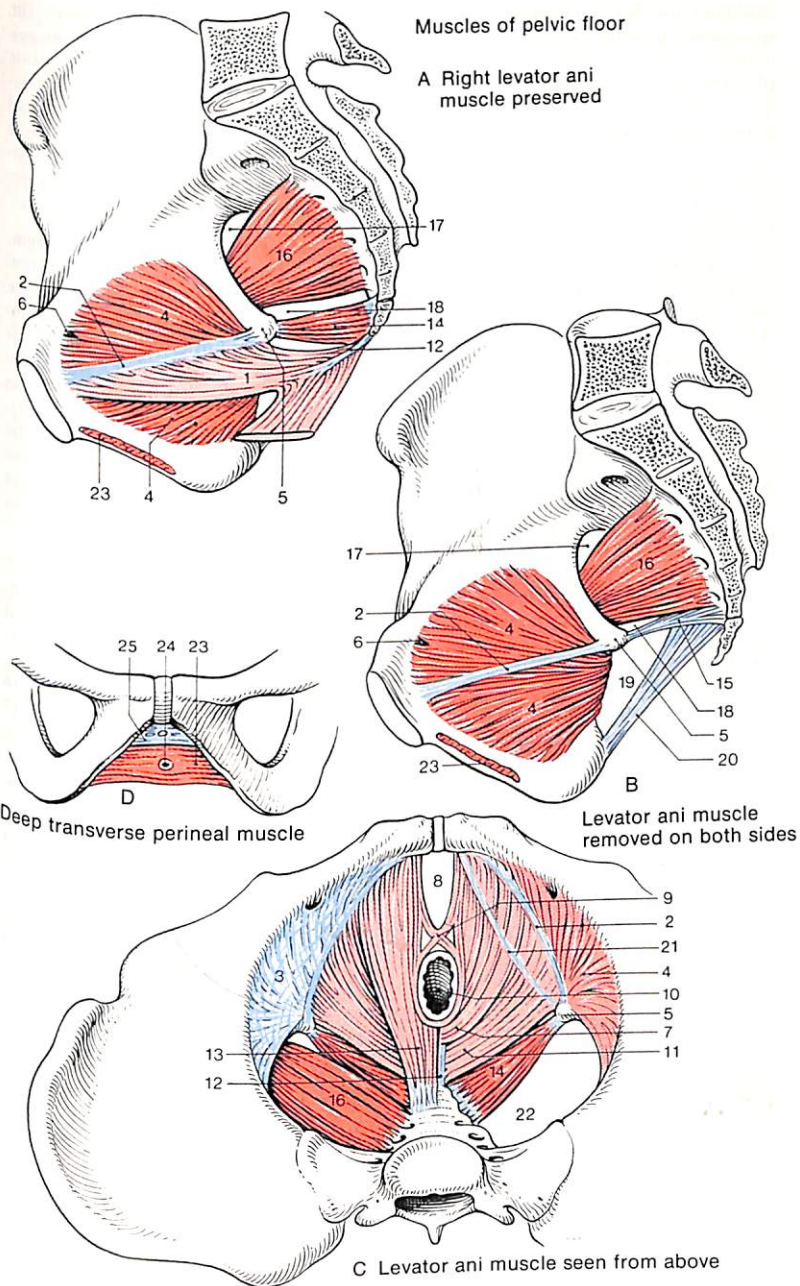
**Muscles of the urogenital diaphragm.** The **deep transverse perineal muscle ABD23** forms a thin muscle layer stretched in the angle between the lower crura of the pubic bone, transverse to the genital hiatus, which to a large extent it closes from below. The fibers of the posterior (inferior) portion of the muscle run in a roughly transverse direction. The anterior (superior) fibers run partly in a semicircular and partly in a circular direction around the urethra **D24**, and act as a voluntary sphincter, the **sphincter muscle of the urethra**. In the female most of these fibers go around both the vagina and the urethra as the **urethrovaginal sphincter**. Spiral fibers of this muscle ascend within the wall of the vagina or the prostate. The angle immediately below the symphysis is closed only by connective tissue, i. e., by the **transverse perineal ligament D25**. The deep dorsal vein of the penis passes between the symphysis and the transverse perineal ligament and the dorsal artery and nerve of the penis pass between the ligament and the deep transverse perineal muscle through the urogenital diaphragm; compare with p. 312.

The **superficial transverse perineal muscle** may reinforce the posterior margin of the corresponding deep muscle with thin superficial transverse fibers that arise from the ischium (see p. 312).

Central tendon of the perineum, see p. 312.

## Muscles of pelvic floor

A Right levator ani muscle preserved





**Sphincter muscles.** In the male the **bulbospongiosus** muscles **AB1** lying on the inferior surface of the urogenital diaphragm are united by a median raphe. The muscle covers the corpus spongiosum penis **B2** from below. It can squeeze blood from the corpus spongiosum into the glans penis and assists in ejection of the contents of the urethra by narrowing and shortening the urethra.

The **ischiocavernosus** muscles **AB3** do not have any sphincter function. They arise from the crus of the ischium on both sides and cover the crus of the penis, or in the female the crus of the clitoris, and are inserted into the tunica albuginea or the corpora cavernosa. An upper bundle crosses the back of the root of the crus penis, or the crus of the clitoris, and then joins the corresponding muscle from the other side. These muscles can squeeze blood from the crura into the corpora cavernosa.

The **external sphincter of the anus** **AB4** encircles the termination of the gut below the levator ani muscle **A5** like a sleeve. It consists of a *pars profunda*, a *pars superficialis*, and a *pars subcutanea*. The two halves of the external sphincter muscle cross in the midline in front and behind the anal canal. The muscle fibers go partly into the anococcygeal ligament **B6**, partly into the raphe of the bulbospongiosus muscles, and into the lower margin of the levator ani muscles, as well as into the skin of the anus, which they move in unison. The external sphincter muscle of the anus extends for 3–4 cm upward along the rectum. As the voluntary sphincter of the anus it is permanently contracted and relaxes only during defecation. While the external sphincter of the anus closes the orifice down to a sagittal slit, the puborectal muscle (see p. 308), the most important sphincter of the anus, produces a more transverse slit. The criss-cross position of the two sphincters favors a firm closure of the anus. **AB7** Superficial transverse perineal muscle.

**Fascia of the pelvic diaphragm.** The *superior* fascia is connected with the pelvic visceral fascia, the connective tissue covering of the pelvic viscera. The *inferior* fascia partly lines the ischioanal fossa. Laterally it merges into the fascia of the internal obturator muscle. Compare with the spaces of the pelvis described on p. 314.

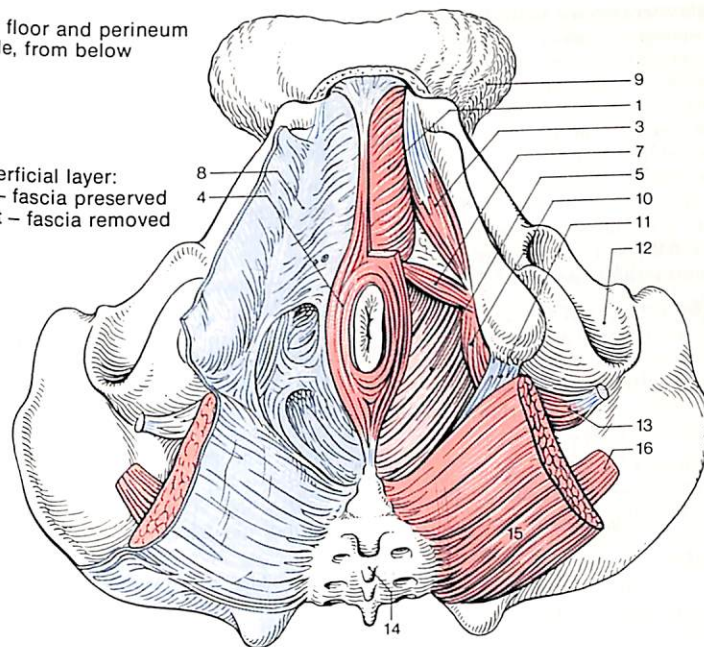
**A Fascia of the urogenital diaphragm.** Connective tissue for the conduction pathways is formed on the upper surface of the muscle, on the base of the ischioanal fossa. Underneath, the muscle is covered with the connective tissue of the membrane of the perineum (the fascia diaphragmatis urogenitalis inferior), which faces towards the perineum. The root of the penis lies in the connective tissue space between the inferior fascia and the *superficial fascia of the perineum* **A8**, in the *superficial perineal space*.

**A9** Scrotum, **AB10** internal obturator muscle, **AB11** sacrotuberous ligament, **AB12** socket of the hip joint (acetabulum), **AB13** tendon of the internal obturator muscle, **AB14** sacrum, **AB15** gluteus maximus muscle, **AB16** tendon of the piriformis muscle, **B17** branches of the posterior scrotal vessels, **B18** posterior scrotal nerves, **B19** perineal artery, **B20** pudendal nerve, **B21** inferior rectal artery, **B22** internal pudendal artery, **B23** inferior rectal nerves, **B24** deep dorsal vein of the penis, **B25** urethra, **B26** bulbourethral gland.

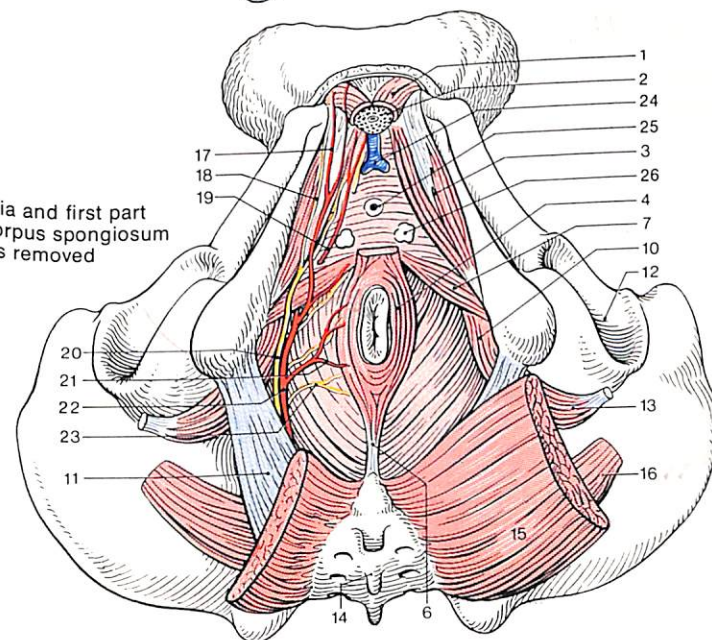
For the branches of the internal pudendal artery see the internal pudendal artery p. 71 and the inferior rectal artery p. 248. For branches of the internal pudendal vein see internal pudendal vein p. 317. For branches of the pudendal nerve, see p. 70 and Vol. 3.

Pelvic floor and perineum in male, from below

**A**  
Superficial layer:  
left – fascia preserved  
right – fascia removed



**B**  
Fascia and first part  
of corpus spongiosum  
penis removed





**Sphincter muscles.** In the female the **bulbospongiosus muscles A1** on each side cover the bulb of the vestibule **A2**. Fibers pass to the undersurface of the clitoris **A3** and into the mucosa of the vestibule of the vagina. The two muscles are connected by a *raphe* behind and in front of the vestibule. Isolated muscle bundles on each side pass beyond the dorsal raphe into the contralateral external sphincter ani **AB4** to form a figure-of-eight. **Ischio cavernosus muscles A5** (see p. 310).

**AB6** Levator ani muscle, **B7** coccygeal muscle from below shown by division of sacrospinal ligament **B8**; **B9** deep transverse perineal muscle partly removed on the right, **A10** superficial transverse perineal muscle.

**Perineum.** The prominent soft tissue bridge between the anus and the origin of the scrotum, or of the posterior commissure of the labia majora is called the **perineum**. In the center of the perineum is a tendinous layer, the *centrum tendineum perinei A11*, which is formed by tendinous, and also muscular, radiations from the following muscles: both levator ani muscles **AB6**, the deep **B9** and superficial **A10** transverse perineal muscles, the bulbospongiosus muscle **A1** and the external sphincter ani **AB4**. Smooth muscle-cell tracts running transversely between the two crura of the levator form a muscular base for the central tendon of the perineum. These muscle tracts divide the levator entrance into an anterior "urogenital hiatus" and a posterior "anal hiatus." In the male these are termed the levator prostatae muscle, and in the female they are termed the pubovaginal muscle (surrounding the vagina posteriorly and laterally). Destruction of the tendinous center will interfere with the function of many muscles. On their external (inferior) surface the perineal muscles are covered by the *superficial perineal fascia*, which is attached at the posterior margin of the deep transverse perineal muscle. The fascia adheres laterally to the periosteum of the ischium and the pubic crus and radiates into the superfi-

cial abdominal fascia in front (see p. 310). Pathologic processes can spread from the perineum to the lower abdomen both beneath and above this fascia.

### Loading on the Pelvic Floor

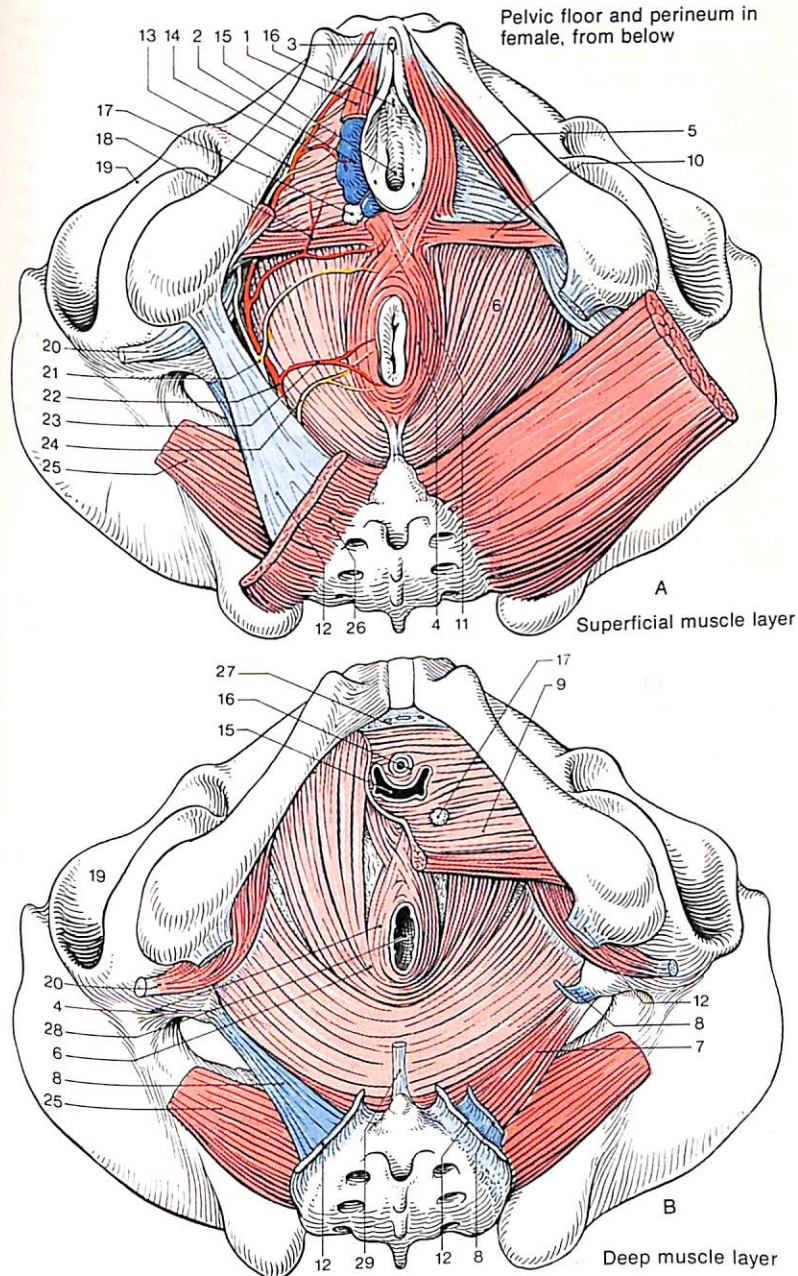
In quadrupeds the viscera are carried by the abdominal wall as in a hammock and the pelvic floor is drawn inward. In contrast, the viscera of man with his upright posture press on the floor of the pelvis. The following factors increase the load on the pelvic floor: raised intra-abdominal pressure on coughing or straining (defecation), relaxation and flabbiness of the abdominal wall and the diminishing suction effect of the lungs with advancing years. The closure of the lower aperture of the pelvis must withstand all these strains and at the same time it must permit opening of the pelvic apertures. There is, therefore, a risk that intra-abdominal pressure may push the pelvic viscera through their own openings (prolapse of certain organs, e. g., uterus, rectum) if the pelvic floor and its muscles are incompetent.

**AB12** Sacrotuberal ligament. **A13** posterior labial nerves. **A14** artery of the vestibular bulb, **AB15** orifice of the vagina, **AB16** orifice of the urethra, **AB17** greater vestibular gland, **A18** perineal artery, **AB19** socket of the hip joint, **AB20** tendon of the internal obturator muscle, **A21** pudendal nerve, **A22** internal pudendal artery, **A23** inferior rectal artery, **A24** inferior rectal nerves, **AB25** tendon of the piriformis muscle, **A26** gluteus maximus muscle, **B27** transverse perineal ligament, **B28** anus, **B29** anococcygeal ligament.

For the branches of the internal pudendal artery compare with the internal pudendal artery p. 71 and the inferior rectal artery p. 248. For branches of the internal pudendal vein see p. 317. For branches of the pudendal nerve see p. 71 and Vol. 3.

Sphincter of the urinary bladder, see p. 270.

Pelvic floor and perineum in female, from below





## Spaces of the Lesser Pelvis

There are three spaces in the lesser pelvis. The *peritoneal space* meets the *subperitoneal connective tissue space* above the floor of the pelvis. The levator ani muscle separates the subperitoneal connective tissue space from the *ischioanal fossa*, a connective tissue space below the floor of the pelvis.

## Peritoneal Cavity in the Female

The peritoneum of the anterior abdominal wall **ACE1** stretches over the surface of the bladder. It forms the *vesicouterine pouch ADE2* between the bladder and the anterior wall of the uterus. Behind the uterus it descends into the *rectouterine pouch ADE3*, (*pouch of Douglas*), which is the lowest point of the peritoneal cavity. It extends as far down as the posterior fornix of the vagina to reach approximately the level of the *rectal fold of Kohlrausch*. The entrance into the rectouterine pouch is narrowed by the *rectouterine folds*, in which the rectouterine muscles run (see p. 298). Lateral to the uterus the *broad ligament E4* arises with the *mesosalpinx* of the Fallopian tube **ED5** and the *mesovarium* of the ovary **E6**. The broad ligament is transverse in position and is inclined horizontally toward the front, thereby forming a peritoneal pocket on either side in front of the ligament.

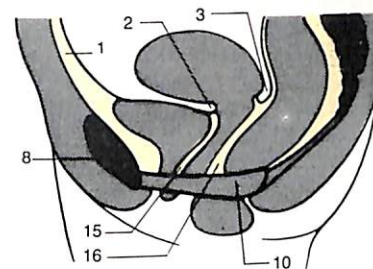
## Subperitoneal Space in the Female

The *subperitoneal space CDE7* is part of the retroperitoneal space and extends from the symphysis, *retropubic space AD8*, back to the sacrum **DE9**. It is called the *paracystium* around the bladder, the *parametrium* around the uterus, the *paracolpinum* around the vagina and the *paraproctium* around the rectum. The space is lined by the *pelvic fascia* which covers the viscera in the pelvis. The fascia is fixed to the ventral, lateral and dorsal bony walls of the lesser pelvis. The superior and inferior fascia of the pelvic diaphragm are connected with each other at the origin of the levator ani muscle

**ACD10**. Medially in this region the visceral leaf of the pelvic fascia is fused with the superior fascia of the pelvic diaphragm. The *pubovesical ligaments* are reinforced strands of the pelvic fascia. Above the pelvic fascia there is an opening into the obturator canal through which the obturator vessels and nerves leave the lesser pelvis. Posteriorly the pelvic fascia forms connective tissue arches around the anterior foramina of the sacrum, and covers the piriform muscle **DE11**. Between the posterior wall and the floor of the lesser pelvis remains a gap, the *infrapiriform foramen*, for passage of the nerves and blood vessels. There is a smaller opening above the upper margin of the piriform muscle: the *suprapiriform foramen*. The subperitoneal space contains the ligaments for fixation of the viscera, particularly the uterus within the lesser pelvis. Here, the ureter **D12** crosses beneath the uterine artery **D13**. In the subperitoneal space the internal iliac vessels and the branches of the sacral plexus divide. **C14** Fixation of the cardinal ligament of the lateral wall of the pelvis.

In the male, the rectovesical septum advances from the subperitoneal connective tissue, the peritoneoperineal fascia, to form a frontally-placed connective-tissue septum between the rectum and the urinary bladder and prostate. In the female, it advances to form the rectovaginal septum between the rectum and the vagina, towards the central tendon.

**A15** "Urethrovaginal septum" (vesicocervicovaginal connective-tissue cleft), **A16** rectovaginal septum, **CDE17** external obturator muscle, **CDE18** internal obturator muscle, **C19** ischioanal fossa, **C20** deep transverse perineal muscle, **C21** subcutaneous, connective tissue space beneath the deep transverse perineal muscle, **D22** ovarian ligament, **DE23** lower ramus of the pubic bone.

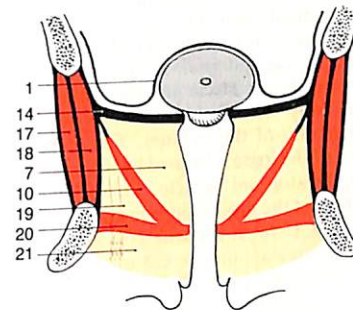


Connective tissue spaces of female pelvis

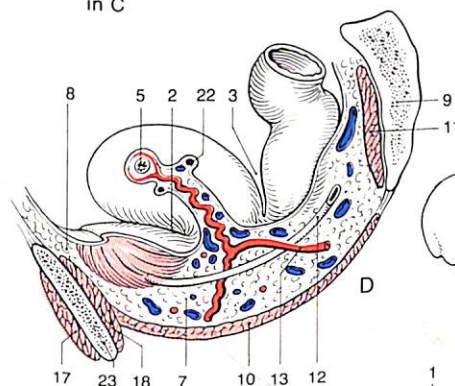
A Midline sagittal section (schematic)



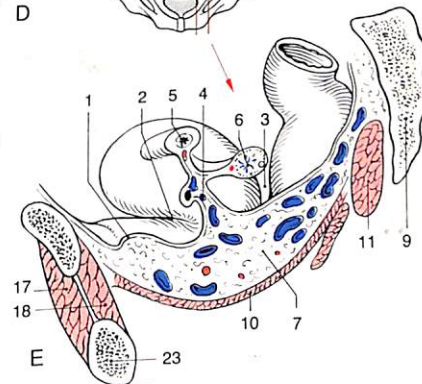
B Plane of frontal section in C



C A frontal inclined section (schematic)



D, E Paramedian sagittal sections (subperitoneal space)





### Ischioanal Space in Female and Male

The connective tissue space below the pelvic floor is divided by the levator ani and external sphincter ani muscles into the right and left **ischioanal fossa CD1**, which are filled with adipose tissue. The fat forms a movable pad that is shifted downward and sideways during defecation and parturition. The medial wall of each fossa is formed by the lower surface of the levator ani muscle **CD2** and by the external sphincter ani **D3**. These muscles are covered by the lower fascia of the pelvic diaphragm. The lateral wall of the ischioanal fossa consists of the lower part of the internal obturator muscle covered by its fascia and surrounded by the bony frame of the ramus and the tuberosity of the ischium. The grooved roof of the fossa is formed by the origin of the levator ani muscle. Following the course of the groove anteriorly there is an angle **C1** which is bordered medially by the levator ani muscle **C2** and at its base by the urogenital diaphragm **C4**. The **pudendal canal (of Alcock) D5a** is situated within the fascia of the internal obturator muscle **CD5** near the ischium. The pudendal blood vessels and nerve follow a rather complicated course: after leaving the subperitoneal space through the infrapiriform foramen, they pass round the sciatic spine and the sacrospinous ligament. Then they reenter the ischioanal fossa through the lesser ischiadic (sciatic) foramen and finally pass through Alcock's canal toward the symphysis. For their further course see pp. 310 and 312. **C6** Subcutaneous connective tissue space, superficial perineal space, in the male beneath the deep transverse perineal muscle. **C7** Superficial perineal fascia.

### Peritoneal Cavity in the Male

The peritoneum lines the **rectovesical pouch A8** behind the bladder, the lowest point in the peritoneal cavity in the male. The pouch extends to the fundus of the seminal vesicles at the level of the **transverse fold (of Kohlrausch)** of the rectum.

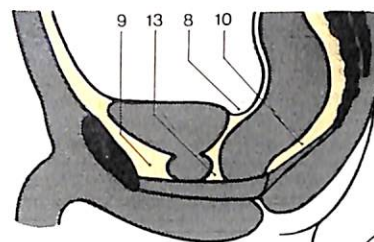
In exceptional cases the rectovesical pouch may extend down behind the seminal vesicles to the prostate. Lateral to the viscera in the lesser pelvis the peritoneum is slightly elevated by the ductus deferens which runs immediately underneath it. The entrance into the rectovesical pouch is narrowed by the two **rectovesical folds** over the rectovesical muscles.

### Subperitoneal Connective Tissue Space in the Male

The subperitoneal space extends from the symphysis (**retropubic space A9**) to the retroperitoneal space **A10** in front of the sacrum. It includes the **paracystium C11** next to the bladder and the **paraproctium D12** next to the rectum. The prostate and seminal vesicles lie in the subperitoneal space. The ureter crosses underneath the vas deferens. The **puboprostatic ligaments**, reinforced strands of the pelvic fascia, firmly attach the prostate to the pubic bone. The rectovesical muscles run in the **rectovesical folds. A13** Urorectal septum, **C14** external obturator muscle.

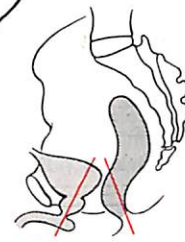
**Veins of the lesser pelvis.** The subperitoneal connective tissue space in both sexes contains an extensive **venous plexus**. It is mainly situated around the rectum and internal female sexual organs or the prostate. The vessels drain mainly into the internal iliac vein **E15**, but are connected with the afferent portal venous system via the superior rectal vein **E16**. A further connection with the veins of the abdominal wall is via the inferior epigastric vein **E17**. **E18** External iliac vein, **E19** internal pudendal vein, **E20** levator ani muscle.

Arteries of the lesser pelvis, see pp. 70, 72.

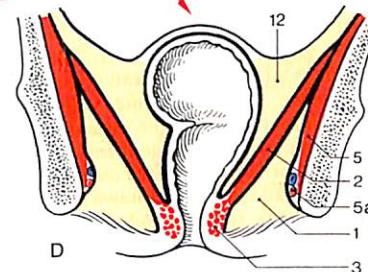
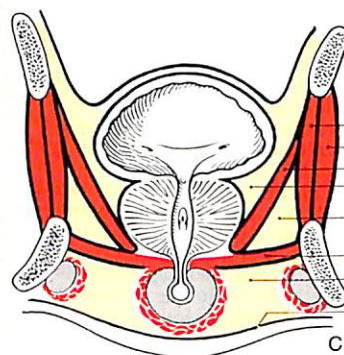


Connective tissue spaces in male pelvis

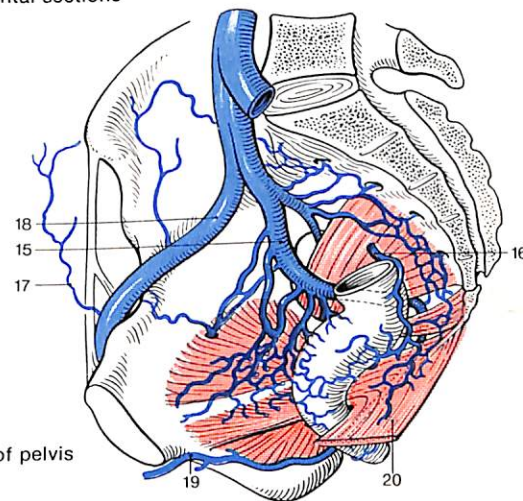
A Median sagittal section (schematic)



B Planes of sections C and D



C, D Forward inclined frontal sections (schematic)



E Veins of pelvis



## Mitosis and Meiosis

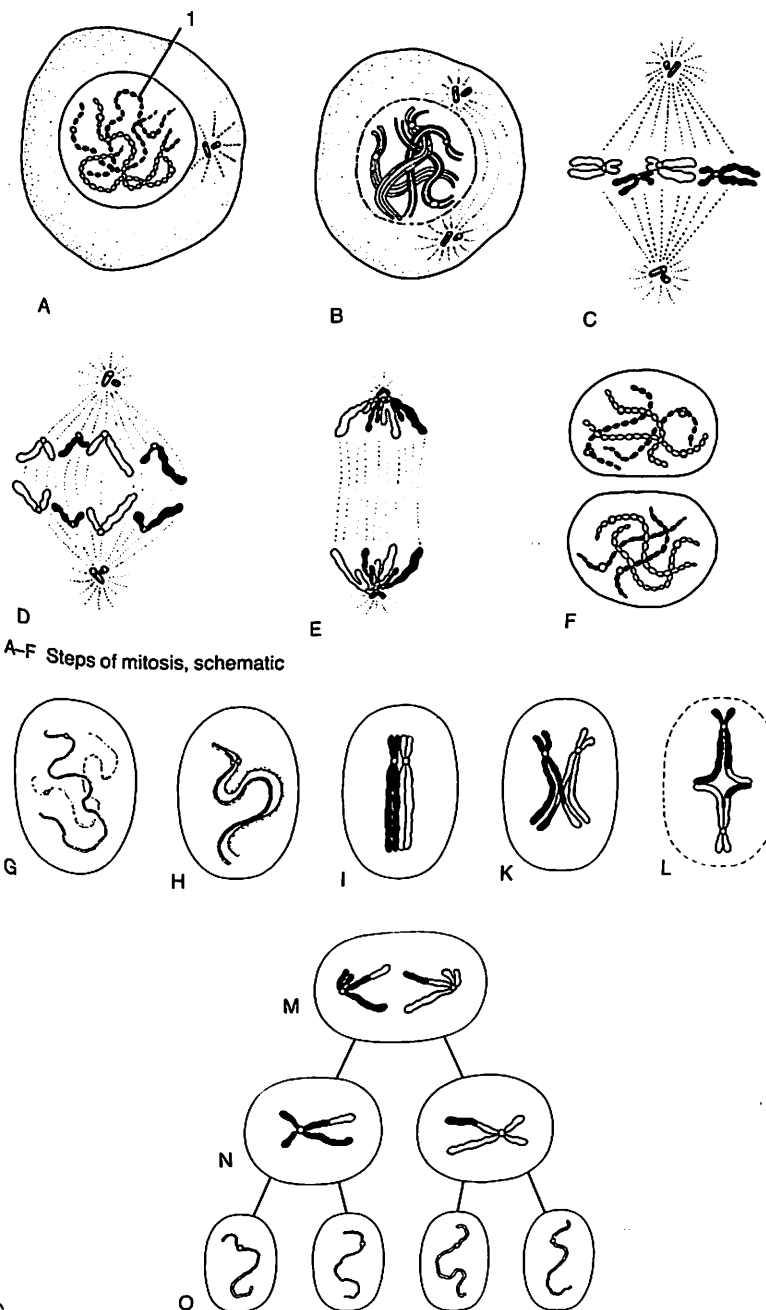
The cells of the body multiply by *mitosis*, which always produces diploid cells with 46 chromosomes, 44 autosomes, and two sex chromosomes (XX in the female and XY in the male). The *germ cells* prepare for fertilization by *meiosis* (two maturation divisions), which produce haploid cells with 23 chromosomes. The *chromosomes A1* contain genetic information in the form of strings of deoxyribonucleic acid molecules (DNA), each of which consists of a spiral double string which duplicates before each mitosis and before the first maturation division (identical reduplication).

*Mitosis* commences with a *prophase A*. The chromosomes appear as thin, spiral strings. In the *prometaphase B*, they contract further, through spiraling of the DNA, into short, dense rods. The two chromatids (DNA reduplication) and the connective kinetochore are visible on each chromosome. In the *metaphase C*, the chromosomes arrange themselves on the equatorial plane. In the *anaphase D*, the chromatids separate, drawn along the fibers of the spindle, and the pairs of homologous chromatids move in opposite directions towards the centrioles at the poles of the mitosis spindles. In the *telophase E*, the spirals of the chromosomes unwind again, and the cell nuclei of the daughter cells *F* reconstruct themselves. Like the mother cell, they are *diploid*.

In *meiosis* (in contrast to mitosis), the homologous (maternal and paternal) chromosomes lie alongside one another as a precondition for separation of the homologous chromosome pairs and exchange of homologous chromosome sections. As the division cleft becomes visible in each individual chromosome, four parts (chromatids) always lie alongside each other, and are subsequently distributed between four daughter cells in two steps of division. Each of these daughter cells then has a *haploid* set of chromosomes. In detail, the following sequence occurs:

**1st maturation division (MD I).** The *prophase* of MD I requires several days (around 24). While the nuclear membrane still persists, the strings of chromosomes appear in diploid numbers (the *leptotene* stage *G*). They position themselves lengthwise in pairs close together (*chromosome pairing, conjugation*), in such a way that each pair of homologous (paternal and maternal) chromosomes that belong together in terms of size and structure lies exactly alongside (*zygotene* stage *H*). However, since each of two paired chromosomes consists of two chromatids (division halves) due to the earlier DNA reduplication, the chromosome pairs (*bivalents*) have altogether four (two paternal and two maternal) chromatids. These groups of four (*tetrads*) appear more and more clearly as the chromosomes grow increasingly shorter and more dense (*pachytene* stage). When the paired chromosomes now begin to separate in the subsequent stage, the *diplotene K*, it becomes clear at the crossings and exchanges (*chiasmata*) that, during the preceding stages within the tetrads, homologous pieces have been exchanged between homologous (paternal and maternal) chromatids—a restructuring of the chromosomes (cytological "crossing over"). In the *diakinesis L*, the nuclear membrane disappears. The conjugation partners in the tetrads gradually separate from one another completely. This completes the duplication of the chromatids and the pairing of the chromosomes. The sex chromosomes play no part in the changes that occur during chromosome pairing. In the *metaphase* of MD I, the chromosome pairs arrange themselves along the equatorial plane. In the *anaphase M*, a homologous chromosome from each tetrad then travels with its two chromatids, which are still bound to the kinetochore, to the opposite pole, assisted by the spindle fibers. In the *telophase N*, each of the two daughter cells possesses half of the total chromosomes of the mother cell (one of each homologous chromosome), and in each chromosome the two chromatids are still bound to the kinetochore.

**2nd maturation division (MD II).** After a short pause, during which the DNA does not reduplicate, a further nucleus and cell division takes place, MD II. It is similar to mitosis. The postponed division of the kinetochores is now carried out, i. e., in the *anaphase O* of MD II the individual chromatids of the set that has become haploid during MD I is distributed to the daughter cells, as in normal mitosis.



G-O Two homologous chromosomes in the 1st and 2nd maturation divisions, schematic (from J. Langman, *Medizinische Embryologie*, 8th ed., Stuttgart: Thieme, 1989)



## Fertilization

A total of four mature germ cells (*gametes*) are produced during the two steps of division involved in meiosis (see p. 318). Both the number of chromosomes and the DNA content have been reduced to half in their nuclei. In addition, the chromosomes have been restructured due to the processes involved in the prophase of MD I, and recombined by random redistribution during MD I and MD II. DNA reduplication only occurs in connection with *fertilization*. This is based on a union of the haploid female and male gametes into a diploid cell capable of mitotic division (the *zygote*), the cell nucleus of which is composed of equal proportions of maternal and paternal chromosomes. During *impregnation* (penetration of the spermatozoon into the ovum), the ovum is still at the stage of the 2nd maturation division 1; this stage is terminated by insemination. The polar corpuscle 2 has also divided, forming an additional polar corpuscle 3.

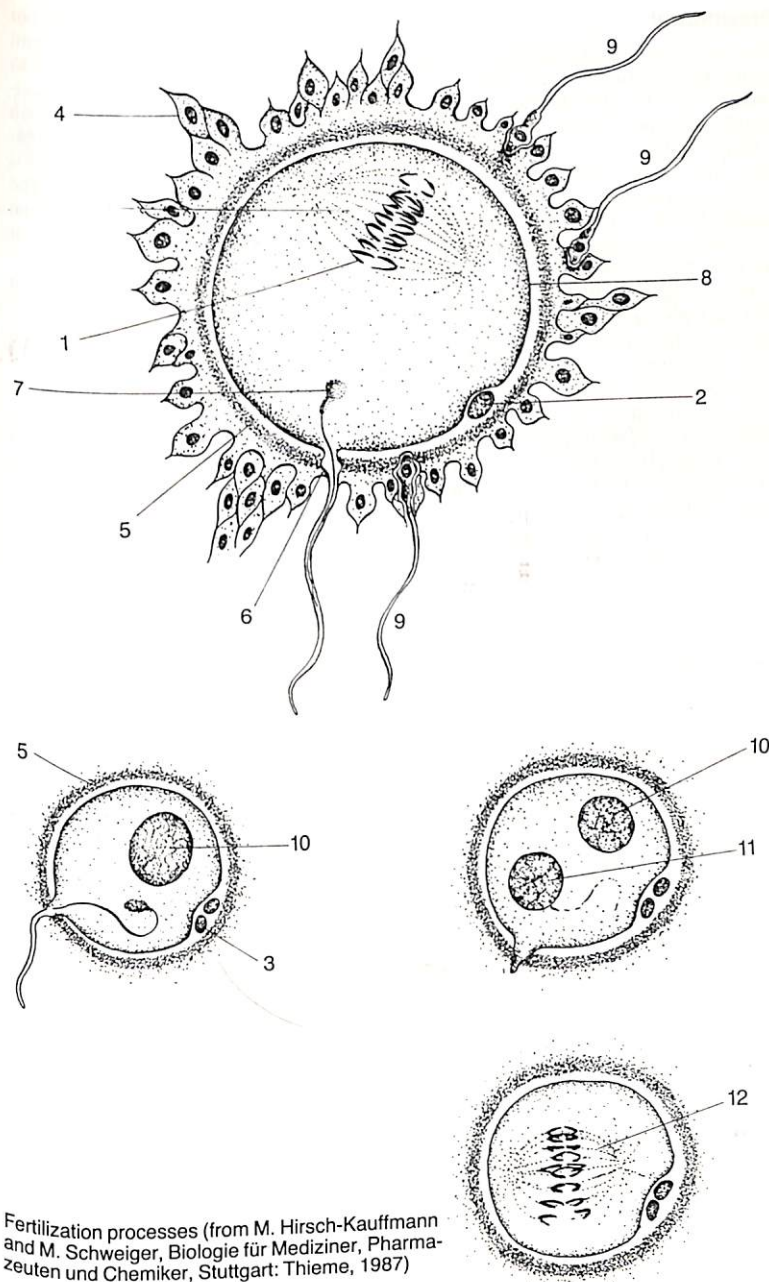
The journey of the spermatozoa precedes fertilization, and its course is basically determined by the hormonally regulated milieu in the female genital tract. Chemotactic attraction is also thought to be involved. The influence of estrogen makes the mucous plug in the external cervix permeable, and activates metabolic processes. The sperm cells that penetrate to the ovum undergo a process of "capacitation", also stimulated by estrogen and lasting some seven hours, at the end of their journey. Inhibiting factors covering the sperm cell are removed during this process. Enzymes (hyaluronidase and proteases) are released through perforation of the acrosomal plasmalemma of the sperm cell. These enzymes enable the cell to reach as far as the zona pellucida 5 after it has crossed the corona radiata 4. The dissolution of the acrosomal plasmalemma associated with this is termed the *acrosome reaction*. The acrosomal plasmalemma is now incorporated into the plasmalemma of the ovum, which has also been opened (fu-

sion of the plasmalemma 6). The penetrating sperm cell 7 is freed from plasmalemma.

The ovum reacts to contact with the sperm cell and its penetration in several ways. A *cortical reaction* is triggered via membrane receptors in the ovum's plasmalemma; the cortical vesicles of the ovum are suddenly caused to discharge their contents into the perivitelline space 8, between the ovum and the zona pellucida and suddenly alter their structure (formation of a fertilization membrane, ensuring monospermia, as it prevents additional sperm cells 9 from entering). The 2nd maturation division, commencing with ovulation, is terminated, and the haploid nucleus swells up to become the "female pronucleus" 10.

Contact between the sperm cell and the ovum leads within a few seconds to a depolarization of the ovum's membrane and activation of the metabolism (strengthening oxidative phosphorylation, increase in ATP, etc.). The translation of preformed RNA begins, new RNA is formed, and protein synthesis is raised. The sperm cell, which has penetrated as far as the "female pronucleus," losing its tail and ring centrioles in the process, also swells up to become the "male pronucleus" 11. The subsequent reduplication of the DNA occurs separately in the two pronuclei. The reduplicated chromosomes of the two pronuclei then arrange themselves into a nuclear spindle, originating in the centrioles supplied by the sperm cell. Mitoses 12 are started up, and the genetic sex is determined.

The genetic sex is determined during fertilization by the chromosome combination. The XX heterosomes are characteristic of a female cell nucleus, and the XY heterosomes are characteristic of a male one. After halving of the chromosome set during meiosis, the "mature" (haploid) ovum therefore always possesses an X chromosome, and the "mature" spermatids possess either an X or a Y chromosome. During fertilization, the sperm cell therefore determines the genetic sex of the nucleus.



Fertilization processes (from M. Hirsch-Kauffmann and M. Schweiger, *Biologie für Mediziner, Pharmazeuten und Chemiker*, Stuttgart: Thieme, 1987)



## Pregnancy

The ovum must be fertilized within 6–12 hours after eruption from the follicle or it remains unfertile. **Fertilization** therefore usually takes place within the ampulla of a Fallopian tube, or not at all. After 4–5 days the embryo moves to the uterus. During this period it divides into a central accumulation of cells, the **embryoblast** (the embryonic anlage) and an enveloping cell wall, the **trophoblast**. Information is sent to the hypophysis concerning the fact that fertilization has occurred from the early embryo, even before implantation. Menstrual processes (see p. 302) produce optimal receptivity for the embryo to implant in the uterine mucosa. The mucosa is raised, rich in blood vessels, and relaxed, and the embryo can penetrate it and find nourishment (histotroph). The embryo becomes embedded with the help of enzymes in the mucosa of the uterus **AB1**, either into the posterior **D2** or the anterior **D3** wall of the cavity of the uterus.

The **trophoblast** ("chorion" of later pregnancy) **AB4** forms villi of which only the basal ones continue to grow (**embryonic component of the placenta**) **C4**. They fuse with the basal part of the endometrium; the combination is called the "**decidua**" (**maternal part of the placenta**) **C5**. The two parts together form the disc-shaped **placenta**, the organ which is attached to the embryo through the umbilical cord. It permits exchange of gases and metabolites between the maternal and embryonic circulations. After the embryo has become firmly embedded, it is possible to distinguish the **basal**, **capsular** and **parietal decidua**. **ABC6** Cavity of the uterus, **ABC7** uterine muscle.

In the **embryoblast** a cavity forms below and above the embryo – the yolk (vitelline) sac and the amniotic sac. The **vitelline**

Growth in length of the embryo or fetus:

1 month	0.8 cm	vertex to coccyx
2 month	3	cm vertex to coccyx
3 month	7	cm vertex to heels
4 month	(4×4)16	cm vertex to heels
5 month	(5×5)25	cm vertex to heels

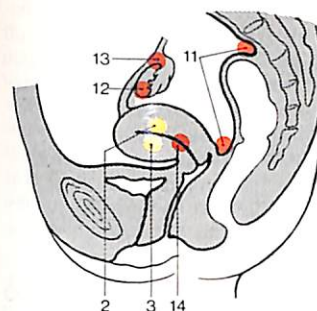
line sac **C8** degenerates into a vesicle but the **amniotic sac BC9** grows together with the **embryo AB10**, called a **fetus C10** after the third month. The amniotic cavity contains the **amniotic fluid** which amounts to 1 liter at the end of pregnancy. The fetus floats in this fluid and is attached only by the umbilical cord. The amniotic fluid prevents the embryo from fusing with the amnion, cushions it against mechanical influences, and enables the fetus to move. During birth, it fills the amniotic sac (p. 329, C1).

**Hormones.** The embryo forms **chorionic gonadotropins** which have an action similar to that of the hormone ICSH (LH). This compensates for the disappearance of LH from the hypophysis at the end of the menstrual cycle, and ensures continuance of the corpus luteum and of the endometrial mucosa. Menstruation ceases, therefore, from the very beginning of pregnancy. The **corpus luteum of pregnancy** keeps the uterus quiescent until the 5th month of pregnancy when placental hormones take over and the corpus luteum degenerates.

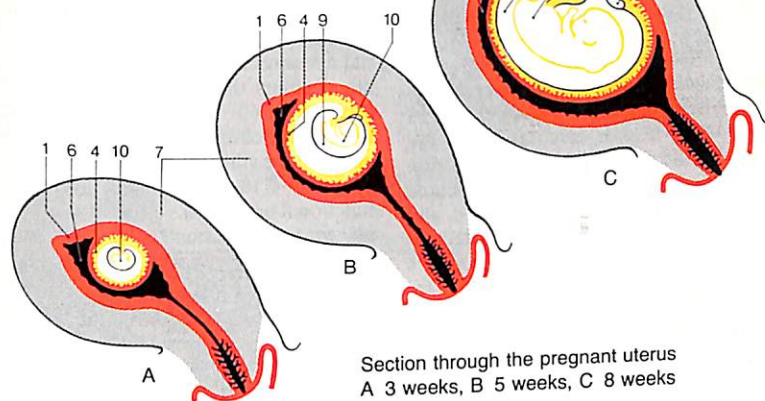
**Pregnancy test:** the marked increase in chorionic gonadotropin in the urine and serum is the basis for most pregnancy tests (whether chemical, biological, or immunological). In the biological test, for example, infantile female animals can be brought to maturity by injection of urine from pregnant women.

**Clinical Tip.** **Ectopic pregnancies** in the abdominal cavity **D11** or in the ovary **D12** show that spermatozoa can migrate into the abdominal cavity and fertilize ova there. A misimplanted pregnancy can erode maternal blood vessels and cause dangerous hemorrhages. **D13 Tubal pregnancy.** **D14** Implantation of the fertilized egg in the isthmus leads to **placenta previa**, i.e., the placenta is lodged proximal to the birth canal.

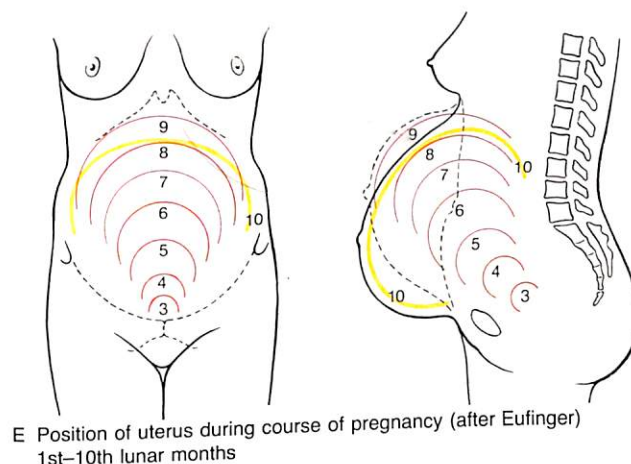
6 month	(6×5)30	cm vertex to heels
7 month	(7×5)35	cm vertex to heels
8 month	(8×5)40	cm vertex to heels
9 month	(9×5)45	cm vertex to heels
10 month	(10×5)50	cm vertex to heels



D Implantation sites in ectopic pregnancy and placenta previa



Section through the pregnant uterus  
A 3 weeks, B 5 weeks, C 8 weeks



E Position of uterus during course of pregnancy (after Eufinger)  
1st–10th lunar months



## Placenta

The placenta develops partly from the fetus, from the chorion frondosum, and partly from the mother, from the basal decidua.

**Structure of the placenta A1.** The placenta matures gradually during the third to sixth months of pregnancy, and grows more or less in proportion to the fetus. The chorion, which to begin with is covered in villi over its whole surface **BC2**, then only has a basal villous layer, the chorion frondosum or shaggy chorion, with a villous surface of 9–14 m<sup>2</sup>; the remaining surface is free of villi (chorion laeve). The mature human placenta is disk-shaped, and looks like a flat pot. The base of the pot is formed by the *basal decidua* (= uterine mucosa) **DC3**, and the lid of the pot is formed by the chorion layer (chorion frondosum). The whole space inside the pot—base, septa, lid, and villi—is covered in chorionic epithelium. The placental septa (*decidual septa*) **C4** that reach from the base of the pot towards the chorion layer divide the large pot into smaller ones, the *placentomes*. Since the septa do not reach as far as the chorion layer, however, there is a *subchorial space* that remains undivided, which links the small pots beyond their rims. From the chorion layer, 15–20 villous trees **BC5** reach into the small pots, and anchoring villi fuse them with the base of the pot. The (fetal) placental villi float in the maternal blood; the human placenta is *hemochorial*. The villi are covered in a *two-layered* epithelium, the *syncytiotrophoblast*, until the fourth month, and, underneath it, the *cytotrophoblast* (a layer of Langhans' cells).

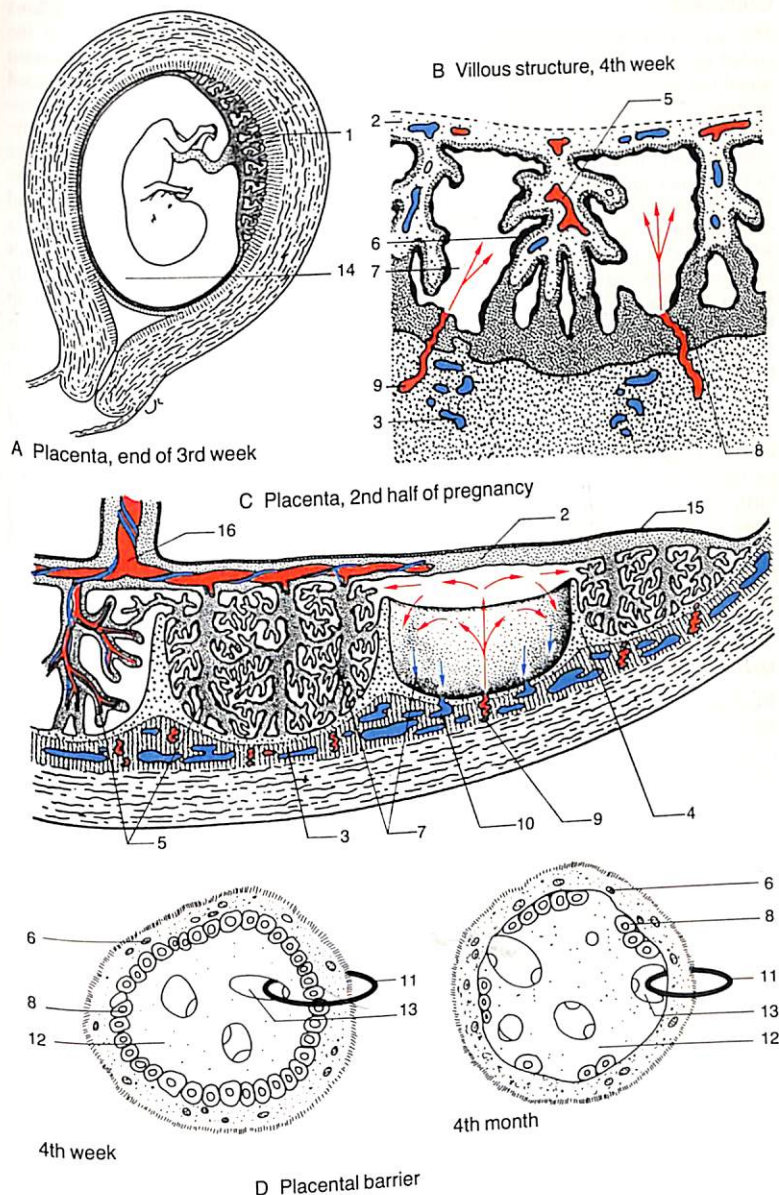
The *syncytiotrophoblast* **BD6**, the free surface of which is washed by maternal blood from the intervillous space **BC7**, is an intensely stainable layer without cell boundaries in which the cell nuclei are irregularly distributed. It arises from the fusing of cytotrophoblast cells from the layer beneath it. The syncytiotrophoblast takes up nutrients, hormones, etc., from the maternal blood and gives off waste products and hormones into the maternal blood. The oxygen supplied by the mater-

nal vessels (**BC**, red vessels) is transferred to the fetal blood, which gives off carbon dioxide (**BC**, blue vessels) into the maternal blood. The *cytotrophoblast* (Langhans' layer) **BD8** of cells with clear boundaries becomes patchy during the second half of pregnancy, and towards the end is reduced to about 20%. The syncytiotrophoblast and cytotrophoblast are different forms of trophoblast stratification.

The remainder of the *basal decidua* **BC3**, the maternal part of the placenta, is formed by the basal layer and the placental septa **C4**. Via about 200 jet-like arterial openings **BC9** in the basal layer, the blood enters the intervillous space at a pressure of 60–80 mmHg, rises quickly towards the chorion layer, and ebbs back between the villi again to the wide venous openings **C10** in the basal layer. The functional units in this circulation are the *placentomes*, the small pots.

**Placental barrier.** The fetal circulation is separated from that of the mother by the *placental barrier* **D11** (the mother and the fetus can even have different blood groups). The placental barrier belongs to the fetal part of the placenta; all nutrients, respiratory gases, hormones, IgG antibodies (against several infectious diseases), and by-products of the fetal metabolism that are exchanged between the maternal and fetal blood cross the placental barrier. In the early placenta, the barrier consists of the syncytiotrophoblast **BD6**, the cytotrophoblast **BD8**, the fetal villous connective tissue **D12**, and the endothelium of the fetal capillaries **D13**. Later on, it only consists of the syncytiotrophoblast and the endothelium.

Macroscopic and microscopic lesions to the placenta can cause *transfer of the fetal blood to the maternal blood*. With an Rh-negative mother and an Rh-positive fetus, this causes the mother to become sensitized, and in subsequent Rh-positive pregnancies she may threaten the fetus through Rh antibodies. **A14** amniotic cavity, **C15** amniotic epithelium, **C16** umbilical vessels (umbilical vein in red).



Placenta (from J. Langman, *Medizinische Embryologie*, 8th ed., Stuttgart: Thieme, 1989)



## Childbirth

The act of childbirth is immediately preceded by a drop in the level of corpus luteal hormones and a rise in the concentration of follicular hormones in the blood. The progesterone level, which is initially maintained by the corpus luteum of pregnancy, and then by the placenta, and a hormone known as *relaxin*, prevent contraction of the uterine muscle. Towards the end of pregnancy, the muscle becomes sensitized to oxytocin. This sensitizes the muscle of the uterus to the hormone oxytocin (see p. 154), which is then able to trigger off periodic contractions of the uterine muscle – *labor*.

The baby with its body bent and its legs crossed is “parcelled” ready for birth. As the head has the largest diameter of any part of the baby’s body, once it leaves the birth canal the remaining parts of the body follow easily. **A1** Uterus, **A2** placenta (the umbilical cord is not visible behind the baby), **A3** internal orifice, **A4** external orifice of the cervix, **A5** bladder, **A6** rectum **A7** vagina.

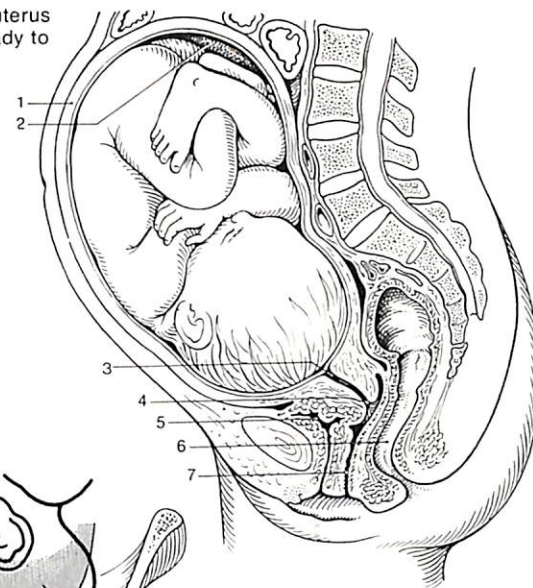
## Mechanism of Childbirth

**Birth in the occipito-posterior presentation** is the most common form: In primiparae the head of the baby descends into the entrance to the pelvis at the end of pregnancy, whereas in multiparae it enters the pelvis only with the beginning of labor. The *birth canal* is formed by the bony pelvis and by the soft tissues of the uterine cervix, the vagina and the floor of the pelvis. In the normal female pelvis the *pelvic inlet* (i.e., the transition from the greater to the lesser pelvis, the terminal line **B8**, see Vol. I) is an oval with a transverse axis. The *pelvic outlet* between the symphysis **C9**, the tuberosities of the ischium **B10** and the retracted coccyx **C11** (see Vol. I) is an oval with a longitudinally directed axis. The position of the longest diameter of the baby’s head, i.e., its sagittal diameter, is adjusted to the longest diameters of these ovals. Thus, the head of a baby on its way through the pelvis has to undergo a 90°

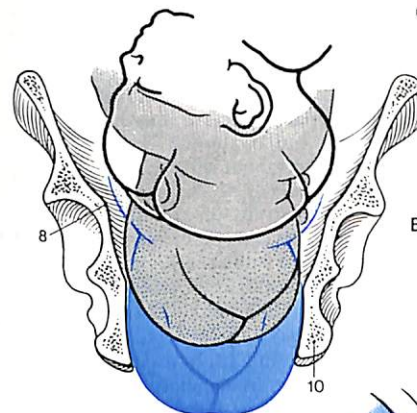
screw turn. Further, the head also follows the anteriorly concave *guideline* of the pelvis and of its *soft tissue “extension tube” C12*. In this way the head is guided from its initial flexed position into extension before passing beneath the symphysis **C9**. Subsequently the breadth of the shoulders first enters the pelvis with its diameter in transverse position and leaves the pelvis with the shoulders turned into the sagittal position. This means that the head, which has already been born, again rotates through 90° in the same direction as before. During this process the head is held and supported by the obstetrician, who by lowering and then elevating the head “develops” (brings forward) first the anterior and then the posterior shoulder.

*Soft tissues:* The cervix of the uterus, the vagina and the pelvic floor are rearranged to form the soft tissue “extension tube” of the pelvis. For the beginning and expulsion phases of birth see pp. 328 and 330.

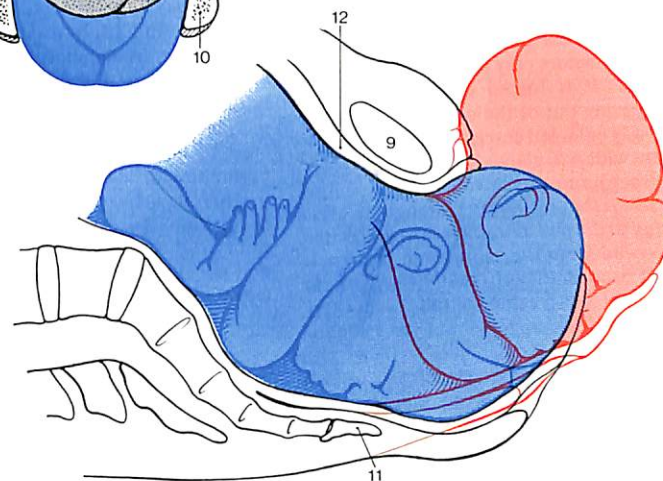
A Section through uterus showing baby ready to be born



Childbirth



B Bony pelvis and baby's head during birth (after Bumm)



C Appearance of head being born (after Bumm)



## Initial Phase of Childbirth

Birth takes place in two phases – the *initial* and the *expulsion* phases.

During the **initial phase** (opening phase) the soft tissues (cervix, vagina and pelvic floor) which up until then have cooperated in closure of the genital canal become remoulded into a wide, *soft tissue "extension tube"*. This initial phase is part of the process of labor which now begins. Muscle contractions in the uterus follow each other at fairly long intervals and do not involve any conscious effort by the mother. By the labor activity an *amniotic sac* **C1** is formed. It is a protrusion of fetal membranes (chorion and amnion) lying in front of the baby's head **BCD2** into which the amniotic fluid is squeezed. The fixed amniotic sac precedes the baby through the birth canal and effects an elastic dilatation of the soft tissues, which during the pregnancy are loosened by infiltration of fluid. Toward the end of the period of dilatation of the cervix the *membranes rupture*, the "water" (amniotic liquor) drains away and the contractions of labor begin to follow each other at shorter intervals. This is really the beginning of the expulsion period. In detail the latter consists of coordinated activities affecting several structures.

**Cervix of the uterus.** Both active and passive factors play a part in dilating the cervix. It is forced open *passively* by squeezing out of the contents **C3** of the grossly enlarged cervical glands **B4** (compare with **A4**, glands in the non-pregnant woman) and of the venous plexus. The *active* reshaping is due, among other factors, to the pull of the muscle bundles that descend from the uterus into the cervix and ascend to it from the wall of the vagina (see structure of the cervix uteri, p. 300). Rearrangement of the structure of the more circular muscle fibers also plays a part. The parametrium affords sufficient space for the dilatation.

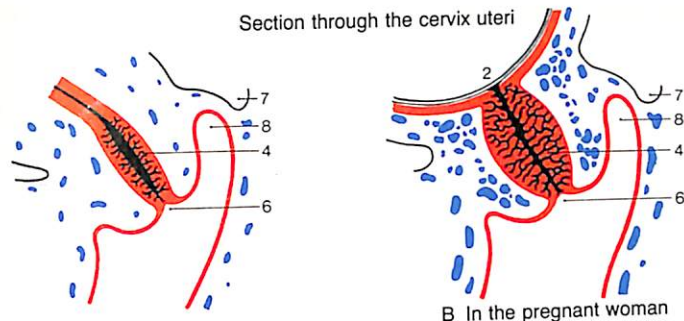
In the *primipara* the cervix is opened up step by step from the internal **CDE5** to the external **BCD6** orifice of the cervix

but in the *multipara* external ostium is already open at an early stage.

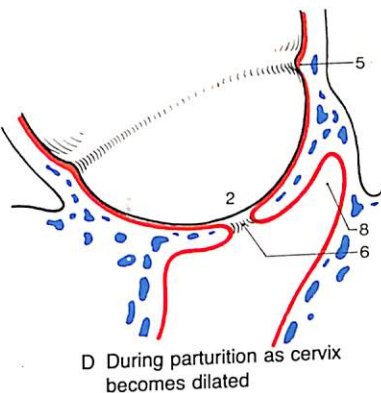
The **vagina** has a considerably wider lumen than the cervix and in the main is *passively* dilated. Displacement of fluid from the tissue and from its vessels both play a role, as do alterations in its circular muscle, and connective tissue. **AB7** Rectouterine pouch, **ABCDE8** posterior fornix of the vagina.

The **pelvic floor**, which has been softened during pregnancy by infiltration of fluid, becomes *dilated passively* by passage of the baby's head through the birth canal. The consequent stretching causes a change in the course of the muscle bundles, particularly of those in the levator ani muscles **F9**. Normally the muscle shelf of the levator ani on both sides forms the border of the genital hiatus with the crura of the levator muscle, but during parturition the muscle shelf of the levator ani is pushed down-ward and turned by about 90°, so that its upper surface comes to lie against the birth canal. The transverse muscle plate of the deep transverse perineal muscle **F10** is altered in a similar fashion and the sagittal bulbospongiosus muscles **F11** are widened into a ring. This creates considerable tension on the tendinous center of the perineum **F12**. In order to forestall a tear in the perineal muscles the obstetrician contracts this drag by pressing 2 fingers against the perineum (*support of the perineum*). If the tension is considered to be very marked a tear in the perineum can be prevented by an incision in it to relieve the pull (*episiotomy*). After parturition the structures of the pelvic floor are restored to their original shape and position. **F2** Head of the baby, **F13** external sphincter ani muscle.

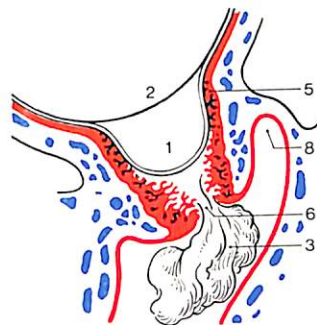
Section through the cervix uteri



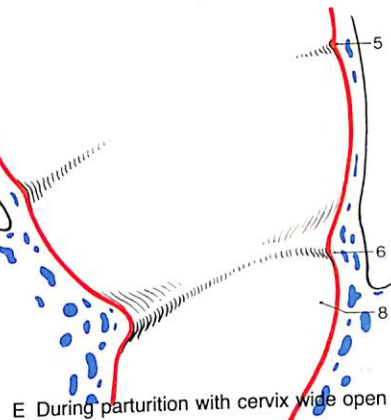
A In the non-pregnant woman



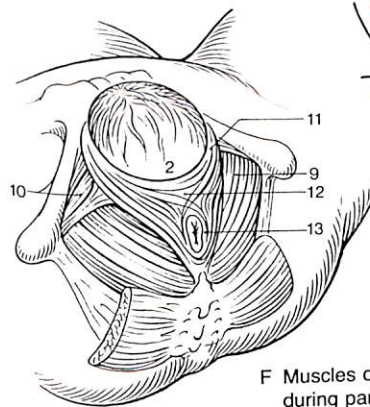
B In the pregnant woman



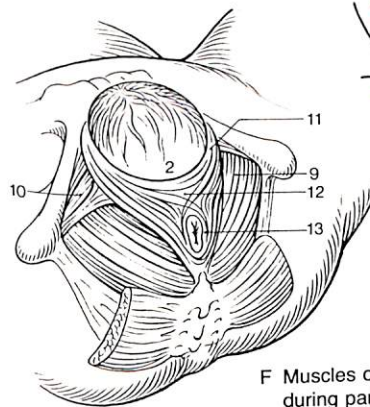
C During parturition (opening phase)



D During parturition as cervix becomes dilated



E During parturition with cervix wide open





### Expulsion Phase of Childbirth

The **expulsion phase** commences after the external orifice of the cervix has opened. The *muscular contractions of labor* get stronger and follow each other at shorter intervals. The mother aids expulsion of the fetus by actively pushing with her abdominal muscles in the rhythm of labor (*expulsion pains*). The muscle fibers of the uterus are considerably shortened during expulsion so that they are retracted over the head of the baby towards the fundus of the uterus. The muscle of the uterus has its fixed point in the anchorage of the cervix uteri and in the round ligament of the uterus **A1** on each side. **A2** Fallopian tube, **B3** urethra, **B4** vulva, **B5** anus, **B6** external orifice of the cervix, **B7** internal orifice of the cervix, **B8** placenta.

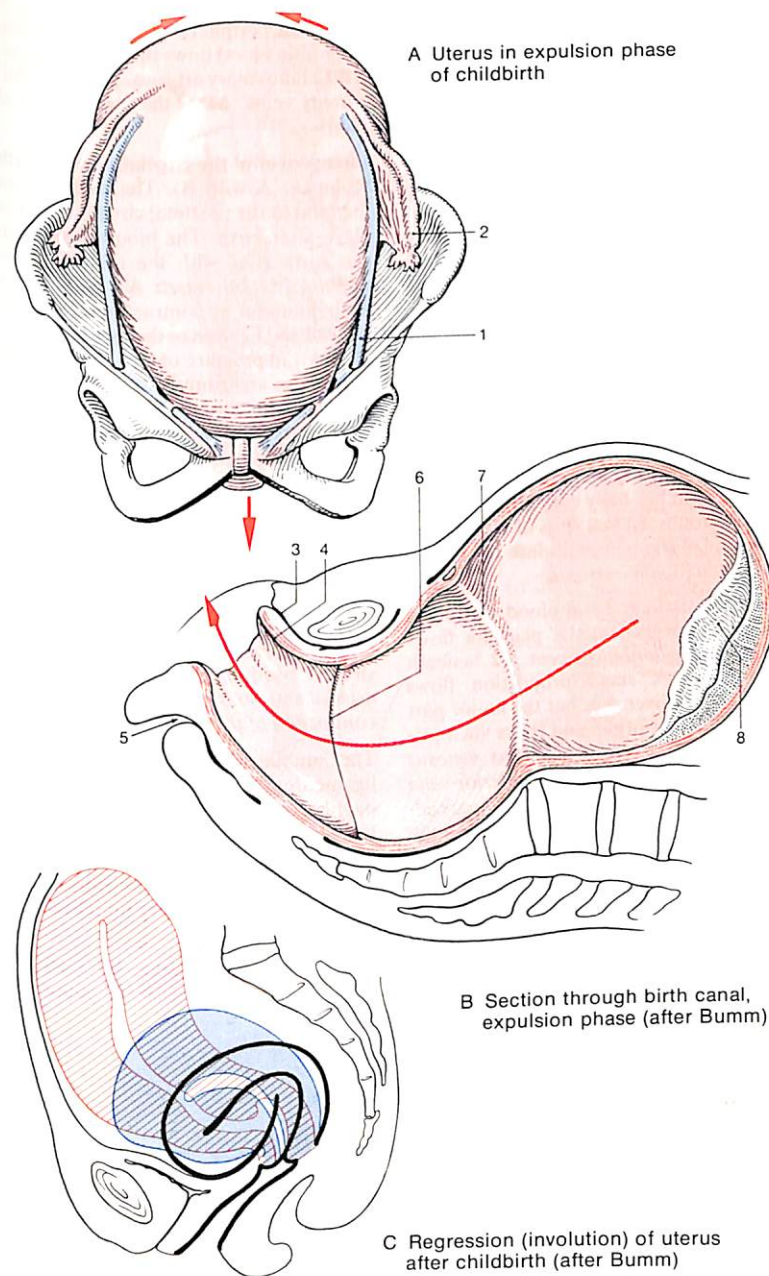
After *birth of the head*, delivery of the anterior and posterior shoulders and expulsion of the rest of the body follow in quick sequence. The *umbilical cord*, which connects the newborn baby with the as yet unborn placenta, is then ligated and severed. CO<sub>2</sub> accumulates in the blood of the newborn child, activates the respiratory center in its brain and the baby begins to breathe with the first "cry". Simultaneously the fetal circulation switches over to the postfetal circulation (see p. 332). The obstetrician will check on the signs of *full maturity* of the newborn; body length not less than 48 cm, weight at least 2500 g, good turgor of the skin, scalp hair 2 cm long, nails covering the tips of the fingers, complete descent of the testes into the scrotum, the labia majora cover the labia minora, etc. It is also important to make sure that there are no malformations present that could endanger the life of the baby.

**Birth of the placenta.** After the birth of the child the uterus contracts to about 15 cm in length, the fundus being at the umbilical level. Moreover, the solid placenta detaches from the uterine wall and moves into the inferior uterine segment. The contracting uterus feels firm, it "swells". Muscle contractions and strain-

ing by the mother and manual help from the obstetrician deliver the placenta 1-2 hours after birth of the child. Bleeding from the placental site in the endometrium is controlled by contraction of the uterus. If hemostasis is incomplete, e. g., because a piece of placenta has remained stuck to the uterine wall, or because of general atony, the mother is in danger of bleeding to death. Therefore, the obstetrician must be satisfied that the maternal part of the placenta is complete, and otherwise remove any remaining parts of the placenta from the uterus. The fetal membranes which have been torn by bursting of the amnion remain attached to the placenta.

**Involution.** Involution of the uterus and restitution of its normal structure take place during the *puerperium* (the immediate post partum period). The perineal muscles retract into their original position in a matter of hours. The size of the uterus is quickly reduced by degenerative changes: after only 10 days the fundus has descended to the level of the symphysis, the placental site in the endometrium becomes covered by epithelium and the internal orifice of the cervix closes. Up to that moment there is a discharge from the endometrium, called the *lochia*, which is at first blood-stained but later is paler and serous in nature. The body mobilizes local and general defense mechanisms as a protection against ascending infections (e. g., *puerperal fever*). The blood vessels of the uterus are partly adapted to the reduced requirement for blood flow by thickening of their walls, and partly they disappear.

**The size of the uterus.** C: Red = immediately after parturition; blue = 5 days; black = 12 days after parturition.





## Fetal Circulation

**Placenta.** The fetus receives oxygen, nutrients etc. from the maternal blood into which it returns  $\text{CO}_2$  and waste products of metabolism. Proteins can also be exchanged between the fetus and the mother (e.g., immunoglobulins and insulin). The **placenta A1** is the connecting organ through which all materials are exchanged. The **villi of the placenta** (with a total surface about  $7\text{ m}^2$ ) float in small pot-shaped chambers filled with maternal blood. The gases and solutes must pass right through the epithelial cell layer (*syncytiotrophoblast* and *cytotrophoblast*), through the connective tissue and through the capillary wall of the villi (= "placental barrier"). Usually there is no mixing of maternal and fetal blood. The mother and her baby may have different blood groups. In fact, loss of blood from the fetal placental vessels into the maternal circulation may occur.

**Fetal circulation.** Fetal blood which has taken up oxygen in the placenta flows through the **umbilical vein A2** beneath the liver. A small proportion flows through the liver **A3**, but the major part by-passes that organ and flows via a primary short circuit, the **ductus venosus (duct of Arantius)**, into the **inferior vena cava A4**. There it mixes with the markedly deoxygenated venous blood from the inferior vena cava **A5**. The blood in the right atrium is directed by the valve of the vena cava toward the septum of the atria and flows through a second short circuit, the open **foramen ovale A6**, into the left atrium. Blood from there either passes via the left ventricle and the aorta **A7** into the body of the fetus or via the two **umbilical arteries A8** back into the placenta. Deoxygenated (venous) blood which returns from the head and the arms via the **superior vena cava A9** into the right atrium crosses the bloodstream which comes from the inferior vena cava to reach the right ventricle. From there it flows through the **pulmonary trunk A10** and via a third short circuit, the **arterial duct (of Botallo) A11**, into the aorta and

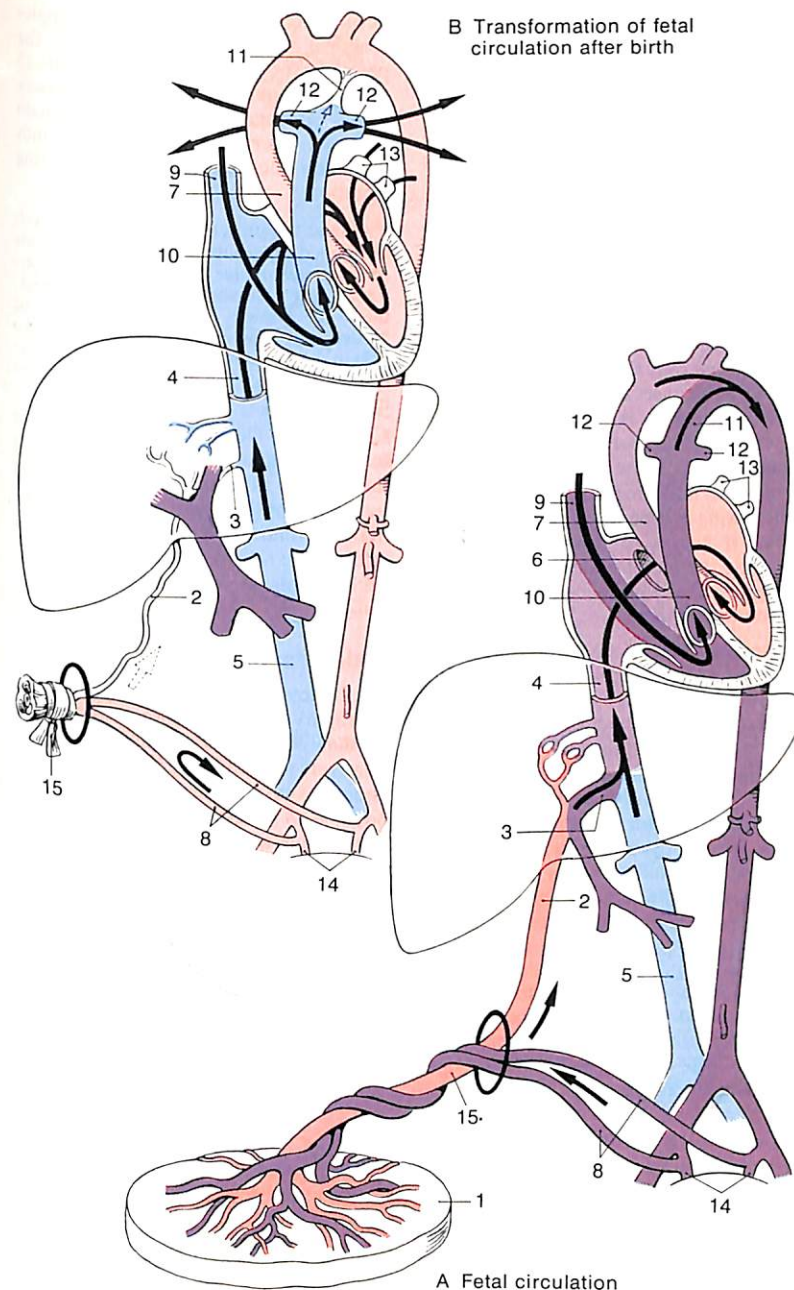
so into the peripheral arterial circulation. Very little blood flows through the lungs. **AB12** Pulmonary arteries. **AB13** the pulmonary veins, **AB14** the superior vesical arteries.

**Changeover of the circulation after birth** (compare A with B). The change from the fetal to the postfetal circulation takes place after birth. The blood pressure in the aorta rises with the **closure of the umbilical blood vessels AB15**, which is brought about by contraction of the vessel wall and ligation of the umbilical cord. The partial pressure of  $\text{CO}_2$  in the baby's blood rises and stimulates the respiratory center in the brain. With the onset of pulmonary breathing (the first "cry") the lung expands and the resistance in the pulmonary circulation drops. The pressure gradient causes a reversal of the blood flow in the arterial duct and the pulmonary circulation becomes filled with blood. The backflow of blood from the lungs increases this pressure in the left ventricle and effects **mechanical closure of the foramen ovale** by drawing its flap-shaped borders closely together. The **arterial and venous ducts close**, mainly by **contraction of the muscles in their walls**.

The umbilical vein **A2** becomes the **ligamentum teres hepatis B2**, the venous duct becomes the **venous ligament of the liver B3**, the **ductus arteriosus A11** becomes the **ligamentum arteriosum B11**, the **umbilical arteries A8** become obliterated to form the **medial umbilical ligaments B8**.

**B4, 5** Inferior vena cava, **B7** aorta, **B9** superior vena cava, **B10** pulmonary trunk.

B Transformation of fetal circulation after birth



A Fetal circulation



### Female Breast and Mammary Gland

The **breast** (*mamma*) and the **mammary gland** are structures of the skin, but as the female mammary gland has a close functional connection with the genital organs it is discussed in the present context.

The **mammary gland** of the newborn (of either sex) is still under the influence of the maternal hormones. It is, therefore, still relatively large for the first 3 weeks and it may discharge a few drops of a milklike secretion ("witch's milk"). The gland grows only slowly during childhood but with the onset of puberty its development accelerates. After the early stage of a "budding" breast, the typical breast shape develops later with increased deposition of fat. The gland grows considerably during pregnancy, toward the end of which it begins to secrete milk. After weaning the gland undergoes spontaneous regression with increasing formation of connective tissue.

The **mature breasts** are shaped like slightly deformed hemispheres (bowl, hemisphere or cone-shaped breasts, frequently race specific). The breasts extend from the level of the 3rd through 7th rib in the middle between the sternum and the axilla. They are *movable* over the chest wall against the pectoral fascia (see D) and they are approximately *symmetrical* in their position and formation. Frequently a process of the mamma, the *processus lateralis* (*axillaris*), extends across the margin of the pectoral muscle into the axilla (see C). The groove between the 2 breasts is called the *sinus mammarum*. The **nipple A** is 10–12 mm high and lies just below the center of the breast. It points a little upwards and sideways and the milk ducts open on its surface on 12–20 orifices like pores. If the nipple is flat or retracted (*sunken nipple*) a baby may not be able to suck on it properly. The puckered skin of the papilla and its surrounding circular area, the *areola*, are usually somewhat more darkly pigmented than the neighboring skin. This is particularly marked in women who have

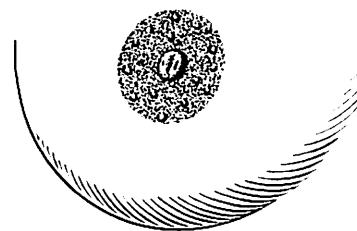
borne a child. Only the tip of the nipples remains free from pigment. In the periphery of the areola there are 10–15 tubercles (*areolar glands*, *Montgomery glands*) arranged in a circle. They contain apocrine, eccrine and sebaceous glands and their secretion is increased during lactation.

**Variants:** the presence of more or less well developed supernumerary mammary glands (*accessory mammae*) is known as *hypermastia*. If only accessory papillae are present, this is known as "*hyperthelia*" or "*polythelia*". The accessory glands also take part in the changes which accompany puberty and pregnancy. Their positions are shown in E.

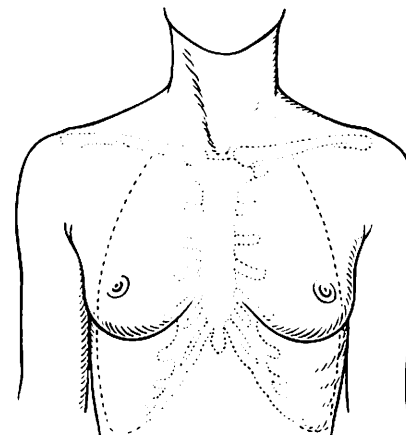
**Clinical Tip.** Disturbances of mobility of marked asymmetry of the breasts or of the position of the nipple may be caused by disease of the breast (e. g., cancer) or of the locomotor system. The figures in C indicate the *relative frequency of cancer* in each quadrant of the breast (after Bailey).

### Male Breast

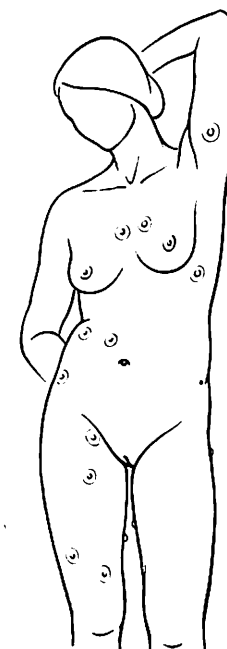
The basic structure of the male breast and mammary gland corresponds in principle to that of the female, but it remains relatively undeveloped. The gland is only about 1.5 cm wide and 0.5 cm thick. It is possible to develop the mammary gland in the male by administration of female sex hormones. During *puberty* the breast may temporarily show a more marked development – *gynecomastia*. Rudiments of supernumerary mammae can also occur in men.



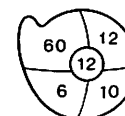
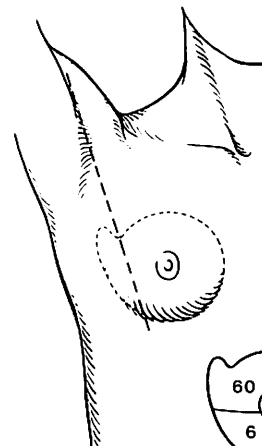
A Papilla



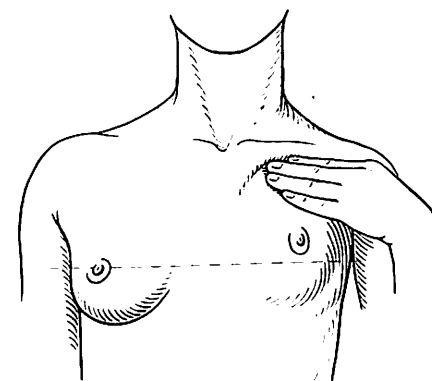
B Female breast in relation to thorax (chest)



E Rudiments of supernumerary breasts and nipples



C Extension of mammary gland into axilla and frequency of breast cancer (after Bailey)



D Mobility of breast



### Fine Structure and Function of the Female Breast (Mammary Gland)

**Glandular size and adipose tissue.** The size of the glandular part A1 varies less than the total size of the breast as the latter is largely determined by the amount of adipose tissue A2 in it. The glandular part rests on the pectoral fascia A3. It is thickest at the lower lateral portion and is composed of 12–20 coniform lobes, *Lobi glandulae mammae*. Connective tissue strands (*suspensory ligaments of the mammary gland*) divide the fatty tissue into small chambers that extend from the skin to the pectoral fascia. The tautness of the breast depends on the condition of the connective tissue and on the degree to which the chambers are filled. A4 Pectoralis major muscle.

**Mature, nonlactating mammary gland.** Each lobe has a milk duct, *ductus lactifer colligens* AB5, an epithelial tubule with a number of small branches and a narrow lumen, which is sometimes absent. Its branches, the *lactiferous ducts* AB1, are separated from each other by connective tissue B6 and they are thickened at the distal end to resemble a bud. Beneath the nipple each lactiferous tubule broadens into a 1–2 mm wide spindle-shaped ampulla, *lactiferous sinus* A7, which leads into the lactiferous duct at the base of the papilla. During the menstrual cycle after ovulation the breast enlarges by 15–45 cm<sup>3</sup> by sprouting of the lactiferous ducts. The enlargement reaches a climax before menstruation and returns to normal by the 7th day of the following cycle.

**Lactating mammary gland.** During pregnancy the lactiferous ducts proliferate, there is less connective tissue and the breast undergoes a soft swelling. During the 5th month of pregnancy the terminal "buds" are transformed into *alveoli*. There is marked increase in the vascularization of the gland. In the 9th month yellowish *colostrum* begins to form which contains fat droplets and cell debris. About 3 days after childbirth the production of milk begins. The fat globules of the milk, produced by apocrine secre-

tion, are surrounded by a protein membrane and have a diameter of 2–5  $\mu$ m. They expand the alveoli B8 to a diameter of 1.2 mm. The ampullae are dilated to 5–8 mm. The walls of the alveoli and of the lactiferous tubules are surrounded by smooth muscle cells, the *myoepithelium*, which helps to empty the breast.

The quantity of milk produced daily is about 500 g. It contains around 4.5% fat, 7–8% carbohydrate, 0.9% protein, 0.2% minerals, immunoglobulin A and other specific substances.

**Spontaneous regression.** The weaning period leads to accumulation of milk and distension and rupture of alveoli before milk production ceases. Phagocytes appear in the tissue and take part in removal of milk residues. The glandular tissue undergoes partial atrophy.

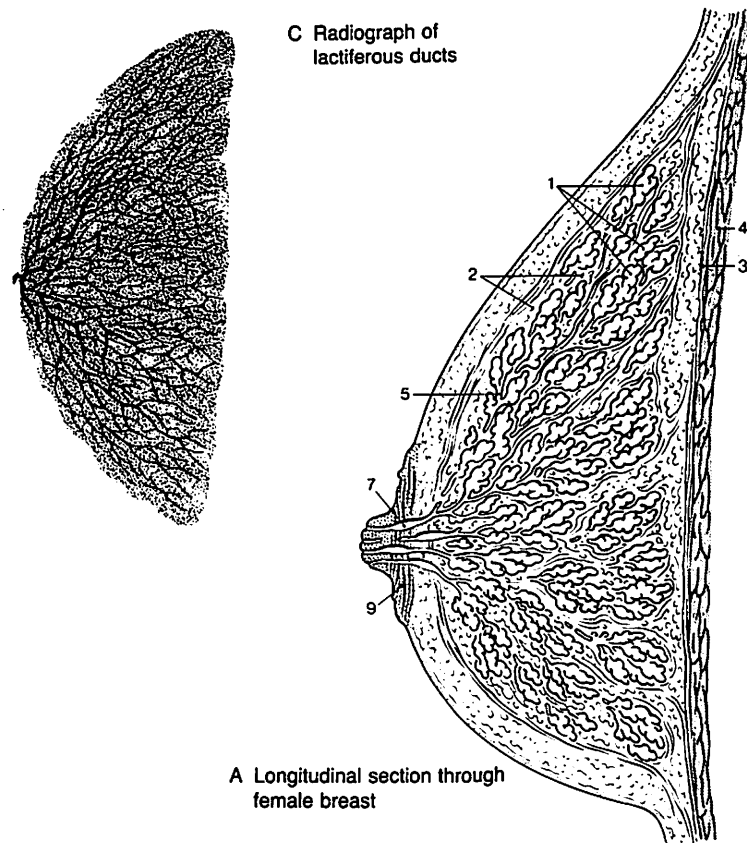
**Nipple (papilla).** Deep to the nipple, *papilla mammaria*, and its areola is a system of circular and radial smooth muscle bundles A9, which are fixed to the lactiferous tubules and the veins by elastic fibers in the skin. These muscle bundles produce erection of the nipple by contraction of the areola and by dilatation of the veins and the lactiferous tubules. When feeding, the baby empties the ampullae by alternate pressure from the lips and the gums and subsequently they refill with milk.

**Galactogram.** This can be important in diagnosis and in demonstration of the glandular ducts on a radiograph after injection of a contrast medium C.

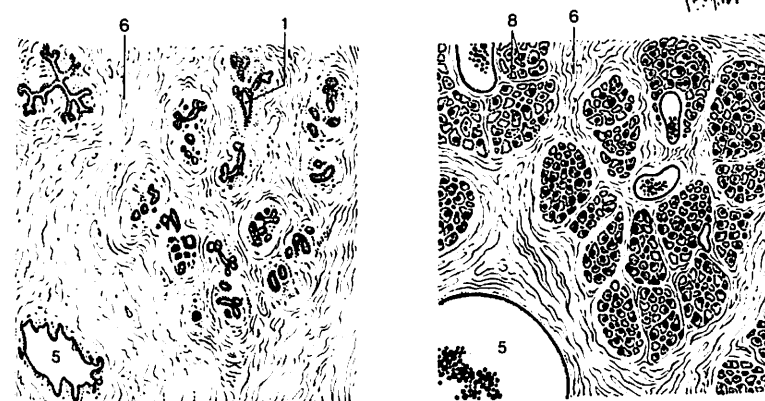
**Effects of hormones.** *Estrogens* affect the growth of the tubular system and prepare it for the effect of *progesterone*, which induces development of the alveoli. Estrogens and progesterone, also produced by the *placenta*, tend to suppress milk production at the same time. After reduction in the flow of these hormones at the end of pregnancy, *prolactin* stimulates milk production. Release of milk is controlled by *oxytocin* which causes contraction of the *myoepithelia* in the gland. The release of prolactin and of oxytocin is maintained by tactile stimulation of the nipples (*neurohormonal reflex*).

For the vessels, see pp. 53, 77 and 81.

C Radiograph of lactiferous ducts



A Longitudinal section through female breast



B Histology of mammary glands; left – at rest (inactive) right – during lactation



## Skin

The **outer skin** (integument) covers the external surface of the body, an area of about 1.6 m<sup>2</sup> in the adult. At the orifices of the body the skin is continuous with the mucous membranes, and makes up about 16% of the body's weight. The skin as an organ performs many different functions:

- It **protects** the body against *mechanical, chemical and thermal injuries* by its epithelium which, with the help of glandular secretions, affords protection against invasion by many pathogenic microorganisms.
- By its content of immunologically active cells it takes part in the *defense mechanisms of the body*.
- It **maintains body temperature** by means of variable blood circulation and by the discharge of fluids (sweat) from its glands.
- The skin also plays a controlling role in *regulating water balance*, because it both protects the body against desiccation and provides a route for loss of fluid and mineral salts via the secretion of its glands.
- The skin, through its sensory innervation, acts also as *sense organ* for the *perception of pressure, temperature and pain*.
- The facilities of blushing, pallor, piloerection etc. make the skin a *communicating organ* of the autonomic nervous system.

The skin also shows electrical resistance, which changes under emotional stress, because of emotionally conditioned secretion by the skin glands. This phenomenon forms the basis of the *lie detector test*. The skin is of special medical interest because more than any other organ it is accessible to observation and because it contributes to the symptomatology of many systemic diseases, e.g., cyanosis (blue coloring) in heart disease, circumscribed erythematous and rashes in infectious diseases etc.

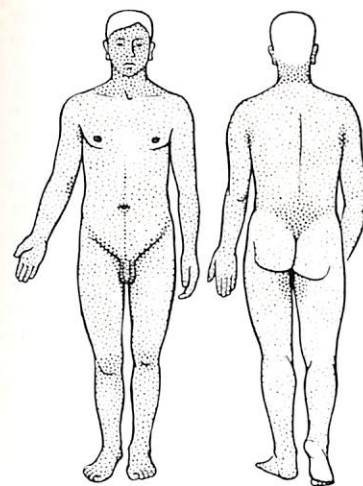
Particularly when clothes made of artificial fibers are worn in a dry atmosphere, the skin may become electrostatically charged up to a potential of 1000 volts.

The skin possesses intrinsic elasticity and is characterized by its cornified epithelium, but its overall structure varies at different sites on the body surface. It forms "*spare fold*" over the joints, it is thicker over areas exposed to greater mechanical stress (e.g., palm of the hand, sole of the foot, the back) than where there is less stress (e.g., the eyelids).

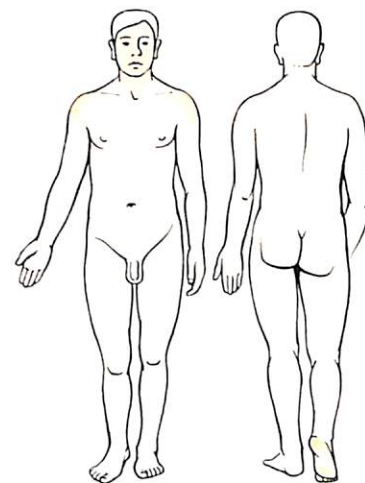
**Skin surface (epidermis).** The greater part of the skin shows *polygonal areas*; at their summits the sweat glands open. Hairs with their sebaceous glands stand in the furrows between the polygonal areas. In some parts of the body scent glands are also present. The skin over the palm of the hand and the sole of the foot shows *parallel ridges* separated by furrows, and sweat glands lead into the ridges. Hair, sebaceous and scent glands are absent from the palms and soles (see p. 344).

**Skin color.** The color is determined mainly by the four components in the skin: **A** a brownish black pigment, *melanin* from the melanocytes; **B** carotene from food; **C** *oxygenated hemoglobin* (in O<sub>2</sub>-rich arterial blood) and **D** *deoxygenated hemoglobin* in venous blood in the cutaneous vessels.

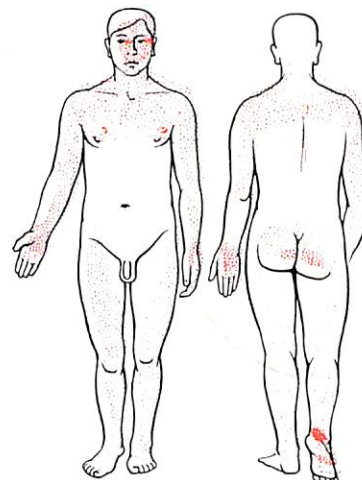
These components show characteristic local differences in concentration, which may be due to the environment, e.g., solar radiation or food rich in carotene. Melanin pigmentation is stronger in the skin of the axilla, the external genital organs, the inner side of the thigh, and in the perianal skin. Carotene produces a yellow tone mainly in the face, palms of the hands, and soles of the feet. The red color of arterial blood determines the skin color of the face, palms, soles, upper trunk, and buttocks. The blue color of venous blood predominates in the lower trunk and backs of the hands and feet.



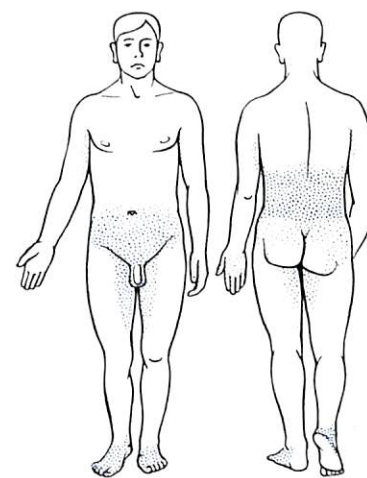
A Melanin



B Carotene



C Arterial blood



D Venous blood

Distribution of color components in living skin  
(after Edwards and Duntley)



## Layers of the Skin

The **skin** (cutis) consists of the epidermis **AC1**, a stratified, cornified squamous epithelium, and the dermis (corium) **ACF2**, a layer of connective tissue. The dermis contains the *papillary layer*, in which the papillae are interlocked with the epidermis, and a *reticular layer*, which gives the skin resistance against tearing.

The **subcutis** (*tela subcutanea*) **A3** forms the connection with the structures which lie beneath the skin, such as fascia and periosteum. It frequently contains fat. The major blood vessels and nerves of the skin lie in the subcutis (see p. 344).

## Epidermis

The *epidermis* is 0.04–0.2 mm thick, and 0.75–1.2 mm in the palms of the hand and soles of the feet (glabrous skin). On calluses it can be 2 mm or more thick. The fine relief of the epidermis allows a distinction to be made between *glabrous skin* (palms of the hand, soles of the feet) and *hairy skin* (the remainder).

**Glabrous skin:** **A4** eccrine sweat glands, **A5** lamellar nerve endings (Pacchioni's corpuscles).

**Hairy skin:** **B6** hair, **B7** sebaceous glands, **B8** muscle to erect the hair (arrector pili), **B9** apocrine scent glands.

The basal cells, arising from mitoses with diurnal variations, undergo a step-by-step transformation as they ascend towards the surface which leads to keratinization and the formation of epithelial layers. The journey of the keratinizing cells, the *keratocytes*, to the surface takes around 30 days. A distinction is made between the *regeneration layer*, the *keratinizing layer*, and the *keratinized layer*.

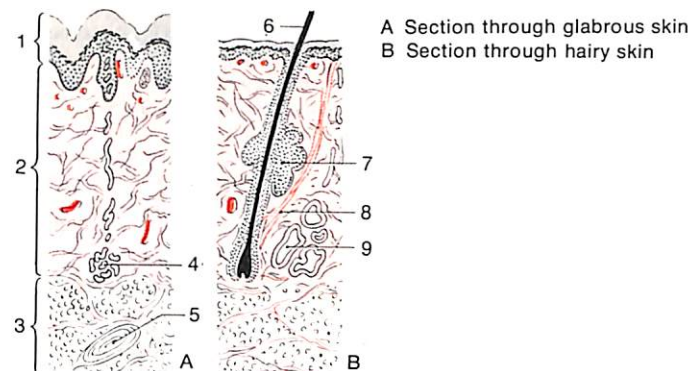
The stratification of the epidermis is best developed in glabrous skin and is hardly developed at all in hairy skin.

The *regeneration layer* (*stratum germinativum*) consists of high basal cylindrical cells (*stratum basale* **F10**) and

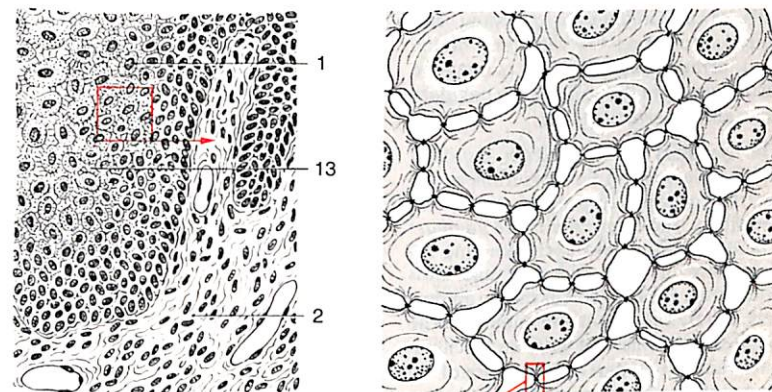
many successive layers of larger, rounder or polygonal cells which are attached to each other by spine-shaped *desmosomes* (*stratum spinosum* or *spinous layer* **F13**). Intercellular spaces may be seen between the "spines". The lower cell layers contain *melanocytes* **F11** and *Langerhans' cells* **F12**, as well as Merkel's tactile disks (see Vol. 3). Melanocytes produce the pigment melanin which is deposited in the basal epithelial cells. There is one melanocyte for each 4–12 basal cells. Melanin protects the basal cell layer, with its cells constantly in mitosis, against dangerous UV irradiation. They markedly branched *Langerhans' cells* **F12** of the immune system can bind antigens. In the *stratum spinosum* **F13** the intracellular tonofibrils are anchored in the *desmosomes* **E**.

The layer in which keratin is produced includes the *granular layer* **F14** and the *stratum lucidum* **F15**. The epithelial cells of the narrow granular layer contain numerous lamellated granules and basophilic, *keratohyaline* granules, and the cells in the equally narrow *stratum lucidum* are filled with an acidophilic substance, *eleidin*. The lipids of the *lamellated granules* which are secreted into the intercellular space form a barrier to protect against fluid loss. At the same time lipids from the surface of the skin may spread in the intercellular space (ointments). *Keratohyaline* granules and *eleidin* are stages of keratinization.

In the *keratinized layer* **F16**, the epithelial cells and the horny substance fuse into plates, which are finally desquamated as horny squames. They are acid-resistant but swell in alkalis (soap suds). The cornification is controlled by the level of vitamin A in the body; in vitamin A deficiency overcornification (hyperkeratosis) occurs.

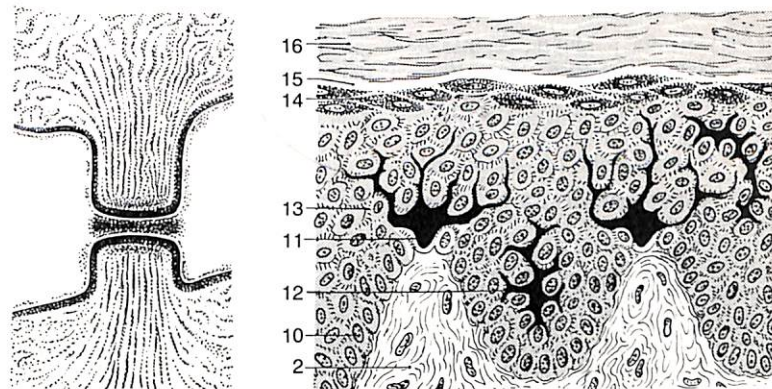


A Section through glabrous skin  
B Section through hairy skin



C Spinous layer of epidermis

D Magnified section from C



E Electron microscopy of section from D: desmosomes

F Melanocytes in epidermis



## Dermis

The **dermis** (corium) is a dense network of collagen fibers, intermingled with elastic fibers. This enables the skin to withstand stretching and to return to its normal form after deformation. Leather is made from the dermis of tanned animal skin ("leather skin"). The elasticity of the skin is mainly due to changes in the alignment and angles of the collagen fiber network of the dermis. The elastic fiber network is responsible for rearrangement of the fiber layers after deformation of the skin. The following structures are located in the dermis: hair roots, glands, blood vessels, connective tissue cells, free cells of the immunologic system and neural structures. On the basis of the fiber arrangement two layers may be distinguished in the corium, the *papillary layer* and the *reticular layer*.

The **papillary layer** (*stratum papillae*) borders directly on the epidermis and is interlocked with it by projections of collagen fibers, the *connective tissue papillae*. These penetrate into corresponding indentations in the epidermis and thus counteract shearing forces on the epidermis, see **B**. The height and number of the papillae are consistent with the mechanical strain on that part of the surface of the body; thus, there are very few in the eyelids, but they are well developed over the knees and elbows.

In *hairy skin* (cf. p. 340) the papillae are often poorly developed. They lie in groups connected to hair follicles and the ducts of the sweat glands, making structures such as cockade-like, epithelial ridges and rosette-like epithelial mounds.

*Glabrous (hairless) skin* (cf. p. 340) has tall papillae. In a cross section of each ridge, 2 connective tissue papillae can be seen to project into the epithelium. The epithelial trough between the papillae carries the opening of the sweat gland duct. The glabrous skin has neither hair, sebaceous glands, or apocrine glands. The sweat glands open at the level of the epidermis.

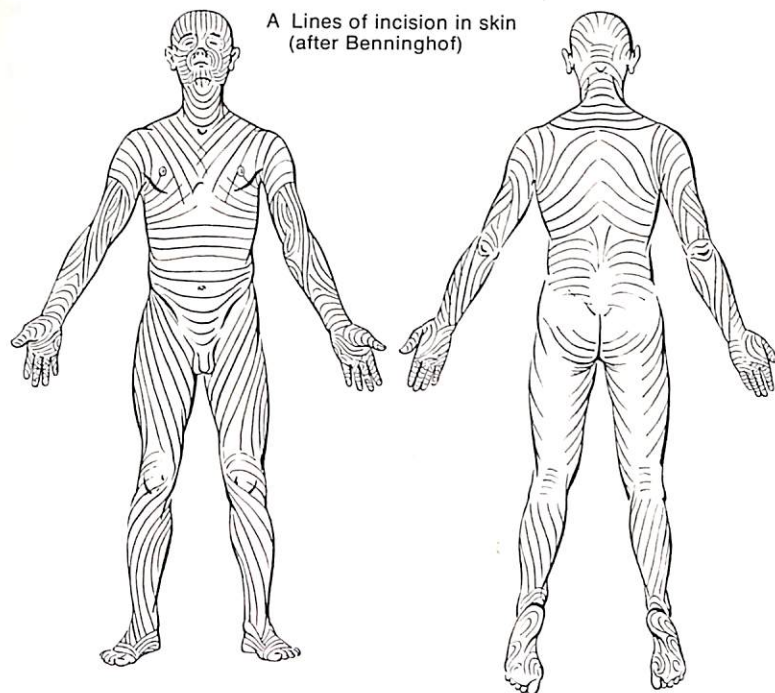
The **reticular layer** is a continuation of the papillary layer with the subcutis. It contains interlacing bundles of the strong collagen fibers that are responsible for the resistance of the skin to mechanical stress. The direction of the collagen fiber network differs in different parts of the body. A pinprick in the skin produces a slit rather than a circular hole. The direction of the line of the split differs according to the different tensions in the skin. Systematic investigations have revealed a *system of preferred lines for incisions* (see **A**), which also indicates differences in tension in the skin.

**Clinical Tip.** If an incision is made at right angles to the course of the lines, the opening in the skin will gape. Surgeons try to make incisions in the direction of the lines in order to hasten healing and to improve the cosmetic result.

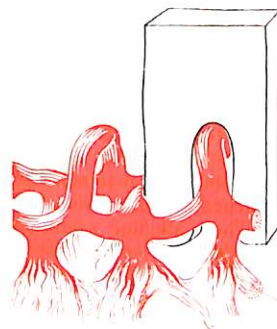
If the living skin is considerably over-stretched, e. g., the skin over the abdomen during pregnancy, ruptures occur in the structure of the corium which become visible as pale stripes, so-called *distension striae*.

The **ridges of the skin** are due to the papillae of the papillary layer being arranged in rows. This arrangement is genetically determined and is characteristic for each particular individual. This fact forms the basis of *finger printing* (dactylography) as a means of identification in criminal investigations. Four main but variable types of ridge patterns on the finger tips can be distinguished: *arch CI*, *loop CII*, *whorl CIII* and *double loop CIV*.

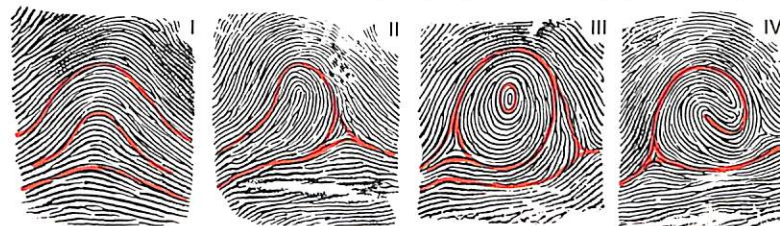
A Lines of incision in skin (after Benninghof)



B Interlocking of epidermis with papillae of corium (after W. Schmidt)



C Papillary ridges on fingertip (after Wendt)





### Subcutis

The **subcutis** provides the connection between the skin and the superficial fasciae of the body and is the basis of the mobility of the skin.

The subcutis is a fat store and an insulator. Fatty tissue is subdivided by dense connective tissue strands, like a quilt, into "shock absorbers" as an *integral part* of the structure, e.g., in the sole of the foot. More often, the fat is just a *deposit*, e.g. as a fatty cushion, the panniculus adiposus under the skin of the trunk. The distribution of fat over the body surface is genetically determined and is under the control of several factors, including hormones (sex differences in local distribution of the panniculus adiposus). By means of connective tissue strands, *retinacula cutis*, the subcutis may connect the skin with the underlying tissue. In some places the subcutis is loose and free of fat, e.g., eyelids, external ears, lips, penis, scrotum etc. Over the face and scalp, the skin is fairly adherent to the underlying muscle and tendon; this is the anatomic basis of mimicry.

### Blood Vessels of the Skin and Subcutis

The **arteries A1** form a network between the cutis and the subcutis from which branches descend to the hair roots and the sweat glands **A2**. Other branches ascend to the papillary bodies where they form a *subpapillary plexus* from which *capillary loops A3* penetrate into the papillae. The density of the loops varies from 20–60 loops per mm<sup>2</sup>. The capillaries are kept open because the pressure within the tissue is lower than the blood pressure inside the capillaries.

**Clinical tips:** If the external pressure rises to 60–80 mmHg or more, as it may do between the skin and the bed during bedrest, then the main capillaries become occluded. If this is prolonged, then nutrition of the skin becomes so impaired that bedsores (decubitus) result.

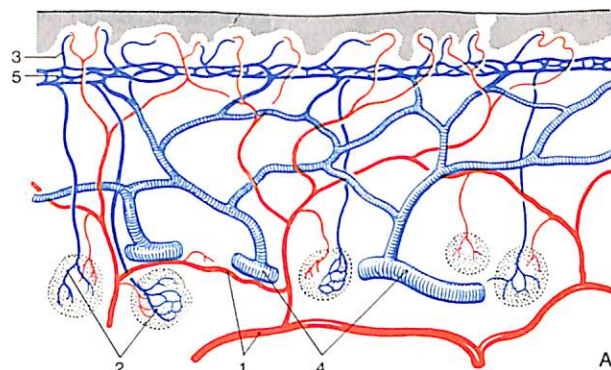
The **veins A4** form networks below the papillae in the corium and between the cutis and the subcutis (*cutaneous venous plexus A5*). The rate of flow through them is influenced by *arteriovenous anastomoses*. At the ends of the fingertips, small arteriovenous glomus organs are

present (see p. 42). The **lymph vessels** form three plexuses.

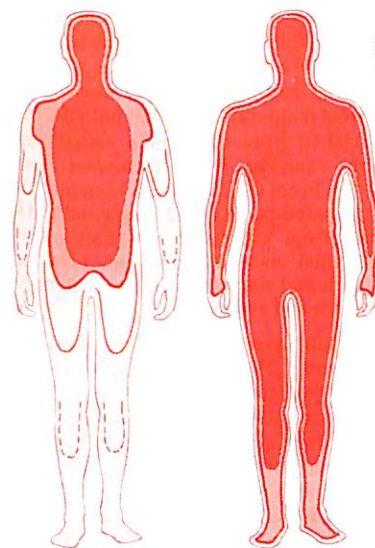
The blood vessels serve both for **nutrition of the skin** and **temperature control**. There is a temperature gradient between the blood which is mostly warmed in the liver and the muscles, and the peripheral blood. This is regulated by the arterioles and arteriovenous anastomoses of the skin. A higher blood flow results in a greater heat loss and in increase in temperature of the "body shell". If blood flow falls, there is a reduction in heat loss and in the body shell temperature. The "central core" of head and trunk is always maintained at constant temperature.

### Glands of the Skin

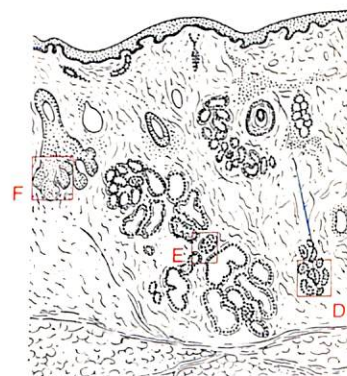
The **glands of the skin C** like the hair and nails, are appendages of the skin. They are situated in the corium (compare 'Glands' p. 150). The **eccrine sweat glands D**, *coiled glands*, of which there are about 2 million in the body are almost ubiquitous, but there are more on the forehead and sole. They are coiled tubules with a straight outer end. Their acid secretion (pH 4.5) impedes the growth of bacteria (*protective acid mantle*) and by evaporation aids thermoregulation. Sweat also provides a route of elimination from the body for various substances (salt content ca. 0.4%, sinking to 0.03%). The **apocrine sweat glands E** (*scent glands*) are present in certain circumscribed hairy areas, namely the axillae, mons pubis, scrotum, labia majora, around the anus, and at the mamma. The glands are branched and have wide, excreting acini. Their alkaline secretion contains aromatic substances. Because of the absence of the protective acid mantle at those sites infections (*sweat gland abscess*) are liable to occur. Secretion from the scent glands commences at puberty. The **holocrine sebaceous glands F** usually originate from hair rudiments and lead into the hair funnel of the hair follicle. They are berry shaped and contain a stratified epithelium. The *sebum* formed in them, of which 1–2 g is produced every day, lubricates the hair and the adjacent skin and has an antibacterial effect due to its fatty acid content.



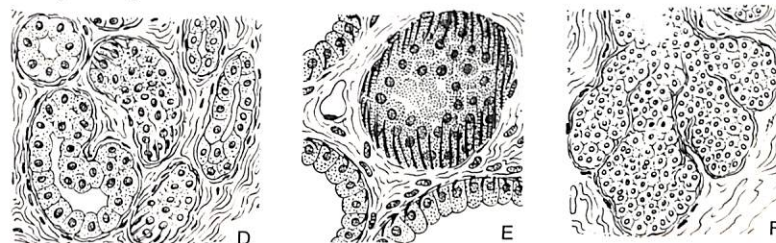
Blood vessels of skin (after Horstmann)



B Isothermal zones in "body shell" (after Aschoff and Wever)  
left – low outer temperature  
right – high outer temperature



C Skin glands of axilla





## Hair

**Hair** (pili) serves the *sense of touch* and provides for *preservation of heat*. It is only absent from a few skin areas (the palms, soles, and some parts of the external genitalia). The *lanugo hair* of the fetus is short, thin, unpigmented and has its roots in the corium. Postnatally, it is replaced by a covering of intermediate hair in children, most of which in its turn is replaced by terminal hair, particularly during puberty. *Terminal hair* is longer, thicker, pigmented, concentrated in specific areas and rooted in the upper subcutis. It comprises mainly the hair of the scalp, the axilla, the pubic hair and the beard.

The **terminal hair** projects obliquely above the surface (vortex) from its cylindrical root sheath into which a *sebaceous gland* **A1** opens. Above the gland is the hair funnel, below it is a smooth muscle, the *arrector pili muscle* **A2**, which extends to the undersurface of the epidermis. This muscle can erect the hair (hair raising, goose pimples) and can compress (squeeze) the sebaceous glands.

**Fine structure.** We distinguish the **hair root** **A3**, the **hair bulb** **A4**, which rests on the connective tissue of the **hair papilla** **A5**, and the **hair shaft** **A6**, which extends above the surface of the skin. The bulb, papilla and the surrounding connective tissue are called the **hair follicle**.

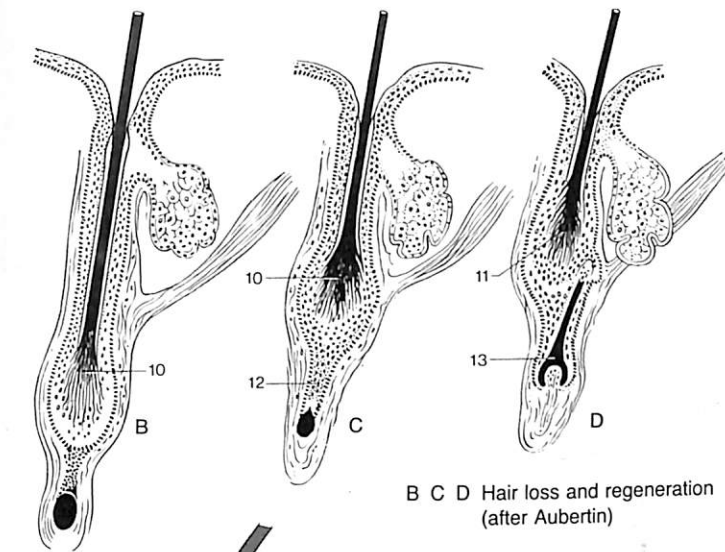
The hair is a modified type of keratin formation which arises from a deep circumscribed depression in the epidermis **A7**. The *hair* is the tip of the keratin, the *epithelial root sheath* **A8** is the epidermal funnel of the depression and the *connective tissue layer of the root sheath* **A9** (hair follicle) is the papillary body. The hair grows from the cells of the hair bulb and is nourished by the hair papilla. The papilla forms the epidermal matrix of the hair root and its destruction results in loss of the hair forming structure. The *cuticle of the root sheath* is interlocked with that of the hair and so ensures its anchorage. The hair shaft consists mainly of a *cortex* of

elongated cornified cells stuck together by tonofilaments. Thick hair contains a less cornified *medulla*.

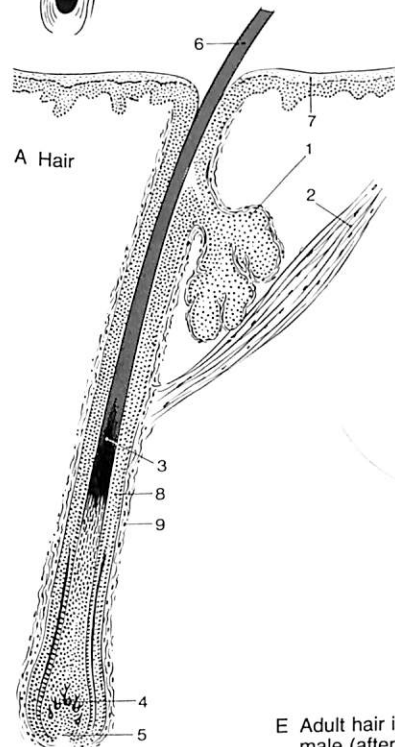
The **color of the hair** is mainly due to *melanin*, which is produced by the melanocytes in the matrix which deliver it to the cells of the hair bulb (compare p. 340). When the *hair turns gray* production of melanin by melanocytes ceases or they just perish. If air bubbles enter the center (central canal) of hair it also looks white. In the *albino*, however, the melanocytes do not produce any melanin at all because of a hereditary anomaly.

**Growth of the hair.** The hair grows in cycles: a period of growth is followed by a period of involution and rest after which the hair is shed. Normally about 80% of the hair follicles are in the growing stage and 15% are at rest. There is a loss of 50–100 hairs a day. The melanocytes retreat temporarily, the hair bulb **BC10** is detached from the papilla and pushed out, compare **BCD** ("clubbed hair" **D11**). From the cells which remain in the attenuated papilla **C12** a new bulb **D13** rises from which the new hair grows. Terminal hair grows about 1 cm per month and single follicle can remain for months and even years.

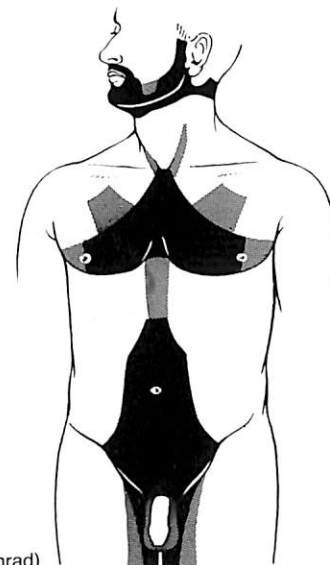
The **hair cover** **E** is under the control of *hormones*. Typical of the male is a rhomboid configuration of the pubic hair which ascends to the umbilicus (navel), hair covering the inside of the thigh, the chest and, of course, the beard. There are many individual variations. Typical of the *female* is the triangular shape of the pubic hair and the absence of terminal hair over the trunk. In patients with endocrine disturbances (e. g., of the adrenal cortex) a male-type hair cover can develop in a female (*hypertrichosis, hirsutism*).



B C D Hair loss and regeneration (after Aubertin)



A Hair



E Adult hair in male (after Conrad)



## Nails

The **nails** (*ungues*) protect the phalanges of the fingers and toes and give them a *sense of touch* by providing a counter support against pressure exerted on the tactile elevations. If a nail is lost, there is a diminished sense of touch in the affected phalanx.

The **nail** is about 0.5 mm thick. It is a horny plate of the epidermis, which rests on the **nail bed** and is anchored in the **hyponychium**. It consists of polygonal, cornified scales, tightly packed like roof tiles. Three layers of criss-cross tonofibrils are fused in the structure. The **nail body** has a free margin in front, and laterally and posteriorly it is surrounded by a skinfold, the **nail wall BC1**. The latter forms the **nail pocket** which is about 0.5 cm deep in the region of the **nail root B2**. An epithelial cuticle, the **eponychium**, grows from the free margin of the nail wall onto the surface of the nail. The lateral margins of the nail are embedded in the **nailfold**.

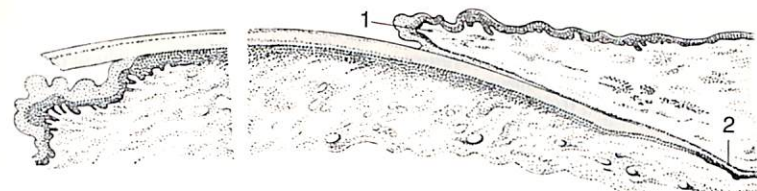
The **nail bed** is the epithelial tissue below the nail root, from which the nail grows constantly at the rate of 0.14 to 0.4 mm per day. The proximal part of the nail bed lies deep in the nail pocket and the distal part appears light pink, near the proximal nail wall as the **lunula**, which is convex distally. The nail bed extends distal to the lunula **A3** as the dark red **hyponychium A4**, which is visible through the nail. It is an epithelial layer over which the nail is pushed distally. The connective tissue, which corresponds to the papillary body of the skin and lies beneath the epithelium of the nail bed and of the hyponychium, is arranged in longitudinal channels. The blood in the capillaries of these connective tissue channels produces the pink color of the nails. During some illnesses, the nail shows diagnostically significant changes in size, shape, surface, and color. **C5** Finger bone.

## Skin as a Sense Organ

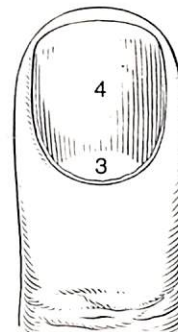
The skin is amply supplied with **nerves**. A small proportion of them are *autonomic nerves* which supply the glands, but the majority are *sensory nerves*. The nerves make the skin a vital and indispensable *sense organ* for the sensations of touch, pain and temperature. The sensory perceptions and indeed the sensory nerves vary in their distribution over different parts of the body. Distinct types of *end corpuscles* are concerned with particular sensations. Figure **D** gives a general idea of these distinctions (*details in Vol. 3*).

**Regeneration and aging.** The skin has considerable powers of regeneration. After skin lesions the immune cells in the corium deal with local infection, the capillaries and the connective tissue regenerate, the epithelium grows from the edge of the lesion over the regenerating connective tissue and a **scar is formed**. At first the reddish color of the scar is due to increased capillarization, but later whitish collagen fibers are visible through the epithelium. The appendages of the skin (the glands and hair) are not formed again in scar tissue.

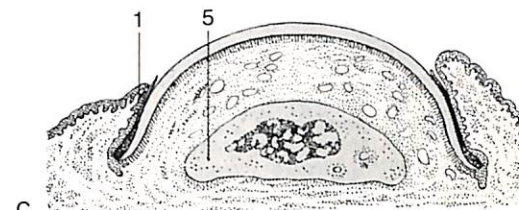
The *manifestations of old age in the skin* are mainly those of atrophy: the layers of the skin become thinner and the papillae flatten. There is an associated alteration in the chemical composition of the basic connective tissue substance, resulting in paucity of fluid and loss of elasticity in the elastic fibers of the corium and the subcutis. As a result skin folds which have been lifted from the underlying tissue are slow to disappear. Irregular (random) spots of pigmentation also appear. Ultraviolet radiation ("mountain sun") accelerates the skin's loss of elasticity.



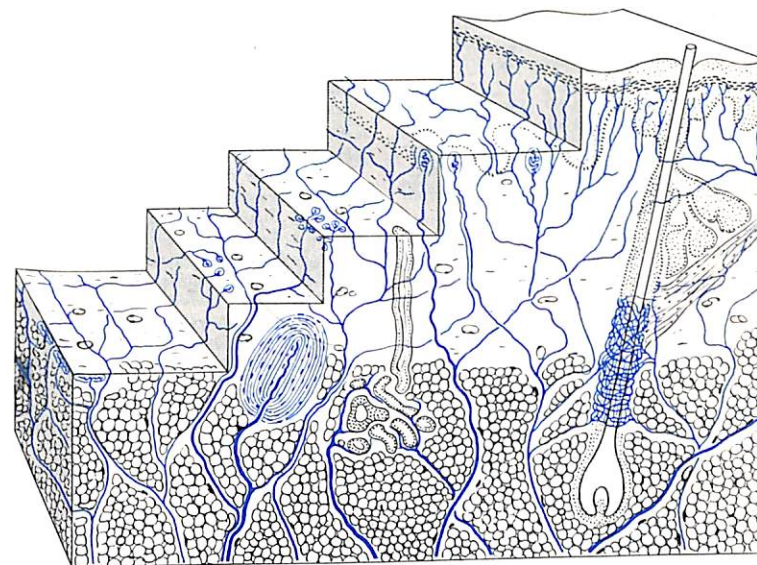
B Longitudinal section through nail bed (after Rauber-Kopsch)



A Fingernail



C Cross-section through nail bed (after Rauber-Kopsch)



D Diagrammatic representation of innervation of skin (after Weddell)



## References

Only a small selection of the literature (textbooks, handbooks, monographs and journals) referring to the themes of each

### General Reading List

- Bargmann, W.: *Histologie und mikroskopische Anatomie des Menschen*, 7. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1977
- Benninghoff, A., K. Goertler: *Lehrbuch der Anatomie des Menschen*, Bd. II, 13./14. Aufl., hrsg. von K. Fleischhauer. Urban & Schwarzenberg, München 1985
- Björklund, A., T. Hökfelt: *Handbook of Chemical Neuroanatomy*. Vol. 6: *The Peripheral Nervous System*. ed. by A. Björklund, T. Hökfelt, C. Owman. Elsevier, Amsterdam 1988
- Braus, H., C. Elze: *Anatomie des Menschen*, 3. Aufl. Bd. II. Springer, Berlin 1956
- Bucher, O., H. Wartenberg: *Cytologie, Histologie und mikroskopische Anatomie des Menschen*, 11. Aufl. Huber, Bern 1989
- Faller, A.: *Die Fachwörter der Anatomie, Histologie und Embryologie, Ableitung und Aussprache*, 29. Aufl. Bergmann, München 1978
- Fawcett, D. W.: *Bloom/Fawcett, A. Textbook of Histology*, 11. ed. Saunders, Philadelphia 1986
- Feneis, H.: *Anatomisches Bildwörterbuch*, 6. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1988
- Frick, H., H. Leonhardt, D. Starck: *Allgemeine Anatomie. Spezielle Anatomie I. Taschenlehrbuch der gesamten Anatomie*, Bd. I. 3. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1987
- Frick, H., H. Leonhardt, D. Starck: *Spezielle Anatomie II. Taschenlehrbuch der gesamten Anatomie*, Bd. II. 4. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1992
- Friedmann, G., E. Bücheler, P. Thurn: *Ganzkörper-Computertomographie*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1982
- Fujita, T., J. Tokunaga, H. Inoue: *Atlas of Scanning Electron Microscopy in Medicine*. Elsevier, Amsterdam 1971
- Gabarelli, J., G. Guérinel, L. Chevrot, M. Mattèi: *Ganzkörper-Computer-Tomographie*. Springer, Berlin 1977
- Hafferl, A.: *Lehrbuch der topographischen Anatomie*, 3. Aufl., bearb. von W. Thiel. Springer, Berlin 1969
- International Anatomical Nomenclature Committee: *Nomina anatomica*, 6th ed. Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh 1989
- Koritik, J. G., H. Sick: *Atlas anatomischer Schnittbilder des Menschen*. Urban & Schwarzenberg, München 1982
- Krstić, R. V.: *Die Gewebe des Menschen und der Säugetiere. Ein Atlas zum Studium für Mediziner und Biologen*, 2. Aufl. Springer, Berlin 1986
- Kühnel, W.: *Taschenatlas der Zytologie, Histologie und mikroskopischen Anatomie*, 7. Aufl., Thieme, Stuttgart 1989
- Langman, J.: *Medizinische Embryologie*, 8. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1989
- Leonhardt, H.: *Histologie, Zytologie und Mikroskopische Anatomie des Menschen*, 8. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1990
- v. Möllendorff, W., W. Bargmann: *Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*. Springer, Berlin 1929 ff
- Mörke, K., E. Betz, W. Mergenthaler: *Biologie des Menschen*, bearbeitet von E. Betz, D. Mecke, K. Reutter, H. Ritter, 12. Aufl. Quelle & Meyer, Heidelberg 1989
- Oksche, A., L. Vollrath: *Möllendorffs Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen. Handbook of Microscopic Anatomy*. Springer, Berlin 1979 ff
- Pernkopf, E.: *Atlas der topographischen und angewandten Anatomie des Menschen*, Bd. I und II, hrsg. von W. Platzer, 3. Aufl. Urban & Schwarzenberg, München 1989
- Platzer, W.: *Atlas der topographischen Anatomie*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1982
- Rauber/Kopsch: *Anatomie des Menschen. Lehrbuch und Atlas*. Herausgegeben von H. Leonhardt, B. Tillmann, G. Töndury, K. Zilles. Band II: *Innere Organe*, herausgegeben und bearbeitet von H. Leonhardt. Thieme, Stuttgart 1987. Band IV: *Topographie der Organsysteme, Systematik der Leitungsbahnen*, herausgegeben und bearbeitet von H. Leonhardt, B. Tillmann, K. Zilles. Thieme, Stuttgart 1988
- Rohen, J.: *Funktionelle Anatomie des Nervensystems*, 4. Aufl. Schattauer, Stuttgart 1985
- Rohen, J.: *Funktionelle Anatomie des Menschen*, 5. Aufl. Schattauer, Stuttgart 1987
- Rohen, J.: *Topographische Anatomie*, 8. Aufl. Schattauer, Stuttgart 1987
- Sobotta-Becher: *Atlas der Anatomie des Menschen*, Bd. II, hrsg. von H. Ferner, J. Staubesand, 19. Aufl. Urban & Schwarzenberg, München 1988
- Sladek, J. R., A. Björklund: *Monoamine Transmitter Histochemistry. A Twenty Year Commemoration*. Brain Res. Bull. 9 (1982) No. 1-6
- Starck, D.: *Embryologie*, 3. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1975
- Töndury, G.: *Angewandte und topographische Anatomie*, 5. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1981
- Toldt-Hochstetter: *Anatomischer Atlas*, Bd. II., bearb. von J. Krmpotić Nemanić, 26. Aufl. Urban & Schwarzenberg, München 1976
- Weiss, L.: *Cell and Tissue Biology. A Textbook of Histology*, 6th ed. Urban & Schwarzenberg, München 1988
- Wicke, L.: *Atlas der Röntgenanatomie*. Urban & Schwarzenberg, München 1977
- Wolf-Heidegger: *Atlas der Human-Anatomie*, hrsg. von H. Frick, 4. Aufl. Karger, Basel 1990
- Zetkin-Schaldach: *Wörterbuch der Medizin*, Bd. I-III, 7. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1985

### Angiology

- Abramson, D. I., P. B. Dobrin: *Blood Vessels and Lymphatics in Organ Systems*. Academic Press, London 1984
- Anderson, R. H., A. E. Becker: *Anatomie des Herzens. Ein Farbatlas*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1982
- Bargmann, W., W. Doerr: *Das Herz des Menschen*, Bd. I. Thieme, Stuttgart 1963
- Bauer, R. D., R. Busse: *The Arterial System. Dynamics. Control Theory and Regulation*. Springer, Berlin 1978
- Böck, P.: *Das Glomus caroticum der Maus*. Ergebn. Anat. Entwickl.-Gesch. 48 (1973) 1-84
- Clemens, H. J.: *Die Venensysteme der menschlichen Wirbelsäule*. De Gruyter, Berlin 1961
- Földi, M., J. R. Casley-Smith: *Lymphangiologie*. Schattauer, Stuttgart 1983
- Forssmann, W. G., M. Reinecke, E. Weihe: *Cardiac innervation*. In Bloom, S. R., J. M. Polak, E. Lindenlaub: *Systemic Role of Regulatory Peptides*. Schattauer, Stuttgart 1983
- Hammersen, F.: *Anatomie der terminalen Strombahn*. Urban & Schwarzenberg, München 1971
- Kappert, A.: *Lehrbuch und Atlas der Angiologie*, 8. Aufl. Huber, Bern 1976
- Krayenbühl, H., M. G. Yaşargil: *Zerebrale Angiographie für Klinik und Praxis*, 3. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1979
- Kubik, St.: *Visceral lymphatic system*. In Viamonte (jr.), M., A. Rüttimann: *Atlas of Lymphography*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1980
- v. Lanz, T., W. Wachsmuth: *Praktische Anatomie*, 2. Aufl., bearb. v. J. Lang, Bd. II/3 u. 4. Springer, Berlin 1972
- Leak, L. V.: *The fine structure and function of the lymphatic system*. In: *Handbuch der allgemeinen Pathologie*, Bd. III/6, hrsg. von H.-W. Altmann, F. Büchner, H. Cottier, E. Grundmann, G. Holle, E. Letterer, W. Masshoff, H. Meessen, F. Roulet, G. Seifert, G. Siebert. Springer, Berlin 1972 (S. 149-196)
- Lippert, H.: *Arterienvarietäten. Klinische Tabellen*. Beilg. in Med. Klin. 18-32 (1967-1969)
- Loose, K. E., R. J. A. M. van Dongen: *Atlas of Angiography*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1976
- Luzsa, G.: *Röntgenanatomie des Gefäßsystems*. Barth, Frankfurt/M. und Akadémiai Kiadó, Budapest 1972

### Hematology and Immunology

- Aiuti, F., H. Wigzell: *Thymus, Thymic Hormones and Lymphocytes*. Academic Press, London 1980
- Begemann, H., M. Begemann: *Praktische Hämatologie. Diagnose, Therapie, Methodik*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1989
- Bessis, M.: *Living Blood Cells and their Ultrastructure*. Springer, Berlin 1973
- Brücher, H.: *Knochenmarkszytologie. Diagnostik und klinische Bedeutung*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1986
- Eisen, H. N.: *Immunology*, 3rd ed. Harper & Row, New York 1981
- Frick, P.: *Blut- und Knochenmarksmorphologie, Blutgerinnung*, 17. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1984
- Fudenburg, H. H., C. L. Smith: *The Lymphocyte in Health and Disease*. Grune & Stratton, New York 1979
- van Furth, R.: *Mononuclear Phagocytes in Immunology. Infection and Pathology*. Blackwell, Oxford 1975



- von Gaudecker, B., H. K. Müller-Hermelink: Ontogeny and organization of the stationary non-lymphoid cells in the human thymus. *Cell Tiss. Res.* 207 (1980) 287–306
- Ham, A. W., A. A. Axelrad, D. H. Cormack: *Blood Cell Formation and the Cellular Basis of Immune Responses*. Lippincott, Philadelphia 1979
- Keller, R.: *Immunologie und Immunpathologie*, 3. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1987
- Lennert, K., D. Harms: *Die Milz/The Spleen*. Springer, Berlin 1970
- Lennert, K., H.-K. Müller-Hermelink: Lymphozyten und ihre Funktionsformen – Morphologie. Organisation und immunologische Bedeutung. *Anat. Anz., Suppl.* 138 (1975) 19–62
- McDonald, G. A., T. C. Dodds, B. Cruickshank: *Atlas der Hämatologie*, 3. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1979
- Mori, Y., K. Lennert: *Electron Microscopic Atlas of Lymph Node Cytology and Pathology*. Springer, Berlin 1969
- Müller-Hermelink, H. K.: *The Human Thymus, Histophysiology and Pathology. Current Topics of Pathology*. Springer, Berlin 1985
- Müller-Hermelink, H. K., B. von Gaudecker: Ontogenese des lymphatischen Systems beim Menschen. *Verh. Anat. Ges.* 74 (1980) 235–259
- Queißer, W.: *Das Knochenmark. Morphologie, Funktion, Diagnostik*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1978
- Ruzicka, F.: *Elektronenmikroskopische Hämatologie*. Springer, Wien 1976
- Schwartz, L. M.: *Compendium of Immunology*. Van Nostrand, New York 1979
- Thiel, H.: *Taschenatlas der Hämatologie*, 2. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1986
- Tischendorf, F.: *Die Milz. In: Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*, Bd. VII/6, hrsg. von W. Bargmann. Springer, Berlin 1969
- Vernon-Roberts, B.: *The Macrophage*. Cambridge University Press, London 1972
- Lang, J.: *Klinische Anatomie der Nase, Nasenhöhle und Nasennebenhöhlen*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1988
- Murray, J. F.: *Die normale Lunge. Grundlagen für Diagnose und Therapie von Lungenkrankheiten*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1978
- Netter, F. H.: *Farbatlanten der Medizin*, Bd. IV: Atmungsorgane. Thieme, Stuttgart 1982
- Paulsen, K.: *Das Prinzip der Stimmbildung in der Wirbeltierreihe und beim Menschen*. Akademische Verlagsgesellschaft, Frankfurt/M. 1967
- Thurlebeck, W. M., R. A. Murray: *The Lung. Structure, Function and Disease*. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore 1978
- Tillmann, B., I. Wustrow: *Kehlkopf. In Berendes, J., R. Link, F. Zöllner: Hals-Nasen-Ohren-Heilkunde in Praxis und Klinik*, 2. Aufl. Bd. IV/1. Thieme, Stuttgart 1982 (S. 1–101)
- Weibel, E. R.: *The Pathway for Oxygen*. Harward Univ. Press, Cambridge, Mass. 1984
- von Wicker, P.: *Clinical Importance of Surfactant Defects*. Karger, Basel 1981
- ### Endocrine System
- Aschoff, J., S. Daan, G. A. Groos: *Vertebrate Circadian Systems. Structure and Physiology*. Springer, Berlin 1982
- Bachmann, R.: *Die Nebenniere. In: Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*, Bd. VII/5, hrsg. von W. Bargmann. Springer, Berlin 1954
- Bargmann, W.: *Die Schilddrüse. In v. Möllendorff, W.: Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*, Bd. VII/2. Springer, Berlin 1939 (S. 2–136)
- Bargmann, W.: *Die Epithelkörperchen. In v. Möllendorff, W.: Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*, Bd. VII/2. Springer, Berlin 1939 (S. 137–196)
- Bargmann, W.: *Die Langerhansschen Inseln des Pankreas. In v. Möllendorff, W.: Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*, Bd. VII/2. Springer, Berlin 1939 (S. 197–288)
- Bargmann, W.: *Die Epiphyse cerebri. In v. Möllendorff, W.: Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*, Bd. VII/4, Springer, Berlin 1943 (S. 309–502)
- Bargmann, W.: Über die neurosekretorische Verknüpfung von Hypothalamus und Neurohypophyse. *Z. Zellforsch.* 34 (1949) 610–634
- Bargmann, W.: *Das Zwischenhirn-Hypophysensystem*. Springer, Berlin 1964
- Bargmann, W.: *Die funktionelle Morphologie des endokrinen Regulationssystems. In Altmann, H. W., F. Büchner, H. Cotter u. Mitarb.: Handbuch der allgemeinen Pathologie*, Bd. VIII/1. Springer, Berlin 1971 (S. 1–106)
- Bargmann, W., B. Scharer: *Aspects of Neuroendocrinology*. Springer, Berlin 1970
- Bloom, S. R., J. M. Polak: *Gut Hormones*, 2nd ed. Churchill-Livingstone, Edinburgh 1981
- Böck, P.: *The Paraganglia. In Oksche, A., L. Vollrath: Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*, Bd. VIII/8. Springer, Berlin 1973
- Cantin, M.: *Cell Biology of the Secretory Process*. Karger, Basel 1984
- Costa, E., M. Trabucchi: *Regulatory Peptides, from Molecular Biology to Function*. Raven, New York 1982
- Coupland, R. E., W. G. Forssmann: *Peripheral Neuroendocrine Interaction*. Springer, Berlin 1978
- Coupland, R. E., T. Fujita: *Chromaffin, Enterochromaffin and Related Cells*. Elsevier, Amsterdam 1976
- Cross, B. A., G. Leng: *The Neurohypophysis: Structure, Function and Control*. Progr. Brain Res. 60, 1983
- Felig, Ph., J. D. Baxter, A. E. Broadus, L. A. Frohman: *Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 2nd ed. McGraw-Hill, New York 1986
- Fujita, T.: *Endocrine Gut and Pancreas*. Elsevier, Amsterdam 1976
- Fujita, T.: *Concept of paraneurons*. Arch. Histol. Jap. 40, Suppl. (1977) 1–12
- Fuxe, K., T. Hökfelt, R. Luft: *Central Regulation of the Endocrine System*. Plenum, New York 1979
- Ganong, W. F., L. Martini: *Frontiers in Neuroendocrinology*, vol. VII. Raven, New York 1982
- Guillemin, R.: *Control of adenohipophysial functions by peptides of the central nervous system*. Harvey Lect. 71 (1978) 71–131
- Gupta, D.: *Endokrinologie der Kindheit und Adoleszenz*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1986
- Heitz, Ph. U.: *Das gastro-entero-pankreatische endokrine System*. Med. uns. Zeit 4 (1980) 15–22
- Kalimi, M. Y., J. R. Hubbard: *Peptide Hormone Receptors*. de Gruyter, Berlin 1987
- Krieger, D. T., A. S. Liotta, M. J. Brownstein, E. A. Zimmerman: *ACTH,  $\beta$ -Lipotropin and related peptides in brain, pituitary and blood*. Recent Progr. Horm. Res. 36 (1980) 277–344
- Krisch, B.: *Immunocytochemistry of neuroendocrine systems (vasopressin, somatostatin, lubiberin)*. Progr. Histochem. Cytochem. 13/2 (1980) 1–167
- Krisch, B.: *Ultrastructure of regulatory neuroendocrine neurons and functionally related structures*. In Ganten, D., D. Pfaff: *Morphology of Hypothalamus and its Connections*. Current Topics in Neuroendocrinology, Vol. 7, Springer, Berlin 1986 (pp. 251–290)
- Krisch, B., W. Buchheim: *Access and distribution of exogenous substances in the intercellular clefts of the rat adenohipophys. Cell Tiss. Res.* 236 (1984) 439–452
- Labhart, A.: *Klinik der inneren Sekretion*, 3. Aufl. Springer, Berlin 1978
- Motta, M.: *The Endocrine Functions of the Brain*. Raven, New York 1980
- Neville, A. M., M. J. O'Hare: *The Human Adrenal Cortex*. Springer, Berlin 1982
- Nieuwenhuys, R.: *Chemoarchitecture of the Brain*. Berlin, Springer 1985
- Oksche, A., P. Pévet: *The Pineal Organ: Photobiology, Biochromometry, Endocrinology*. Developments in Endocrinology, vol. XIV. Elsevier, Amsterdam 1981
- Pearse, A. G. E.: *The diffuse neuroendocrine system and the APUD concept: related "endocrine" peptides in brain, intestine, pituitary, placenta and anuran cutaneous glands*. Med. Biol. 55 (1977) 115–125
- Polak, J. M.: *Regulatory Peptides*. Birkhäuser, Basel 1989
- Reinboth, R.: *Vergleichende Endokrinologie*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1980
- Scharer, E.: *Über sekretorisch tätige Nervenzellen bei wirbellosen Tieren*. Naturwissenschaften 25 (1937) 131–138
- Scharer, E.: *Photo-endocrine systems: general concepts*. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci. 117 (1964) 13–22
- Scharer, E., B. Scharer: *Neurosekretion*. In Bargmann, W.: *Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*, Bd. VII/5. Springer, Berlin 1954 (S. 853–1066)
- Schulster, D., A. Levitski: *Cellular Receptors for Hormones and Neurotransmitters*. Wiley, New York 1980
- Tixier-Vidal, A., M. G. Farquhar: *The Anterior Pituitary*. Academic Press, New York 1975
- Vollrath, L.: *The pineal organ*. In Oksche, A., L. Vollrath: *Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*, Bd. VII/7. Springer, Berlin 1981
- Welsch, U.: *Die Entwicklung der C-Zellen und des Follikel epithels der Säugerschilddrüse. Elektronenmikroskopische und histochemische Untersuchungen*. Ergebn. Anat. Entwickl.-Gesch. 46 (1972) 1–52
- ### Respiratory System
- Andrews, P. M.: *A scanning electron microscopic study of the extrapulmonary respiratory tract*. Amer. J. Anat. 139 (1974) 399–424
- Becker, W. et al.: *Atlas der Hals-Nasen-Ohren-Krankheiten einschließlich Bronchien und Oesophagus*, 2. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1983
- Boyden, E. A.: *Segmental Anatomy of the Lungs*. McGraw-Hill, New York 1965
- Fink, B. R.: *The Human Larynx. A Functional Study*. Raven, New York 1975
- Fishman, A. P.: *Assessment of Pulmonary Function*. McGraw-Hill, New York 1980
- Hayek, H.: *Die menschliche Lunge*, 2. Aufl. Springer, Berlin 1970
- Hodson, W. A.: *Development of the Lung*. Decker, New York 1977
- ### Alimentary System
- Arias, I. M., H. Popper, D. Schachter, D. A. Shafritz: *The Liver, Biology and Pathobiology*. Raven, New York 1982
- Baumgarten, H. G.: *Morphological basis of gastrointestinal motility: Structure and innervation of gastrointestinal tract*. In Bertacchini, G.: *Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology*, vol. LIX/1: *Mechanisms of Intestinal Secretion*. Springer, Berlin 1982 (pp. 7–53)
- Beck, K., W. Dischler, M. Helms, B. Kiani, K. Sickinger, R. Tenner: *Atlas der Laparoskopie*. Schattauer, Stuttgart 1968
- Becker, V.: *Pankreas. In: Spezielle pathologische Anatomie*, Bd. VI, hrsg. von W. Doerr, G. Seifert, E. Uehlinger. Springer, Berlin 1973



- Berkovitz, B. K. B., A. Boyde, R. M. Frank, H. J. Höhling, B. J. Moxham, J. Nalbandian, C. H. Tonge: *Teeth. Handbook of Microscopic Anatomy* (ed. by A. Oksche, L. Vollrath), Vol. VI/6. Springer, Berlin 1989
- Elias, H., J. C. Sherrick: *Morphology of the Liver*. Academic Press, New York 1969
- Gabella, G.: *Structure of muscles and nerves in the gastrointestinal tract*. In Johnson, L. R.: *Physiology of the Gastrointestinal Tract*, Raven, New York 1982
- Gall, E. A., F. K. Mostofi: *The Liver*. Krieger, Huntington/N.Y. 1980
- Kaufmann, P., W. Lierse, J. Stark, F. Stelzner: *Die Muskelanordnung in der Speiseröhre (Mensch, Rhesusaffe, Kaninchen, Maus, Ratte, Seehund)*. *Ergeb. Anat. Entwickl.-Gesch.* 40 H.3 (1968)
- Keast, J. R., J. B. Furness, M. Costa: *Distribution of certain peptide containing nerve fibres and endocrine cells in the gastrointestinal mucosa in five mammalian species*. *J. comp. Neurol.* 236 (1985) 403–422
- Krentz, K.: *Endoskopie des oberen Verdauungstraktes*. Atlas und Lehrbuch, 2. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1982
- Kulenkampff, H., H. Leonhardt: *Anatomie und Entwicklungsgeschichte des Magens*. In Demling, L.: *Handbuch der inneren Medizin*, 5. Aufl., Bd. III/2. Springer, Berlin 1974 (S. 3–53)
- Lassrich, M. A., R. Prévôt: *Röntgendiagnostik des Verdauungstraktes bei Kindern und Erwachsenen*, 2. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1983
- Liebermann-Meffert, D., H. White: *The Greater Omentum*. Springer, Berlin 1983
- Luciano, L.: *Die Feinstruktur der Gallenblase und der Gallengänge*, I. u. II. *Z. Zellforsch.* 135 (1972) 87–114
- Meyer, W.: *Die Zahn-, Mund- und Kieferheilkunde*, Bd. I. Urban & Schwarzenberg, München 1958
- Millat, B., J. P. Chevrel: *The pylorus: An anatomical and physiological study*. *Anat. clin.* 3 (1981) 161–175
- Mörke, K. D., F. Kiss, J. Szentagothai: *Lehrbuch und Atlas der makroskopischen Anatomie für Zahnärzte*, Bd. I. u. II. G. Fischer, Stuttgart 1969
- Motta, P., M. Muto, T. Fujita: *Die Leber, Rasterelektronenmikroskopischer Atlas*. Schattauer, Stuttgart 1980
- Pfeiffer, C. J., G. Rowden, J. Weibel: *Gastrointestinal Ultrastructure. An Atlas of Scanning and Transmission Electron Micrographs*. Thieme, Stuttgart und Igaku Shoin, Tokio 1975
- Pinkstaff, C. A.: *The cytology of salivary glands*. *Int. Rev. Cytol.* 63 (1980) 141–261
- Rappaport, A. M.: *Hepatic blood flow: Morphologic aspects and physiologic regulation*. *Int. Rev. Physiol.* 21 (1980) 1–63
- Rohen, J. W.: *Anatomie für Zahnmediziner*. Schattauer, Stuttgart 1977
- Schroeder, H. E.: *Orale Strukturbiologie. Entwicklungsgeschichte, Struktur und Funktion normaler Hart- und Weichgewebe der Mundhöhle*, 3. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1987
- Schroeder, H. E.: *The Periodontium. Handbook of Microscopic Anatomy* (ed. by A. Oksche, L. Vollrath), Vol. V/5. Springer, Berlin 1986
- Schultz, M., T. Hökfelt, L. Nilsson, L. Terenius, J. F. Rehfeld, M. Brown, R. Elde, M. Goldstein, S. Said: *Distribution of peptide- and catecholamine-containing neurons in the gastrointestinal tract of rat and guinea-pig: immunohistochemical studies with antisera to substance P vasoactive intestinal polypeptide, enkephalins, somatostatin, gastrin/cholecystokinin, neurotensin and dopamine beta-hydroxylase*. *Neuroscience* 5 (1980) 689–744
- Schumacher, G. H.: *Der maxillo-mandibuläre Apparat unter dem Einfluß formgestaltender Faktoren*. Barth, Leipzig 1968
- Schumacher, G. H., H. Schmidt: *Anatomie und Biochemie der Zähne*, 3. Aufl. G. Fischer, Stuttgart 1983
- Shiner, M.: *Ultrastructure of the Small Intestinal Mucosa*. Springer, Berlin 1982
- Stelzner, F.: *Über die Anatomie des analen Sphinkterorgans, wie sie der Chirurg sieht*. *Z. Anat. Entwickl.-Gesch.* 121 (1960) 525–535
- Stelzner, F., W. Lierse: *Der angiomuskuläre Dehnverschluß der terminalen Speiseröhre*. *Langenbecks Arch. klin. Chir.* 321 (1968) 35–64
- Wallraff, J.: *Die Leber – Gallengangssystem, Gallenblase und Galle*. In: *Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*, Erg. zu Bd. VI/2, hrsg. von W. Bargmann, Springer, Berlin 1969

## Urogenital System

- Alken, C. E., V. W. Dix, W. E. Goodwin, E. Wildbolz: *Handbuch der Urologie*, Bd. I. Springer, Berlin 1969
- Aumüller, G.: *Prostate gland and seminal vesicles*. In: Oksche, A., L. Vollrath: *Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*, Bd. 7/6. Springer, Berlin 1979
- Bargmann, W.: *Niere und ableitende Harnwege*. In: *Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*, Bd. VII/5, hrsg. von W. Bargmann. Springer, Berlin 1978
- Bargmann, W., K. Fleischhauer, A. Knoop: *Über die Morphologie der Milchsekretion*. *Z. Zellforsch.* 53 (1960) 545–568
- Bargmann, W., U. Welsch: *On the ultrastructure of the mammary gland*. In Reynolds, M., S. J. Folley: *Lactogenesis*. University of Pennsylvania Press, Philadelphia 1969
- Barth, V.: *Brustdrüse*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1979
- Bastian, D., J. P. Lassau: *The suspensory mechanism of the uterus. Anatomical basis for the statics*

- and dynamics of the normal uterus. *Anat. clin.* 4 (1982) 147–160
- Beck, L.: *Morphologie und Funktion der Muskulatur der weiblichen Harnröhre*. Enke, Stuttgart 1969
- Becker, V., Th. H. Schiebeler, F. Kubli: *Die Plazenta des Menschen*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1981
- Brenner, B. M., J. H. Stein: *Hormonal Function and the Kidney*. Churchill-Livingstone, Edinburgh 1979
- Bustos-Oregón, E., M. Courot, J. E. Flechon, M. T. Hochereau-de Reviers, A. F. Holstein: *Morphological appraisal of gametogenesis. Spermatogenic process in mammals with particular reference to man*. *Andrologia* 7 (1975) 141–163
- Dabelow, A.: *Die Milchdrüse*. In: *Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*, Erg. zu Bd. III/1, hrsg. von W. Bargmann. Springer, Berlin 1957
- Döring, G. K.: *Empfängnisverhütung. Ein Leitfa-den für Ärzte und Studenten*, 11. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1989
- Farquhar, M. G.: *The glomerular basement membrane: A selective macromolecular filter*. In Hay, E. D.: *Cell Biology of Extracellular Matrix*. Plenum, New York 1981 (pp. 335–378)
- Ferner, H., A. Gisel, H. v. Hayek, W. Krause, Ch. Zaki: *Die Anatomie der Harn- und Geschlechtsorgane*. In: *Handbuch der Urologie*, Bd. 1, hrsg. von C. E. Alken, V. W. Dix, W. E. Goodwin, E. Wildbolz. Springer, Berlin 1969
- Frangenheim, H., H.-J. Lindemann: *Die Laparoskopie in der Gynäkologie. Chirurgie und Pädiatrie*, 3. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1977
- Gorgas, K.: *Struktur und Innervation des juxtaglomerulären Apparates der Ratte*. *Ergeb. Anat. Entwickl.-Gesch.* 54 (1978) 1–83
- Gosling, J. A., J. S. Dixon, J. R. Humpherson: *Funktionelle Anatomie der Nieren und ableitenden Harnwege*. Ein Farbatlas. Thieme, Stuttgart 1988
- v. Hayek, H.: *Die Entwicklung der Harn- und Geschlechtsorgane*. In: *Handbuch der Urologie*, Bd. 1, hrsg. von C. E. Alken, V. W. Dix, W. E. Goodwin, E. Wildbolz. Springer, Berlin 1969
- Holstein, A.-F.: *Morphologische Studien am Nebenhoden des Menschen*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1969
- Holstein, A. F., E. C. Roosen-Runge: *Atlas of the Spermatogenesis*. Grosse, Berlin 1981
- Horstmann, E., H.-E. Stegner: *Tube, Vagina und äußere weibliche Geschlechtsorgane*. In: *Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*, Erg. zu Bd. VII/1, hrsg. von W. Bargmann. Springer, Berlin 1966
- Jamison, R. L., W. Kriz: *Urinary Concentrating Mechanism: Structure and Function*. Oxford University Press, New York 1982
- Johnson, J. A., R. R. Anderson: *The Renin-Angiotensin System*. Plenum, New York 1980

- Kaissling, B., W. Kriz: *Structural analysis of the rabbit kidney*. In Hild, W. et al.: *Advances in Anatomy, Embryology and Cell Biology*, vol. LVI. Springer, Berlin 1979 (pp. 1–123)
- Kern, G.: *Gynäkologie. Ein kurzgefaßtes Lehrbuch*, 4. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1985
- Kreuzer, G., E. Boquoi: *Zytologie der weiblichen Brustdrüse. Grundriß und Atlas*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1981
- Kriz, W.: *Der architektonische und funktionelle Aufbau der Rattenniere*. *Z. Zellforsch.* 82 (1967) 495–535
- v. Kügelgen, A., B. Kuhlo, W. Kuhlo, Kl.-J. Otto: *Die Gefäßarchitektur der Niere*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1959
- Langmann, J.: *Medizinische Embryologie*, 8. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1989
- Lenz, W.: *Medizinische Genetik*, 6. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1983
- Ludwig, H., H. Metzger: *The Human Female Reproductive Tract. A Scanning Electron Microscopic Atlas*. Springer, Berlin 1976
- Martius, H., K. Droyen: *Atlas der gynäkologischen Anatomie*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1960
- Maunsbach, A. B., T. S. Olsen, E. I. Christensen: *Functional Ultrastructure of the Kidney*. Academic Press, London 1980
- Meisel, P., D. E. Apitzsch: *Atlas der Nierenangiographie*. Springer, Berlin 1978
- Netter, F. H.: *Farbatlanten der Medizin*, Bd. II: *Niere und Harnwege*, 2. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1983
- Netter, F. H.: *Farbatlanten der Medizin*, Bd. III: *Genitalorgane*, 2. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1987
- Norris, H. J., A. T. Hertig, M. R. Abell: *The Uterus* (by 23 authors). Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore 1973
- Oliver, J.: *Nephrons and Kidneys*. Harper & Row Hoeber Medical Division, New York 1968
- Pernkopf, E., A. Pichler: *Systematische und topographische Anatomie des weiblichen Beckens*. In Seitz, L., A. J. Amreich: *Biologie und Pathologie des Weibes*. Urban & Schwarzenberg, Berlin 1953
- Rouiller, Ch., A. F. Müller: *The Kidney. Morphology, Biochemistry, Physiology*, Bd. 1–IV. Academic Press, New York 1969–1971
- Scheidegger, G.: *Aufbau des Übergangsepithels der Harnblase bei Schwein, Schaf, Ratte und Spitzmaus*. *Acta anat.* 107 (1980) 268–275
- Schmidt-Mathiesen, H.: *Das normale menschliche Endometrium*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1963
- Schulze, C.: *Sertoli cells and Leydig cells in man*. *Advanc. Anat. Embryol.* 88 (1984) 1–104
- Shettles, L. G.: *Ovum Humanum*. Urban & Schwarzenberg, München 1960
- Starck, D.: *Embryologie*, 3. Aufl. Thieme, Stuttgart 1975
- Tonutti, E., O. Weller, E. Schuchardt, E. Heinke: *Die männliche Keimdrüse*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1960



- Vorherr, H.: *The Breast Morphology, Physiology, and Lactation*. Academic Press, New York 1974
- Walter, H.: *Sexual- und Entwicklungsbiologie des Menschen*. Thieme, Stuttgart 1978
- Watzka, M.: *Weibliche Genitalorgane*. In: *Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*. Erg. zu Bd. VIII/1, hrsg. von W. Bargmann. Springer, Berlin 1966
- Welsch, U., W. Buchheim, U. Schumacher, I. Schinko, S. Patton: *Structural, histochemical and biochemical observations on horse milk-fat globule membranes and casein micelles*. *Histochemistry* 88 (1988) 357–365
- Wetzstein, R., K. H. Renn: *Zur Anordnung der glatten Muskulatur im Corpus uteri des Menschen*. *Anat. Anz.* 126 Erg. H. (1970) 461–468
- Woodruff, J. D., C. J. Pauerstein: *The Fallopian Tube*. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore 1969
- Zuckerman, Sir S.: *The Ovary*. Academic Press, New York 1962
- Skin**
- Breathnach, A. S.: *An atlas of the ultrastructure of human skin*. Churchill, London 1971
- Chouchkov, Ch.: *Cutaneous receptors*. *Ergebn. Anat. Entwickl.-Gesch.* 54 (1978) 1–62
- Ebling, F. J.: *Hair*. *J. Invest. Dermatol.* 67 (1976) 98–105
- Elias, P. M.: *Epidermal lipid, membranes and keratinization*. *Int. J. Dermatol.* 20 (1981) 1–19
- Fitzpatrick, T. B., A. Z. Eisen, K. Wolff, I. M. Freedberg, K. F. Austen: *Dermatology in General Medicine*, 2nd ed. McGraw-Hill, New York 1979
- Halata, Z.: *The mechanoreceptors of the mammalian skin. Ultrastructure and morphological classification*. *Ergebn. Anat. Entwickl.-Gesch.* 50 (1975) 1–77
- Horstmann, E.: *Die Haut*. In: *Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*, Erg. zu Bd. III/1, hrsg. von W. Bargmann. Springer, Berlin 1957
- Iggo, A., K. H. Andres: *Morphology of cutaneous receptors*. *Ann. Rev. Neurosci.* 5 (1982) 1–31
- Kawamura, T., T. B. Fitzpatrick, M. Seiji: *Biology of normal and abnormal melanocytes*. University Park Press, Baltimore 1971
- Kobori, T., W. Montagna: *Biology and Disease of the Hair*. University Park Press, Baltimore 1975
- Montagna, W., R. A. Ellis, A. F. Silver, R. Billingham, F. Hu: *Advances in Biology of Skin*, Bd. 1–VIII. Pergamon, Oxford 1966
- Odland, G. F.: *Structure of the skin*. In Goldsmith, L. A.: *Biochemistry and Physiology of the Skin*. Oxford University Press, New York 1983 (pp. 3–63)

## Index

Boldface page numbers indicate extensive coverage of the subject

### A

- Acinus, liver 236  
 – lung 134f  
 – mucous (salivary glands) 202  
 – serous (salivary glands) 202  
 – – Ebner half moons 202  
 – – Giannuzzi half moons 202
- Acrosome 278
- ACTH (adrenocorticotrophic hormone) 162f
- Adenohypophysis 152ff
- Adipose tissue 92f
- Adrenalin 162
- Adrenogenital syndrome 160
- Adventitia, blood vessels 32  
 – pharynx 204
- Agranulocytosis 82
- Air cells, ethmoidal 112
- Alveoli, lungs 134f  
 – teeth 184
- Amniotic cavity 322  
 – fluid 322  
 – sac 298, 328
- Ampulla, ductus deferens 280  
 – hepatopancreatic 238  
 – rectal 70, 232  
 – tubae uterinae 294
- Anastomoses 20, 42, 50  
 – arteriovenous 42  
 – – direct 42  
 – – multiple channel 42  
 – portocaval 250
- Androgen(s) 160, 170, 278
- Anemia 82
- Angina pectoris 18
- Angle, venous 44, 64, 80
- Antechamber, heart 4
- Antibodies 88ff
- Antigen-antibody reaction 88
- Antigens 88f
- Antrum, follicular 292  
 – maxillary sinus 178  
 – stomach 212, 216
- Anus 226, 232, 306, 312  
 – closure of 232
- Aorta 4f, 8, 28f, 36, 48, 70, 130  
 – abdominal 48f, 72, 212, 252f  
 – ascending 48  
 – descending 48, 210  
 – direct branches of 48  
 – thoracic 48  
 – sinus 10, 18
- Aortic knob 30  
 – narrowing 208  
 – valve 26  
 – window (radiograph) 28
- Apex cordis 6
- Aponeurosis (of the palate) 204  
 – linguae (of the tongue) 196
- Appendix(ces) of epididymis 274  
 – epiploic 226  
 – fibrous 234  
 – mucosa 104  
 – of testis 272f  
 – vermiform 104, 218f, 226, 230
- APUD-system 128, 138, 164, 172
- Arch(es), aortic 6, 30, 48, 128, 132, 138, 210  
 – arterial of the great curvature 242  
 – dental 184  
 – palatoglossal 198  
 – palatopharyngeal 198  
 – palmar deep 68  
 – – superficial 68  
 – plantar 74
- Area cribrosa (of kidney) 260  
 – gastric 216  
 – nuda (bare, of liver) 234
- Areole of breast 326
- Artery(ies) 4, 36  
 – alveolar inferior 56  
 – – superior anterior 56  
 – – posterior 56  
 – angular 54  
 – appendicular 230, 246  
 – arcuate of foot 74  
 – – of kidney 256, 260  
 – auricular posterior 54f  
 – – deep 56  
 – axillary 66  
 – basilar 52, 58  
 – blocking 42  
 – brachial 66f  
 – branchial 46  
 – bronchial 130  
 – buccal 56  
 – carotid common 6, 48, 52ff, 132, 210  
 – – left 48  
 – – external 54f  
 – – internal 54ff, 114, 156  
 – central retinal 58  
 – cerebellar inferior anterior 58  
 – – posterior 58  
 – – superior 58  
 – cerebral anterior 58  
 – – middle 58  
 – – posterior 58  
 – cervical ascending 52  
 – – deep 52  
 – choroidal 58  
 – ciliary 58  
 – circumflex femoral lateral 72  
 – – medial 72  
 – – of humerus anterior 66  
 – – posterior 66  
 – – iliac deep 72  
 – – superficial 72  
 – – scapular 66  
 – colic 238  
 – – left 246ff  
 – – middle 246  
 – – right 246  
 – collateral middle 66  
 – radial 66  
 – – ulnar superior 66  
 – communicating anterior 58  
 – – posterior 58  
 – coronary 20, 28  
 – – left 20  
 – – right 20  
 – cushion 42  
 – cystic 242  
 – deep brachial 66  
 – – femoral 72  
 – – lingual 56  
 – – of penis 288  
 – digital common 68  
 – – dorsal of foot 74



- Artery(ies), digital common, palmar proper 68
- - plantar of foot 74
  - dorsal nasal 58
  - - of foot 74
  - - of penis 288
  - ductus deferens 70
  - elastic type 34f
  - end 40, 46
  - epigastric inferior 52, 72, 268, 282, 290
  - - superficial 72
  - - superior 52, 72
  - ethmoidal 58, 114
  - - anterior 56
  - facial 54f
  - femoral 72
  - gastric left 48, 238, 242
  - - right 242
  - - right 242
  - - short 100, 242
  - gastroduodenal 242
  - gastropiploic right 242
  - - left 100, 242
  - genicular descending 72
  - - lateral inferior 72f
  - - - superior 72f
  - - medial inferior 72f
  - - - superior 72f
  - - middle 74
  - gluteal inferior 70f
  - - superior 70f
  - of head and neck 52
  - helicine 288
  - hepatic common 48, 238, 242
  - - proper 236f, 242
  - ileal 246
  - ileocolic 246
  - iliac common 48, 70f
  - - external 48, 70f, 268
  - - internal 48, 70f, 248
  - iliofemoral 70f
  - incorporation 32
  - infraorbital 56
  - intercostal 48
  - - highest 48, 52
  - interlobular of kidney 256
  - - of liver 236
  - interosseous anterior 66f
  - - common 66f
  - - posterior 66f
  - - recurrent 66f
  - jejunal 246
  - labial inferior 54
  - - superior 54
  - labyrinthine 58
  - lacrimal 58
  - laryngeal inferior 126
  - - superior 54, 126
  - lingual 54f
  - malleolar lateral 74
  - - - posterior 74
  - - medial 74
  - masseteric 56
  - maxillary 54f, 114
  - meningeal anterior 56, 58
  - - middle 56f
  - - posterior 56
  - mental 56
  - mesenteric 246
  - - inferior 48, 70, 246, 250
  - - superior 48, 240ff, 246, 250
  - metacarpal dorsal 68
  - - palmar 68
  - metatarsal dorsal 74
  - - plantar 74
  - muscular in type 34f
  - musculophrenic 52
  - nasal posterior lateral 56, 114
  - - - septal 56, 114
  - obturator 70f
  - occipital 54
  - of vestibular bulb 312
  - ophthalmic 58
  - ovarian 48, 304
  - palatine ascending 54
  - - descending 56
  - - major 56
  - - minor 56
  - palpebral lateral 58
  - - medial 58
  - pancreaticoduodenal inferior 246
  - - superior 242
  - - of pelvis 70
  - perforating, femoral 72
  - pericardiacophrenic 22f, 52
  - perineal 310f
  - peripheral, muscular type 36
  - peroneal, fibula 74
  - pharyngeal ascending 54
  - phrenic inferior 48
  - - superior 48
  - plantar lateral 74
  - - medial 74
  - popliteal 72f
  - position 38
  - principal of thumb 68
  - of the pterygoid canal 56
  - pudendal external 72
  - - internal 70f, 248, 310f
  - pulmonary 4f, 106, 130f
  - - radial 66f
  - rectal inferior, hemorrhoidal 70f, 248, 310f
  - - middle hemorrhoidal 70, 248
  - - superior 70, 232, 248
  - recurrent radial 68
  - - tibial anterior 72f
  - - - posterior 72f
  - - ulnar 68
  - renal 48, 256
  - sacral lateral 70f
  - - median 48, 70f
  - sigmoid 248
  - - ima 248
  - sphenopalatine 56
  - spinal anterior 58
  - - posterior 58
  - - paired 58
  - splenic 48, 100, 238ff
  - stylomastoid 54
  - subclavian 6, 46f, 52f, 58, 64f, 130f, 210
  - - left 48
  - sublingual 56
  - submental 54f
  - subscapular 66
  - superior 70, 268
  - supradduodenal superior 246
  - supraorbital 58
  - suprarenal 48
  - suprascapular (transverse scapular) 52, 66
  - supratrochlear 58
  - tarsal lateral 74
  - temporal deep anterior 56
  - - - posterior 56
  - middle 54
  - - posterior 56
  - - superficial 54
  - testicular 48, 282
  - thoracic highest 66
  - - internal 48, 52, 72
  - - lateral 66
  - thoracoacromial 66
  - thoracodorsal 66
  - thyroid inferior 52, 126, 166, 210
  - - superior 54, 126, 166
  - tibial 72
  - - anterior 72f
  - - posterior 74
  - trabecular 102
  - transverse facial 54
  - - of the neck 52, 66
  - tympanic anterior 56
  - ulnar 66, 68
  - umbilical 70, 268, 332

- uterine 70f, 304
- vaginal 304, 314
- vertebral 52, 58, 132
- vesicular inferior 70
- zygomaticoorbital 54
- Arterial valve, insufficiency, see stenosis
- Arterioles 34
- straight 256, 262
- Arteriovenous coupling 42
- Articulatio cricoarytanoidea 116
- cricothyroidea 116
- Articulation, movement of dental arches against each other 188
- Asthma, cardiac 30
- Atresia of the follicle 292
- Atrioventricular border 8
- bundle, impulse conducting 12
- Atrium (-ia) 12
- of heart 4, 8ff, 16f
- Atrium (-ia), muscles 12
- right 6
- Auricle 6
- Auscultation, heart 26
- sites 26
- Azoospermia 284
- Azygos system 50

## B

- Barrier, blood-air 136
- blood-brain 32
- blood-testis 32, 276
- blood-thymus 32, 94
- Basedow's disease 166
- Basis cordis 6
- Bifurcation tracheal 20, 80, 128, 132f, 138, 208f
- Bile ducts 238
- flow 238
- large 238
- Bladder, trabeculated 268
- urinary, see urinary bladder
- Blood 2f, 32, 82ff
- corpuscles 82
- defense mechanisms 82
- formation 102
- groups 82
- plasma 82
- pressure, diastolic 38
- - estimation of 36f
- - measurement 36f
- - systolic 38
- vessels 32ff
- - of skin and subcutis 344
- - variability of 46
- - wall structures 32ff
- B-Lymphocyte 90, 96
- zone 98
- Bombesin (gastrin releasing peptide GRP) 172
- Bone, ethmoid 110
- hyoid 118, 122, 126, 206
- marrow 84, 97
- pubic 270
- Bowman's capsule 258
- Branch, anterior ventricular 20
- frontal 54
- mylohyoid 56
- parietal 54
- posterior interventricular 20
- pterygoid 56
- Breast, female 334f
- male 334
- variations of 334
- Bronchi 134f
- lobar 134
- obstruction 144
- segmental 134
- tree 130
- - fine structure 128
- Bronchioles 136
- respiratory 134f
- terminal 134f
- Bronchus, principal 128
- Brunner's glands 220
- Brush border cells 222
- Buccae (cheeks) 178
- Bulb of aorta 10
- duodenal 214, 218, 242
- of penis (urethral) 286
- of superior jugular vein 60
- of vestibule of vagina 272, 306
- Bulla ethmoidal 112
- Bursa, omental 100, 212, 240, 244
- - vestibule 244
- testicular 274

## C

- Calcitonin 166
- Calculi, prostatic 284
- Calix (renal pelvis) 264
- Canal, Alcock's 70
- alimentary 106

- birth 326
- - soft tissue extension tube 326f
- inguinal 274
- nasolacrimal 112
- root (tooth) 180
- Canaliculi, bile of capillaries 236
- lacrimal 110
- Canal(s), adductor 72
- anal 232
- carotid 58
- cervical, of uterus 296
- obturator 70
- pudendal, Alcock's 70, 316
- Capillaries 4, 34, 40, 44
- incorporation 32
- lymph 44, 78
- network 4
- sinusoidal 40, 158, 236
- Capsule, fatty, of kidney 254
- fibrous 254f
- Caput Medusae 250
- Cardia 206, 212f, 244
- Cardiac asthma 34
- borders 24
- - radiographs 28ff
- dullness 26
- - area of absolute 24f
- - of relative 24f
- muscles, microscopic structure 18
- nerves 18
- output 16
- skeleton 12
- tamponade 22
- veins 20
- Carina tracheae 128
- urethralis vaginae 304f
- Cartilage arytenoid 116
- corniculate 116ff
- cricoid 116f, 122, 126
- cuneiform 120f
- epiglottic 116f, 122
- nasal 108
- thyroid 116ff
- triticeal 118
- Caruncle, hymenal 306
- sublingual 196, 200
- Cauda epididymis 280
- Cavity(ies)
- abdominal 244f
- infraglottic 118, 122
- nasal 108
- oral 176ff
- pericardial 22
- peritoneal 22, 212
- pleural 22, 130, 138



- Cavity(ies)*, pulp 180  
 - scrotal 274, 282  
 - serous 22  
 - uterine 296  
*Cecum* 218, 226ff  
 - fixum 228  
 - mobile 228  
*Celiac trunk* 48  
*Cells*, accessory 88f  
 - of the immune system 96  
 - basally granulated 216, 222  
 - border 224  
 - brush border 128, 222  
 - centroacinar 240  
 - chromaffin (pheo-chromic) 164  
 - Clara 128  
 - cytotoxic 97  
 - dendritic 96  
 - dust 136  
 - enterochromaffin (EC-cells) 172  
 - enterochromaffin-like (ECL-cells) 172  
 - gastrointestinal endocrine 172  
 - germ ovary 272  
 - - testis 272  
 - goblet 222f  
 - granular Paneth 222  
 - granulosa 292  
 - heart failure 136  
 - interstitial (testes) 170  
 - Langerhans 340  
 - oxyphilic (Welsh) 168  
 - pseudodecidua 302  
 - secretory epithelial 222  
*Cellulae ethmoidales* 112  
*Cellular immunity* 97  
*Cement (tooth)* 180, 192  
*Central vessels* 48  
*Centroblasts* 96  
*Centrococytes* 96  
*Centrum tendineum diaphragmatis* 132  
 - perinei 306, 312  
*Cerebral arterial circle*, of Willis 58, 154  
*Cervical fascia* 42  
*Cervix uteri* 296, 300  
 - external orifice 326, 330  
 - internal orifice 330  
*Cesarean section* 300  
*Cheeks (buccae)* 178  
*Chemoreceptors* 128  
*Chemosensitive area (kidney)* 258  
*Childbirth* 326ff  
 - expulsion phase 330  
 - initial phase 328  
 - mechanism 326  
 - membrane rupture 328  
 - opening phase 300  
*Choanae (posterior nares)* 112f  
*Cholecystokinin (CCK)* 172  
*Chordae tendineae* 8f  
*Chorionic gonadotropins* 322  
*Chromosomes* 320  
*Circadian rhythms* 160  
*Circulation, antenatal* 4ff  
 - - greater (systemic) 4  
 - - lesser (pulmonary) 4  
 - collateral 46  
 - fetal 332  
 - portal 4  
 - pulmonary 4  
 - circulatory system 4ff  
*Cisterna chyli* 80, 246f  
*CLIP (corticotropin-like intermediate lobe peptide)* 149  
*Clitoris* 272, 290, 306  
*Coccyx* 270  
*Collaterals* 40, 42, 50  
*Colliculus, seminal* 268, 272, 290  
*Collum* 180  
*Colon* 226ff  
 - ascending 226  
 - descending 226, 244, 254  
 - sigmoid 218, 226  
 - transverse 226, 244, 254  
*Colostrum* 336  
*Columns, anal* 232  
 - renal Bertini's 256  
*Concha nasalis inferior* 110, 198  
 - media 110  
 - superior 110  
 - cone, elastic 120  
*Confluens sinuum* 60ff  
*Coniotomy (larynx)* 118, 126  
*Connective tissue, reticular* 88  
 - wedges, coarse 12  
*Contraction time (heart action)* 16  
*Conus elasticus* 118f  
*Corium (dermis)* 340f  
*Corona of glans penis* 286  
 - radiata 292  
*Coronary sinus* 6, 10  
 - vessels 18  
*Corpus adiposum buccae* 178  
 - callosus 58  
 - cavernosus penis 272, 286f  
 - urethrae 272  
 - luteum 170, 292, 322  
 - in pregnancy 322  
 - spongiosum penis 272, 286f  
 - urethrae 306  
 - uteri 296  
*Corpuscle, renal* 256f  
*Cortex, adrenal* 146  
 - fine structure 162  
 - thymus 94  
*Corticoliberin (CRF)* 156  
*Corticosteroids* 162  
*Corticotropin (ACTH)* 156f  
*Coupling, arteriovenous* 42  
*Cowper's glands, see glandula bulbourethrales*  
*Crest, neural* 146  
*Cretinism* 166  
*Crinocytosis* 150, 224  
*Crista supraventricularis* 8  
*Crura of musculus levator ani* 308  
*Crypts of duodenum* 220  
 - of Lieberkühn 220  
 - minor 104  
*Cumulus oophorus* 292  
*Curvature, major* 212  
 - minor 212  
*Cushing's syndrome* 160  
*Cushion arteries* 42  
*Cusp, septal* 10  
*Cutis* 340ff  
*Cyanosis* 176  
*Cycle, ovarian (menstrual)* 170  
*Cytopenesis* 40  
*Cytotoxic T-cells* 90

## D

- Decubitus (bed sores)* 344  
*Defecation* 232  
*Defense mechanisms (blood)* 82  
 - systems 86  
*Deglutition (swallowing)* 206  
 - center 206  
*Dental formula* 186

- Dentin (tooth)* 180f  
 - formation 192  
 - secondary 180  
*Dentition, first and second* 190  
*Desmodontium (periodontal membrane)* 178ff  
*Diabetes insipidus* 154  
 - mellitus 168  
*Diaphragm, pelvic* 308ff, 314  
 - urogenital 286, 308ff, 316  
*Diaphragmatic narrowing* 208  
*Diastole* 8, 10, 16, 36  
*Diastolic blood pressure* 38  
*Digestive chambers* 210  
 - system 174ff  
 - trunk section 174  
*Dilatation of heart* 30  
*Disks, intercalated* 14  
*Disse's space* 236  
*Donder's pressure* 144  
*Dopamine* 156  
*Dorsum, back, of tongue* 196  
*Douglas' pouch, see excavatio rectouterina*  
*Duct(s), alveolar (lungs)* 136  
 - arterial, of Botalli 332  
 - choledochal, common bile 234, 238, 242  
 - collecting (kidney) 258ff  
 - cystic 234, 238  
 - deferens 268ff, 280ff  
 - efferens 276  
 - ejaculatory 284, 288  
 - of epididymis 276, 280  
 - excretory (salivary glands) 202  
 - hepatic 234, 238  
 - lactiferous 336  
 - lymphatic right 50, 64, 80  
 - nasolacrimal 110  
 - pancreatic 240  
 - papillary 260  
 - paraurethral, of Skene 306  
 - parotid 178, 200  
 - sublingual 200  
 - submandibular 200  
 - thoracic 50, 64, 80  
 - venous, of Arantius 234, 332  
*Ductule, efferent* 276, 280  
*Duodenum* 212f, 218f, 234, 240ff, 254  
*Dura mater, sinuses* 64  
*Dysgnathism* 186

## E

- Edema, interstitial pulmonary* 134  
*Ejection time (heart action)* 16  
*Electrocardiogram (ECG)* 18  
*Embolism (thrombosis)* 40  
 - pulmonary 50  
*Embolus* 20  
*Embryo, growth* 316  
*Embryoblast* 316  
*Eminence, median* 156  
*Emphysema, interstitial pulmonary* 134  
*Enamel (tooth)* 180  
 - formation 192  
 - prisms (tooth) 180  
*Endocardium* 12  
*Endometrium (mucous membrane of uterus)* 298, 302  
*Endothelium* 32f, 40  
*Enkephalin(s)* 164, 172  
*Epicardium* 6, 12, 22  
*Epidermis (skin surface)* 338f  
 - cornification 340  
*Epididymis* 272f, 278, 282, 286  
 - fine structure of 280  
*Epiglottis* 116ff, 122ff  
*Epiorchium* 274, 282  
*Epiphysis (pineal body)* 146, 160  
 - cerebri 160  
 - fine structure 160  
*Episiotomy* 328  
*Epithelium* 224  
 - alveolar 136  
 - ciliated columnar 110, 122  
 - columnar 128  
 - external border 178  
 - inner border 178  
 - marginal 180  
 - of mucous membranes (intestinal) 222  
 - of oral cavity 190  
 - peritoneal (mesothelium) 212  
 - transitional (renal pelvis) 264, 270  
*Epitheloid venules* 96f

- Eponychium* 348  
*Epoophoron* 272  
*Erection of penis* 288  
*Ergastoplasm* 90, 150, 158, 202, 216, 240  
*Erythroblasts* 86  
*Erythrocytes* 82ff  
*Erythropoiesis* 84f  
*Erythropoietin* 258  
*Esophagus* 128f, 138, 166, 198, 204ff, 208ff  
 - upper constriction sphincter 210  
 - varices 250  
*Estrogens* 170, 278, 292, 300, 336  
*Eustachian tube* 108, 114  
*Excretory ducts, system of (salivary glands)* 202  
*Exhaled air* 106  
*Expiration* 142, 144  
*Exudate (effusion) in the pericardium* 30  
 - pleural 138
- F**
- Fascia(e), cervical* 24, 42, 54, 126, 166  
 - cremasteric 282  
 - pelvis 314  
 - diaphragm 310  
 - penis 286, 288  
 - perineal superficial 310f, 316  
 - pharyngobasilar 204, 210  
 - spermatoc external 282  
 - internal 282  
 - transversalis 282  
*Fascial sheath of kidney* 252f  
*Fauces (pharynx)* 176, 206  
*Ferritin* 86  
*Fertilization* 320, 322  
*Fetal circulation* 332  
*Fibers, oblique* 214  
 - Purkinje 18  
 - Sharpey's 180  
 - sympathetic 168  
 - Tomes' 180  
*Fibroblastic cells* 96  
*Filaments, actin* 14  
 - muscle 14  
 - myosin 14  
*Filling time (heart action)* 16  
*Fibrous rings of heart* 12



- Fimbria, ovarian 294  
 Finger printing (dactylography) 342  
 Fissure(s), horizontal 130  
 - interlobar 130  
 - oblique 130  
 Flexure(s), colic 226  
 - duodenal superior 234  
 - duodenojejunal 218, 226, 240, 244, 250  
 - perineal 232  
 - sacral 232  
 Floating test (lungs) 130  
 Fold or notch, angular of  
 - stomach 212  
 - aryepiglottic 120f  
 - cardiac 212  
 - circular 220  
 - duodenojejunal superior 250  
 - fimbriated 196  
 - gastropyloric 242  
 - glosso-epiglottic 196  
 - ileocecal 228  
 - laryngeal 122  
 - palmate 296  
 - rectouterine 290f, 298  
 - semilunar 112, 226, 262  
 - spiral 238  
 - sublingual 196, 200  
 - ventricular 124  
 - vestibular 118  
 - vocal 122  
 Follicle(s), aggregated  
 - lymph 104, 220, 230  
 - Graafian 292  
 - lingual 194  
 - lymph 98, 102  
 - - primary 96  
 - - secondary 96f  
 - maturation 292  
 - primary 292  
 - rupture (ovulation) 170  
 - secondary 292  
 - tertiary 292  
 - vesicular 292  
 Follitropin 158  
 Food passage 206  
 Foramen caecum 196  
 - epiploic of Winslow 238, 244  
 - infraperiform 314  
 - ovale cordis 8, 326, 332  
 - sciatic greater 70  
 - - lesser 70  
 - sphenopalatine 112f  
 - supraperiform 314  
 Foregut 174  
 Fornix (renal pelvis) 264  
 - (vagina) 304  
 Fossa, ischioanal 310, 314f  
 - mandibular 188  
 - navicularis urethrae 288  
 Foveolae, gastric 216  
 Frenulum of lip 176  
 - of prepuce 286  
 - of tongue 196  
 Fundus uteri 296
- G**  
 Galactogram 336  
 Gall bladder 234, 238  
 Ganglion, cervical  
 - superior, of the sympathetic system 210  
 Gap junctions 14  
 - scalene 138  
 Gartner's duct (longitudinal duct of epoophoron) 272, 306  
 Gaster, see stomach  
 Gastric juice, secretion 216  
 - pathway 212  
 Gastrin 172, 216  
 - inhibitory peptide (GIP) 172  
 Genital organs 272ff  
 - - development 272  
 - - external 272  
 - - female 290ff  
 - - internal 272  
 - - male 274ff  
 - - ridges 272  
 - - tubercle 272  
 Germinal (reaction) centers 96  
 Gingiva (gum) 178ff  
 Gland(s) 146f  
 - accessory 200  
 - adrenal (suprarenal) 160  
 - apocrine scent 340, 344  
 - bronchial 136  
 - Brunner's 220  
 - buccal 178  
 - bulbourethral, of Cowper 272f, 284ff, 310  
 - cervical on childbirth 328  
 - - of uterus 296  
 - eccrine sweat (coiled) 340, 344  
 - endocrine 146ff  
 - - peripheral, major action 153  
 - esophageal 208  
 - exocrine 146

- gastric 214f  
 - holocrine sebaceous 344  
 - intestinal 220  
 - labial 176  
 - lingual 104  
 - - anterior 200f  
 - mammary 334  
 - - fine structure and function 336  
 - - lactating 336  
 - nasal 110  
 - olfactory 110  
 - palatine 198  
 - parathyroid 146, 166f  
 - parotid 200ff  
 - pharyngeal 204  
 - pituitary 154  
 - pyloric 216  
 - salivary 200f  
 - sebaceous 340  
 - sublingual 178, 194, 200f  
 - - minor 200  
 - submandibular 178, 200ff  
 - suprarenal 160  
 - thyroid 146, 166, 204, 210  
 - tracheal 128  
 - urethral, of Littre 288  
 - uterine 302  
 - vestibular greater, of Bartholin 272, 290, 306, 312  
 Glans clitoridis 272, 306  
 - penis 272, 286f  
 Glisson's triad 236  
 Glomerulus (kidney) 256, 258ff  
 Glomus, carotid 54  
 - organs 42  
 Glottis 124, 128  
 Glucagon 168, 172  
 Glucocorticoids 160  
 Glycogen 14  
 Glycoprotein hormones  
 - TSH, FSH, LH, MSH 158  
 Golgi apparatus 150, 158, 202, 224, 236  
 Gonadotropin(s) 158, 170  
 - chorionic 170, 322  
 Gonads, anlage 272ff  
 Granulatio arachnoidealis 60  
 Granules, keratohyaline (epidermis) 340  
 - lamellated (epidermis) 340  
 Granulocyte(s) 82ff, 160  
 - neutrophil 88

- store 86  
 - system (defense) 88  
 Granulopoiesis 84, 86  
 Grave's disease 166  
 Great vessels 48  
 Groove, left sagittal 234  
 - right sagittal 234  
 Gubernacular cord 272  
 Gubernaculum testis 272f  
 Gums (gingiva) 178  
 Gynecomastia 334

**H**

- Hair 346  
 - color 346  
 - cover 346  
 - fine structure 346  
 - growth 346  
 - lanugo 346  
 - root 346  
 - terminal 346  
 Hairpin-countercurrent principle 262  
 Hamulus, pterygoid 196  
 Hassal's corpuscles 94  
 Hausta 226  
 Heart 6ff  
 - action 16  
 - apex 24  
 - automatization 16  
 - base 6, 16  
 - chambers 4, 8ff, 16f  
 - cycle, systole 16  
 - position 24  
 - radiology 28  
 - shape 30  
 - size 6, 30  
 - skeleton 8ff  
 - sounds (auscultation) 26  
 - structure 4  
 - valve 10  
 - vortex 12  
 - wall 12  
 Hegar's sign of pregnancy 300  
 Hematopoiesis 86  
 Hemocytoblast(s) 84f  
 Hemodynamic function arteries 32  
 - - veins 32  
 Hemoglobin 82  
 Hemopoiesis 84  
 Hemorrhoids, internal 232  
 - external 250  
 Hemosiderin 86, 102  
 Hemosiderosis 86, 102  
 Henle's loop 260  
 Heparin 82  
 Hiatus genital 308  
 - semilunar 112  
 Hilar groove 100  
 Hilus, lung 130, 138  
 - renal 254  
 His, bundle 12, 18  
 Histamine 82, 172  
 Histocytes 88, 96  
 Holzknecht's space (radio-graph) 28  
 Hormone(s) 146f, 158  
 - active peptide 149  
 - adenohipophyseal 153  
 - adrenal 160  
 - blood level 148  
 - choriogonadotropic 162  
 Hormone(s), corticosteroids (corticoids) 160  
 - effector 152f, 158  
 - follicular 292  
 - glandotropic 152f, 158  
 - - effector 153  
 - hypothalamic 153  
 - peptide 146  
 - regulating 153  
 - release inhibiting factors 156  
 - releasing factors 156  
 - sex 274  
 - tissue 214  
 Humoral immunity 97  
 Hydatids 274  
 Hydraulic reservoir 48  
 - - function (arteries) 36  
 Hydrocele 282  
 Hyoid bone 118  
 Hypermastia 334  
 Hyperthelia or polythelia 334  
 Hyperthyroidism 166  
 Hypertrichosis 346  
 Hypertrophy, heart 30  
 - prostate 284  
 Hypoglossal paresis 192  
 Hyponychium 348  
 Hypophysis (pituitary gland) 146, 154, 170  
 Hypospermia 284  
 Hypothalamo-adenohypophyseal system 156  
 Hypothalamo-hypophyseal system 152f  
 Hypothalamo-neurohypophyseal system 154  
 Hypothalamus 152f, 170

**I**

- Ileum 218f, 226ff  
 Immune system 88f, 92, 222, 230  
 - - intestinal 92, 104  
 - - lymphatic 92  
 - - skin 340f  
 - - thymus 92  
 Immunity 88f  
 Immunobiologic system, see immune system  
 Immunoblast 86  
 Immunocompetence 88  
 Immunocompetent cells 90  
 - lymphocytes 92  
 Immunocyte 86  
 Immunoglobulins 90  
 Immunotolerance 90  
 Impulse-conducting system 18  
 - - - intrinsic 18  
 Incisions, system of preferred lines for skin 342  
 Incisure (or notch) angular 214  
 - cardiac 130, 140, 240  
 - pancreatic 240  
 - thyroid superior 116  
 Infarct, cardiac 20, 40  
 Infundibulum of hypothalamus 154  
 - of uterine tube 294  
 Inguinal ring 282  
 Inhaled air 106  
 Inspiration 142f  
 Insulin 168  
 Integument (outer skin) 338ff  
 - functions 338  
 Intercalated disks (heart muscles) 14  
 Interpleural space 24  
 Intestinal crypts 226  
 - - fine structure 222  
 - epithelium 226  
 - villa, fine structure 222  
 Intestine, large 226ff  
 Intima (blood vessels) 32  
 Involution 330  
 Iodide, circulating 166  
 Iron circulation 82, 86  
 Islets, cellular of Langerhans 168  
 Isthmus of the fauces 178, 198  
 - of thyroid gland 166  
 - of uterus 294f, 300



## J

Jejunum 218f  
 Joint, cricoarytenoid 116  
 - cricothyroid 116  
 Juxtaglomerular apparatus 258

## K

Kerckring folds 220  
 Kidney(s) (rens or nephrons) 212, 252ff  
 - body 254  
 - cystic 254  
 - fine structure 258, 260f  
 - horseshoe 254  
 - supernumary 254  
 Kohlrausch's fold (transverse fold of rectum) 232, 286, 316  
 Kupffer cells, stellate 88, 236

## L

Labia majora 272, 290, 306  
 - minora 272, 306  
 - oris (lips) 176  
 - vocal 124  
 Labor, muscular contractions 330  
 Lacuna, lateral 60  
 - of muscles 72  
 - urethral, of Morgan 288  
 - of vessels 70f  
 Lamina, basal, endometrium 302  
 - functional, endometrium 302  
 - propria of the intestinal mucosa 92  
 Lanz's point 230  
 Large intestine, movements 226  
 - - mucosa of 226  
 Laryngeal mirror 124  
 - skeleton 118  
 Laryngopharynx 202  
 Laryngoscopy 122  
 Larynx 106, 116ff, 176, 206ff  
 - entrance 198  
 - motility 126  
 - position 126  
 - skeleton 116  
 - vestibule 122  
 Layer, clear 340  
 - granular 340  
 - horny 340  
 - keratinized 340  
 - papillary 342  
 - regeneration 340  
 - reticular 340f  
 - spinous 340  
 Leukocytes 82f  
 Leukocytosis 82  
 Leukopenia 82  
 Leydig's interstitial cells 170, 278  
 Lien, see spleen  
 Ligament(s), anococcygeal 232, 308ff  
 - annular 128  
 - arteriosum 6, 324  
 - broad of uterus 290ff, 314  
 - cardinal, of uterus 298, 314  
 - coronary hepatic 234  
 - cricoarytenoid posterior 118  
 - cricopharyngeal 118  
 - cricothyroid 118, 122, 126  
 - falciform hepatic 234, 244  
 Ligament(s), gastrotocolic 244  
 - gastrosplenic 100, 212, 242  
 - of head of femur 70  
 - hepatoduodenal 212, 218, 234, 238, 242f  
 - hepatogastric 212, 242  
 - hepatorenal 234  
 - laryngeal 118  
 - ovarian 272, 290f, 314  
 - phrenicocolic 100, 226, 244  
 - phrenicosplenic 100, 212, 242  
 - pubovesical 298, 314  
 - pulmonary 130  
 - round of liver 234, 332  
 - of uterus 272, 290, 298, 304, 330  
 - sacrospinal 70  
 - suspensory of ovary 290, 294, 304  
 - thyroepiglottic 118  
 - thyrohyoid 122  
 - - median 118  
 - transverse perineal 308, 312  
 - - of scapula 52

- triangular of liver 234  
 - umbilical median 290  
 - - middle 70, 268f, 290, 332  
 - venous of liver 234, 326  
 - vestibular 118  
 - vocal cords 118  
 Limen nasi 108  
 Linea, terminal, of pelvis 248  
 Lingua (tongue) 194f  
 Lipotropic hormone (LPH) 149  
 Lipotropin 158, 164  
 Lips 176  
 Liquor folliculi 292  
 Liver 174, 212, 234ff  
 - fine structure of 236  
 - lobules 236  
 - margin 140  
 Lobe, caudate 234  
 - pulmonary 134  
 - quadrate 234  
 Lobule(s) hepatic 236  
 - pulmonary 134  
 - of testis 276  
 Luliberin (LRF, LHRH) 156  
 Lungs 24, 106, 130  
 - borders 140  
 - fine structure 136  
 - hilus 24, 106  
 - lobes 130  
 - root 132  
 Lunula 10  
 Lutropin (LH) 158, 322  
 Lymph 44, 98  
 - capillaries 44  
 - follicles 98, 102  
 - of the mucous membranes 96  
 Lymph nodes 4, 44, 78f, 92, 96ff  
 - - axillary 78f  
 - - bronchopulmonary 80, 132  
 - - celiac 80, 100, 242  
 - - cervical deep 80  
 - - superficial 80  
 - - collecting 44  
 - - cubital 78  
 - - gastric left 242  
 - - - right 242  
 - - gastroepiploic left 242  
 - - - right 242  
 - - hepatic 242  
 - - ileocolic 246  
 - - iliac common 248  
 - - inguinal 304  
 - - - superficial 78, 248

- - lumbar 304  
 - - mass 78  
 - - mediastinal anterior 242  
 - - mesenteric inferior 248  
 - - - superior 246  
 - - occipital 80  
 - - pancreatocolic 100, 246  
 - - parasternal 80  
 - - parotid 80  
 - - popliteal 78  
 - - pulmonary 80, 132  
 - - pyloric 242  
 - - regional 44, 78  
 - - retroauricular 80  
 - - retropharyngeal 80  
 - - sacral 248  
 - - submandibular 80  
 - - submental 80  
 - - tracheal 80  
 - - tracheobronchial inferior 132  
 - vessels 4, 20, 44ff, 78f, 96, 100, 114, 166  
 Lymphatic duct, right 80  
 - organs 92ff  
 - trunk, intestinal 80  
 - - lumbar 80  
 Lymphocytes 82, 86, 96, 104  
 - recirculation of 96  
 Lymphoid organs, peripheral 96  
 Lymphopoiesis 84f, 102  
 Lysosomes 88  
 Lysozymes 82

## M

Macrophages 88, 92, 98, 102  
 - alveolar 88, 136  
 - peritoneal 88  
 - pleural 88  
 - tissue 88  
 Macula densa 258  
 Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) 92  
 Malpighian corpuscle 258  
 Mamma (breast) 334  
 - accessoriae 334  
 Mandibular condyle 188  
 - joint, movements 188  
 Mayer-Weigert rule 266  
 McBurney's point 230  
 M-cells (stomach) 104  
 Meatus, internal urethral 270  
 - nasal inferior 112  
 - - middle 112  
 - - superior 110, 112  
 Mechanism, adipose body-epiglottis 124  
 - costodiaphragmatic 142  
 - tongue-epiglottis 124  
 Meckel's cartilage 190  
 Media (blood vessels) 32  
 Mediastinal flutter 144  
 Mediastinum (pleural cavity) 24, 130f, 138  
 - anterior 24  
 - middle 24  
 - posterior 24  
 - testis 274f  
 - upper 24  
 Medulla, adrenal 146, 164  
 - of kidney 256, 262  
 - of thymus 94  
 Medullary rays (kidney) 256, 260  
 Megakaryoblast 86  
 Megakaryocyte 86  
 Megaloblast 84  
 Megaureter 266  
 Meiosis 318  
 Melanocyte stimulating hormone (MSH) 149  
 Melanocytes 160, 340  
 Melanotropin 158, 160  
 Melatonin 160  
 Membrane(s) atlantooccipital 52  
 - basal 40  
 - basement (heart muscle tissue) 14  
 - bronchopercardial 132  
 - elastic external 32  
 - - internal 32, 36  
 - fibroelastic of larynx 118  
 - mucous of the larynx 122  
 - perineal 310  
 - pleuropericardial 22  
 - quadrangular 118  
 - thyrohyoid 54, 116f, 122, 126  
 - thyroid 126  
 - of vesicle 224  
 Memory cells 90, 97  
 Menarche 302  
 Menopause (climacteric) 302  
 Menstrual cycle (ovarian cycle) 170, 292, 296, 302  
 - desquamation-regeneration phase 170

- - estrogen phase 170, 302  
 - - gestagenic or luteal phase 170  
 - - gestation phase 302  
 - - proliferation phase 170  
 - - secretory phase 170  
 Mesentery 218f, 228, 244f  
 Mesangium 258  
 Mesoappendix 228f, 244  
 Mesocolon, sigmoid 226  
 - transverse 226, 240, 244  
 Mesopharynx (oral pharynx) 106, 206  
 Mesosalpinx 290, 294, 314  
 Mesovarium 290f  
 Metamyelocyte 86  
 Microphages 88  
 Microscopic structure (cardiac muscles) 18  
 Micturition (emptying of urinary bladder) 270  
 Mineralocorticoids 160f  
 Mitochondrion 14  
 Mitosis 318  
 Moderator band 8, 18  
 Monoamines 146  
 Monocytes 82ff, 160  
 Monocytopoiesis 86  
 Mononuclear phagocytic system (MPS) 88  
 Mons pubis 290, 306  
 Motilin 172  
 Mouth, floor 206  
 - muscular floor 178  
 MSH, see melanocyte stimulating hormone  
 Mucosa (mucous membrane) 122  
 - intestinal 218  
 - - immune system 104  
 - of large intestine 226  
 - of nose 110  
 - oral 178  
 - of small intestine 220  
 - of stomach 212f  
 - of tongue 196  
 - of uterus 302  
 Multiple anastomoses 42  
 Muscle(s), abductor of great toe 74  
 - adductor 72  
 - aryepiglottic 120, 124, 206  
 - arytenoid oblique 120  
 - - transverse 120  
 - biceps 66f  
 - brachioradial 68  
 - buccinator 178



- Muscle(s)*, bulbospongious 286, 306, 310f  
 - cardiac 12f  
 - coccygeal 308, 312  
 - constrictor pharyngeal 204  
 - - - inferior 204  
 - - - medial 204  
 - - - superior 204  
 - contraction 14  
 - cremaster 282  
 - cricoarytenoid lateral 116, 120, 124  
 - - posterior 116, 120, 124  
 - cricothyroid 120ff, 204  
 - digastric 54, 176f, 194, 200, 204f  
 - to erect hair 340, 346  
 - flexor ulnar, of wrist 68  
 - genioglossus 178, 194, 200  
 - geniohyoid 176f, 194  
 - gluteal greater 70  
 - - lesser 70  
 - - middle 70  
 - hyoglossus 194, 200, 206  
 - ilioglossus 308  
 - iliopsoas 268  
 - infraspinatus 66  
 - intercostal external 142  
 - - internal 142  
 - ischiocavernosus 286, 306, 310f  
 - levator ani 232, 270, 308, 312ff  
 - - pharyngis 202  
 - - of upper lip 108  
 - - veli palatini 114, 198, 204f  
 - lingual longitudinal inferior 194  
 - - - superior 194  
 - masseter 54, 178, 200  
 - mylohyoid 176f, 194, 200, 206  
 - nasalis 108  
 - oblique external abdominal 282  
 - - internal abdominal 282  
 - - transverse abdominal 282  
 - obturator external 314  
 - - internal 308, 314  
 - omohyoid 54  
 - orbicularis oris 176f  
 - palatoglossus 198  
 - palatopharyngeal 114, 198, 204  
 - papillary 8, 12  
 - - anterior 10  
 - pectinate 8  
 - pectoral greater 336  
 - - lesser 66  
 - piriform 72, 308  
 - psoas 70, 248  
 - - major 252f, 304  
 - pterygoid 178, 200  
 - - lateral 178, 188  
 - - medial 178, 200  
 - pubococcygeal 232, 270, 308  
 - puborectal 232, 308f  
 - pubovesical 270  
 - pump 42  
 - quadratus lumborum 70, 252f  
 - - plantae 74  
 - quadriceps femoris 72  
 - rectouterine 290, 298  
 - rectovesical 270  
 - rectus abdominis 72  
 - salpingopharyngeal 198, 204  
 - sartorius 72  
 - scalenus anterior 52  
 - - medial 52  
 - septomarginal 8  
 - serratus posterior 142  
 - soleus 74  
 - sphincter of anus, external 232, 290, 310f  
 - - internal 232, 248  
 - - in female 310  
 - - in male 310  
 - - urethral 270  
 - - splenius capitis 54  
 - sternocleidomastoid 54, 210  
 - styloglossus 194, 200, 206  
 - stylohyoid 194, 204  
 - stylopharyngeal 204  
 - supraspinatus 66  
 - temporal 54  
 - tensor veli palatini 114, 198, 206  
 - thyroarytenoid 120  
 - thyroid 116, 194, 206  
 - tracheal 128  
 - tracts of mucosa 208, 214f  
 - transverse of abdomen 252  
 - - lingual 194, 198  
 - - perineal deep 270, 284ff, 306f, 308, 312ff  
 - - - superficial 308, 310f  
 - - triceps of arm 66  
 - uterine 296  
 - uvular 114, 198  
 - vastus medial 72  
 - vertical lingual 194  
 - vocal 120, 124  
 Myeloblast 86  
 Myelocyte 86  
 Myocardial insufficiency 30  
 Myocardium 12  
 Myofibrils 14  
 Myometrium 296ff  
 Myxedema 166

## N

- Nails 348  
 Nares 114  
 Nasal bone 108  
 - cavity 108, 110  
 - conchae 110  
 - glands 110  
 - meatus 110  
 - septum 108f  
 Nasolabial fold 108  
 Nasopharynx 204  
 Nephron, see kidney  
 Nerve(s), abducens 58, 62  
 - accessory 210  
 - alveolar inferior 56  
 - auriculotemporal 56  
 - axillary 66  
 - dorsal of penis 288  
 - facial 54  
 - femoral 72, 268  
 - iliohypogastric 252  
 - ilioinguinal 252  
 - labial posterior 312  
 - laryngeal recurrent 210  
 - - superior 122  
 - maxillary 62  
 - oculomotor 58, 62  
 - olfactory 110  
 - ophthalmic 62  
 - optic 58  
 - peroneal deep 74  
 - - superficial 74  
 - phrenic 22f, 52, 138  
 - pudendal 70, 310f  
 - radial 66  
 - rectal inferior 310  
 - sciatic 70  
 - scrotal posterior 310  
 - subcostal 252  
 - sympathetic 162

- thoracodorsal 66  
 - trochlear 62  
 - ulnar 66  
 - vagus 22, 54, 168, 216  
 Network, venous 76  
 Neural crest 148  
 Neuroepithelial bodies 128  
 Neurohemal regions 154  
 Neurohormones 154f  
 - effector 152  
 Neurohypophysis 152ff  
 Neurophysin 154  
 Neurosecretion 154  
 Neurotensin (NT) 172  
 Newborn, full maturity 330  
 Nexus (gap junctions) 14  
 Node(s), Aschoff-Tawara 18  
 - atrioventricular 18  
 - Keith-Flack 18  
 - lymphatic, see lymph nodes  
 - sinuatrial 18  
 - sinus 18  
 Nodule 10  
 Non-phagocytosing accessory cells 92  
 Noradrenalin 162  
 Normoblasts 86  
 Normospermia 284  
 Nose 108ff  
 - cavernous body 108  
 - choana 108  
 - crista septi 108  
 - dorsal lamellae 108  
 - external nares (nostrils) 108  
 - frontal sinus 108  
 - goblet cells 110  
 - Kiesselbach's point 108  
 - lamina perpendicularis 108  
 - lateral wall 108  
 - locus Kiesselbachii 108  
 - olfactory glands 110  
 - - region 110  
 - perpendicular plate 108  
 - pharyngeal orifice 108  
 - respiratory region 110  
 - septal crest 108  
 - - deviation 108  
 - - lamella 108  
 - sphenothmoidal recess 108  
 - sphenoidal sinus 108  
 - vestibule 108  
 - vibrissae 108  
 - vomer 108  
 Notch, superior thyroid 116  
 Nucleus, paraventricular 154f  
 - supraoptic 154  
 - tuberal 154  
 Nurse cells 86

## O

- Odontoblasts 180  
 Oligozoospermia 284  
 Omentum, greater 136, 242  
 - lesser 136, 242  
 Oocytes 292  
 Oogenesis 292  
 Oogenia 292  
 - cavity join 176  
 - - vestibule 176  
 - mucosa 178  
 Oropharynx 204  
 Orthognathism 186  
 Osteoclasts 168  
 Ostium, external, of urethra 288, 306  
 - - internal, of urethra 268f, 284, 288, 306  
 - pharyngeal, of auditory tube 112, 204  
 - of uterus 266, 296  
 - of vagina 304f  
 Ovarian cycle, see menstrual cycle  
 Ovary 170, 272, 290f, 304  
 - as endocrine gland 170  
 Ovulation 170, 292f  
 Oxidation, biological processes 106  
 Oxytocin 152f, 326, 336
- P
- Palate 108, 198  
 - hard 108, 198  
 - soft 108, 114, 176, 198, 204f  
 Pancreas 168, 174, 210f, 234, 240ff, 242, 254  
 - islet cell organs 168  
 Pancreatic polypeptide (PP) 172  
 Pancreozymin 172  
 Papilla, duodenal major 238  
 - filiform 196  
 - foliate 196  
 - fungiform 196  
 - mammae (nipple) 326f  
 - parotid 200  
 - renal 254  
 - vallate 196  
 Paracolicum 304, 314  
 Paracystium 268, 314f  
 Paraesophageal hernia 208  
 Paraganglia 164  
 Parametrium 314  
 Paraproctium 312, 316  
 Parathormone 168  
 Parathyroid glands 146  
 Paries membranaceus 128  
 Parietal cells 216  
 Parodontium 182  
 Part, abdominae, of esophagus 210  
 - of ureter 266  
 - ascending of duodenum 218  
 - cardiac of stomach 212  
 - cavernous of urethra 306  
 - descending of duodenum 218  
 - distal of hypophysis 154  
 - horizontal of duodenum 218, 246  
 - infrapiriform 70  
 - infundibular of neurohypophysis 154  
 - intercartilaginous 124f  
 - intermediate of adenohypophysis 154  
 - intermembranous of rima glottidis 124  
 - laryngeal of pharynx 204  
 - lumbar of diaphragm 252  
 - membranous of inter-ventricular septum 10  
 - - of urethra 284, 288  
 - nasal of pharynx 204  
 - oral of pharynx 106, 204  
 - pelvic of ureter 266  
 - prostatic of urethra 284, 288  
 - pyloric of stomach 212ff  
 - spongiosa of urethra 284ff  
 - superior of duodenum 218  
 - suprapiriform 70  
 - thoracic of esophagus 210  
 - of uterus 294  
 Parturition 300  
 Passavant's ring torus 206  
 Pathways, peripheral of vessels 52



- Payer's patches 104, 220  
 Pelvic floor **308ff**, 326  
 - on childbirth 328  
 - loading of 312  
 - spaces 314f  
 Pelvis, arteries 70  
 - renal 264  
 - ampullar 262  
 - ramificate 264  
 Penis 274, **286f**  
 Pepsinogen 216  
 Peptide(s) 148  
 - hormones 172  
 - and monoamines 149  
 - precursors 149  
 Percussion (heart) 26  
 Pericardium 6, **22f**, 132, 138  
 Perichondrium 128  
 Pericytes 40  
 Perimetrium (peritoneum) 296  
 Perineum, support of on childbirth 328  
 Periodontium 178ff, 188  
 Periodontopathy 180  
 Periorchium 274, 282  
 Peripheral arteries, muscular type 36  
 - pathways 52  
 - resistance, regulation 36  
 Peristalsis 206  
 Peritoneum 212, 226f, 234, **244**, 268, 284  
 - parietal 212  
 - visceral 212  
 Permeation 40  
 Phagocytic accessory cells 92  
 Pharyngoesophageal diverticulum (pressure diverticulum) 208  
 Pharynx (throat) 106, 176, 198, 204ff  
 Philtrum 176  
 Phimosis 286  
 Phonation 124, 126  
 Pineal body (epiphysis) 160  
 Pinocytosis 224  
 Pituitary gland, see hypophysis  
 Placenta 296, 322, 324, 330f, 336  
 - birth 322  
 - previa 322  
 Plasma cells 86, 90, 97f  
 Plasmacytogenesis 86f  
 Plasmalemma, heart muscle tissue 14, 40, 224  
 - sperm 278  
 Platysma 178  
 Pleura 22, 92, 130, 134, 138  
 - borders 140  
 - costal 138  
 - diaphragmatic 138  
 - dome 138  
 - mediastinal 138, 208  
 - parietal 138  
 - pulmonary 138  
 - puncture 48  
 - visceral 136  
 Pleural exudate 138  
 - space, puncture 48  
 Plexus, basilar 60f  
 - celiac 242  
 - esophageal 210  
 - Meissner's 214  
 - mesenteric 246f  
 - myenteric of Auerbach 214, 222  
 - pampiniformis 34, 282  
 - pharyngeal 64, 210  
 - pterygoid 62f, 114  
 - sacral 70  
 - submucosal 214f  
 - venous, around the areola 76  
 - vertebral 60  
 Pneumothorax 144  
 - tension 144  
 Podocytes (kidney) 258  
 Poetins 86  
 Pole cushion (kidney) 258  
 Polycythemia 82  
 Pores, alveolar 136  
 Porta hepatis 234, 242  
 Portal vein, see vein, portal  
 Portion, supravaginal, of cervix 296  
 - vaginal 302  
 - of cervix 300, 304  
 Positio uteri 298  
 Pouche(s), rectouterine 290, 298, 304, 314  
 - rectovesical 286, 316  
 - vesicouterine 290, 314  
 Precursor cell(s) 86  
 - of T- and B-lymphocytes 97  
 Pregnancy 170, 300f, **322ff**  
 - ectopic 322  
 - tubal 322  
 Prepuce of clitoris 306  
 - of penis 286f  
 Process, pterygoid 204  
 - styloid 204  
 - uncinat 240, 244  
 - vaginal of peritoneum 282  
 - vocal 116  
 Proerythroblast 86  
 Progesterone 170, 292, 300  
 - effect of 336  
 Prolactin (PRL) 156f, 336  
 Prolactostatin (PIF, dopamine) 156  
 Prominence, laryngeal, Adam's apple 126  
 Promyeloblast 86  
 Proopiomelanocortin, derivatives 148, 164  
 Prostate 70, 268f, 274, 284f  
 - hypertrophy 284  
 Proteins 148  
 Proteohormone(s) ACTH (corticotropin) 158  
 - STH (somatotropin) 158  
 Pterygopalatine fossa 56  
 Pubertas precoc 160  
 Puerperium 330  
 Pulmonary circulation 4  
 - embolism 50  
 Pulp (tooth) 180  
 Pulse 68  
 - rate 16  
 - wave 36, 54  
 Purkinje fibers 18  
 Pylorolateral border region 262  
 Pylorus 210f

## R

- Radiology of heart 28  
 Raphe palatine 198  
 - pharyngeal 204  
 - pterygomandibular 204  
 - of scrotum 274  
 Recess, costodiaphragmatic 24, 138f, 144, 252  
 - costomediastinal 24f, 138ff  
 - duodenal inferior 218  
 - superior 218  
 - frontal 54  
 - hepatorenal 244  
 - iliocecal 228  
 - inferior, omental bursa 244  
 intersigmoidal 218  
 mylohyoid 56  
 pancreatic 242  
 parietal 54  
 paraduodenal 218  
 peritoneal 244  
 pharyngeal 204  
 piriform 122, 204  
 pterygoid 56  
 retrocecal 228  
 retroduodenal 218  
 sphenoethmoidal 108, 112  
 subhepatic 244  
 subphrenic 218  
 superior, omental bursa 244  
 Rectoanal pylorus 232  
 Rectum 226, **232**, 270  
 Reflex, neurohormonal 336  
 Regio olfactoria 110  
 - respiratoria 110  
 Regions, neurohemal 154  
 Regulator cells 90f, 97  
 Regulatory circuits 156  
 Relaxation time (heart action) 16  
 Ren, see kidney  
 Renal capsule 254  
 - corpuscles 260  
 - lobes 254  
 - parenchyma 256  
 - pelvis 252ff, 264  
 Renculi (renal lobes) 254  
 Renin-angiotensin-system 162, 258  
 Reservoir, hydraulic 48  
 Respiration 106  
 - circulation action 42  
 - diaphragmatic 142  
 - dynamics of 142  
 - expiratory reserve volume 144  
 - inspiratory reserve volume 144  
 - mechanics 142f  
 - positive pressure 144  
 - residual volume of air 144  
 - ribs 142  
 - volume 144  
 Respiratory position, resting 142  
 - system **106ff**  
 - tract 106  
 - lower 106  
 - upper 106  
 Rete articular of elbow 68  
 - of knee 72  
 - calcaneal 74  
 - genicular 74  
 - malleolar 74  
 - lateral 74  
 - medial 74  
 - mirabile 42  
 - testis 276f

- Reticular cells 86  
 - connective tissue 88  
 Reticulocytes 82, 86  
 Reticulo-endothelial system 98  
 Reticulum cells 88, 96  
 - specific 92  
 - smooth endoplasmic 14  
 Retinaculum 290  
 - uteri 298  
 Retroperitoneal space 244f  
 Rhinoscopy 114  
 Ribosomal-RNA 150  
 Rima glottidis 120, 124, 206  
 Rings, basal (alveolus) 136  
 Root of mesentery 218, 226, 244  
 - nasal bone 108  
 - of tongue 194  
 S  
 Sac, alveolar, lungs 136  
 - lacrimal 110  
 Saliva 200  
 Salivary glands 200f  
 - fine structure 202  
 - large 200  
 - serous acini 202  
 - small 200  
 Sarcomere 14  
 Scalene gap 138  
 Scar formation, skin 348  
 Scrotum 272f, 282  
 - skin of 282  
 Secretin 172  
 Secretion 146  
 - apocrine 150  
 - eccrine 150  
 - formation and release 150  
 - formation 146  
 - of gastric juice 216  
 - holocrine 150  
 - vaginal 304  
 Segments, bronchioarterial 134  
 Sella turcica 112, 154  
 Semen 284  
 Seminal ducts 272  
 - vesicles 272f, 286  
 Septula of testis 276  
 Septum, alveolar 136  
 - interalveolar, teeth 184  
 - inter-radicular 184  
 - nasal 108  
 - of penis 286f  
 - rectovaginal 314  
 - scrotal 282  
 - urethrovaginal 314  
 - urorectal 316  
 Serosa, parietal 22  
 - visceral 22  
 Sertoli's cells 276f  
 Sex, genetic 320  
 Shunts, arteriovenous 224  
 Sinus, anterior ethmoidal 110  
 - aorta 10, 18  
 - carotid 54  
 - cavernous 58, 62f  
 - confluence 60f  
 - coronary 6ff, 20, 132  
 - ethmoidal 112  
 - frontal 112  
 - intercavernous 62  
 - lactiferous 336  
 - mammarum 334  
 - marginal 62, 98  
 - maxillary 110f  
 - nasal 112  
 - oblique pericardial 22  
 - occipital 60f  
 - paranasal 112  
 - petrosal inferior 60ff  
 - superior 60ff  
 - renal 254  
 - sagittal inferior 60, 64  
 - superior 60ff  
 - sigmoid 60ff  
 - sphenoidal 112  
 - sphenoparietal 60f  
 - of the spleen 102  
 - straight rectal 60ff  
 - transverse 60, 64  
 - pericardial 22  
 - urogenital 272  
 - venous of dura mater **60ff**  
 Sinusoidal capillaries 40  
 Skin **338ff**  
 - blood vessels 344  
 - color 338  
 - glabrous (hairless) 340f  
 - glands 344  
 - hairy 340f  
 - layers 340  
 - protective acid mantle 344  
 - regeneration and aging 348  
 - ridges 342  
 - temperature control 344  
 Small intestine 218f, 222  
 - convolutions 226  
 - layers of wall 218  
 - movements 222



*Small intestine mucosa* 220  
 - - musculature 222  
 - - villi 220  
*Smegma* 286  
*Somatoliberin (GH-RF)* 153  
*Somatostatin (SRIF)* 156, 164, 168, 172  
*Somatotropin* 158  
*Space, interdental* 182  
 - interglobular 180  
 - parapharyngeal 204  
 - perineal superficial 310, 316  
 - peritoneal of pelvis 314f  
 - retropubic 314f  
*Speech* 124  
*Sperm (spermatozoa)* 274ff, 284  
*Spermatic chord* 274, 282  
*Spermatogenesis* 274f  
*Spermatozoon*, see sperm  
*Spermiohistogenesis* 278  
*Sphincter ampullae (Oddi)* 238  
 - of calix 264  
 - cardiac functional 208f  
 - of esophagus 208  
 - of fornix 264  
 - pelvic 264  
*Spine, nasal posterior* 198  
*Spleen* 92, 96, 100f, 140, 210, 242f  
 - accessory 100  
 - blood cell destruction 102  
 - fine structure 102  
 - hilum 100  
 - marginal zone 102  
 - pulp 102  
 - - red 102  
 - - white 102  
 - Schweigger-Seidel sleeve 102  
 - sinuses 102  
 - storage diseases 102  
*Stenosis* 10, 12  
*Stereocilia* 280  
*Steroids* 148  
*Stomach* 212ff, 240f  
 - bubble 214  
 - elongated 214  
 - fine structure 212  
 - J-shaped 214  
 - main types, stomach 214  
 - movements and motility 214  
 - mucous membranes 216  
 - muscle layer 214

*Stretch closure (esophagus)* 208  
*Striae, distension* 342  
*Stroke, volume* 36  
*Submucosa* 208  
*Substance P* 164  
*Substantia adamantina (enamel, tooth)* 180  
 - eburnea (dentin) 180  
 - granulofilamentosa 86  
 - ossea (cement, tooth) 180  
*Sulcus, coronary* 6, 12, 20  
 - interventricular anterior 6, 16, 20  
 - - posterior 6, 20  
 - mentolabial fold 176  
 - nasolabial fold 176  
 - terminal 196  
*Supraventricular crest* 8  
*Surface, costal* 130  
 - diaphragmatic 6, 100, 130, 234  
 - inferior of tongue 196  
 - medial 130  
 - sternocostal 6  
 - visceral 100, 232  
*Symphysis* 164  
*Symphysis, pubic* 290  
*Syphon, carotid* 58  
*System, hypothalamo-hypophyseal* 152, 153 (survey)  
 - hypothalamo-neurohypophyseal 154  
*Systole* 8f, 16  
*Systolic blood pressure* 38

## T

*Teeth* 180ff  
 - anchorage 182  
 - canine 184f  
 - deciduous dentition 188  
 - deep bite 186  
 - development 190  
 - distal (lateral) surface 182  
 - edge to edge bite (forceps bite) 186  
 - enamel epithelium 190  
 - - organs 190  
 - fine structure 180  
 - front 184  
 - full occlusion 188  
 - incisors 184f  
 - lateral (side) 184

- mesial (proximal) surface 182  
 - milk (deciduous) 184, 190  
 - molar 184f  
 - movement inside the alveolus 188  
 - neutral bite (scissors bite) 186  
 - orientation in jaw 182  
 - overbite 186  
 - permanent 184f  
 - position within the dentition 186  
 - premolar 184f  
 - prognathism (distal bite) 186  
 - protrusive occlusion 188  
 - side-to-side bite 188  
 - structures supporting position 182  
*Tela subcutanea (subcutis)* 340, 344  
*Tenia* 226ff  
*Teniac coli* 278  
*Tendon, fibrous of diaphragm* 22  
*Testosterone* 278  
*Testis* 272f, 286  
 - coats 274  
 - covering 282  
 - as endocrine gland 170  
 - fine structure 276  
*Theca, follicular* 292  
*T-Helper cells* 90f, 96f  
*Thoracic aorta* 48  
*Throat* 106, 176, 198, 204f  
*Thrombocytes* 82f  
*Thrombocytopoiesis* 86  
*Thrombokinas* 82  
*Thrombopoiesis* 84f  
*Thrombosis (embolism)* 40, 50  
*Throttle veins* 42  
*Thymic remnant* 94  
*Thymic triangle* 24  
*Thymocytes* 92f  
*Thymopoietin* 94  
*Thymus* 84, 92, 96  
 - cortex 92  
 - microscopic structure 94  
 - position 24  
 - triangular outline 92  
*Thyroglobulin* 166  
*Thyroid gland* 146, 166  
 - - fine structure 166  
 - - hormone production and release 166  
*Thyroliberin (TRF)* 156

*Thyrotropin-releasing factor (TRF)* 151  
*Thyroxine* 166  
*Tight junctions* 32  
*T-Immunoblasts* 90  
*T-Lymphocyte(s)* 90f, 96  
 - reservoir 90  
 - tolerance 90f  
*Tongue* 90, 194f, 206  
 - inferior surface 196  
 - mucous membranes 196  
 - muscles 194  
*Tonsil(s)* 92, 96, 104  
 - lingual 104, 196, 204  
 - palatine 104, 176, 198, 204  
 - pharyngeal 104, 114, 198, 204  
 - - unpaired 104  
 - tubaria 104  
*Torus tubarius* 204  
*Trabecula(-ae) carnae* 12  
 - - cordis 8  
 - septomarginales 10  
*Trachea* 106, 128  
 - bifurcates 128  
 - fine structure 128  
*Tracheotomy* 126  
*Traction diverticulum* 208  
*Tract, hypothalamo-hypophyseal* 154  
 - tubero-infundibular 156  
*Transport of gases* 106  
 - vesicular 40  
*T-Region* 90, 96f  
*T-Repressor cells* 90  
*Trigone of bladder* 268f  
 - fibrous 12  
*Triiodothyronine* 166  
*Tripod, Haller's* 242  
*Trophoblast* 302, 322  
*Trunk(s), brachiocephalic* 6, 22, 46f, 132, 210  
 - artery 6  
 - - innominate 6  
 - bronchomediastinal 80  
 - celiac 48, 242, 246, 250  
 - costocervical 52  
 - fasciculi atrioventricularis 18  
 - intestinal 80, 246f  
 - jugular 80  
 - lumbar 80, 246  
 - lymphatic 80  
 - pulmonary 6f, 22, 28, 106, 128, 138, 332  
 - subclavian 80  
 - thyrocervical 52, 66, 132  
 - vagal 210

*T-Suppressor cells* 90, 92, 97ff  
*Tuba auditiva* 114  
*Tube, uterine, Fallopian* 272, 290ff  
*Tuber cinereum* 154  
 - omental 240, 244  
*Tubercle, areolar of Montgomery glands* 334  
 - articular 188  
 - carotid 54  
 - corniculate 124  
 - cuneiform 124  
 - dentis 184  
 - epiglottic 116  
 - pharyngeal 204  
*Tubule, convoluted, kidney* 260f  
 - - seminiferous 276  
 - renal 260f  
*Tunica adventitia* 32  
 - albuginea (testis) 276  
 - (penis) 286f  
 - dartos 282  
 - fibrocartilaginous membrane 128  
 - intima 32  
 - media 32  
 - mucosa (pharynx) 204  
 - (stomach) 216  
 - muscularis (pharynx) 204  
 - (muscle layer of stomach) 214  
 - vaginalis testis 274, 282

## U

*Ureter* 252, 264, 266, 270, 274, 284, 290 304  
 - constrictions 266  
 - double 266  
 - opening 268f  
 - split 266  
 - variants 266  
*Ureteral ridge* 268  
*Urethra* 252, 264, 274, 286  
 - female 306  
 - male 274, 284, 288, 310  
 - orifice 312  
*Urinary bladder* 252, 264, 268ff, 274  
 - filling of 270  
 - filter 258  
 - organs 252ff, 264ff  
 - - tract 252, 264f  
*Urine, primary* 252, 258  
 - secondary 252, 258, 260f  
 - transport of 266

*Urogenital system* 252ff  
*Uterus* 272, 290, 296ff, 304  
 - anteflexio 298  
 - anterior lip 296  
 - anteversio 290, 298  
 - arcuatus 296  
 - bicornis 296  
 - cervix of on childbirth 328  
 - in childbirth 326  
 - duplex separatus vagina duplex 296  
 - external mouth 296  
 - muscles 300  
 - position and mobility 298  
 - posterior lip 296  
 - in pregnancy 322  
 - retroflexio 298  
 - retroversio 298  
 - size 298  
 - variants 296  
*Utricle, prostatic* 272, 284  
*Uvula* 198  
 - vesicae 268

## V

*Vagina* 272, 290, 304  
 - carotic 64  
 - on childbirth 328  
 - orifice 312  
*Valve(s), aortic* 8f, 26  
 - arterial 10  
 - atrioventricular 8, 12, 26  
 - - left 8  
 - - right 8  
 - bicuspid 8ff  
 - of Eustachius 8  
 - of heart 10  
 - of Heister 238  
 - ileocecal, colic 228  
 - incompetence 10  
 - plane (heart) 10f, 16, 26  
 - pulmonary trunk 8f, 26  
 - semilunar 8f, 42  
 - of sinus coronary 8  
 - of Thebesius 8  
 - tricuspid 8ff, 26  
 - of veins 8, 34, 76  
*Varices* 76  
*Vasa vasorum* 32  
*Vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP)* 172  
*Vasopressin* 152f  
*Vein(s), angular* 62f  
 - apical of the tongue 194  
 - appendicular 230  
 - arcuate of kidney 260



- Vein(s)*, auricular posterior 64
- axillary 76
  - azygos 50, 60, 128ff, 138, 260
  - basilic 76
  - basivertebral 60
  - brachial 76
  - brachiocephalic 22, 50, 64
  - bronchial 50, 132
  - cardiac 18
  - - great 20
  - - middle 20
  - - small 20
  - cava 4, 50
  - - inferior 4f, 12, 22, 28, 34, 50, 132, 212, 234, 240, 248f, 304, 332
  - - superior 4f, 12, 22, 28, 50, 132, 250, 332
  - central of liver 236
  - cephalic 76
  - cerebral great 60, 64
  - circumflex iliac superficial 76
  - coronary 20
  - cubital median 76
  - cystic 250
  - diploic 60
  - dorsal deep of penis 288, 308f
  - - superficial of penis 288
  - duodenal 250
  - emissary condyloid 62
  - - mastoid 62
  - - occipital 62
  - - parietal 62
  - epigastric inferior 316
  - - superficial 76
  - esophageal 50
  - excessive filling 76
  - facial 64
  - femoral 72, 76
  - gastric left 250
  - - right 250
  - - short 100, 250
  - gastroepiploic left 250
  - - right 250
  - hemiazygos 50, 60, 250
  - - accessory 50
  - hepatic 50
  - iliac common 50
  - - external 50, 268, 316
  - - internal 50, 316
  - innominate 50
  - intercostal 50
  - interlobular 236, 260
  - jugular anterior 64, 76
  - - bulb 60
  - - external 64
  - - internal 50, 54, 60ff, 210
  - lumbar 50
  - - ascending 50
  - maxillary 64
  - median antebrachial 76
  - mesenteric inferior 238, 248
  - - superior 238, 244
  - occipital 64
  - ophthalmic superior 62f
  - ovarian left 50, 304
  - - right 50, 304
  - pancreatic 250
  - pancreaticoduodenal 250
  - paraumbilical 76
  - pericardiophrenic 22f
  - pharyngeal 64
  - popliteal 76
  - portal 34, 76, 100, 234ff, 242, 250
  - prepyloric 250
  - pudendal external 76
  - - internal 316
  - pulmonary 4f, 12, 22, 106, 130f, 136
  - rectal superior 250, 316
  - renal 50, 256
  - - left 304
  - retromandibular 64
  - saphenous great 76
  - - small 76
  - splenic 100, 238f, 250
  - subclavian 50f, 64, 76
  - subcutaneous 76
  - sublobular 236
  - suprarenal 34
  - testicular left 50, 282
  - - right 50, 282
  - thoracic internal 64
  - thoracoepigastric 76, 250
  - throttle 42
  - thyroid superior 64
  - trabecular 102
  - umbilical 332
  - uterine 304
  - vertebral 64
- Venous* angle 44, 50, 64, 80
- cross 6, 22
  - network 76
  - valves 34
- Ventricle(s)* 8, 16
- apex 12
  - cardiac 4f, 8ff, 16f
  - laryngeal 122
  - left 6
  - muscles 12
  - right 6
- Ventricular septum 8
- Venule(s)* 34
- epitheloid 96f
  - stellate, kidney 260
  - straight of kidney 256, 260f
- Vesicles*, seminal 70, 268f, 284
- Vesicular* transport 40
- Vessels*, afferent, kidney 256ff
- central or great 48
  - coronary 18
  - efferent, kidney 256ff
  - iliac common 266
  - ovarian blood 266
  - testicular blood 266
- Vestibular* glands 290
- Vestibule* of larynx 122
- of mouth 176
  - of nose 108
  - of vagina 290, 306
- Villi* of small intestine 220
- Viscera* 2
- Vocal* cords 116, 118
- process 116
- Vulva* 306

## W

- Water blisters 78
- Wave, pulse 54
- Weaning 336
- Witch's milk 334
- Womb, see uterus
- Wolffian duct (mesonephric duct) 272

## Z

- Zona fasciculata* (adrenal cortex) 162
- glomerulosa (adrenal cortex) 162
  - haemorrhoidalis (hemorrhoidal zone) 232
  - pellucida 292
  - reticularis (adrenal cortex) 162
- Zonula adherens* 224
- occludens 32, 224
- Zymogen* granules 240